

METABOLIC METHODS

*Clinical Procedures in the Study of
Metabolic Functions*

By

C FRANK CONSOLAZIO

Chief of Biochemistry United States Army
Medical Nutrition Laboratory
Chicago Illinois

ROBERT E JOHNSON, M D, D Phil (Oxford)

Professor and Head of the Department of Physiology
University of Illinois Urbana Illinois

and

EVELYN MAREK, M A

Biochemist, United States Army
Medical Nutrition Laboratory
Chicago Illinois

ILLUSTRATED

ST LOUIS
THE C V MOSBY COMPANY
1951

COPYRIGHT 1901 BY THE C V MOSBY COMPANY

Press of
The C V Mosby Company
St Louis

THIS BOOK IS DEDICATED
TO OUR COLLEAGUES PAST AND
PRESENT AT THE HARVARD FATIGUE
LABORATORY AND THE MEDICAL
NUTRITION LABORATORY

PREFACE

This book presents in detail methods which have proved to be useful in our experience during fifteen years of research on various aspects of mammalian metabolism particularly that of human beings in health and in disease. Three somewhat different types of work have posed methodological problems: first metabolic balance studies, second routine laboratory analysis of tissues, food and body fluids, and third studies out in the field. A common characteristic of all three is the accumulation of large numbers of specimens on which a wide variety of analyses must be performed. The most satisfactory methods in all three cases are those which use the least amount of samples and which can be run routinely in large numbers. Sometimes it is desirable to sacrifice some specificity in favor of simplicity, and sometimes it is necessary to sacrifice some accuracy for the sake of speed and reproducibility. We have described in detail only those methods which have been used routinely by us long enough to clarify the precautions essential for success.

We have omitted intentionally any description of isotopic, ultracentrifuge and electrophoretic techniques for the reason that as yet they are not widely used routinely in metabolic balance studies. This omission will doubtless have to be rectified in future editions.

The manner of presentation adopted in this book has evolved over many years of training technicians and graduate students. We have found that a uniform detailed presentation following a single basic outline is a great saving of time for the instructor, especially when examples of calculations and a listing of important precautions are also included.

Some of the material in this book was taken from two previous compilations:

"Syllabus of Laboratory Methods from the Harvard Fatigue Laboratory" by W. V. Consolazio, S. M. Horvath and D. B. Dill (1941) and

"Laboratory Manual of Field Methods for Biochemical Assessment of Metabolic and Nutritional Condition" by R. E. Johnson, F. Sargent, C. F. Consolazio and P. T. Robinson (1945).

We are of course indebted to many people for help and advice during the preparation of this book. Our former colleagues D. B. Dill, H. S. Belding, R. C. Darling and F. Sargent have given valuable assistance. We are particularly indebted to Mr. Carl Gordon for producing or redrawing all of our charts. Almost all members of the Medical Nutrition Laboratory helped at one time or another, especially the whole secretarial staff. In particular Mrs. I. DeCordial worked hard in preparing many drafts and Mrs. L. Vrhel

10 Preface

Mrs I DeCordial and Miss E Bielat were solely responsible for the final typography of the book. Members of the Statistical Branch assisted in many ways and Captain J Rielly MSC rendered great service in the assembling of the manual. The members of the Biochemistry Branch (Dr G Weigend Mr J Bell Corporal T Hutton Corporal R Powell and Private R Golden) helped out on many occasions and Private H Rosen drafted the sections on the Beckman spectrophotometer and flame photometer. The section on microbiological procedures was prepared by Captain L Crowley MSC Mrs B Enwall and Miss L Blanksma. Miss V Maloney assisted in the preparation of the sections on clinical laboratory procedures.

In a book such as this most of the work is not original. Permission has been obtained from authors and publishers for the reprinting of certain charts and graphs. For the use of illustrations of apparatus we wish to thank Dr Peter Scholander Swarthmore University Pennsylvania Dr Ancel Keys Laboratory of Physiological Hygiene University of Minnesota Mr W V Consolazio Office of Naval Research Washington D C Dr D B Dill Medical Division Edgewood Arsenal Maryland and Dr H S Belding of the Climatic Research Laboratory Lawrence Mass.

We have received willing permission from numerous manufacturers to describe their products and have been supplied by them with photographs of their instruments and with circuit diagrams. In the appropriate places in the text their contributions are acknowledged.

C F CONSOLAZIO
R E JOHNSON
EVELYN MAREK

Urbana Illinois and
Chicago Illinois

CONTENTS

	SECTION I	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	-	17
	SECTION II	
THE COLLECTION AND STORAGE OF SPECIMENS	-	19
General Considerations 19 Food (Whole Diets in the Field) 19 Whole Blood and Serum (In the Field) 20 Urine (In the Field) 2 Tissue 25 Feces 26		
	SECTION III	
INSTRUMENTATION	-	27
General Principles of Spectrophotometry 7 Spectrophotometer Coleman Junior Model 6 33 Beckman Photoelectric Quartz Spectrophotometer (Model DU) 38 Fluorometry—General Principles 50 Photofluorometry—The Coleman Photo fluorometer Model 17B 51 Fluorometric Methods for Qualitative Use and for Quantitative Measurements in the Field—Visual Fluorometry 57 Flame Photometry—The Beckman Flame Photometer Attachment 59 Balances 65 Volumetric Analysis 69 Instrumentation Miscellaneous References 79		
	SECTION IV	
BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES	-	89
A MINERALS	-	89
Total Water and Total Solids in Food Tissue Cells Serum and Feces 8 Total Base in Serum Urine Cells and Tissue 83 Sodium in Serum Urine Cells Tissues Diets and Stools (Gravimetric Method) 8 Potassium in Serum Urine Cells Tissue Diets and Stools 91 Calcium in Serum Urine Food Tissue and Feces 93 Magnesium in Serum 97 Inorganic Iron in Serum 99 Copper in Serum 100 Chloride in Serum and Urine 105 Inorganic Phosphorus in Serum Urine Food and Feces 109 Sulfur in Urine 112 Minerals Miscellaneous References 115		
B PROTEIN AND NITROGEN COMPOUNDS	-	120
Total Nitrogen (Micro Kjeldahl) in Serum Urine Food and Feces 125 Serum Proteins (Biuret Method) 13 Albumin and Globulin in Serum 16 Whole Blood Hemoglobin and Serum Protein (Copper Sulfate Specific Gravity) 127 Protein in Urine 133 Fibrinogen in Plasma 134 Nonprotein Nitrogen in Serum and Whole Blood 135 Creatinine in Urine 136 Creatine in Urine 139 Urea Nitrogen 140 Amino Acid Nitrogen in Urine 14 Uric Acid 143 Uric Acid (Uricase Method) 145 Paper Chromatography 147 Proteins and Nitrogenous Compounds Miscellaneous References 151		
C CARBOHYDRATES AND DERIVATIVES	-	154
Blood Glucose (Colorimetric) 154 Glucose (Volumetric) 156 Lactic Acid 157 Glycogen in Tissue 161 Alcohol in Blood and Urine 163 Total Bisulfite Binding Capacity 165 Carbohydrates Miscellaneous References 166		

D FATS AND DERIVATIVES	PAGE
Total Lipids in Serum 168 Total Cholesterol 169 Free and Combined Cholesterol in Blood 171 Lipid Phosphorus in Blood and Serum 173 Acetone Bodies 175 Fats and Derivatives Miscellaneous References 178	168
E VITAMINS	179
Vitamin A and Carotenoids (Carr Price) 179 Vitamin A and Carotenoids (Dichlorohydrin) 181 Thiamine in Urine Food Blood and Feces 184 N-Methyl nicotinamide in Urine 189 Riboflavin in Urine Blood Food and Feces 190 Ascorbic Acid in Whole Blood Serum and Urine 195 Ascorbic Acid in Tissue 199 Rapid Field Methods for Ascorbic Acid, Riboflavin Thiamine and N-Methyl nicotinamide 201 Vitamins and Nutrition Miscellaneous References 210	
F HORMONES	215
Ketosteroids in Urine 215 Hormones Miscellaneous References 218	
G ENZYMES	221
Lipase in Serum 221 Phosphatase Alkaline and Acid 222 Cholinesterase in Serum and Cells 224 Amylase in Serum 226 Enzymes Miscellaneous References 227	
H PIGMENTS	229
Hemoglobin (Sanford Sheard) 229 Total Hemoglobin (Evelyn Malloy) 230 Oxyhemoglobin Methemoglobin Sulfhemoglobin 231 Pigments Miscellaneous References 233	
I HYDROGEN ION CONCENTRATION	234
Indicators 234 Buffer Solutions 234 Glass Electrodes 235 Measurement of pH in Solutions 242 Hydrogen Ion Concentration Miscellaneous References 243	

SECTION V

MICROBIOLOGICAL PROCEDURES	244
Pteroylglutamic Acid (Folic Acid) 244 Nicotinic Acid 247 Biotin 249 Pantothenic Acid 250 Pyridoxine (Vitamin B) 251 Riboflavin 253 Tryptophane 255 Agar Plate Assay for Biotin 256 Microbiology Miscellaneous References 259	

SECTION VI

PHYSIOLOGICAL MEASUREMENTS	261
A. BLOOD GASES	261
Calculation of Gas Volumes 261 Techniques for Obtaining Arterial Blood and for Handling Blood Anaerobically 261 The Van Slyke Null Manometric Apparatus 265 Oxygen in Whole Blood (Van Slyke) 267 Carbon Dioxide in Whole Blood and Serum (Van Slyke) 270 Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide in Single Samples of Blood (Van Slyke) 272 Oxygen Capacity (Van Slyke) 273 Carbon Monoxide in Blood (Total Heme Pigments) 275 Oxygen in Blood (Roughton Scholander) 277 Dissolved Nitrogen in Blood (Edwards Scholander Roughton) 282 Carbon Monoxide in Blood (Scholander Roughton) 285 Carbon Dioxide in Blood (Scholander Roughton) 291 Combined Carbon Dioxide and Oxygen (Scholander) 293 Manometric Methods Miscellaneous References 299	

	PAGE
B PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY OF BLOOD GASES	301
Technique for Equilibrating Arterial and Venous Blood Against Gas Mixtures of Known Composition 301 Dissociation Curves of Blood 305 Miscellaneous Calculations of the Physicochemical Properties of Blood 310	
C ESTIMATION OF RESPIRATORY GASES	319
The Haldane Apparatus for Measuring Carbon Dioxide and Oxygen 31 The Scholander Micrometer Gas Analyzer 30	
D RESPIRATORY METABOLISM	327
Collection of Expired Air—The Tissot Gasometer 37 Collection of Expired Air—The Douglas Bag Technique 331 Respiratory Metabolic Calculations 333 Basal Metabolic Rate 337 Metabolism During Work—The Treadmill 341	
E PULMONARY MEASUREMENTS	346
Alveolar Air in Rest and Work 346 Functional Residual Air 351 Cardiac Output (Grollman's Method) 353 Pulmonary and Circulatory Measurements Miscellaneous References 356	
F PLASMA VOLUME BLOOD VOLUME EXTRACELLULAR VOLUME	358
Plasma and Blood Volumes (Dye Method) 358 Total Circulating Red Cell Blood and Plasma Volumes (Carbon Monoxide) 361 True Blood Volume 363 Extracellular Fluid (Thiocyanate Space) 364 Plasma Volume Blood Volume and Extracellular Fluid Miscellaneous References 368	
SECTION VII	
STUDIES IN THE FIELD	367
General Considerations 367 Laboratory and Clinical Methods 367 Treadmill Test of Physical Fitness for Hard Muscular Work 369 Field Tests of Physical Fitness 371 Surveys of Food Consumption 375 Heat Balance—Clothing 38 Meteorological Measurements 381 Preservation of Animal Tissues for Histological Studies 389	
SECTION VIII	
TECHNIQUES FOR METABOLIC WARDS	391
General Considerations 39 Derived Data—Theoretical Balances 393 Derived Data—Theoretical Weight 394	
SECTION IX	
CLINICAL LABORATORY PROCEDURES	396
A MISCELLANEOUS REFERENCES TO TEXTBOOKS	396
B HEMATOLOGY	397
Calculation of Mean Corpuscular Volume Mean Corpuscular Hemoglobin Content and Mean Corpuscular Hemoglobin Concentration 397 Calculation of Sedimentation Rate 399 Direct Eosinophil Count 399 Hematology Miscellaneous References 401	

14 Contents

	PAGE
C TOLERANCE TESTS - - - - -	403
Glucose Tolerance Tests 403 Vitamin Tolerance Tests 405	
D KIDNEY FUNCTION - - - - -	409
Titratable Acidity 409 Phenolsulphophthalein Test 410 Renal Clearance Tests Miscellaneous References 411	
E LIVER FUNCTION - - - - -	410
Bromsulphalein Test 412 Serum Bilirubin 413 Urobilinogen in Urine and Feces 415 Liver Function Miscellaneous References 417	
F FUNCTIONAL TESTS OF ENDOCRINE GASTRIC AND OTHER SYSTEMS - - - - -	419
Pituitary Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone (ACTH) Test 419 References to Endocrine Gastric and Other Functional Tests 420	
G SUBSTANCES OF OCCASIONAL CLINICAL IMPORTANCE MISCELLANEOUS REFERENCES - -	421
SECTION V	
STATISTICAL METHODS - - - - -	42
References to Standard Works 420	
SECTION XI	
MISCELLANEOUS DATA - - - - -	404
Atomic Weights 424 ; Conversion Between Different Systems of Weights and Measures 425 ; Elements Listed in Order of Atomic Number, 428 ; Composition of Body Fluids 429	

METABOLIC METHODS

Clinical Procedures in the Study of Metabolic Functions

SECTION I

INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this manual is to assist in the carrying out of metabolic studies whether in the laboratory or in the field. Perhaps a brief description of how the book is organized will facilitate its use.

A standard form of presentation has been adopted for all detailed descriptions of methods. The major headings presented in each case are (a) title of method (b) a key reference (c) a brief outline of the principle of the method (d) a detailed list of apparatus that will be required (e) a detailed list of reagents and how to prepare them (f) a step by step description of the method (g) the general equation for calculating the results (h) an example of a typical set of results calculated according to the general equation and (i) precautions which we have found to be important in using the method. Those sections that do not deal with specific methods have no fixed pattern the presentation being appropriate to the subject matter.

The first major section of the book deals with the collection and storage of specimens this being a primary concern in all metabolic studies. The second major section deals with instrumentation and includes detailed descriptions of those instruments which will be used in the various procedures presented later in the book. The third main section presents biochemical procedures covering the categories of minerals protein and nitrogen compounds carbohydrates and derivatives fats and derivatives vitamins hormones enzymes pigments and hydrogen ion concentration. The fourth section deals with microbiological procedures which are applicable to routine analysis of vitamins and amino acids. The fifth section is concerned with physiological measurements blood gases physical chemistry of blood gases estimation of respiratory gases measurement of respiratory metabolism pulmonary measurements and the estimation of plasma volume blood volume and extracellular fluid.

Starting with the sixth major section the presentation changes somewhat. The sixth section itself deals with studies in the field in which the authors have had a wide and varied experience. (Field physiology poses many interesting methodological problems which have to be met in a manner not always as rigorous as is customary in the laboratory.) The seventh section discusses briefly some of the techniques which we have found useful in metabolic wards. The last major section deals with clinical laboratory procedures emphasis being placed on functional tests. This section does not attempt to be comprehensive in fields of clinical pathology that have been covered well in numerous other textbooks.

Two minor sections finish the text of this manual. A list of references is given to standard statistical treatises. Finally a series of miscellaneous tables of useful data is appended.

Throughout the book extensive use is made of D Ocagne alignment charts. We have found that these charts have two great virtues in metabolic studies: first they speed up the computation of the voluminous data which are always collected, second they minimize errors in computation. All of the alignment charts presented herein are used in the same way: the final answer is read from the middle line when a string or ruler is stretched straight between the values listed on the right and left hand lines.

Since no two workers will always agree on the merits of individual methods we have included at the end of many sections an eclectic bibliography of other useful methods. These bibliographies are by no means complete, but they do give some suggestions on where to go for further information.

The index contains references to substances, methods, authors, tables and charts. It is felt that a single index is easier to use than several separate indices.

SECTION II

THE COLLECTION AND STORAGE OF SPECIMENS

A GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The handling of tissue food body fluids and excreta will depend upon the analyses required. Below are listed techniques that have proved useful in metabolic and field studies when ordinarily we have required hematology and analyses for nitrogen minerals vitamins of the B complex and ascorbic acid.

B FOOD (WHOLE DIETS IN THE FIELD)

Apparatus

- 1 Diet scales
- Food chopper
- 3 Waring Blendor one quart capacity
- 4 Suitable pots and pans
- 5 Two mixing cylinders of 1 liter capacity
- 6 Deep freeze unit or equivalent
- 7 Brown bottles with screw top of 100 ml capacity

Reagents

- 1 If ascorbic acid is to be estimated a 10% solution of oxalic acid in water is needed for stabilizing the vitamin

Procedure

- 1 Weigh the total day's diet including fluid
- Sampling technique is critical in all kinds of food analysis. Obtain a truly representative collection of the diet. Mix thoroughly by hand or in a mechanical grinder.
- 3 Weigh accurately on diet scales a sample of about 500 grams
- 4 Mix this with approximately 1 liter of water (if vitamin C is to be estimated use 100 ml of 10% oxalic acid and 800 ml of water)
- 5 Homogenize the mixture in the Waring Blendor
- 6 Dilute the homogenate to exactly 1000 ml
- 7 Mix well by pouring from one cylinder to another
- 8 Fill a 50 ml brown bottle about 75 full and store in deep freeze

Calculation

$$\frac{\text{gm nutrient/day}}{(\text{mg nutrient/ml final mixture}) \times \frac{1000}{1000} \times \frac{\text{gm total daily diet}}{\text{gm sample used}}}$$

20 Collection and Storage of Specimens

Example

Total day's diet (including fluid) weighed 2750 gm

Sample taken for mixing was 500 gm

Final volume of mixture was 2000 ml

The final mixture contained 20 mg N/ml

Therefore

$$\text{gm N/day} = (20) \times \frac{2000}{1000} \times \frac{2750}{500} = 220$$

Precautions

- 1 Sampling of the diet is critical especially when whole chunks of meat are used.
- 2 Complete homogeneity of the mixture is essential. For the highest accuracy it must be possible to pipette the final mixture.
- 3 In deep freezing bottles will break if they are too full. Two thirds is about right.
- 4 Computations are made easier if the total day's diet can be mixed for analysis not just a sample of it.

II WHOLE BLOOD AND SERUM (IN THE FIELD)

A properly trained crew using convenient apparatus and facilities can easily draw 70 specimens of blood in one hour.

Apparatus (assuming 100 subjects)

For drawing blood

- 1 Convenient table at least six feet long and comfortable chair for subject
- 2 Kit containing 20 ml syringes 15 ml centrifuge tubes sharp No. 20 needles sponges alcohol 80% by volume and bandages
- 3 Racks containing $\frac{3}{4}$ oz vials prepared with heparin as described below
- 4 Dishpan containing clean water
- 5 Small pan containing isotonic saline solution made as described below
- 6 Autoclave or other field sterilizer

For preparing and storing serum

- 1 Centrifuge. Clay Adams Senior Clinical Angle Head Eight Place AC DC Centrifuges are thoroughly satisfactory
- 2 Wooden applicators
- 3 Two stainless steel 6 inch No. 20 needles for transferring samples
- 4 Racks of $\frac{3}{4}$ oz vials for storing samples
- 5 At least a dozen 10 ml syringes

Reagents

- 1 Saline solution. About 2 liters for every 100 subjects. It is most conveniently prepared from commercial salt tablets designed for the preparation of physiological saline solution. The usual tablet weighs 10 gm and should be dissolved in 118 ml of water.
- 2 Heparin. Potent preparations of the Connaught Laboratory are the most satisfactory. There should be solutions of two different strengths. The first is used when it is desired to keep 10 or more ml of blood from clotting. The heparin is dissolved in hot physiological saline solution in such a strength that 1 drop will hold 10 ml of blood for 24 hours. The second or weak strength solution is designed to be dried in $\frac{3}{4}$ oz vials to hold 2 ml of whole blood for 24 hours. It is prepared in plain water in such a strength that 1 drop will hold 2 ml of blood. When 100 subjects are being examined $\frac{3}{4}$ oz vials are placed in their racks one or two days before the test and one drop of weak heparin is placed in each vial and is allowed to dry.

The tops are screwed on and adhesive tape labels are attached. The solutions of heparin once made are stable in cool places for at least 2 months. When dried in vials the heparin keeps indefinitely. As an example of making up heparin solutions a recent batch of Connaught Laboratory heparin was shipped in vials each containing 100 mg. For strong heparin 100 mg were dissolved in 11 ml of physiological saline and for weak heparin 100 mg were dissolved in 70 ml of distilled water. It is obvious that these amounts vary from batch to batch.

3 Alcohol 80% for sterilizing

Procedure

1 Drawing blood

- a On the night before needles are sharpened and sterilized syringes are checked for chips and vials are labelled
- b The six foot table is arranged so that the subject sits on a chair at one end with his right arm straightened over the table conveniently for one man to draw blood from an antecubital vein. Racks containing centrifuge tubes and heparinized vials are placed near the subject's arm. Dishes containing sponges in alcohol are placed conveniently within reach of the man drawing blood. A roll of 50 needles that have been carefully wrapped in gauze and sterilized is opened with just the first needle showing. As needles are needed the roll is gradually opened so as not to contaminate all of them. At the other end of the table are placed a dishpan containing clean water and the pan containing physiological saline solution. The space in the middle of the table is reserved for syringes.
- c A crew of 4 men engages in these activities. The subjects are commanded to line up single file. Each man comes up in turn sits in the chair and straightens out his arm over the table. One man behind the chair applies venous stasis by hand and another man commences to draw blood. A third man on the side opposite the chair labels a centrifuge tube and a vial with the subject's identification. When about 15 ml of blood have been drawn the needle is removed from the arm, a sponge moistened with alcohol is placed in the antecubital space and the subject is released with instructions to maintain firm pressure by hand for 5 minutes. In our experience the mere flexing of the elbow in some instances is not enough to prevent hematomas.
- d The man who has labeled the vials and tubes holds the vial in such a position that the operator can easily introduce about 2 ml of blood into the heparinized vial and then screws on the top and mixes the blood and heparin thoroughly by inversion. DO NOT SHAKE. At the same time the operator introduces the rest of the blood into the 15 ml centrifuge tube down the side gently in order to prevent hemolysis.
- e The fourth member of the crew washes dirty syringes and needles by receiving them from the operator. He is stationed at the far end of the table. A sterile needle is fitted on a clean syringe and the operator begins to draw blood from a new subject who is being prepared by the second member of the crew.
- f After the syringe and needle are washed in clean water the needle is placed in the basin of alcohol and the syringe is prepared for use by 3 washings of about 5 ml each with physiological saline solution. The residual saline solution in the syringe is in large part removed by vigorous pumping of the barrel. The amount of saline now remaining has no significant effect on 15 ml of blood. The clean syringe is placed on the table within convenient reach of the operator.

2 Preparation of serum

- a. The centrifuge tube containing blood is allowed to stand for at least 15 minutes so that clotting is well advanced. It may stand up to 2 hours without harm.

22 Collection and Storage of Specimens

- b A clean wooden applicator is inserted carefully down the side of the tube to the bottom. The applicator is moved around the whole circumference of the tube touching the side for the full length of the tube at all times. This step breaks strands of fibrin and is essential for obtaining a good yield of serum.
- c The centrifuge tube is placed in the centrifuge and is centrifuged at high speed for about 10 minutes.
- d Just before step c, vials are labeled and numbered to correspond with the samples in the centrifuge. It has proved unsatisfactory to label many vials at once owing to mix ups in transferring samples of serum when this is done.
- e With the centrifuge tube held in the left hand and a 10 ml syringe fitted with a long needle in the right, serum is removed and is placed in a vial.
- f Samples of whole blood and serum in carrying cases should be stored in a convenient cool place.

Precautions

1 In drawing blood

- a The man washing syringes must be sure that needles do not become plugged that clogged syringes are removed from circulation and especially that there is no excess saline solution left in syringes that he has cleaned.
- b Before beginning to draw blood it is advisable to brief the whole group of subjects on the desirability of maintaining firm pressure after blood has been drawn.
- c Be sure that heparinized tubes are completely dry before use.

2 In preparing serum

- a Hemolysis is best prevented by making sure that centrifuge tubes are dry, that the needle is removed from the syringe before blood is introduced into the centrifuge tube and that blood is introduced gently down the side.
- b Make quite sure that there is adequate padding in the bottoms of the brass centrifuge cups and all centrifuge tubes to be used fit loosely in the cups without their lips touching the brass. If this is not done there will be annoying breakage.

D URINE (IN THE FIELD)

When a hundred or more subjects are to be studied simultaneously, the work is facilitated by the use of disposable vessels, convenient storage bottles and oxalic acid as a stabilizing agent.

Apparatus

- 1 About 120 unwaxed cardboard drinking cups. (These must be tested for substances interfering with subsequent estimations. Dixie cups No 2108 8 oz are good.)
- 2 Measuring cylinders of 250 ml capacity.
- 3 Carrying racks containing 1 oz round short wide mouth amber bottles with plastic screw tops. Each new batch of tops must be tested for substances interfering with estimations.
- 4 Porcelain spatula for delivering approximately 100 mg of oxalic acid into storage bottles.

Reagents

- 1 Oxalic acid GP powdered

Procedure

- 1 On the preceding night add to each storage bottle approximately 100 mg of oxalic acid by means of a calibrated small spatula. The functions of the oxalic acid are (a) to stabilize ascorbic acid and (b) to bring the acidity of the

specimen to pH 3 to 5 which is the range of maximum stability of thiamine ribosavin and 1-methylnicotinamide

The night before labels of adhesive tape are placed on the tops of the storage bottles and the notelooks are lined up

- 3 It is usual in our field surveys to collect fasting specimens in the morning. The subjects are aroused at 4:30 A.M. and are lined up at a latrine just about 5:00 A.M. At command they empty their bladders into the latrine. They are then ordered to drink at least one half pint of water in order to insure diuresis. They are also ordered to urinate in the next hour and a half only at command. Light activity is allowed and we customarily draw blood during this time as described in Calove.
- 4 Just before 6:30 A.M. each subject is issued a paper cup with his identification on it. At the command all subjects urinate into their cups and are instructed to empty their bladders completely using more than one cup if necessary. After urination the subjects place their cups in order in a convenient place for subsequent measuring.
- 5 The time at the beginning and end of collection is recorded. Subjects unable to urinate at command must be detained until they can urinate and the times for such men have to be noted particularly carefully.
- 6 It is convenient to have a crew of 3 men for measuring and storing the urine. The first man measures the volume of each specimen, reports it to the recorder and pours an aliquot of about 75 ml into the brown urine bottle, pouring excess urine into a waste jar and throwing paper cups into a garbage can. The second man records the volumes in a notebook. The third member of the crew is responsible for putting identification numbers on the 1 oz bottles to correspond with the sample from the cup serving on tops and putting the specimens in order in a rack.
- 7 The racks of specimens are placed in order in their carrying boxes and are stored in any convenient cool place.

Calculations

- 1 It is desirable to record urinary excretions of vitamins in terms of milligrams or micrograms excreted per hour. One column in the notebook should therefore show ml of urine excreted per hour calculated as follows:

$$\text{ml urine per hour} = \frac{\text{ml urine collected in total period}}{\text{time in hrs. and decimal fraction of hr.}}$$

Example

Bladder emptied 5:05 and urine collected until 6:06

ml collected 110

Therefore

$$\text{ml urine/hr} = \frac{110}{1\frac{11}{60}} = \frac{110}{1.18} \approx 81$$

The calculations are facilitated by the line chart (Fig. 1)

Precautions

- 1 Always have spare cups on hand in case a few men have a large diuresis.
- 2 Never put oxalic acid in the paper cups because it quickly makes the bottoms leak.
- 3 Pouring from the cups is facilitated by pinching the cup and making it into a spout.
- 4 In our experience trying to put tops on the cups is more bother than it is worth.
- 5 If calcium is to be measured the urine samples must be preserved with a layer of toluene. Oxalic acid will precipitate out calcium in the urine.

VOLUME OF URINE PER HOUR FROM TOTAL VOLUME AND TIME OF COLLECTION

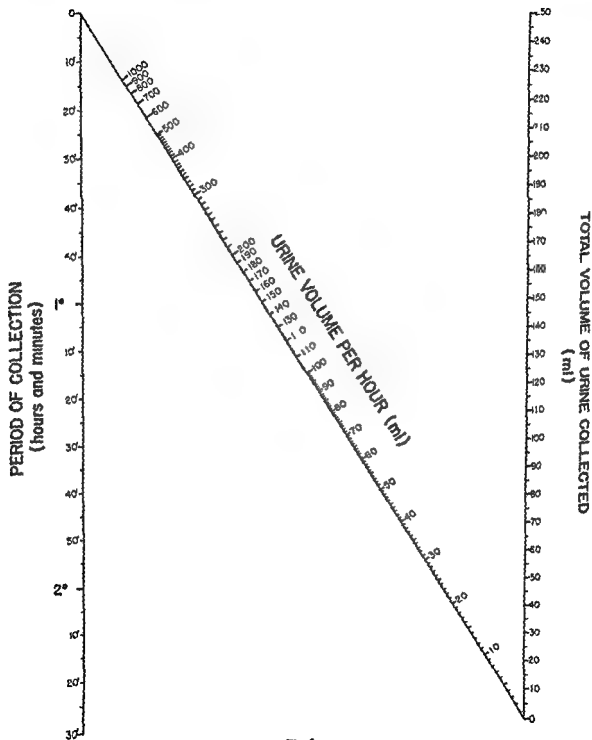


Fig 2

E TISSUE

Apparatus

- 1 Torsion balance (Koller Smith 25 gm capacity)
 - 2 Mortar and pestle
 - 3 Deep freeze unit
 - 4 A variety of pipettes
 - 5 A number of 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes
 - 6 A number of one ounce brown bottles
 - 7 A number of tissue grinders (Potter & R and Elvehjem & A. A Modified Method for the Study of Tissue Oxidation J Biol Chem 114 495 504 June 1936)
- (The apparatus consists of a Pyrex tube of 30 ml capacity graduated to 25 ml and fitted with a revolving glass pestle that has a 15 cm glass shaft on its upper end. The shaft fits by means of a rubber stopper to the shaft of a 1/30 h.p. electric motor that has a built in reducing gear of 5 1/2 ratio and a suitable rheostat.)
- 8 Centrifuge

Reagents

- 1 If ascorbic acid is to be estimated a 5% solution of metaphosphoric acid in water or a 10% stannous chloride solution made up in 5% metaphosphoric acid is needed for stabilizing the vitamin.
- 2 Carbon dioxide solid (when unstable compounds are involved)
- 3 Trichloroacetic acid a 4% solution in water is the most generally applicable deproteinizing agent

Procedure

- 1 For specific analyses refer to the full details of the method as presented in the appropriate sections
- 2 As a general tool for preparing solutions for routine analysis of water soluble compounds such as lactic acid the tissue homogenizer has been of considerable use
 - a Weigh tissue on torsion balance and drop into the bottom of the homogenizer tube. (If an unstable system such as the glycolytic system of muscle is involved the tube should be in dry ice for quick freezing)
 - b Add approximately 10 ml of the appropriate deproteinizing solution. (For unstable systems this should be near the freezing point)
 - c Insert the rotor of the homogenizer and grind the tissue until no discrete particles can be seen in the tube
 - d Remove the rotor washing it down into the tube with a stream of deproteinizing solution delivered from a pipette
 - e Dilute the contents of the tube exactly to the desired volume with deproteinizing fluid.
 - f Centrifuge 10 minutes at moderate speed
 - g Use aliquots of the supernatant fluid for analysis
- 3 Under many circumstances samples of tissue can be weighed placed in a closed container which will prevent evaporation and stored in the deep freeze until required for analysis.
- 4 For some estimations the tissue homogenizer is unsuitable and a mortar and pestle has to be used. Skin and bones cannot be ground in the tissue homogenizer

Calculation

See specific methods

Precautions

See specific methods.

F FECES**Apparatus**

- 1 A deep freeze unit
- 2 A refrigerator
- 3 A Waring Blender one quart capacity
- 4 A 2000 ml graduated cylinder
- 5 Large open mouth jars of 3 to 4 liter capacity
- 6 A number of 2 ml and 5 ml calibrated 1/16" BD Lok Syringe (These are recommended because of their wide bore)
- 7 A number of No 14 needles to fit the above syringes (These needles should be sawed off at one inch)

Reagents

- 1 Carmine in gelatin capsules containing 600 mg each
- 2 Caprylic alcohol C P

Procedure—Preparation of Subject

- 1 At the time to start the collection period usually of 3 days in this laboratory, give the subject one carmine pill by mouth. Seventy two hours later give him another carmine pill by mouth.
- 2 He should collect his feces as described below in a large jar until carmine first appears in a stool. Then he should collect all stools thereafter in a separate wide mouth jar until the second dose of carmine first appears. This marks the end of the 3 day collection.

Procedure—Preparation of Specimen

- 1 The sample is collected into a large jar with a wide mouth. Up to three days the sample is always kept in a refrigerator.
- 2 At the end of that time approximately 1500 ml of water is added and the lid of the jar stoppered tightly.
- 3 Add 1 ml of caprylic alcohol to prevent foam and shake vigorously.
- 4 Pour portions gradually into a Waring Blender and homogenize completely.
- 5 Add all the homogenized portions to a 2000 ml graduated cylinder and dilute exactly to 2000 ml.
- 6 Pour all into a large bottle or flask mix by shaking and pour aliquots into two 250 ml brown bottles. Stopper well.
- 7 Deep freeze until used for analyses.
- 8 For individual analyses refer to the appropriate section.
- 9 For almost all kinds of analyses aliquots may be measured accurately from a 1/16" BD Lok Syringe which delivers accurately to 0.1 ml if properly handled.

Calculations

$$\text{If the collection period was three days } \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{gm substance per day} = \\ \text{(gm per ml final mixture)} \times \frac{2000}{3} \end{array} \right\}$$

Precautions

- 1 Fill bottles only 2/3 full as in freezing the expansion will cause the bottles to crack if full.
- 2 Step 5 is critical. Unless the specimen is homogenized well enough to be pipetted accurately, results will be unreliable. No discrete particles must remain in the final mixture.
- 3 Some subjects produce feces the color of which masks carmine. In such cases charcoal or malachite green should be substituted for carmine.

SECTION III

INSTRUMENTATION

A GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SPECTROPHOTOMETRY

1 Transmission

The ratio of the intensity of the exit beam to that of the incident beam is called the transmission of the tube

$$\text{Transmission} = \frac{B}{A} \quad (1)$$

Transmission is an expression of the total effect of the intercepting transparent body on the light beam including the reflection losses as well as the actual absorption of the body itself. Thus transmission is a proper factor for expressing the performance of a light filter since it is a measure of its total performance. It is not a term ordinarily used in spectrochemistry because the companion expression transmittance is much more convenient. Both transmission and transmittance are mentioned here in order that they may be recognized as different measurements and not regarded as different terms for the same measurement.

2 Transmittance

Suppose now that a test tube of water is further modified by the addition of a portion C of a soluble colorant. The intensity of the exit beam will of course fall from the original value to some lower value. The ratio of the intensity of this exit beam with C added to that with C' absent is called the transmittance (T_c) of C .

$$T_c = \frac{B}{B'} \quad (2)$$

It is very important to notice that T_c is an expression dependent only on the nature and amount of the added constituent independent of reflection losses and of absorption losses from all other constituents of the solution.

In spectrochemical procedures this independence of measurements is achieved by the use of optically identical cuvettes. One of these is filled with a solution that is either free from or else contains a known proportion of the considered constituent. This cuvette of solution is called the reference. Another of the identical cuvettes is filled with the solution under test containing an unknown proportion of constituent but otherwise optically identical with the reference. This latter is termed the 'sample'. The spectrophotometer is used to determine the difference in concentration C' between the

reference and sample by measuring the relative intensities of the exit beam first with the reference and then with the sample in position

It should now be clearly understood that we are always dealing with the transmittance of the difference in concentration of a constituent between reference and sample and not with absolute concentration. It will be evident also that transmittance measurements are based on the premise of optical identity and this fact must be given due consideration in the selection and handling of cuvettes and in deciding on the proper reference solution

3 Selecting the Proper Reference Solution

In clinical chemistry the reference solution will usually consist of a blank identical in composition with the sample except for the concentration of the considered constituent. In some instances distilled water may prove an acceptable blank but its use should be the exception rather than the rule because the possibility of introducing light absorbing constituents with reagents is usually very real and the slight gain in convenience seems hardly worth the cost. It is certain that a reference consisting of all ingredients possibly including a known proportion of the considered constituents is by far the safest selection and as explained above it is perfectly permissible to regard the considered constituent C as the difference in concentration between reference and sample. The practice of employing an air reference is to be condemned.

In the development of new procedures as well as in the routine applications of existing methods too much stress cannot be placed on the very obvious but frequently overlooked fact that no spectrochemical analysis can be more reliable than its reference.

4 Color and Wave Length

Referring again to a cuvette of colorant the transmittance (T) of this solution will be less than that of pure water because it allows less light to pass. But let us assume further that the colorant is hemoglobin. Why does the solution appear red when viewed by white light?

White is actually a mixture of light rays of many different colors and only when these colors are combined in the proper proportions does the light appear white. Thus when this cuvette of solution is viewed against white light it appears red because the hemoglobin has the peculiar ability to stop the blue and green light rays much more effectively than the red. The exit beam thus contains a much greater proportion of red light and so appears colored red. This property of a substance to interfere unequally with the passage of different colored light is termed selective absorption.

It will now be apparent that because of selective absorption the T of a colored solution will depend on the color of the light used for the measurement and that the presence of a constituent will be most evident when the T measurement is made with light of that color most strongly absorbed by the constituent. This then is the outstanding advantage of the spectrophotometer as compared to a colorimeter: that color most strongly absorbed by the con

stituent being measured can be readily determined and the sensitivity and reliability of the analysis greatly improved by then operating at this wave length the relative effect of interfering constituents decreasing accordingly

With a filter photometer or colorimeter it is customary to express the color of the light used for the T measurement by a name such as 'blue green' or by an arbitrary number designating the type of filter used to produce the colored light. But such terms are only approximate color expressions and for absorption spectrochemistry it is both more convenient and more exact to express the color of the light in terms of wave length (λ). This numerical expression of color is particularly convenient because it makes possible a graphical expression of the relationship between λS and T and this spectral transmittance (S-T) curve strikingly indicates that particular wave length where the considered constituent absorbs most strongly and can most readily be measured

The wave length scale of most spectrophotometers is calibrated in millimicrons (1 millimicron = 10 Angstrom units = 10^{-6} millimeter) and the wave length of the measuring light is controlled by adjusting the λ knob of the instrument until the required wave length appears at the index of the λ dial. The beginner should acquaint himself with the relationship between color and wave length by placing a white paper in the instrument's cuvette well and then noting the color of the light projected on this paper with various settings of the λ dial

5 Preparation of Spectral Transmittance Curves

The development of the spectral transmittance (S-T) curve of the considered ingredient should be one of the first steps in the rational development of any new spectrochemical method. Obviously all such measurements should be made in an environment identical with that contemplated for the analysis and it need hardly be added that the final method must incorporate control measures for pH or other environmental factors that can affect the color characteristics of the considered constituent or of any other constituents of the solution on which the spectrophotometric measurements will depend. Usually the initial study will contemplate also the S-T curves of possible interfering constituents and with such a group of curves before him the analyst can then intelligently select that wave length where the proposed method will be most sensitive to the concentration of the constituent being measured and least sensitive to interference

The S-T curve is also of great importance in deciding the optimum wave length because if the photometric measurements are made with monochromatic light having the same wave length as the characteristic absorption band of the considered constituent the data will almost invariably obey the Lambert Beer Law with precision. Indeed it is only when measurements are made with such monochromatic light that this law may be expected to hold exactly and while exact observance is not imperative to exact analysis it certainly is both convenient and reassuring. With properly developed and applied S-T curves it will be found possible in almost every instance to select

a proper wave length and so regulate the chemistry of the analytical method that the Lambert Beer Law applies well within clinical precision.

There do occur instances when it may prove desirable to work at some wave length other than that at which the considered constituent has maximum absorption and here again the S T curve is a chart from which one may reach logical conclusions concerning the optimum wave length. An example of this sort is the spectrochemical measurements of pH using the dye methyl orange. If the beginner is not already familiar with the S T curves of the acid and basic forms of this indicator it is suggested that he prepare them using the same concentration in each instance. Then note that the wave length of maximum pH sensitivity does not coincide with either point of maximum absorption. Because the preparation of S T curves is so simple and their significance so fundamental and applicable every operator should familiarize himself with their use by examining several typical colored solutions preparing their S T curves and then deciding the wave length best suited for the spectrochemical measurement of the colored constituent in each instance.

The S-T curve is prepared by measuring the transmittance of a single sample at a series of wave lengths within the range of the spectrophotometer, using a suitable reference. The data are then plotted on cross section paper conveniently with transmittance (T) as ordinate and expressed as percent and with wave length (λ) as abscissa and expressed as millimicrons (m μ). Usually the points first plotted will disclose regions of low T values and additional points will then be located in these regions until the minima are established to the desired exactitude. Most spectrophotometers are capable in most instances of indicating a minimum with an accuracy of 1 or 2 m μ , simply by taking a series of closely spaced T readings in the region of the critical value.

The principal purpose of the S T curve is to indicate that wave length at which the considered constituent has minimum transmittance and the exactness of this indication is highly dependent on the amount of the constituent that the measuring beam is caused to penetrate. If the sample solution is too dilute or the cuvette too small the amount of constituent intercepting the light beam may be insufficient to produce an exactly measurable response. Conversely if the sample is too concentrated or the cuvette too wide the S-T curve may be so flattened at the region of minimum transmittance that the optimum wave length cannot be exactly ascertained. It is important to remember that the curve will be most indicative when the sample concentration and depth are so adjusted that the minimum T value will fall between 5 to 90 per cent. Thus good practice demands that the first step in the preparation of the S T curve be the selection of a suitable cuvette size and solution concentration.

This brief discussion of S T curves is presented primarily because their significance is too little recognized or at least too little utilized. Actually one of the outstanding advantages of the spectrophotometer is that it allows the development of these curves and thereby a simple and intelligent approach to the development of new spectrochemical methods and a more exact application of old ones.

6 The Lambert-Beer Law

The absorption of light by a substance is due to the transmission of the individual atoms or molecules from one energy state to another. The spectrophotometer is an instrument capable of measuring the intensity of light absorbed by a given substance at a given wave length making possible identification and quantitative analysis of substances in solution.

The most satisfactory operation of spectrophotometers is with systems which obey Beer's Law dealing with light absorption. The law can be stated thus (a) all layers of a solution each of a given thickness absorb the same fraction of light incident upon them and (b) all layers of solution each containing a given number of molecules absorb the same fraction of light incident upon them. Thus the intensity of light absorbed depends both on concentration of solute and length of light path through the solution.

If I_0 is intensity of incident light
 dI is intensity of light absorbed
 c is concentration in moles per liter and
 dl is the thickness of a layer

$$\frac{dI}{I} \propto dl \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dI}{I} \propto dc$$

$$\int_I^{I_0} \frac{dI}{I} \propto \int_0^l dl \quad \text{and} \quad \int_I^{I_0} \frac{dI}{I} \propto \int_0^c dc$$

$$\ln \frac{I_0}{I} \propto l \quad \text{and} \quad \ln \frac{I_0}{I} \propto c$$

combining

$$\ln \frac{I_0}{I} \propto lc \quad \text{or} \quad \ln \frac{I_0}{I} = klc$$

$$\text{or } \log \frac{I_0}{I} = \epsilon l \quad \text{or } D = \epsilon l \quad (\text{Equation 1})$$

where D = optical density or $\log \frac{I_0}{I}$
 ϵ = molar extinction coefficient and
 c = concentration in moles per liter

In this way using the last equation if D is determined experimentally for a solution of known concentration and lightpath at a given wave length the ϵ can be calculated. Since ϵ is independent of c and l when Beer's Law holds ϵ for any other solution can be calculated from density readings. To test the applicability of Beer's Law optical densities of solutions of the same thickness (l) are plotted against concentration. Since $\epsilon l = \frac{D}{c}$, ϵl should be the slope of the graph which should be a straight line.

If it is desired to use transmittance instead of optical density Equation 1 transforms into the following expression

$$\epsilon = K \log I/I_0 \quad (\text{Equation 2})$$

or more simply

$$\epsilon = -K \log T \quad (\text{Equation 3})$$

In words Equation 3 states that the concentration of solute is proportional by a negative constant to the log of the transmittance

7 The Concentration Transmittance Calibration Graph

The importance of the Lambert Beer Law is stressed here first because it is the most simple and second because it is the only rational means for translating photometer readings to expressions of the corresponding concentration of the sample. The law also frequently allows the simultaneous determination of two or even three different constituents in the same sample without mutual interference.

The relationship between C (Concentration) and T (Transmittance) is exactly expressed by the Lambert Beer Law in practically every instance where the requirements of this law are fully met. These four requirements are

- a The T measurement must be made with monochromatic light
- b The T measurement must be made at a wave length corresponding to a region of the constituent's S/T curves where T is substantially constant i.e. at the middle of a region of maximum absorption or on a 'flat' portion of the curve. The measurement should not be made on the 'side' of an absorption band except under unusual circumstances
- c The reference must be so selected that $C = 0$ when $T = 100\%$
- d The nature of the sample solution must be such that its T responds only to changes in C .

Equation 3 significantly states that any concentration C of a given solution is proportional to the log of its corresponding transmittance T . This means that the concentration transmittance (C/T) graph of this relationship will be a straight line if plotted on semi log coordinates and such a C/T graph constitutes a calibration by which the concentration corresponding to any particular T value may be conveniently determined.

The equation further states that this specified straight line will always intersect the point ($C = 0, T = 100\%$). Accordingly it is possible to prepare the C/T calibration graph of an analytical method without calculations. To do this determine the T of one solution of known concentration C plot this known point on semi log coordinates and then draw a straight line intersecting this point and the point ($C = 0, T = 100\%$). This line is the C/T calibration graph of the method.

The precision of this method of plotting will depend on how faithfully the analytical method follows the Lambert Beer Law and it is always advisable to prepare and measure the T of several solutions of known concentration within the contemplated range of the method. When plotted these several points serve both to confirm the validity of the law and to discover erroneous or careless technique. The points should fall on a straight line.

Let it be repeated the technique of almost any determination can be so developed that the data follow the Lambert Beer Law with precision provided

that measurements are made with a true spectrophotometer. When these conditions are met the construction of the corresponding C-T calibration graph is fully as simple as it sounds.

8 Optical Density

It is sometimes convenient in spectrochemistry to express the light stopping ability of a sample in terms of its optical density D when

$$D = 2 - \log \text{ percentage transmittance}$$

The advantage of this method of expression is that D values are directly proportional to corresponding C values. For example

The optical density of a solution (let us say copper carbamate that has been extracted from serum) is designated as D ml the serum blank as Ds and the reagent blank as Dr. Copper concentration is obtained by the following calculation

- a K is determined from the calibration curve
- b $D \text{ ml} - (D_s + D_r) = D_{cu}$
- c $D_{cu} \times K \times 100 = \text{Copper micrograms per 100 ml}$

B SPECTROPHOTOMETER COLEMAN JUNIOR MODEL

1 General Principles of the Spectrophotometer

a. Spectrophotometer

A spectrophotometer as its name implies is really two instruments in a single case a spectrometer and a photometer. A spectrometer is a device for producing colored light of any selected color and when used as a part of a spectrophotometer such a unit is usually called a monochromator and is usually calibrated to express the color of the monochromatic light it produces in terms of wave length.

A photometer is a device for measuring the intensity of light and when combined in a spectrophotometer is used to measure the intensity of the monochromatic beam produced by the associated monochromator. Usually the photometric measurement is made both with a reference and a control sample interposed in the light beam the difference between the two intensity measurements then being a measure of the transmittance of the sample at the wave length of the light.

b The Monochromator

The monochromator of the Junior Clinical Spectrophotometer is illuminated by a #500 exciter lamp. This lamp is powered by a 6 volt storage battery (or suitable transformer) and is turned on and off by a switch mounted integral with the fine control knob of the instrument. The filament of this lamp is a thin straight coil about 0.3 inches long and exactly positioned with respect to the prefocus base of the lamp. This base registers exactly in a special lamp socket mounted on the instrument's lamp arm so that the filament thus occupies a very exact position in the monochromator optical system. It is very important to note that exciter lamps must accordingly be very carefully handled to avoid possible bending of the prefocus base and the calibration of the instrument verified each time the exciter lamp is disturbed. Light from the exciter lamp filament enters the double lens system of the monochromator and were this an ordinary optical system would be caused to form a sharp white image at the plane of the monochromator exit slit. However there is interposed between the two condensing lenses a diffraction grating and this grating has the

34 Instrumentation

peculiar ability to bend the transmitted light, the amount of the bending being proportional to the wave length. As a result of this grating the anticipated white image is actually "smeared" and there appears instead at the plane of the exit slit a true and brilliant spectrum. Most of this spectral image falls on one or the other of the slit sidewalls and is stopped; that narrow portion of the spectrum falling directly on the slit is not intercepted and so emerges alone from the opposite side of the slit as a monochromatic beam.

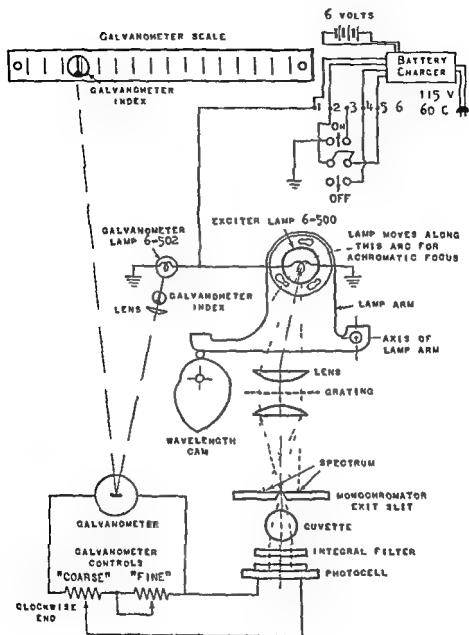


Fig. 9.—The Coleman Junior Spectrophotometer Model 6A. (Reproduced by permission of the manufacturer.)

As indicated the position of the lamp filament may be altered by moving the lamp arm under compulsion of the wave length cam and this cam is rigidly fixed to the wave length dial. Thus, as the calibrated λ dial is rotated the lamp filament is swung across the optical axis of the monochromator resulting in a corresponding shift of the spectral image. The design of the instrument is such that that portion of spectral light actually passing through the slit always has exactly that wave length value currently indicated on the λ dial. The light of the desired wave length is delivered from the exit slit of the monochromator simply by adjusting the instrument's λ dial to read that wave length. The position and curvature of the arc through which the filament moves is such that the wave-band passing the slit is always in sharp focus.

c The Photometer

The photometer of this instrument consists of a barrier layer photocell connected by a suitable control circuit to a projection galvanometer illuminated by a 6.50° gal



**SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM OF JUNIOR CLINICAL SPECTROPHOTOMETER
OPTICAL AND ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

vanometer lamp and projecting its index image on a galvanometer scale mounted in the top of the instrument case. Mounted integral with the photocell is a correction filter selected largely to compensate for the very great differences in the photocell response to light of different wave lengths. It is to be understood that this compensation is by no means complete and that when the λ dial is turned the position of the index may change markedly. The method of operation of the galvanometer controls is evident from the circuit diagram (Figs 2 and 3).

It will be noted that the galvanometer of the Junior Clinical spectrophotometer is double calibrated with a linear transmittance (T) scale printed in black and with a logarithmic density (D) scale appearing in red.

d. The Optimum Transmittance Range

Errors in position of the galvanometer index due to instrument limitations and errors of the operator in reading the galvanometer scale together constitute the absolute instrument error, a value entirely independent of the nature of the analytical method and of the manipulative skill of the operator. The effect of this absolute error on the precision of an analysis is called the effective instrument error.

The magnitude of the effective error corresponding to a given absolute value is surprisingly dependent on the transmittance of the sample being tested and as a consequence the efficacy of an analytical procedure may well depend quite as much on the dilution ratio selected as on the verity of the chemical reactions involved. This is a fact the analyst too frequently disregards in the development of his new procedures although its observance is always well repaid by more exact and consistent data.

2 Setting Up and Calibration of the Instrument

a. Mounting and Connecting

- (1) Place the instrument on a reasonably level surface free from extreme vibration mounting one round sponge rubber pad under each instrument foot to minimize any slight vibrational effects that might otherwise disturb exact galvanometer readings.
- (2) Connect the two lead black and red pair of wires to either a 6 volt storage battery or to a constant voltage transformer delivering not less than .5 watts at 6 volts. The polarity of this connection is immaterial.
- (3) If a storage battery is used always connect its positive (+ red) terminal to the positive (+ red) lead from the battery charger and connect its negative (- black or unmarked) terminal to the negative (- colorless) charger lead. Connect the line cord plug of the battery charger to the power source indicated on the charger instrument plate. Do not attempt to charge the battery during a test because variations of charger potential with line voltage change will cause unstable readings.
- (4) Preferably locate the instrument in a position where strong light cannot fall on its panel or into the cuvette well. If this condition cannot be met then always place the 6312 light shield over the cuvette well during every reading.

b. Adjusting the Mechanical Galvanometer Zero

The Junior is equipped with a very sensitive but very rugged taut suspension galvanometer. The zero adjustment for this element is located under the raised housing just to the left of the cuvette well. If the spectrophotometer is not disturbed or its leveling altered then this galvanometer adjustment remains very stable. The purpose of the raised housing is to protect the galvanometer adjusting lever from any accidental dislocation.

With the instrument set up and connected as specified in the preceding section first adjust the galvanometer zero as described below. Always verify the galvanometer zero adjustment before undertaking an analysis and if necessary rectify it. It may con

veniently be checked at any time during an analysis and this procedure is recommended during prolonged routine examinations where extreme precision is demanded.

- (1) Turn the instrument on by rotating the fine knob clockwise until its switch clicks and the λ dial is illuminated.
- (2) Desensitize the galvanometer circuit by rotating the coarse knob to its extreme counterclockwise position and the fine knob as far counterclockwise as possible without turning off the switch.
- (3) Darken the photocell. If a cuvette adapter is available the photocell is conveniently darkened by placing the adapter in the well with its key 90° clockwise to the keyway of the well. In this position the adapter is not fully seated and also its window is not in the path of the light beam. An alternate method is to place a slip of opaque paper in the well so that the monochromator beam is completely stopped covering the well with the light shield. With the photocell darkened there is no electrical input to the galvanometer which may now be caused to read exactly zero on the black scale by moving the galvanometer adjusting lever. To verify the galvanometer zero perform steps 1 and 3.
- (4) With a pencil point or other convenient tool reach under the housing and move the galvanometer adjusting lever until the galvanometer index reads exactly zero on the black $^{\circ}\text{T}$ scale i.e. at the left hand end. Do not alter this adjustment during an analysis except to correct.

Verifying the Wave Length Calibration

Obviously this operation is not necessary yet confirmation of the λ calibration is such a quick and simple task that it may well be included in the initial setup. It must be undertaken if the exciter lamp is disturbed. A 6400 d dymum standard filter is required for this test.

The λ calibration is verified as follows:

- (1) Turn on the instrument and allow to warm up for 5 minutes before proceeding.
- (2) Set the wave length scale to read 610 exactly.
- (3) Insert the 6400 d dymum calibrating filter in the cuvette well but with its key at right angles to the cuvette well keyway. With this angular positioning the photocell is completely darkened.
- (4) Set the galvanometer to mechanical zero as described in section b above.
- (5) Remove the 6400 calibrating filter, cover the well opening and then adjust the coarse and fine knobs until the galvanometer index line coincides exactly with 100 $^{\circ}\text{T}$ on the black galvanometer scale. (Tap the instrument if the index tends to stick off a scale.)
- (6) Now place the carefully cleaned 6400 calibrating filter in cuvette well with its key entering the well keyway. Make sure that the filter is now fully seated in well.
- (7) Read the new position of the galvanometer index line on the $^{\circ}\text{T}$ galvanometer scale. If this measured value of T checks within ± 3 scale divisions of the value of T engraved on the 6400 calibrating filter the λ calibration is correct within ± 2 m μ microns and satisfactory.

If by any chance the λ calibration is found to have been shifted in transit refer to section (d) below for full calibration details.

When the λ calibration is found correct the galvanometer zero properly adjusted and the instrument mounted and connected as specified it is ready for operation.

d. Calibration of Instrument When the λ Calibration Is Not Correct

- (1) Set the instrument on its side, unscrew the four rubber feet and remove the sheet metal bottom to expose the lamp arm and adjustments F and G (see Fig. 3).
- (2) Loosen set screw F on arm F thereby freeing the calibrating screw G.

vanometer lamp and projecting its index image on a galvanometer scale mounted in the top of the instrument case. Mounted integral with the photocell is a correction filter selected largely to compensate for the very great differences in the photocell response to light of different wave lengths. It is to be understood that this compensation is by no means complete and that when the λ dial is turned the position of the index may change markedly. The method of operation of the galvanometer controls is evident from the circuit diagram (Figs 2 and 3).

It will be noted that the galvanometer of the Junior Clinical spectrophotometer is double calibrated with a linear transmittance (T) scale printed in black and with a logarithmic density (D) scale appearing in red.

d. The Optimum Transmittance Range

Errors in position of the galvanometer index due to instrument limitations and errors of the operator in reading the galvanometer scale together constitute the absolute instrument error, a value entirely independent of the nature of the analytical method and of the manipulative skill of the operator. The effect of this absolute error on the precision of an analysis is called the effective instrument error.

The magnitude of the effective error corresponding to a given absolute value is surprisingly dependent on the transmittance of the sample being tested and as a consequence the efficacy of an analytical procedure may well depend quite as much on the dilution ratio selected as on the verity of the chemical reactions involved. This is a fact the analyst too frequently disregards in the development of his new procedures although its observance is always well repaid by more exact and consistent data.

2 Setting Up and Calibration of the Instrument

a. Mounting and Connecting

- (1) Place the instrument on a reasonably level surface free from extreme vibration mounting one round sponge rubber pad under each instrument foot to minimize any slight vibrational effects that might otherwise disturb exact galvanometer readings.
- (2) Connect the twisted black and red pair of wires to either a 6 volt storage battery or to a constant voltage transformer delivering not less than 25 watts at 6 volts. The polarity of this connection is immaterial.
- (3) If a storage battery is used always connect its positive (+ red) terminal to the positive (+ red) lead from the battery charger and connect its negative (- black or unmarked) terminal to the negative (- colorless) charger lead. Connect the line cord plug of the battery charger to the power source indicated on the charger instrument plate. Do not attempt to charge the battery during a test because variations of charger potential with line voltage changes will cause unstable readings.
- (4) Preferably locate the instrument in a position where strong light cannot fall on its panel or into the cuvette well. If this condition cannot be met then always place the 6 312 light shield over the cuvette well during every reading.

b. Adjusting the Mechanical Galvanometer Zero

The Junior is equipped with a very sensitive but very rugged taut suspension galvanometer. The zero adjustment for this element is located under the raised housing just to the left of the cuvette well. If the spectrophotometer is not disturbed or its leveling altered then this galvanometer adjustment remains very stable. The purpose of the raised housing is to protect the galvanometer adjusting lever from any accidental dislocation.

With the instrument set up and connected as specified in the preceding section first adjust the galvanometer zero as described below. Always verify the galvanometer zero adjustment before undertaking an analysis and if necessary rectify it. It may con

veniently be checked at any time during an analysis and this procedure is recommended during prolonged routine examinations where extreme precision is demanded.

- (1) Turn the instrument on by rotating the fine knob clockwise until its switch clicks and the λ dial is illuminated.
- (2) Desensitize the galvanometer circuit by rotating the coarse knob to its extreme counterclockwise position and the fine knob as far counterclockwise as is possible without turning off the switch.
- (3) Darken the photocell. If a cuvette adapter is available the photocell is conveniently darkened by placing the adapter in the well with its key 90° clockwise to the keyway of the well. In this position the adapter is not fully seated and also its window is not in the path of the light beam. An alternative method is to place a slip of opaque paper in the well so that the monochromator beam is completely stopped covering the well with the light shield. With the photocell darkened there is no electrical input to the galvanometer which may now be caused to read exactly zero on the black scale by moving the galvanometer adjusting lever. To verify the galvanometer zero perform steps 1 and 3.
- (4) With a pencil point or other convenient tool reach under the housing and move the galvanometer adjusting lever until the galvanometer index reads exactly zero on the black % T scale is at the left hand end. Do not alter this adjustment during an analysis except to correct.

■ Verifying the Wave Length Calibration

Ordinarily this operation is not necessary yet confirmation of the λ calibration is such a quick and simple task that it may well be included in the initial setup. It must be undertaken if the exciter lamp is disturbed. A 6400 didymium standard filter is required for this test.

The λ calibration is verified as follows:

- (1) Turn on the instrument and allow to warm up for 3 minutes before proceeding.
- (2) Set the wave length scale to read 610 exactly.
- (3) Insert the 6400 didymium calibrating filter in the cuvette well but with its key at right angles to the cuvette well keyway. With this angular positioning the photocell is completely darkened.
- (4) Set the galvanometer to mechanical zero as described in section 3 above.
- (5) Remove the 6400 calibrating filter, cover the well opening and then adjust the coarse and fine knobs until the galvanometer index line coincides exactly with 100% T on the black galvanometer scale. (Tap the instrument if the index tends to stick off scale.)
- (6) Now place the previously cleaned 6400 calibrating filter in cuvette well with its key entering the well keyway. Make sure that the filter is now fully seated in well.
- (7) Read the new position of the galvanometer index line on the % T galvanometer scale. If this measured value of T checks within ± 3 scale divisions of the value of T engraved on the 6400 calibrating filter the λ calibration is correct within 3 mill microns and satisfactory.

If by any chance the λ calibration is found to have been shifted in transit refer to section (d) below for full calibrating details.

When the λ calibration is found correct the galvanometer zero properly adjusted and the instrument mounted and connected as specified it is ready for operation.

d. Calibration of Instrument When the λ Calibration Is Not Correct

- (1) Set the instrument on its side, unscrew the four rubber feet and remove the sheet metal bottom to expose the lamp arm E and adjustments F and G (see Fig. 3).
- (2) Loosen set screw F on arm E thereby freeing the calibrating screw G.

38 Instrumentation

- (3) Now if the value of T measured at step (7) is less than that engraved on the calibrating filter turn the calibrating screw "G" clockwise about $\frac{1}{8}$ turn for each $\%$ percent difference in T (or vice versa) Then lock in the new position by slightly tightening on screw F
- (4) Repeat steps c (1) to c (7) If the measured and specified values of T still fail to agree within 3% repeat steps d (1-4)
- (5) When adjustment is satisfactory tighten screw "F" firmly and then again repeat steps (1) to (7) as a final check
Note When replacing the sheet metal bottom make sure that its drain hole is below the cuvette well

3 Instructions for Routine Use of the Instrument

- a Insert in the cuvette well a cuvette adapter of the proper size to accept the type of cuvette specified in the contemplated analytical method Standard calibrated cuvettes may be procured from the company
- b Turn on the instrument by rotating the fine knob clockwise until the switch clicks and the λ dial is illuminated.
- c Verify the galvanometer zero setting and readjust if necessary
- d Adjust the λ dial to that wave length specified in the contemplated analytical method
- e Wipe clean and then insert at the proper angle in the cuvette well a cuvette containing a sufficient volume of the reference solution (This volume will depend on the size of the cuvette)
- f Adjust the coarse and fine knobs until the galvanometer index reads that value specified in the contemplated analytical method. (Usually this will be 100% T if the black transmittance scale is used or 0 if the red density scale is utilized.)
- g Remove the reference cuvette Wipe clean and then insert at the proper angle a similar cuvette containing a portion of the sample solution
- h Read the position of the galvanometer index on the same (red or black) galvanometer scale as was used for the initial adjustment (f)
- i Refer to tables curves or scale reading for the actual concentration of the sample solution as directed in the contemplated analytical method

■ BECKMAN PHOTOELECTRIC QUARTZ SPECTROPHOTOMETER (MODEL DU)

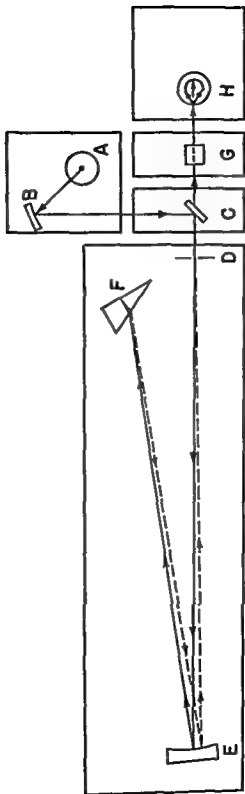
1 General Construction

a Electrical System

The Beckman Spectrophotometer is essentially a potentiometer Light passing through the quartz prism monochromator and the solution falls on a light sensitive photo tube inducing in it a voltage proportional to the intensity of the light incident upon it This voltage disturbs the balanced potentiometer which must be rebalanced. This rebalancing is done with a variable resistance calibrated in % T and D In operation the circuit is first balanced with a blank or pure solvent in the light path then with the solution in the light path If the potentiometer reading of the solvent is arbitrarily set at zero D (100% T) then the balanced potentiometer with the solution in the light path will read directly in % T or D

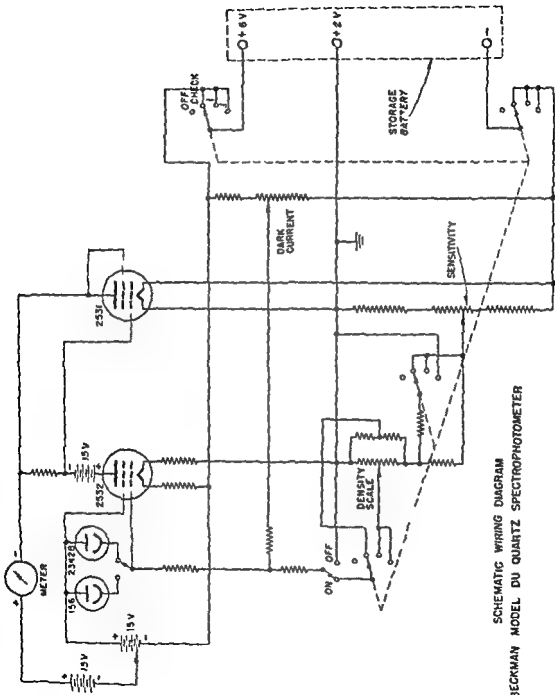
b Optical System

The optical system of the spectrophotometer is shown schematically in Figs 4 and 5 An image of the light source A is focused by the condensing mirror B and diagonal mirror C on the entrance slit at D The entrance slit is the lower of two slits



SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM OF OPTICAL SYSTEM

FIG. 4



SCHEMATIC WIRING DIAGRAM
BECKMAN MODEL DU QUARTZ SPECTROPHOTOMETER

42 Instrumentation

windows are available with 10 mm 25 mm and 50 mm light paths and may be used for measurements on liquids over the entire wave length range of the instrument. With the exception of the demountable cells and certain gas cells all of the above cells are of fused construction and are not cemented

g Phototubes

Two phototubes are furnished with each instrument mounted in a sealed deaerated compartment adjoining the cell compartment. A sliding rod brings either tube into position and simultaneously switches their electrical connections. A switch coupled to the phototube aperture shutter permits the dark current of the phototube to be checked at any time without removing cells or changing any control setting.

A cesium oxide phototube with high sensitivity from 1000 millimicrons to 600 millimicrons and a blue ultraviolet sensitive phototube in ultraviolet transmitting envelope with high sensitivity from 6.5 millimicrons to 0.00 millimicrons are supplied with the Model DU Spectrophotometer.

h Spectral Range

The wave length scale is calibrated from 200 millimicrons in the ultraviolet region through the entire visible range and in the infrared to 2000 millimicrons. As no single phototube exhibits maximum sensitivity over the entire spectral range each Beckman instrument is equipped with two phototubes, one having maximum sensitivity in the red infrared region and the other having maximum sensitivity in the blue ultraviolet region. Either tube can be instantly switched into use.

At present the short wave length limit of operation is governed by several practical considerations such as the limiting sensitivity of phototubes, the intensity of radiation from the light source, radiation losses at reflection surfaces and the opacity of fused silica or special glasses used in the construction of absorption cells and phototubes. The upper wave length limit of operation is governed primarily by the limiting sensitivity of available photoelectric tubes. Full sensitivity performance is guaranteed for all instruments to 1000 millimicrons and satisfactory operation to 1100 millimicrons may reasonably be expected.

i Sensitivity

The phototube and amplifier circuits of the Beckman Photoelectric Spectrophotometer are unusually stable and sensitive. A useful current amplification of 5×10^7 permits full scale readings on a rugged milliammeter with as little as 2.5×10^{-8} watts of radiant energy. Because of this high sensitivity slit openings can be narrowed to secure maximum resolution. Measurements can be made over most of the spectral range with nominal band widths of less than one millimicron.

j Accuracy

Precision optical and mechanical parts permit slit openings and wave length settings to be reproduced with great fidelity. Wave length settings are reproducible to 0.05 millimicrons in the ultraviolet and 0.5 millimicrons in the infrared. Optical parts are securely mounted in a rigid casting and are not affected by vibration, dirt or fumes.

Stray light, often an unsuspected source of error in spectrophotometric measurements, has received special attention. Instead of a replica grating the crystal quartz prism is used. Carefully designed baffles and optical surfaces of the highest quality keep diffuse reflection at a minimum. The total stray light effect over all but the extreme ends of the spectral range is less than 0.1%.

For measurements between zero and 10% transmittance the transmittance scale is expanded by merely throwing a switch so that the entire transmittance scale reads 0 to 10% instead of 0 to 100%.

2 Setting Up and Calibrating the Instrument

a. Power Requirements

The power required for operation of the Beckman DU Quartz Spectrophotometer, other than that supplied by the dry batteries installed in the instrument is supplied from a 6 volt storage battery. To insure the tube stability a battery of approximately 100 ampere hours rating (i.e. a heavy duty truck battery) is recommended.

For operation securely attach the battery clamps marked - + and +8 to the corresponding voltage terminals of the storage battery. If two batteries are used in parallel it is not necessary to parallel the 2 volt terminals. This apparatus requires 6 Burgess dry cell batteries #5510 (Beckman #911) each 7½ volts.

b. Selector Switch

The main instrument battery switch has four positions: OFF, CHECK, 10, 01. In the OFF position all battery circuits within the monochromator and those to the phototube compartment are disconnected. (Separate switches are provided for the tungsten lamp and hydrogen discharge lamp.) The CHECK position provides a very convenient means of adjusting the instrument for 100% transmittance on the solvent without having to set the transmittance scale to 100% because the transmission slide wire is replaced with a fixed resistor circuit calibrated to be the equivalent of 100% transmittance with the selector switch in 10 position. Measurements on the unknown solutions are usually made with the switch on 10. The transmittance scale is then read 0% to 110% transmittance and the density scale infinity to zero. The useful part of the density scale is from 0 to .0. Position 01 gives a tenfold increase for sensitivity in range from 0 to 11% and is used for samples having less than 11% transmittance. In this case the transmittance scale is read 0 to 11% transmittance and the density scale .10 to infinity with the readable calibration being .10 to .30 density units (read by adding .10 to the density scale reading). The 01 position also permits measurements with extremely narrow spectral band widths.

c. Phototube Selection

The Model DU is equipped with ultraviolet sensitive and red sensitive phototubes for the range 200 to 1000 millimicrons. The proper phototubes to use is determined by the spectral range to be investigated. The red sensitive phototube required for use above 650 millimicrons (but usable to 400 millimicrons) is in position when the knob on the phototube housing is pushed IN. The ultraviolet sensitive phototube for use below 650 millimicrons is in position when the knob is pulled OUT as far as possible. The two electronic tubes of the amplifier circuit are also mounted in the phototube compartment.

d. Light Source

The tungsten lamp is used from 350 to 1000 millimicrons and the hydrogen discharge lamp is used from 200 to 50 millimicrons. The lamp housings may be interchanged by pulling up the locking slide on the left side of the lamp housing. The power for operation of the tungsten lamp is supplied from the storage battery through the spectrophotometer circuit. A special electronic power supply unit Part 20000 is necessary to provide current for operation of the hydrogen discharge lamp.

e. Filter Slide

The filter slide is located in the mounting block between the slit plate and cell compartment and is positioned by means of the knob on the front of the instrument. The front position knob pushed IN is blank and is used for measurements in the range 400 to 1000 millimicrons—also with the hydrogen tube. The second position contains a Corning No. 9463 Red Purple Correx A filter and is used in the range of 400 to 700 millimicrons with tungsten lamp. The third position is blank and may be fitted with special filter lens or screen for various applications.

44 Instrumentation

f Sensitivity Control

Maximum accuracy on the percent transmittance measuring circuit is attained when the sensitivity knob is used 1 to 3 turns from its clockwise limit and requires comparatively wide slit openings. Even these slit openings give a spectral band width of less than 1 millimicron over most of the spectral range of the instrument. With the sensitivity knob in this position transmittance readings may be easily made to 0.1%. At this high sensitivity needle fluctuations may be encountered. The fluctuations may appear objectionable to the user but do not affect the accuracy to which measurements can be made. They may be reduced at some sacrifice of accuracy by operating with the sensitivity knob near its counterclockwise limit or at reduced speed of operation but no sacrifice in accuracy by installing IR 10348B Condenser Assembly. The maximum resolution of the monochromator which may be realized with the energy measuring system is obtained when the sensitivity knob is near its counter clockwise limit, or when the switch position 01 is used because under these conditions less light is required for balance permitting narrow slits to be used.

g Characteristics and Use of Absorption Cells and Holder

The Corex cells regularly supplied with the DU Spectrophotometer are used in the wave length region from 370 to 1000 millimicrons. Cells made of silica glass must be used in the lower ultraviolet region to 220 millimicrons. Silica cells are not limited in use to the ultraviolet region but may be used through the entire spectral range of the instrument.

All absorption cells of both Corex and silica are filled with distilled water and tested for percent transmittance in the spectrophotometer. This transmission of Corex cells must be at least 75% of that of an air light path and this transmission of silica cells must be at least 70% of that of an air light path.

All standard absorption cells are matched for light transmission at various wave lengths. Matching is done in a spectrophotometer with the cells filled with distilled water. Corex cells are matched to within 1% transmittance at 800, 500, 400 and 350 millimicrons and to within 2% at 300 millimicrons. Silica cells are matched within 0.5% transmittance at 350, 300, 240 and 200 millimicrons and to within 3% at 200 millimicrons. All cells approach perfect matching at longer wave lengths.

These cells are also matched with respect to the mean light path length to within 0.5% in that portion of each cell through which the beam passes. Perfect matching of the light path length is not usually necessary providing it is known. Each 10 mm cell is marked giving its light path length to the nearest thousandth of a centimeter.

The absorption cells should be thoroughly cleansed with distilled water or other suitable solvent before use. Do not habitually use hot concentrated acids which might etch the polished surfaces. Remove cells from the holder for cleaning and filling and before replacing carefully wipe the outside surfaces. For the most precise work however the outside surfaces should not be wetted or touched during a series of measurements.

It is recommended that the cell holder be used with the corner springs toward the phototube and that it be removed from the compartment for loading and unloading. It is also recommended that one position in the holder be constantly reserved for the cell containing the solvent. One of the ground glass sides of each cell should be marked and it should always be oriented the same way in its holder position.

When the holder containing filled cells is placed on the slide in the cell compartment make certain it is seated properly with knob pushed IN. Each cell is moved into the light beam by pulling the slide knob to the correct detent stop. The cell compartment cover must be in place when measurements are being made.

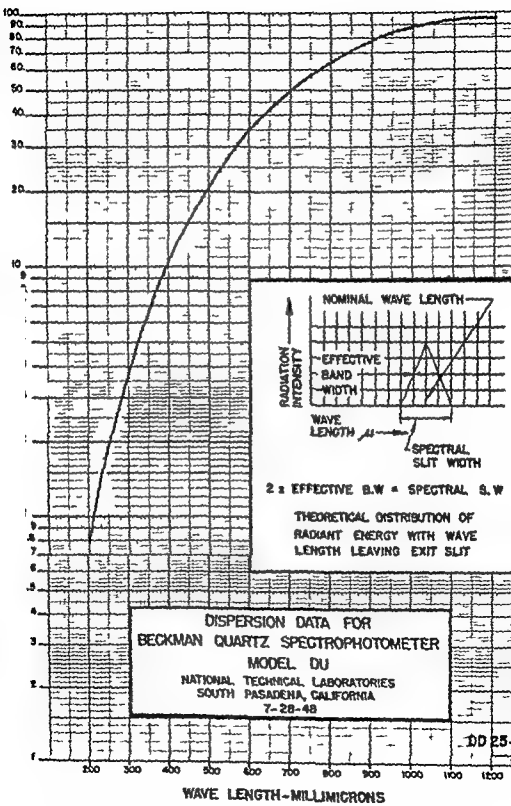


Fig. 1.

■ Nominal Band Width

Fig 6 gives the 'band width versus wave length' relationship from which the required slit openings for a given spectral band width can be determined for any wave length of interest. If it is desired to make measurements with the very minimum spectral band width, the instrument switch may be used in the 01 position and the slide wire set to 100% transmittance for balancing with the solvent or "blank" in the light beam. The sensitivity knob should be near its counterclockwise limit. In this procedure the transmission scale is read 0 to 110%—not 0 to 11%.

For measurements at a predetermined spectral band width the necessary slit width must be calculated with the consideration that optical aberrations tend to increase that slit width by approximately 0.01 mm. If X is equal to the actual slit width to be used at one wave length corresponding to the nominal band width it may be calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} W_D &= \text{Spectral band width per 1 mm slit opening} \\ W_S &= \text{Spectral band width to be used for measurement} \\ X &= \frac{W_S - 0.01 W_D}{W_D} \end{aligned}$$

For measurements at wide spectral band widths the light intensity to the phototube is decreased by inserting a fine screen of proper mesh size (determined experimentally) in position 3 of the filter slide.

1 Effects of Band Widths on Transmission or Reflectance Measurements

The apparent percent transmission at any wave length will usually depend on the resolution or effective band width and will include such influences as the slope of the transmission curve within the wave band being transmitted and the variation of the photoreceiver. It is usually easy to determine if these effects are significant by increasing or decreasing the slit width by a factor of 2 or more. It is suggested that whenever reliable values of percent transmission must be obtained for instance when intercomparing the results between instruments or when changing from the red sensitive to the ultraviolet sensitive phototube that the narrowest possible slit widths be used and the above check for the effective resolving power be made.

1 Calibration of Cells

Because each set of cells is matched at the factory with respect to light transmission it is seldom necessary to apply individual cell transmission corrections. However when using shorter wave lengths or where extreme precision is necessary the cells should be calibrated. The calibration of each cell in a group of cells to be used should be made with respect to one cell selected as the reference cell. This calibration should be checked at several points in the wave length region to be used. The cells must be calibrated at each wave length of use when filled with solvent. Do not calibrate unfilled cells because variation in reflection from unwetted internal cell surfaces will alter standardization values.

Clean and fill each cell with distilled water or other solvent. Place the cells in the cell compartment and replace compartment cover. Set wave length dial at the wave length desired (see Sections e d e g). Turn the lamp ON set selector switch to 10 and the transmission dial to zero density. Turn shutter switch OFF, and balance meter needle with dark current knob. Turn shutter switch ON rotate sensitivity knob to within one turn of its clockwise limit and approximately balance the needle with the slit dial. Balance the needle accurately with the sensitivity knob and record the density reading. Slide each of the cells into the light beam and balance the needle with the transmission dial recording the reading as density.

Select one cell as the reference cell to contain the solvent throughout all measurements. Subtract its density reading algebraically from the values for all cells. Record these resulting values as D .

Subsequent experimental density measurements D are corrected to actual sample density D by algebraically adding the correction D

Example

$D = -0.03$	Calibrated cell correction.
$D = 1.5$	Measured density of sample and cell
$D = 1.5 - 0.03 = 1.47$	Actual sample density

k. Calculation of Solution Concentration

For quantitative absorption measurements where the unknown component is the only absorbing material at the wave length of measurement it is necessary to consider the concentration of the solution and light path length of the cell. Calculations of this sort may be carried out as follows

Calculate k (extinction coefficient) at each wave length of measurement from measurements made on a solution of known concentration as follows

$$D = k \cdot c \cdot d \quad \left(-\log \frac{T}{100} \right) \quad \begin{array}{l} c = \text{concentration of sample in solution} \\ d = \text{light path of the cell} \\ D = \text{corrected optical density} \\ T = \text{corrected percent transmittance} \end{array}$$

Using the value of k concentrations of the unknown in other solutions may be calculated from this same formula by substituting the proper density value and light path length of the cell

l. Focusing of the Tungsten Lamp

When a new tungsten lamp is received in its housing from the factory only the final focusing adjustment if any should be needed. Extensive refocusing is seldom necessary but may be carried out as follows


- (1) Remove cells and holder from compartment unscrew the four knurled thumb screws on the end of the phototube housing and remove the housing and absorption cell compartment. Unscrew the four screws that fasten the mounting block (containing entrance mirror and filter slide) to the monochromator and remove the block tilting the top away from the end plate in order not to drop the filter slide. Note mirror mounting and adjustment but DO NOT TOUCH ANY MIRROR SURFACES
- (2) Turn on the current and adjust the lamp and mirror screws so that the light beam comes through the hole in the front of the lamp housing. Hold a piece of white paper in the light beam to locate the crescent shaped focal point which should appear opposite the monochromator lower (entrance) window with the center of the image about 5/16" out from the window. To raise or lower the light beam turn the upper lamp adjusting screw. If this adjustment is insufficient tilt the condensing mirror slightly.
- (3) The condensing mirror in the lamp housing may be extensively adjusted by means of the three small screws at the left side. The screw in the bushing rotates the mirror from side to side. The two clamping screws above and below bushing are loosened to tilt the mirror or to slide it toward or away from the lamp and must be tightened after adjustments are made. CAUTION: Do not release screws more than two or three revolutions as there is danger of releasing the mirror mounting.
- (4) To direct the light beam toward or away from the monochromator end plate turn the mirror adjusting screw in the bushing. To change the focal point of the image turn lower lamp adjusting screw. If this adjustment is insufficient, shift the whole mirror assembly toward the lamp to lengthen the focal distance or vice versa. After the focal point adjustments are made replace filter slide and mounting block securely.

- (5) Set slit opening at 2 mm and wave length scale at about 800 millimicrons. Push filter slide knob in. Through the exit slit the light beam should appear as a magnified (red) image of the lamp filament. If it does not a slight adjustment of either the condensing or entrance mirror should bring out the horizontal filament lines. To adjust entrance mirror insert a screw driver into the hole in the front of the mounting block and turn the screw at the back of mirror. After a good visual adjustment has been made replace the absorption cell compartment and phototube housing.
- (6) Pull phototube knob out. Push filter slide knob in. Turn the instrument switch to 'CHECK,' the shutter switch to 'OFF' and then adjust the dark current knob to zero the needle. Rotate sensitivity knob fully clockwise. Set slits to 0 mm. Turn shutter switch ON. Rotate wave length knob toward shorter wave length (around 300 millimicrons) to zero the needle. Turn the upper lamp adjusting screw *slightly* until movement of the needle to the left indicates that more light is entering the monochromator. Rebalance the instrument by rotating wave length knob to shorter wave lengths to zero the needle. Then again adjust the lamp screw until needle is deflected to the left. Continue this procedure of alternate adjustment of screw and wave length knob until further adjustment of the screw does not cause deflection of the needle to the left. Next follow this adjusting procedure with the lower lamp adjusting screw then with the condensing mirror screw and finally with the entrance mirror screw. Then repeat the entire procedure several times for each of the four screws until the wave length scale cannot be set to any lower value. The instrument should then be in optimum focus.

m Focusing of Hydrogen Lamp

- (1) Attach the hydrogen lamp housing to the monochromator mounting plate.
- (2) Unscrew the four knurled thumbscrews on the end of the phototube compartment and detach the phototube and absorption cell compartments. Remove the four machine screws in the corners of the filter slide block and detach it holding the filter slide in one hand to prevent it from being damaged by falling out.
- (3) Turn on the hydrogen lamp. Hold a piece of white paper directly in front of the entrance window (lower) of the monochromator and at right angles to the light beam coming from the condensing mirror in the lamp house. Using a small screw driver turn the adjusting screw in the bushing on the left side of the lamp house until the crescent shaped image on the paper falls about 1 mm from the surface of the monochromator mounting plate. Using the upper screw on the back of the lamp house raise or lower the image until it is approximately on a level with the entrance window. Focus the beam with the lower screw on the back of the lamp house so that the crescent is narrowest opposite the entrance window as determined by moving the paper back and forth along the light beam. If the range of the adjusting screws is insufficient to make the above adjustments it may be necessary to readjust the position of the hydrogen lamp in its holder or to loosen the two mirror clamping screws on the left side of the lamp house and readjust the mirror position. **CAUTION DO NOT TOUCH THE MIRROR SURFACE**
- (4) Replace the filter slide block being careful to assemble the filter slide so that its detent functions properly.
- (5) Push the filter slide in open the slits to a width of 20 mm and set the wave length scale for 450 millimicrons. Placing the eye at the hole in the filter slide block look through the exit slit into the interior of the monochromator. If the focusing adjustment is approximately correct an image of the quartz prism will be seen in the collimating mirror illuminated with an intense blue light. Again adjust the lamp house screws, also the entrance mirror adjustment screw (which

is accessible through the hole in the front of the filter slide block) until the illumination is most intense and almost completely fills the aperture of the prism.

- (6) I assemble the phototube and absorption cell compartments. I place the selector switch in the 'Check' position turn the sensitivity knob fully clockwise push in the filter slide and pull out the phototube slide. With the shutter Off adjust the dark current control in the usual manner and then place the shutter in the 'On' position. With the slits set at 0.0 mm rotate the wave length scale toward the shorter wave lengths until the galvanometer is brought to balance. Readjust the screw on the left side of the lamp house to make the galvanometer needle  off the scale toward the left. Rebalance the galvanometer by turning the wave length scale to a shorter wave length. Repeat this process so long as the galvanometer needle can be moved to the left by adjusting the screw. Then using the other two lamp house adjustment screws continue the process until optimum focus is reached i.e. when turning any screw in either direction causes the galvanometer needle to go to the right.
- (7) When the optimum focus is reached by the procedure of Paragraph 6 the wave length scale should read less than 30 millimicrons. A high wave length reading indicates (1) one or more of the aluminized mirrors in the light path has deteriorated (2) the radiation output of the hydrogen lamp is below standard or (3) the phototube sensitivity is low. The mirrors most subject to deterioration are the concave mirror in the lamp house and the small flat entrance mirror. These may be replaced or returned for resurfacing. (Inspection under visible light does not necessarily indicate reflecting quality in the ultraviolet.)

2. Wave Length Calibration

Because of its numerous intense spectral lines a mercury arc in an ultraviolet transmitting envelope is a useful radiation source for checking the wave length scale of the monochromator.

The hydrogen discharge lamp may be used to check the wave length scale at the hydrogen alpha line (6563 millimicrons) which is emitted with moderate intensity. Using a source of spectral lines the wave length scale may be checked as follows:

- (1) Place selector switch in '10' position and the sensitivity control in the middle of its range. Push the filter slide in and select the appropriate phototube. Adjust for dark current in the usual manner.
- (2) Set the transmission scale at about 3% and place shutter switch in the 'On' position.
- (3) Adjust the wave length scale to give maximum galvanometer deflection to the left. If necessary reduce slit width to keep the galvanometer needle on the scale.
- (4) If the wave length scale reading at maximum deflection differs from the known wave length of the spectral line by more than 0.3 millimicron, adjustment may be made as follows:

Set the wave length scale to read the correct wave length of the spectral line. Remove the snap button on the left hand end of the monochromator and turn the adjusting screw to give maximum galvanometer deflection. A 5/16" socket wrench is most convenient for turning the screw although a screw driver may be used. This adjustment has the effect of changing all readings on the wave length scale by the same angular amount. Consequently in terms of millimicrons it produces a larger effect at the long wave lengths where the scale is compressed. After making the adjustment repeat the wave length check to make certain that the best adjustment has been obtained.

3. Photometric Calibration

The photometric scale is checked by using a series of four filters the transmittances of which have been accurately determined by the National Bureau of Standards.

50 Instrumentation

These four filters are designated as carbon yellow," "cobalt blue" copper green and selenium orange. The reported transmittances of these filters are in the range from 390 m μ to 50 m μ . The temperature of the filters should be held as close to 25 °C as possible

3 Operating the Instrument

- a Securely attach the battery clamps -1 +2 and +6 to the corresponding voltage terminals of the storage battery
- b Turn the lamp switch ON "
- c Set selector switch to CHECK
- d Rotate wave length knob until desired scale value is shown under hairline
- e Select proper phototube and filter if required.
- f Turn shutter switch OFF
- g Rotate dark current knob to zero the meter needle. This adjustment must be repeated occasionally (for highest accuracy between each transmission reading) Remove cell compartment cover and put filled cells in place
- h Make sure that the cells and holder are seated properly then replace the compartment cover and place the solvent or 'blank' in the light path
- i Turn shutter switch ON. This switch must be turned gently otherwise the phototube housing may be jarred resulting in needle shift or unsteadiness
- j Rotate slit knob to approximately zero the needle or to give the desired slit width
- k Rotate the sensitivity knob to zero the needle accurately. For highest accuracy this adjustment should be checked between each transmission reading
- l Operate the slider knob to place an unknown sample in the light beam
- m Set selector switch to 10. If the transmission is less than 10% set selector switch to 01
- n Rotate transmission knob to zero the needle
- o Record the transmittance or density reading
- p Place the next unknown sample in the light path and zero the needle by rotating transmission knob

D FLUOROMETRY—GENERAL PRINCIPLES

References

- Radley J. A. and Grant J. Fluorescence Analysis in Ultraviolet Light ed. 3 London 1939 Chapman and Hall Ltd
- Dake H. C. and De Ment J. Fluorescent Light and Its Applications New York 1941 Chemical Publishing Company
- De Ment J. Fluorescent Chemicals and Their Application New York 1940 Chemical Publishing Company

1 Definition

As the term is used in biochemical analysis 'fluorescence' means the emission of visible light by a substance when it is irradiated with ultraviolet light. If emission of visible light occurs after the removal of the ultraviolet light the afterglow is termed 'phosphorescence'.

2 Laws of Fluorescence

Fluorometry is based on the general laws of photochemistry and there are three specific 'laws of fluorescence'.

- a. Energy must be absorbed by a luminescent system before emission can occur (the absorption law of De Ment)

- b In a fluorescent system the emitted wave lengths are longer than the absorbed wave lengths that is the energy emitted is less than the energy absorbed (the emission law of Stokes)
- c The absorption of radiation by a luminescent system is a quantum process involving one quantum per absorbing unit (e.g. atom or center) the yield being unity only in the ideal case (one aspect of the photochemical equivalence law of Einstein)

3 General Principles of Fluorometry

All quantitative fluorometry is based on a fundamentally simple system. A source of ultraviolet light casts a beam on the solution to be examined. Visible light is emitted and is measured either visually (against a comparison standard) or photoelectrically.

In general it is necessary to conduct fluorometry with dilute solutions which are measured against calibration curves prepared under conditions identical with those of the analysis. The reason for this is that the absolute intensity of fluorescence is highly variable depending upon many important factors including temperature, time of exposure, nature of instrument, traces of impurities, pH and quenching. 'Quenching' is a complex phenomenon of which there are at least three kinds: (1) interference of a molecule's fluorescence by other organic molecules, (2) interference by inorganic molecules, (3) and reabsorption of visible light by other molecules of the same compound as those being measured. Fluorometry by its nature is not as capable of extreme accuracy and reproducibility as is spectrophotometry. Every kind of analysis is strongly influenced by the nature, purity, history and condition of the material under analysis.

E PHOTOFUOROMETRY—THE COLEMAN PHOTOFUOROMETER MODEL 12B

1 General Construction of the Photofluorometer

This instrument consists basically of: (a) a mercury vapor lamp source of ultraviolet light, (b) a series of filters to transmit a beam of ultraviolet light of the appropriate wave length, (c) a cuvette to hold the solution to be analyzed in the beam of ultraviolet light, (d) at right angles to the beam of ultraviolet light where it passes through the solution, a filter to transmit the beam of visible light in the appropriate range of wave length, (e) a photo cell in the path of the visible light, (f) an amplifying system and a direct reading galvanometer to measure the potential from the photocell. (See Fig 7 for general construction.)

2 Setting Up and Adjusting the Instrument

a. Location

Place the instrument in any convenient location and plug into 110-120 volt 60 cycle supply line, first insuring that the 'GND' knob is in the extreme counterclockwise position. Do not attempt to operate the instrument except at the frequency and voltage specified. It is wise to place rubber pads under the four feet to minimize vibration conducted through the desk.

These four filters are designated as 'carbon yellow, cobalt blue, copper green and selenium orange'. The reported transmittances of these filters are in the range from 390 m μ 750 m μ . The temperature of the filters should be held as close to 25 C as possible.

3 Operating the Instrument

- a. Securely attach the battery clamps -1 +2 and +6 to the corresponding voltage terminals of the storage battery
- b. Turn the lamp switch ON
- c. Set selector switch to CHECK
- d. Rotate wave length knob until desired scale value is shown under hairline
- e. Select proper phototube and filter if required
- f. Turn shutter switch OFF
- g. Rotate dark current knob to zero the meter needle. This adjustment must be repeated occasionally (for highest accuracy between each transmission reading). Remove cell compartment cover and put filled cells in place
- h. Make sure that the cells and holder are seated properly then replace the compartment cover and place the solvent or blank in the light path
- i. Turn shutter switch ON. This switch must be turned gently; otherwise the phototube housing may be jarred resulting in needle shift or unsteadiness
- j. Rotate slit knob to approximately zero the needle or to give the desired slit width
- k. Rotate the sensitivity knob to zero the needle accurately. For highest accuracy this adjustment should be checked between each transmission reading
- l. Operate the slider knob to place an unknown sample in the light beam
- m. Set selector switch to 10. If the transmission is less than 10% set selector switch to 01
- n. Rotate transmission knob to zero the needle
- o. Record the transmittance or density reading
- p. Place the next unknown sample in the light path and zero the needle by rotating transmission knob

D FLUOROMETRY—GENERAL PRINCIPLES

References

- Radley J A and Grant J. *Fluorescence Analysis in Ultraviolet Light* ed. 3 London 1939 Chapman and Hall Ltd
- Dake H C and De Ment J. *Fluorescent Light and Its Applications* New York 1941 Chemical Publishing Company
- De Ment J. *Fluorescent Chemicals and Their Application* New York 1941 Chemical Publishing Company

1 Definition

As the term is used in biochemical analysis 'fluorescence' means the emission of visible light by a substance when it is irradiated with ultraviolet light. If emission of visible light occurs after the removal of the ultraviolet light the afterglow is termed 'phosphorescence'.

2 Laws of Fluorescence

Fluorometry is based on the general laws of photochemistry and there are three specific 'laws of fluorescence'.

- a. Energy must be absorbed by a luminescent system before emission can occur (the absorption law of De Ment)

- b In a fluorescent system the emitted wave lengths are longer than the absorbed wave lengths that is the energy emitted is less than the energy absorbed (the emission law of Stokes)
- c The absorption of radiation by a luminescent system is a quantum process involving one quantum per absorbing unit (eg atom or center) the yield being unity only in the ideal case (one aspect of the photochemical equivalence law of Einstein)

3 General Principles of Fluorometry

All quantitative fluorometry is based on a fundamentally simple system. A source of ultraviolet light casts a beam on the solution to be examined. Visible light is emitted and is measured either visually (against a comparison standard) or photoelectrically.

In general, it is necessary to conduct fluorometry with dilute solutions which are measured against calibration curves prepared under conditions identical with those of the analysis. The reason for this is that the absolute intensity of fluorescence is highly variable depending upon many important factors including temperature, time of exposure, nature of instrument, traces of impurities, pH and quenching. Quenching is a complex phenomenon of which there are at least three kinds: (1) interference of a molecule's fluorescence by other organic molecules, (2) interference by inorganic molecules, (3) and reabsorption of visible light by other molecules of the same compound as those being measured. Fluorometry by its nature is not as capable of extreme accuracy and reproducibility as is spectrophotometry. Every kind of analysis is strongly influenced by the nature, purity, history and condition of the material under analysis.

E PHOTOFLUOROMETRY—THE COLEMAN PHOTOFLUOROMETER MODEL 12B

1 General Construction of the Photofluorometer

This instrument consists basically of: (a) a mercury vapor lamp source of ultraviolet light, (b) a series of filters to transmit a beam of ultraviolet light of the appropriate wave length, (c) a cuvette to hold the solution to be analyzed in the beam of ultraviolet light, (d) at right angles to the beam of ultraviolet light where it passes through the solution, a filter to transmit the beam of visible light in the appropriate range of wave length, (e) a photocell in the path of the visible light, (f) an amplifying system and a direct reading galvanometer to measure the potential from the photocell. (See Fig 7 for general construction.)

2 Setting Up and Adjusting the Instrument

a. Location

Place the instrument in any convenient location and plug into 110-120 volt 60 cycle supply line, first insuring that the STD knob is in the extreme counterclockwise position. Do not attempt to operate the instrument except at the frequency and voltage specified. It is wise to place rubber pads under the four feet to minimize vibration conducted through the desk.

52 Instrumentation

■ Preliminary Adjustments

Before making tests with this instrument it is essential that both its mercury vapor lamp and electronic amplifier be turned on and allowed to reach equilibrium. Proceed as follows:

- (1) Plug extension cord into a 110 170 volt AC supply line



Fig 7--The Coleman Photofluorometer Model 1-B (Reproduced by permission of the manufacturers)

- (2) Insert an oblong panel opening #1 the proper filter for the measurement involved e.g. use filter B for thiamine or use filter B₂ when considering riboflavin. These two particular filters pass the 365 m μ m crown and 4.6 m μ m crown mercury bands respectively. The filtered beam is then projected to focus within the $\frac{3}{8}$ round cuvette. Filter B is also fitted with a "90°" transmission screen to reduce the light intensity to a level at which significant bleaching of the ochrome does not occur.
- (3) In oblong panel opening #2 insert the corresponding filter using PC-1 when measuring thiamine and filter PC-2 when examining riboflavin. The purpose of

these second filters is to screen the phototube from the waveband passed by the corresponding first filter while allowing the fluorescent light of the sample to enter the phototube and be measured.

- (4) Energize the instrument by rotating the STD knob clockwise until it just clicks. This turns on the amplifier and also starts the cooling fan and excites the mercury vapor lamp.
- (5) After 5 seconds continue rotation of the STD knob to extreme clockwise position. This adjusts the amplifier to maximum sensitivity. (The STD knob thus serves both to turn the instrument on and off as well as to adjust its sensitivity.)
- (6) Depress button B and while it is in the depressed position adjust knob BAL until the instrument meter reads approximately zero. The purpose of this adjustment is to condition the electronic amplifier to the condition of the A batteries. The adjustment is not at all critical but should be checked occasionally during prolonged tests always again checking BLK as in (7).
- (7) Adjust the BLK knob until the instrument meter reads zero. This knob serves initially to balance the amplifier to zero as indicated above and may subsequently be used automatically to correct for fluorescence of blanks during actual analysis of fluorescent samples.
- (8) Now allow at least ten minutes for the instrument to stabilize and then repeat steps (6) and (7). (Note that the mercury vapor lamp once turned off has to cool down before it will light again.)

8 Making Routine Measurements

For every run of unknowns certain steps are necessary. These are (a) setting sensitivity to a fixed value against a stable reference standard (b) reading a reagent blank and (c) reading the unknowns. The following example is for thiamine by the thiochrome method. Other substances may require other stable reference standards with an emission similar to that of the unknown.

- a. Complete adjustments (1) through (8) in section 2 b above.
- b. Be sure that enough standard cuvettes are available to carry out all readings expeditiously. (This fluorometer accepts ordinary 24 round test tubes and is so designed optically that the tube diameter is not critical. Use not less than 8 ml of sample and be sure that tubes are covered to exclude light during all tests.)
- c. Fill a cuvette of stable reference solution in a cuvette well cover with cap and then open the lamp shutter by fully depressing button P. The beam of filtered UV light projected into the cuvette excites fluorescence and the resulting light entering the phototube causes the instrument meter to react. With P fully depressed adjust the STD knob until the meter reads a value consistent with the concentration of the sample to be examined. This operation constitutes the sensitivity adjustment. Note the value of the reference standard and immediately before testing each sample first insert the reference solution and then adjust the meter to read the value of the reference standard when button P is depressed. This stable reference solution is necessary because the instrument's sensitivity is dependent in part on the intensity of the mercury vapor lamp which in turn depends on the voltage and frequency of the power supply. Since the latter factors may vary with time it is advisable to check the sensitivity of the photofluorometer immediately before each test by inserting in the cuvette well a stable reference solution e.g. quinine sulfate when examining thiamine. A solution containing 0.5 mg of quinine sulfate dissolved in one liter of N/10 sulfuric acid is set at 60 on the scale. It is recommended that this stable reference solution be utilized solely as a means of checking and maintaining the instrument sensitivity.

at the selected value. The practice of assigning a definite value to the ratio of instrument responses to quinine and to vitamin is unnecessary and of questionable merit. A much more reliable calibration consists of running a calibration curve with standard vitamin solutions.

- d. Insert a cuvette containing a reagent blank cap the cuvette fully depress button P and read the meter as soon as the pointer has come to rest. (The glassware, solvent and the other chemicals used for preparing the sample may themselves exhibit some measure of fluorescent response and the activity of these 'blank' constituents must therefore be considered in all measurements. In practice the blank solution is prepared by combining in the same manner and amounts all of the ingredients of the corresponding sample solution except the considered constituent. In the determination of thiamine the fluorescent compound is thiochrome formed by oxidizing thiamine with potassium ferricyanide. In this instance the 'blank' solution is prepared exactly the same as the sample using water in place of the sample to be analyzed. Thus the blank is slightly fluorescent. The corresponding meter deflection caused by the thiochrome is equal to the difference between the meter deflection of the blank and the deflection occasioned by the corresponding sample.)
- e. Set the sensitivity of the instrument with the stable reference standard as in step (c) above.
- f. Now read an unknown. Insert a cuvette containing a solution of the considered constituent (e.g. thiochrome for thiamine) of approximately the concentration to be considered in subsequent tests. Cap the tube fully depress button P and then read the meter as soon as its pointer comes to rest. (The best accuracy is obtained when the range of concentration to be examined gives a convenient deflection and it is good practice not to attempt measurements at very high concentrations since the fluorescence concentration curves depart from linearity at high concentrations. For example the recommended range of concentration for thiamine is not more than 2 gamma oxidized to thiochrome in 10 ml of isobutanol. Higher concentrations should be diluted to this range.)
- g. Before all subsequent readings set the sensitivity of the instrument by means of the stable reference standard.

4 Computation of Results

a. Calibration Curves

We recommend the use of a calibration curve derived from samples of standards run through the analytical procedure. (The reason for this recommendation is that fluorescence may be affected markedly by slight alterations in analytical conditions. Hence computation of a standard K i.e. units of solution concentration per meter scale unit is inherently liable to error. In addition the fluorescence galvanometer reading relation is not always linear.)

b. Calculated Constant

We do not recommend this calculation for the reasons stated above. However it is given here for the sake of completeness.

- (1) Let K = units of solution concentration per scale division. Let A and B be scale readings for two known concentrations of the substance under consideration S_1 and S_2 respectively. Then $K = \frac{B - A}{S_2 - S_1}$.
- (2) Let K = constant as defined above.
 U = scale reading for unknown
 B = scale reading for blank

Then

$$\text{Concentration of unknown} = K \times (U - B)$$

E Adjustment and Replacement of Parts

a. Adjustment of Mercury Vapor Lamp Autotransformer to Match Exciting Voltage

The AH 4 mercury vapor used in the Coleman Model 1. photofluorometer is adjusted to operate at 120 volts when shipped. If with this adjustment it is connected to a higher supply voltage the intensity of the lamp will be very markedly increased and there will be an appreciable reduction of the lamp life. In instances when it is necessary to use this lamp in conjunction with a line or voltage regulator delivering other than 120 volts the connections on the autotransformer must be changed to fit the alternate voltage. This adaption can be made by the following procedure:

- (1) Remove the two screws which secure the cover on the small autotransformer.
- (2) On the terminal board inside this transformer will be found terminals marked 110 115 and 120. The instrument is shipped with a green lead connected to the 120 terminal.
- (3) If the supply voltage is between 108 and 113 volts move this lead to the 110 terminal. (This same connection will also assure maximum possible brilliance when it is necessary to operate at less than 108 volts.) If the supply voltage is between 113-118 volts connect the green lead to the terminal marked 115. If the supply voltage is above 118 volts leave the green lead connected to the terminal marked 120.
- (4) After making the proper connection be sure that all terminals are screwed tight and replace the cover. The instrument is now ready for operation.
- (5) Transformers are individually adjusted to insure the maximum possible voltage control and as a result the output voltage of a given transformer may exceed 115 volts. Therefore when using the transformer be sure to ascertain its actual output voltage which is given on a plate attached to the front of the unit and then adjust the lamp autotransformer to correspond.

b. Replacement of Mercury Vapor Lamp

The lamps used in the Model 1 is an AH 4 medium high pressure quartz mercury arc. The life expectancy of this lamp is in the neighborhood of 1000 hours. When failure occurs as evidenced by unsteadiness of illumination, obscuring of the walls of the central quartz capillary and finally refusal to start when lamp has cooled replacement should be made with another lamp of exactly the same type. Specify serial number of instrument when ordering.

- (1) Remove the five screws around the edge of the panel.
- (2) Place the instrument at the edge of the table with the left hand side of the box far enough off the table so that the hole in the bottom from which the rubber covered cable to the transformer issues is just clear of the edge of the table. This will free the cable and facilitate removal of the panel.
- (3) Pull the panel straight upward until checked by the battery cable. Bring the back edge of the panel up and forward and lay it on its face on the top of the box which should be moved back onto the table.
- (4) The mercury lamp is secured by two spring retaining straps which hold it to an aperture plate. Connections are made by twisted leads which connect to a terminal strip on the side of the chassis adjacent to the lamp.
- (5) Disconnect the leads from the terminal strip.
- (6) Loosen the nuts which hold down the lamp retaining straps. It is not generally necessary to remove the straps. With the straps loose slide the lamp endwise till clear of the straps.
- (7) Insert a new lamp into the straps with the small conical tip on the inner quartz capillary pointed away from the aperture plate and the two support rolls inside the lamp approximately equidistant from the plate. Center the lamp by sliding

endwise so that only the transparent part of the capillary is in line with the three-quarter inch hole in the aperture plate the metalized end caps being clear of the hole

- (8) Push down the retaining straps and pull the nuts down gently not tightly. A gentle pressure here will hold the lamp firmly, excessive pressure may shatter the outer tube of the lamp
- (9) Slide the spade lugs on the connecting leads under the terminal screws and tighten. Be sure that spade lugs do not touch each other or touch the rivets holding the terminal strip to the chassis
- (10) Replace the panel by repeating instructions 1, 2 and 3 in reverse. (Note: Be sure battery cable does not crowd over so as to interfere with fan or mercury lamp)

c Replacement of Vacuum Tube

The vacuum tube used in the Model 12 has been carefully selected and rigorously tested before incorporation in the instrument. Although a standard radio tube of the correct type may be used in this instrument it is advisable to secure replacement tubes through a Coleman dealer. When ordering a replacement tube always specify the serial number of the instrument. Symptoms of tube failure are: (1) inability to reach the proper adjustments even though the batteries check well, and (2) when filament burns out continuous off scale reading to the right not responsive to position of the BAL or BLK knobs. When it becomes necessary to replace the vacuum tube

- (1) Remove panel as described in previous sections
- (2) The vacuum tube is surrounded by a perforated metal shield with a removable end cap. Remove this cap exposing the grid connection to the tube. Pull the grid connection off the tube. Remove the perforated shield by pulling it up off the tube. The tube may now be removed from its socket
- (3) After inserting the new tube be sure to remove any conducting film existing on outside of bulb between grid terminal and base by wiping gently with tissue or a clean cloth before replacing the shield. Replace the grid connection before placing the end cap on the shield being careful to avoid again touching glass
- (4) Replace panel as described in previous section

d Replacement of Batteries

The Model 12B requires the following batteries for its operation

- One 45 v B Battery type 5308
- One 3 v A Battery type 2F2H
- One 90 v C Battery type Z60BP
- One 1.5 V Bucker Battery type F4X

The life expectancy of the 2F2H should be above 400 hours of service that of the F4X about 1000 hours. The other two batteries should be good for over a year. Failure of the 2F2H or the 5308 will be shown by inability of the BAL knob to bring the meter up to zero while failure of the F4X will be shown by the inability of the BAL knob to bring the meter down to zero. The Z60BP should be replaced when its voltage drops below 50 volts. When it becomes necessary to change batteries

- (1) Remove the five screws around the edge of the panel and disassemble as described in previous sections
- (2) Disconnect battery to be replaced. It is wise also to check the voltage of all the batteries and replace any which show a voltage less than three fourths of their rated voltage
- (3) Remove screws securing hold-down strap of battery to be replaced. Remove strap thus freeing battery. (The Z60BP is held down by a wooden block instead of a strap)

- (4) Replace battery with identical battery. Replace strap and reconnect battery. To facilitate this the following table gives the color coding of the battery cable

COLOR		CONNECTION
Gray	-A	(F-H)
Black	+A	(P H)
Blue	-B	(30S)
Yellow	+ $\frac{1}{2}$ VB	(330S)
Red	+45 VB	(530S)
Brown	-C	(Z60BP)
Green	+C	(Z60BP)

The leads to the F4X battery are separate comprising a twisted red and black pair the red being plus

- (5) Replace panel as described in previous section

FLUOROMETRIC METHODS FOR QUALITATIVE USE AND FOR QUANTITATIVE MEASUREMENTS IN THE FIELD—VISUAL FLUOROMETRY

Principle

Qualitative fluorometry is best done by eye because it is necessary to distinguish fine shades of color. No photoelectric fluorometer of which we are aware is suitable for qualitative use.

For many quantitative purposes in the field visual fluorometry is equally satisfactory as photoelectric fluorometry. The chief reason is that under field conditions line voltage is often extremely erratic. This impairs the accuracy of photoelectric fluorometers but has no effect on the accuracy of visual fluorometry.

Apparatus

- 1 A suitable darkened room for reading unknown solutions. This need not be completely light tight. We have used successfully a ray room, photographic dark room, bath room, abandoned kitchen, upboards and U. S. Army command post tents.
- 2 A source of ultraviolet light consisting of a General Electric Type R4 mercury vapor bulb enclosed in a box with louvers for air cooling and a Wood filter for absorbing visible light. A General Electric Autotransformer Type 50G18 is installed between the bulb and any suitable source of 110 volt AC. In the field we have used simple motor generators without line stabilization.
- 3 The fluorometric comparator consisting of a thin wooden rack containing 10 Corning glass stoppered thin walled 1 ml test tubes outside diameter 10 mm and length 75 mm. Holes are bored so that these tubes which contain standard solutions are flanked by empty holes to contain 10 x 75 mm thin walled test tubes containing the unknown solution. The rack is constructed so as to slide conveniently in a direction perpendicular to the ultraviolet ray and 8 cm from the Wood filter.
- 4 Suitable beakers, delivery pipettes and other usual appurtenances including a large number of 10 x 75 mm thin walled test tubes. One special pipette is of great assistance. This is an automatic syringe pipette the use of which is described in the section on volumetric apparatus.
- 5 A small spotlight in the darkened room in such a position that a recorder can easily take down notes without disturbing the operator who is doing the fluorometry.

Reagents

- 1 These are different for different estimations but in all cases a thoroughgoing reagent blanks must be run on each new batch and if there is a perceptible blank the reagents must be either replaced or purified until the blank is negligible
- 2 Standard solutions are prepared by running solutions of known concentration through the whole method. The final solutions are placed in the glass stoppered 11 ml test tubes up to a convenient level usually 1 ml, and the wooden racks are clearly labeled in fluorescent paint or ink with a number equivalent to the concentration of unknown substance in 100 ml of original solution. This procedure automatically takes care of calculations and also includes any correction necessary for systematic loss in the methods. The preparation of standard solutions will be described under individual methods.

Procedure

- 1 Each method is carried out as described in detail in subsequent sections
- 2 As the final step in each method the compound to be measured is extracted into an appropriate solvent and the solvent layer is separated from the aqueous layer, either by simple standing or by centrifuging
- 3 An automatic syringe pipette fitted with a long stainless steel needle is stopped at approximately 1 ml. The tubes containing samples in which the solvent layer has been separated from the aqueous layer are placed in convenient racks in front of the operator. Other racks containing clean 75 x 10 mm test tubes in positions corresponding to the unknowns are similarly placed
- 4 Approximately 1 ml of solvent is transferred to a 75 x 10 mm test tube. Excess solvent in the automatic syringe pipette is removed by several up and down motions of the plunger and the next sample is transferred. The transfer pipette need be rinsed with blank solvent only when it is expected that there will be very wide variations in concentration from unknown to unknown e.g. if fasting and loaded samples are being run at the same time
- 5 The rack containing 75 x 10 mm test tubes is now transferred to the darkroom after the notebook is appropriately ruled and after the ultraviolet bulb has been turned on for at least 30 minutes to allow thorough warming up
- 6 After entering the darkroom allow about 5 minutes for the eyes to become adapted to the dark
- 7 Comparison is made by inserting the unknown solution from empty hole in the comparator until a match is obtained. It is usually wise to commence reading with the unknown in position between two standard solutions both of which are unquestionably brighter than the unknown and then to move the unknown down the rack for final matching
- 8 The recorder should record the value for the unknown in the appropriate place in the notebook. It will be recalled that these readings represent without further calculation the concentration of the original unknown solution

Calculations and Examples

- 1 These will be discussed individually in individual methods

Precautions

- 1 Some of the standard solutions are themselves unstable and should be checked daily or even oftener against freshly prepared standards. This is particularly true of riboflavin. Quinine is apparently stable indefinitely under usual conditions but we have seen quinine standards deteriorate in very hot weather
- 2 The standard solutions and unknown solutions must be at approximately the same temperature during reading because fluorescence is markedly affected by changing the temperature of the solution. The temperature will be the same if reagent samples and standards are kept on the same bench

■ FLAME PHOTOMETRY—THE BECKMAN FLAME PHOTOMETER ATTACHMENT

1 General Principles of Flame Photometry

The purpose of flame photometers now commercially available is to introduce inorganic substances into a flame at a uniform rate so that light produced thereby will be constant. The flame used is very hot so that the spectral lines are excited much more strongly than with a cool flame and more lines of more elements can be excited to a usable intensity than with an ordinary cool flame. In this way it is possible to make instantaneous spectrophotometric measurements whereas the usual method requires a spectrogram followed by a densitometer measurement and the results have to be interpreted with the aid of sensitometry measurements made on each plate at all wave lengths used. A flame source has certain advantages over the customary arc and spark sources for chemical analysis. Unnecessary lines are not excited the temperature is lower so the continuous background is lower the temperature and rate of feed of specimen can be held constant over a long period allowing numerous individual line measurements to be made in succession the flame and rate of feed can be exactly reproduced at any time being extended in area the flame does not require precise optical alignment and slight sidewise motions do not alter the luminosity and especially the specimen to be analyzed is introduced into the region of excitation at a uniform rate with the more volatile and less volatile constituents in perfect admixture (In other sources the more volatile constituents vaporize first so that photographic or integrating methods must be used and the sample must all be consumed for accurate determinations.)

Of the several good instruments now on the market we shall describe in detail only one the flame photometer attachment of the Beckman spectrophotometer.

2 General Construction of the Beckman Flame Photometer

■ Photometer Attachment

With the flame photometer attachment the Beckman Type DU Spectrophotometer becomes an emission spectrophotometer and percent transmittance becomes light intensity. Basically there are four separate parts (see Fig. 8).

- (1) The Beckman Type DU Spectrophotometer for measuring the intensity of emitted light. Some modifications are required as described below.
- (2) A burner to produce emission from the sample. The burner of this instrument burns illuminating gas with air or oxygen the mixture emerging from 10 ports. Through the burner seven ducts carry fine droplets of mist containing the specimen under analysis. The burner is of stainless steel and is water cooled. A water cooled chimney which may be extended out of doors surrounds the flame and protects against heat and fire hazard. The burner and chimney are arranged as an integral unit with gas oxygen and water cooling lines going to the control unit and two vapor ducts going to the two sprayers. One of the ducts is for unknown specimens the other for standard solutions.

Reagents

- 1 These are different for different estimations but in all cases thoroughgoing reagent blanks must be run on each new batch and if there is a perceptible blank the reagents must be either replaced or purified until the blank is negligible
- 2 Standard solutions are prepared by running solutions of known concentration through the whole method. The final solutions are placed in the glass stoppered 2 ml test tubes up to a convenient level usually 1 ml and the wooden racks are clearly labeled in fluorescent paint or ink with a number equivalent to the concentration of unknown substance in 100 ml of original solution. This procedure automatically takes care of calculations and also includes any correction necessary for systematic losses in the methods. The preparation of standard solutions will be described under individual methods.

Procedure

- 1 Each method is carried out as described in detail in subsequent sections
- 2 As the final step in each method the compound to be measured is extracted into an appropriate solvent and the solvent layer is separated from the aqueous layer either by simple standing or by centrifuging
- 3 An automatic syringe pipette fitted with a long stainless steel needle is stopped at approximately 1 ml. The tubes containing samples in which the solvent layer has been separated from the aqueous layer are placed in convenient racks in front of the operator. Other racks containing clean 75 x 10 mm test tubes in positions corresponding to the unknowns are similarly placed
- 4 Approximately 1 ml of solvent is transferred to a 75 x 10 mm test tube. Excess solvent in the automatic syringe pipette is removed by several up and down motions of the plunger and the next sample is transferred. The transfer pipette need be rinsed with blank solvent only when it is expected that there will be very wide variations in concentration from unknown to unknown, e.g. if fasting and loaded samples are being run at the same time
- 5 The rack containing 75 x 10 mm test tubes is now transferred to the darkroom after the notebook is appropriately ruled and after the ultraviolet bulb has been turned on for at least 10 minutes to allow thorough warming up
- 6 After entering the darkroom allow about 5 minutes for the eyes to become adapted to the dark
- 7 Comparison is made by inserting the unknown solution from empty hole in the comparator until a match is obtained. It is usually wise to commence reading with the unknown in position between two standard solutions both of which are unquestionably brighter than the unknown and then to move the unknown down the rack for final matching
- 8 The recorder should record the value for the unknown in the appropriate place in the notebook. It will be recalled that these readings represent without further calculation the concentration of the original unknown solution

Calculations and Examples

- 1 These will be discussed individually in individual methods

Precautions

- 1 Some of the standard solutions are themselves unstable and should be checked daily or even oftener against freshly prepared standards. This is particularly true of riboflavin. Quinine is apparently stable indefinitely under usual conditions but we have seen quinine standards deteriorate in very hot weather
- 2 The standard solutions and unknown solutions must be at approximately the same temperature during reading because fluorescence is markedly affected by changing the temperature of the solution. The temperature will be the same if reagents, samples and standards are kept on the same bench

G FLAME PHOTOMETRY—THE BECKMAN FLAME PHOTOMETER ATTACHMENT

1 General Principles of Flame Photometry

The purpose of flame photometers now commercially available is to introduce inorganic substances into a flame at a uniform rate so that light produced thereby will be constant. The flame used is very hot so that the spectral lines are excited much more strongly than with a cool flame and more lines of more elements can be excited to a usable intensity than with an ordinary cool flame. In this way it is possible to make instantaneous spectrophotometric measurements whereas the usual method requires a spectrogram followed by a densitometer measurement and the results have to be interpreted with the aid of sensitometry measurements made on each plate at all wave lengths used. A flame source has certain advantages over the customary arc and spark sources for chemical analysis. Unnecessary lines are not excited, the temperature is lower so the continuous background is lower, the temperature and rate of feed of specimen can be held constant over a long period allowing numerous individual line measurements to be made in succession, the flame and rate of feed can be exactly reproduced at any time, being extended in area the flame does not require precise optical alignment and slight sidewise motions do not alter the luminosity and especially the specimen to be analyzed is introduced into the region of excitation at a uniform rate with the more volatile and less volatile constituents in perfect admixture. (In other sources the more volatile constituents vaporize first so that photographic or integrating methods must be used and the sample must all be consumed for accurate determinations.)

Of the several good instruments now on the market we shall describe in detail only one, the flame photometer attachment of the Beckman spectrophotometer.

■ General Construction of the Beckman Flame Photometer

a. Photometer Attachment

With the flame photometer attachment the Beckman Type DU Spectrophotometer becomes an emission spectrophotometer and percent transmittance becomes light intensity. Basically there are four separate parts (see Fig. 8).

- (1) The Beckman Type DU Spectrophotometer for measuring the intensity of emitted light. Some modifications are required as described below.
- (2) A burner to produce emission from the sample. The burner of this instrument burns illuminating gas with air or oxygen as the mixture emerging from 30 ports. Through the burner seven ducts carry fine droplets of mist containing the specimen under analysis. The burner is of stainless steel and is water cooled. A water-cooled chimney which may be extended out of doors surrounds the flame and protects against heat and fire hazard. The burner and chimney are arranged as an integral unit with gas, oxygen and water cooling lines going to the control unit and two vapor ducts going to the two sprayers. One of these ducts is for unknown specimens, the other for standard solutions.

- (3) Sprayers are made of Pyrex glass and are conveniently located to facilitate filling and washing and observation of the specimens
- (4) The control unit has the following on its panel: a gas manometer to read the gas pressure at the burner nozzle; an oxygen gauge to read the oxygen pressure at the burner nozzle; an air pressure gauge to read the pressure at the sprayer nozzles. The air valve is a cut off valve only; it is used either open or closed. The pressure regulator controls the air pressure, reducing it from 30 to 50 lbs/sq in. at input to 15 at output. The gas valve controls and cuts off the gas. The oxygen valve controls and cuts off the oxygen.

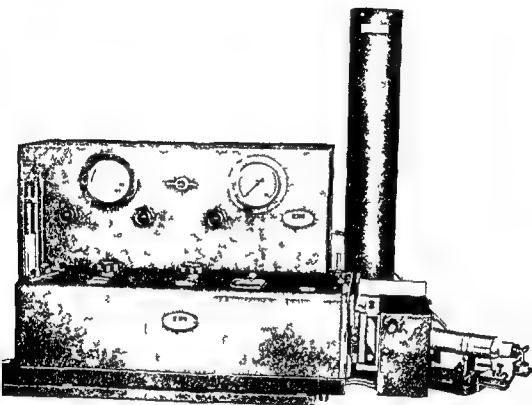


Fig. 8.—The flame photometer attachment for the Beckman Type DU Spectrophotometer (Reproduced with the permission of the manufacturers)

3 Setting Up the Instrument

a. Alterations in the Beckman DU Spectrophotometer

The conversion of the spectrophotometer into an emission measuring instrument by addition of the flame attachment involves four small changes in the spectrophotometer.

- (1) The flame used in emission is not as steady in intensity as the hydrogen or tungsten lamp used in absorption measurements. The galvanometer fluctuations therefore increase considerably and must be minimized or smoothed out. This is done by changing the 4000 megohm resistor in the phototube compartment to a 10 000 megohm resistor. The change of resistors gives the galvanometer five times the previous time lag, enabling it to be read with a high degree of reproducibility.

- (2) An aluminum shield is placed over the phototube compartment to protect it from the heat of the flame
- (3) The spectrophotometer has to be raised onto the platform of the control panel.
- (4) When the flame attachment is working the entrance mirror of the spectrophotometer has to be adjusted to an angle optimal for measuring the emitted light

b Preliminary Adjustments and General Precautions

- (1) Place the combined unit of control panel flame tower and sprayers on a rigid table convenient to sources of gas air water and electricity To avoid erratic results the room in which the instrument is to work must be as free of dust and drafts as possible
- (2) Place the spectrophotometer on the base of the control panel and its left end flush with the right margin of the gas manometer
- (3) The hoses are attached securely Scotch tape or small clamps serve well The air line must be securely clamped both on the input side and the exits to sprayers The air pressure must be turned off (gauge reading zero) before removing a hose from the sprayer Otherwise a large air flow will occur and water from the high pressure bubbling towers may be carried through. A drip column has been added to catch a reasonable amount of such water However it can only be drained by removing the back of the cabinet
- (4) The water is turned on at about one liter per minute Too high a flow is objectionable Water to drain should be hot enough but not boiling with burner running If too much is run through the bubbling towers may become over filled.
- (5) Turn on gas low just enough to light and light it When it is lit turn gas up to the fiducial marks on the manometer Always remember that water must be turned on before the flame is lit and the flame must be turned out before the water is turned off
- (6) Turn oxygen on to about 1/2 inches of water and check gas pressure on the manometer In case the gas pressure rises too high the flame may back fire on all oxygen flames do This is harmless in the present burner the small mixing chamber in the base of the burner has low pneumatic resistance to the outside air and no damage will result

4 Procedure for Routine Analyses

This laboratory prefers to use direct comparison between unknown samples and aqueous standard solutions rather than an internal standard of lithium added to each unknown specimen Some of the reasons for this choice are to be found in the discussion section below To make a run of analyses

- a. Prepare a group of samples the approximate concentrations of which are known properly diluted to bring them within the linear C-T range Standards are prepared from a stock standard so that they also be in the correct range The special conditions of slit opening flame temperature etc as determined by trial and error are produced in the instrument and the samples and standards are put into the 3 ml beakers provided
- b Turn switch to check
- c Turn on water
- d Plug in atomizer heater
- e Light burner low at first then high
- f Turn on oxygen
- g Allow 5 minutes for warming up

62 Instrumentation

- h Turn on atomizer, read an unknown sample on the "C %T" scale and immediately after two standards whose concentrations are, "C %T" readings lie on either side of the sample Repeat a number of times until all readings are steady and reproducible and good checks are obtained.
- i Repeat this process with the rest of the unknown samples

5 Computations

If the graph of "C %T" is linear in the range used then for each sample the concentration can be calculated from the simple ratio (standard galvanometer reading)/(sample galvanometer reading). In this case the ratios of sample reading with either of the standards bracketing it and the reading from the "C %T" standard curve should check. If a determination is done in which it is not possible to obtain linear readings the simplest method of computation is to use a calibration curve prepared from standards. When graphing is resorted to, a semilogarithm or logarithmic plot can be used, the criterion being which gives the greater degree of linearity.

6 Discussion of Sources of Error in Flame Photometry

a Metals Which Can Be Measured

In clinical chemistry about all the flame photometer is really useful for is estimating sodium, potassium and calcium as shown in Table 1. Other alkali metals and alkaline earths can be measured readily, but for other metals such as copper and iron chemical methods are far more reliable than the flame photometer. Since sodium, potassium and calcium are by far the most common metals measured with the flame photometer the rest of this discussion is restricted to them.

b Sources of Instrumental Error

Readings for any given sample in the flame photometer may be affected by many variables among which are quality of gas rate of water flow through chimney and burner sensitivity setting of the instrument width of slit wave length setting and pressures of gas oxygen, and air. The adjustment of these various components depends not only upon the element to be analyzed but also upon other interfering substances which may be present. Therefore no hard and fast rules can be formulated for the operation of the instrument but a few general precautions can be stated to help in obtaining consistent results.

- (1) In our experience ordinary city gas is too variable in pressure and in quality to be completely satisfactory. We have found it necessary to purchase tanks of gas of constant source and composition. By means of a suitable reducing valve this gas is led into the instrument. With some kinds of such gas it may be necessary to adjust the burner.
- (2) Water flow should be as constant as possible. This can be accomplished by using a reservoir with an overflow thus keeping a constant pressure of water at all times.
- (3) Even with all variables held constant the readings of a given sample will rise continuously for about $\frac{1}{2}$ hour. However, if the standards and samples are read immediately one after the other the determination can be made with good accuracy without waiting for the readings to become exactly constant.
- (4) The lines radiated by each element vary in intensity those of the alkali metals in general being most intense. As intensity increases the slit width can be decreased to obviate interference by other elements. When this is done, however

TABLE I
SENSITIVITY OF FLAME PHOTOMETER WITH DIFFERENT METALS IN HOT FLAME
(GAS OXYGEN)

ELEMENT AND COMPOUND	SLIT WIDTH MILLIMETERS	LINES USED ANGSTROM UNITS	CONCENTRATION	
			MEASURABLE PARTS/MILLION	DETECTABLE PARTS/MILLION
Sodium	0.102	5890	0.5	0.1
NaCl		5896		
Potassium	0.102	7665	0.5	0.1
KCl				
Lithium	0.10	6708	0.5	0.1
Li ₂ SO ₄				
Cesium	0.10*	851	0.5	0.1
Cs ₂ CrO ₄				
Calcium	0.102	618	3	1
CaCl		603		
Manganese	0.10	4031	2.3	1
MnCl		4034		
Copper	0.102	348	30	10
CuSO ₄		3274		
Magnesium	0.10*	285*	100	25
MgCl		3838		
Cobalt	0.10*	3520	100	25
CoCl ₂		350*		
Nickel	0.10*	355	150	40
NiCl		3493		
Boron	0.105	5481	150	50
H ₂ BO ₃		5440		
Iron	0.10*	3735	00	50
Fe(NO ₃) ₃		3737		

* The slit width was obtained with aqueous solutions of pure single compounds, with no other ions interfering.

the wave length must be set very carefully. This can be done by setting the wave length approximately with the instrument in operation and then turning it slightly to the right or left until the galvanometer shows maximum deflection.

- (5) The capillary leading into the atomizer is very fine. It has a tendency to become clogged gradually without the operator noticing it. This results in gradually falling readings. Therefore it is necessary to blow out the capillary after every few determinations. This can be done simply by removing the stopper holding the capillary and with the air turned on hold a finger over the inside end for a few moments and replace. Nebulizer sprayers of this type were adopted for several reasons: they will spray at continuous rates for a long time; they require only small samples (5 ml in the present model); they are economical of sample with a turnover of about 5 ml per minute; the residue of the sample is left unchanged in concentration; and they are easy to clean and are chemically inert. If the operator desires the present sprayers can be used for a continuous flow of sample by attaching drain tubes to the drain plugs and trickle the sample directly to the sprayer.
- (6) The concentration of the element analyzed should be such that a straight line relationship will exist between C and E/T . For the alkali metals this range is about 0.5-150 mEq/liter.

c. Theoretical Considerations Important for Accuracy

- (1) **Wave Length.** The wave length selected for each element depends on interfering substances. Therefore although 556 mμ is the most intense calcium line it can not be used due to the intense sodium line at 589. Potassium is best read at 767 mμ.

- (2) *Spectral Line Interference* While the lines at which the three elements are read are quite widely separated and do not interfere with each other directly there are several indirect types of interference. For example while the alkali metal radiation is of an atomic nature (and therefore quantized into discrete values) the calcium radiation is in large part of the molecular type. This leads to a band spectrum of which the line at $423\text{ m}\mu$ is merely the "band head". Therefore calcium is an interfering substance always to be taken into account. Also while potassium and sodium separately have no radiation at each other's wave lengths each has a large effect in the presence of the other. For example in a urine determination when the ratio of sodium to potassium is about 4:1 the reading of potassium at $767\text{ m}\mu$ is increased considerably by the sodium present when read in a hot flame.
- (3) *Characteristics of the Flame* Since the calcium spectrum is of a molecular nature it is due to vibration and rotation it will increase in intensity with increasing flame temperature. The hottest possible flame must be used in its determination. However potassium radiates more strongly at a relatively low temperature due probably to a favorable tendency toward primary ionization at low temperature. Moreover at low temperature sodium does not affect potassium to any measurable extent. Sodium loses some of its intensity at low temperature but this is offset by the decreased interference due to any band spectra present. The spraying of water reduces the luminosity of the flame as compared with a no spray flame doubtless due to lowering of the temperature. Since water is always sprayed with a sample the background (no salt) must be read with a distilled water spray not just the bare flame. With a spray of distilled water there is observed a continuous spectrum of rather constant intensity from 2500 \AA to the deep red except for a hump near 8100 \AA . This hump is presumed to be a band spectrum perhaps of water since it rises with the addition of water to bare flame. Resolved at narrow slits it shows two peaks at approximately 3007 \AA and 3091 \AA . Its height appears to serve as a fiducial point for checking the adjustment of the flame from time to time. Its intensity has not shown alteration with the spraying of a salt that gives no flame line in that region.
- Although we recommend a hot (gas oxygen) flame it is possible to use a cool (gas air) flame. Under these conditions it is necessary to use wider slits and to sacrifice selectivity and sensitivity except in the case of potassium. To increase luminosity a mirror of thick stainless steel has been mounted back of the flame. This mirror helps when using a cool flame or a feeble radiating element.
- (4) *Standards* While any salts of sodium or potassium can be used in preparing standards this is not true of calcium for which the spectrum will vary with the anion used. In urinalysis the standard must be made up with the calcium in very nearly the same form as it occurs in urine and it is necessary to prepare a standard containing calcium phosphate, chloride and sulfate.
- (5) *Concentrations* Samples should be of such a concentration of the ion under analysis that they fall into a range in which the $C\%T$ relation is linear. For sodium and potassium this range is from 0.5 mEq/liter to about 15 mEq/liter . For calcium however the linear range is at much higher concentrations so high that to obtain it and to get a measurable radiation the sample must be read undiluted. This leads to difficulties due to differences in viscosity between the standards and sample and must be allowed for.
- (6) *Slit Width* Generally speaking a wide slit will increase interference possibilities. Therefore the slit is made as small as is practicable. For calcium a weakly radiating substance a slit of about 0.2 mm must be used to get a measurable response. For potassium in a cool flame a slit of about 0.8 mm is used and for sodium in a moderately hot flame a slit of about 0.4 mm is used. With the Beckman DU Spectrophotometer the intensity of light received by the photo-

cells from a line as directly proportional to the slit width. However, the received from a constant number is proportional to the square of the slit width. Therefore, in picking out lines against a continuous background it is necessary to use a narrow slit as is feasible.

H BALANCES

Standard textbooks cover very well the calibration of analytical balances. The torsion balance and damped balances are used in metabolic studies that a brief discussion of them is included here.

1 The Roller Smith Precision Torsion Balance Model B

a. General Construction of the Instrument

In this balance the outside end of a spiral spring is attached to the axis of rotation. The outside end is attached to an index pointer (see Fig. 9). Balances of this type have a maximum capacity and sensitivity may be purchased. We have found that for rapid accurate weighing of small amounts of material especially for sensitivity is 0.2 per cent but the final accuracy of any weight measurement is on so many factors that it is impossible to say that the instrument has an inherent percentage accuracy. With the vernier the scale may be read to 1/10 scale divisions.

b. Setting Up and Calibrating the Balance

- (1) Set the instrument on a table high enough so that the operator is at level with the balance pointer. It is a good idea to lay the balance on a leveling case.
- (2) Be certain that the table is firm.
- (3) Adjust the leveling screws until the bubble of the spirit level is centered.
- (4) Release the beam by rotating the beam clamp lever until it points forward or back.
- (5) Adjust the index lever until the zero on the vernier coincides exactly with zero on the dial.
- (6) The balance pointer should now coincide with its zero line. If it does not, take the zero adjuster knob on the back of the case until the beam is at zero.
- (7) The balance is now ready to operate. The index lever can be felt into position by loosening the knurled nut.
- (8) The pan and compensating hook of the same weight are selected.
- (9) The balance is calibrated with the pan in place on the beam. It is adjusted to zero without both the pan and compensatory hook. A standard weight should be purchased with each balance.

c. Operating the Instrument

- (1) Before any weight is placed on the hook the index lever is set to the vernier is nearly to the highest value on the dial so that the upper limit of travel.
- (2) Hang the material to be weighed on the hook and rotate the weight until the beam drops down and the balance pointer is at balance line.
- (3) The index vernier then indicates the weight directly on the dial.

d. Disassembling the Roller Smith Balance

- (1) Remove the front spindle knob taking off the index lever.
- (2) Remove the small plate on the left of the case which will be removed.

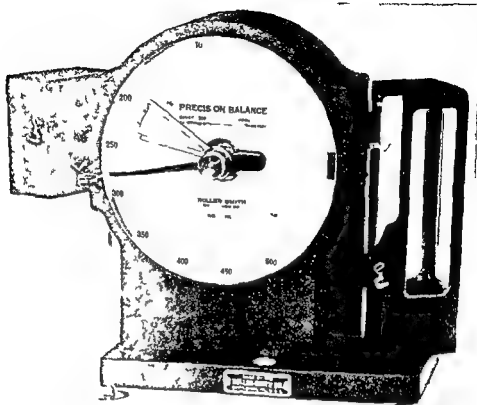


Fig 9—The Roller Smith Precision Balance Model III (Reproduced with the permission of the manufacturers)

- (3) The back plate screws should now be taken out and the mechanism removed from the rear taking care that the beam hooks are not injured when the mechanism is withdrawn from the case
- (4) Jewels and pivots in the balance should never be oiled as oil at these points will in time collect dust and become gummy thus introducing friction into the bearings. The central knob which rotates the spindle should always be perfectly free to rotate and when an instrument is being overhauled it is a good plan to lubricate this spindle which has a bearing in the cross arm. The lubrication should be done with a little tallow.

2 Damped Balances

a. General Principles

For the sake of speed without sacrifice of accuracy it is convenient to use damped balances either magnetic or air damped. We prefer the air damped balance in which an inner and outer damping cylinder are never in contact with each other and are affected only by air friction. The action is so adjusted that the balance remains stationary after only one or two oscillations.

b. General Construction of the Sartorius Air Damped Balance

This balance has a multiple rider device for weights from one gram down to 10 mg. For simplicity in reading an illuminated projection reader is switched on automatically when the beam is released making values from 0.1 to 10 mg easy to read. All parts of the reader are so arranged that opening of the doors has no effect on its adjustments. Small errors in the zero point may be corrected by means of a special knob which is operated from the outside. This balance has a capacity of 90 gm with a sensitivity of 0.1 mg.

c. Adjusting the Balance

- (1) Level the case with the pillar on the bench by means of the leveling screws on the legs.
- (2) Place the luted lock knob entirely into the hollow body bar in the middle of the plane and the two lock bolts into the holes made for this purpose. These are on the left and right hand side of the pillar.
- (3) Switch off the lock knob and if the control bar is inside the pillar the lock mechanism rises and drops regularly.
- (4) Fit the beam on the center agate knife edge with the balance in the locked state and then check it.
- (5) Lock the balance again and fit the suspensions so that the holes are in and out and side. Then hang the pans in place.
- (6) On the right and left hand side of the pillar top are two very light aluminum bells that have two gaps at the bottom.
- (7) Remove the bottom and put them into the outside cylinder in order to hang them on the respective suspension hooks.
- (8) After hanging the inside cylinders shut the bells with the previously removed bottoms but before fixing the pans it is advisable to make sure that the marks on each bell are in the right position.
- (9) Make sure when releasing the balance that the inside cylinders do not touch the outside ones. Then be certain that the balance rests at zero. If not use the correction screws at either the left or right hand side of the beams.
- (10) The balance is then put in order by turning the knob outside the case.
- (11) The annular riders for external mechanical application of the weights are hung from the heaviest to the lightest that is from 500 to 10 mg on the double hook.

d. Calibrating the Balance

- (1) Before starting to use the balance set at zero by turning the sensitivity screws on the left or right hand side of the beam.

TABLE 2

TOLERANCES ESTABLISHED BY THE U S BUREAU OF STANDARDS FOR VOLUMETRIC APPARATUS

ITEM	PERMISSIBLE TOLERANCES (ML) FOR DIFFERENT SIZES											
	COMMON (E.G. 'EXACT')						BUREAU OF STANDARDS (E.G. NORMAL)					
	0.1 ml	0.2 ml	1 ml	5 ml	10 ml		0.1 ml	0.2 ml	1 ml	5 ml	10 ml	
PIPETTES												
Ostwald	-	-	0.1	0.12	0.2	0.4	-	-	-	0.06	0.1	0
Volumetric	-	-	0.1	0.12	0.2	0.4	-	-	-	0.06	0.1	0.2
Exerological	-	-	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.6	-	-	-	0.1	0.2	0.3
Van Slyke Neill (for blood)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.06	0.06	-	-
Micro	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.01	0.02	-	-	-	-
BURETTES												
All types	10 ml	10 ml	5 ml	50 ml	100 ml		5 ml	10 ml	5 ml	50 ml	100 ml	
VOLUMETRIC FLASKS												
All types	0.1 ml	0.2 ml	0.5 ml	1 ml	10 ml	500 ml	0.1 ml	0.2 ml	0.5 ml	1 ml	50 ml	100 ml
GRADUATED CYLINDERS												
All types	0.1 ml	0.2 ml	0.5 ml	1 ml	10 ml	500 ml	0.1 ml	0.2 ml	0.5 ml	1 ml	50 ml	100 ml
All types	10 ml	30 ml	40 ml	60 ml	100 ml	200 ml	0.8 ml	1.4 ml	0 ml	0.5 ml	1.1 ml	1.50 ml

- () Place a 10 mg weight on the right pan release the balance and check the weight on the glass screen indicator It should read exactly 10 mg If not adjust the calibration screws until the reading is correct
- (3) Then repeat the process by placing the weight on the left pan
- (4) If the oscillations are too small raise the sensitivity screw in the center of the beam and if too violent lower the screw
- (5) Be sure the pivot is not twisted otherwise the zero point will be off

■ Operation of the Instrument

The operation is the same as for any analytical balance

I VOLUMETRIC ANALYSIS

Reference

Pfeiffer E L and Mulligan G C U S Bureau of Standards Testing of Glass Volumetric Apparatus Circular C434 Washington 1941 U S Government Printing Office

1 Definition of Volumetric Analysis

By volumetric analysis is meant quantitative analysis by the use of a measured amount of standard solutions The two aspects discussed below are first volumetric apparatus and second the preparation and standardization of common solutions

2 Volumetric Apparatus

a Pipettes

- (1) *Common Pipettes* Many kinds of pipettes are used of which some of the more common kinds are illustrated in Fig 10 Calibrated pipettes differ in their accuracy the common commercial kind (e.g. Exax) having the widest tolerance and those calibrated to Bureau of Standards specifications the closest tolerance (e.g. Normax) Table 1 lists permitted tolerance for pipettes burettes volumetric flasks and graduated cylinders All pipettes are calibrated at 20°C and are marked either TD (to deliver) or TC (to contain) TD (to deliver) does not specify how delivery is to be made Hence there are two kinds of TD pipettes (a) pipettes with frosted tips must be blown out and (b) pipettes with no frosted band on the stem must be allowed to drain against the side of the vessel for the time specified on the pipette Bureau of Standards pipettes have been calibrated at the Bureau of Standards and carry individual calibration certificates Pipettes calibrated by the company (e.g. Normax) are guaranteed to fall within Bureau of Standards tolerances When pipettes are marked TC (to contain) it is necessary either to use a nonwetting liquid such as mercury or to wash the pipette out pooling the wash fluid with the original sample
- () *Syringe Pipettes* It is very convenient to use syringe pipettes for sampling (See Fig 11 Procurable from Macalaster-Bicknell Co Cambridge Mass) These syringe pipettes were developed by Krogh and are calibrated in the same manner as ordinary pipettes They can be adjusted to any volume from 0.1 ml to 10.0 ml For the analysis of food and feces we have found it convenient to calibrate a Luer Lok syringe because of the large bore at the tip of the syringe The syringe makes the sampling much easier

b Burettes

- (1) *Common Burettes* Burettes are procurable with different tolerances of accuracy (Table 2) but there is no real economy in purchasing other than those with the greatest accuracy (e.g. Normax) since few laboratories use many burettes.

- (2) *Microburettes* When titrating small amounts of solution (as in serum potassium analysis when 0.05 ml of 0.1 N sodium thiosulfate is needed) we have found it convenient to use a Rehberg microburette (See Figs 1° 13. Procureable from Macalaster Bocknell Co., Cambridge, Mass). This is a capillary burette with a capacity of 0.1 or 0.2 ml and is graduated into fractions of 0.001 ml. At the lower end of the burette the capillary tubing bore becomes larger and is filled with mercury so that a turn of the screw causes the mercury to deliver aqueous

VARIETIES OF PIPETTES

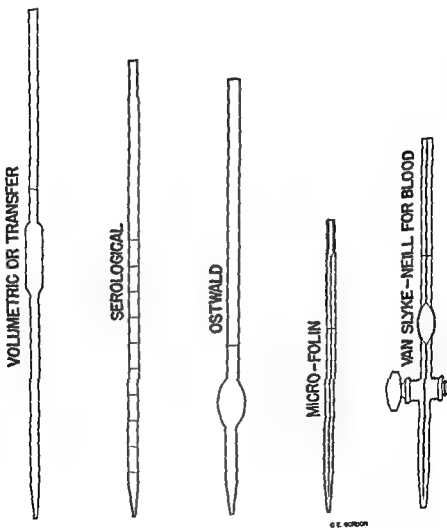
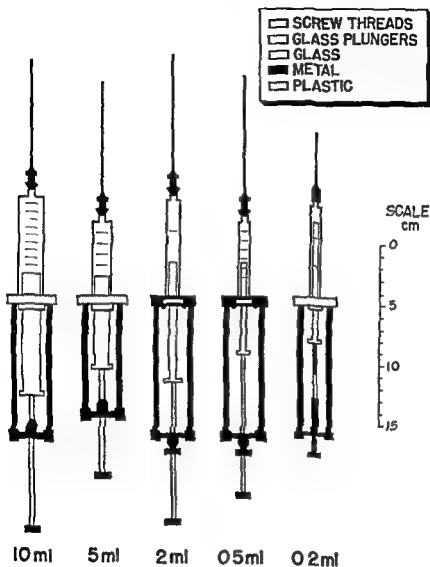


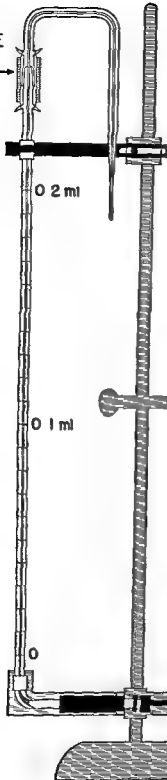
Fig 10—Common kind of volumetric pipettes.



SYRINGE PIPETTES

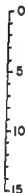
G. E. GORDON

SPRING TYPE
JOINT



TO AIR
PRESS

SCALE
cm.



SCREW TYPE
MERCURY PLUNGER

REHBERG MICRO BURETTE

c. e. 60308

KROGH BURETTE SYRINGE TYPE

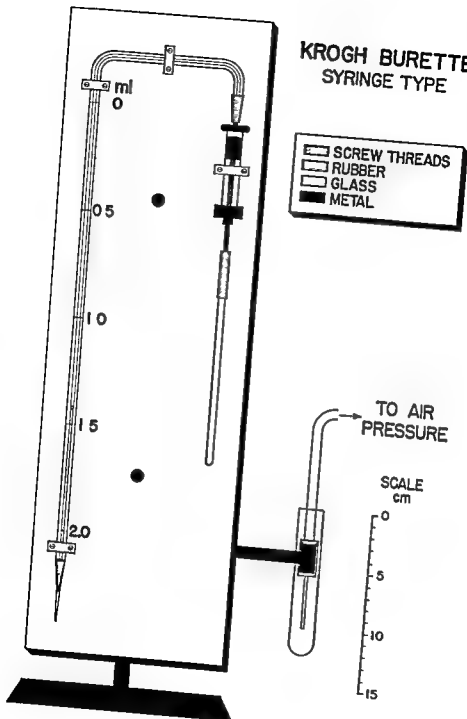


Fig. 12.

G. E. GORDON

solutions with the greatest of accuracy. The tip of the burette is on a greased swivel joint that makes titrating convenient.

- (3) *Syringe Screw Burette* This was popularized by Krogh. (For an illustration see Fig. 13.) This burette has a capacity of 2 or 3 ml and is graduated to 0.01 ml. In titrations a twist of the screw delivers any fraction of a drop with great precision.

MICROMETER BURETTE

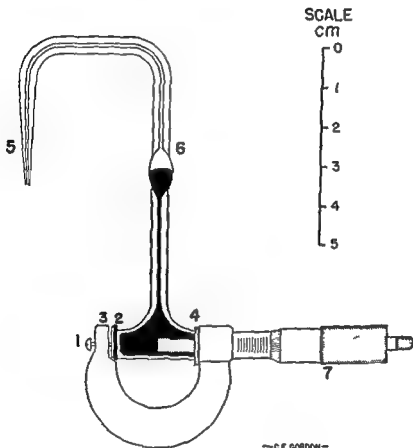


Fig. 14—Scholander's micrometer burette. (Redrawn with permission of the author.)

3 Calibration of Volumetric Apparatus

For most purposes volumetric apparatus is calibrated by weighing mercury or water delivered under the conditions of use of the apparatus. At the same time the temperature of the fluid is measured and the specific gravity of the mercury or water is found in standard tables. The volume delivered then equals the weight of the fluid divided by the density at the given tem-

perature For quick and extremely accurate calibration of micro apparatus especially pipettes and burettes the Scholander micrometer burette is excellent (Scholander P F 'Microburette' Science 95 177 178 Feb 1942 See Fig 14)

a. Principle of the Scholander Micrometer Burette

Mercury is displaced by the spindle of a machinist's micrometer The great precision of this kind of micrometer enables volumetric readings to be made with an accuracy of 0.0003 ml

b. Construction of a Micrometer Burette (Fig 14)

- (1) Procure a machinist's micrometer with jaws of capacity 1 to 2 inches The best procurable micrometer should be purchased since only good ones have complete linearity of scale
- (2) Replace the anvil with a set screw (#1 Fig 14)
- (3) The lower part of the burette is a cylindrical reservoir with a ground plane thick bottom and plane ground opening and an internal diameter just enough to clear the spindle
- (4) A fiber ring (#2) is placed on the closed end of the reservoir and next to it is placed a steel disk (#3) with a center punch to receive the set screw
- (5) A fiber washer (#4) greased with a heavy stop-cock grease is placed at the open end
- (6) Fasten the reservoir in the micrometer frame Mercury will not leak through the spindle bearing when it is properly greased
- (7) If a small spindle is used the fiber washer (#4) must be reamed to a perfectly tight fit around the spindle which will then be proof against leakage of mercury
- (8) The micrometer frame is clamped to a convenient stand and by movement of the spindle mercury is sucked in to fill the reservoir
- (9) When the spindle is screwed out far enough to be level with the fiber washer air bubbles can be readily brought up into the funnel shaped opening to the capillary For proper functioning of the burette it is essential that the whole mercury containing system be free of air The reservoir is air free when there is no visible bouncing when the mercury column is moved quickly from one place to another in the dry burette The last traces of air are removed by applying vacuum suction at the burette tip while the micrometer spindle is moved in and out

c. Calibration of the Microburette

- (1) Note that the precise size and shape of the glass part are immaterial It is only the mercury expelled from the micrometer that is actually measured
- (2) Bring the micrometer close to 10 making sure that mercury fills the burette exactly to the tip Read
- (3) Into a weighed vessel force mercury until the micrometer reads close to 0 Read again
- (4) Measure the temperature of the burette by laying a thermometer alongside
- (5) Reweigh the vessel
- (6) From standard tables find the density of mercury at the observed micrometer temperature
- (7) Compute the calibration constant of the burette from the equation

$$\text{Milliliters per scale division} = \frac{(\text{mg Hg})}{(\text{density Hg})} \div (\text{Reading 1 minus Reading 2})$$

- (8) For greatest accuracy recalibrate by successive tenths of an inch with weighings each time

d Calibration of Apparatus With the Scholander Micrometer Burette

- (1) Note that for calibration of other apparatus the temperature of the micrometer and of the apparatus calibrated must be the same but that the absolute temperature is immaterial. This is so because the initial calibration of the micrometer burette gives calibration constant equating scale divisions of the micrometer with volume.
- (2) As an example let us assume that a serological pipette of 0.1 ml capacity is to be calibrated.
 - (a) Place tightly on the tip of the burette a piece of strong capillary rubber tubing extending about 2 cm beyond the burette tip.
 - (b) Make sure that the micrometer is filled almost to 10.
 - (c) Insert firmly the mouth end of the pipette and clamp it almost horizontal, with the tip end slightly higher than the mouth end. (If the pipette is clamped upright subsequent pressure of the mercury column might give erroneous readings or even spillage.)
 - (d) Manipulate micrometer until mercury column is exactly at top mark of pipette.
 - (e) Read micrometer.
 - (f) Force mercury column exactly to tip of pipette.
 - (g) Read micrometer again.
 - (h) Calculate volume of pipette as follows:

$$\text{ml in pipette} = (\text{Reading 1 minus Reading 2}) \times (\text{Micrometer calibration})$$

4 Standard Solutions**a. Definitions**

- (1) The *atomic weight* of an element is the relative weight of its atom compared to the common isotope of oxygen as 16.
- (2) The *molecular weight* of a compound is the sum of the atomic weights of all the atoms composing the molecule.
- (3) The *equivalent weight* or *combining weight* of an element or compound is that weight which will react with or release 8 units of oxygen or any equivalent thereof. Equivalent weight depends upon the specific reaction under consideration.
 - (a) The *gram equivalent* is the equivalent weight in grams.
 - (b) The *milliequivalent (mEq)* is the equivalent weight in milligrams.
- (4) A *molar solution* contains one gram molecular weight in 1 liter e.g. a molar solution of sulfuric acid contains 98.08 gm of sulfuric acid diluted to a liter of solution.
- (5) A *normal solution* contains one gram equivalent weight of a substance in a liter of solution. The gram equivalent weight depends upon the reaction for which the substance is used. E.g. a normal solution of sulfuric acid will contain $\frac{98.08}{2} = 49.04$ gm of the acid diluted to one liter with water.
- (6) A *normal reducing solution* contains in one liter of solution one gram of oxidizable hydrogen or its equivalent in other reducing substances. Oxalic acid ($\text{H}_2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$) contains two hydrogen atoms oxidizable by potassium permanganate (KMnO_4) so that its normal reducing solution contains $\frac{1}{2} \frac{6}{3} = 63$ gm per liter.
- (7) One liter of a *normal oxidizing solution* will oxidize one gram atom of hydrogen or equivalent reducing substance. A normal solution of KMnO_4 for use in the reaction with oxalic acid contains $\frac{158.03}{5} = 31.606$ gm per liter.

■ Preparations of Standard Solutions

a. Hydrochloric Acid HCl , mol. wt. 36.47

- (1) Preparation of 1.000 N Solution Mix 500 ml of water and 500 ml of concentrated hydrochloric acid (sp gr 1.19). At 25°C adjust density to 1.096 with more acid or water as needed. Distill at the rate of 3-4 ml/minute and collect the last quarter of the distillate for use. Record the barometric pressure during distillation. Prepare exactly 1.000 N HCl by use of the following table.

Barometric Pressure mm Hg	HCl Concentration % by weight	Required for One Liter 1.000 N HCl gm
730	0.93	179.56
740	0.69	179.77
750	0.45	179.98
760	0.21	180.19
770	0.197	180.41

Prepare standard hydrochloric acid by diluting the proper weight of HCl to volume. Eg. Barometric pressure is 760. To prepare exactly 1.000 N HCl weigh out exactly 180.19 gm of distillate and dilute to 1 liter with water.

- (2) Standardization This is primary standard and needs no standardization.

b. Potassium Hydrogen Phthalate $\text{C}_8\text{H}_5(\text{COOH})\text{COOK}$, mol. wt. 204.14

- (1) Preparation of 0.1000 N Solution Obtain pure dry salt from the U. S. Bureau of Standards. Dilute 0.414 gm to 1 liter with water. When titrating with this solution use phenolphthalein for indicator. Before the end point is reached boil the aliquot being titrated so as to remove dissolved CO_2 .

- (2) Standardization This is a primary standard and needs no standardization.

c. Sodium Hydroxide NaOH , mol. wt. 40.01

- (1) Stock Concentrated Solution For many purposes it is desirable to keep on hand a concentrated solution. In a 500 ml Pyrex flask or bottle mix approximately 90 gm NaOH and 90 ml water. Cool and stopper with a rubber not glass stopper. This keeps indefinitely but should not be exposed to air except as necessary. Carbonates are practically insoluble at this concentration and will settle out. The supernatant fluid is approximately 1.5 N in NaOH .

- (2) Preparation of 1.000 N Sodium Hydroxide Boil approximately 1400 ml of distilled water to remove CO_2 and cool to room temperature. Decant or filter through asbestos 60-90 ml of concentrated stock solution. Dilute 50 ml of this to exactly one liter with boiled distilled water.

- (3) Standardization Using phenolphthalein as indicator and standard potassium acid phthalate in the burette pipette 20 ml portions of sodium hydroxide into 50 ml Erlenmeyer flasks. Add approximately 15 ml of the standard acid bring to boil and titrate to end point. If alkali is over 1.000 N add water according to the following equation.

To 1000 ml of NaOH add $(1000) \times (\text{actual normality} - 1.000)$

Repeat standardization until exactly 1.000 N is reached. Store in Pyrex with rubber not glass stopper. Avoid exposure to air.

d. Oxalic Acid, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_2\text{O}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ mol. wt. 126.06

- (1) Preparation of 0.1000 N Solution Dissolve exactly 6.303 gm of pure dry oxalic acid in water and dilute to 1 liter. This keeps indefinitely.

- (2) Standardization Titrate against hot sodium hydroxide with phenolphthalein as indicator.

76 Instrumentation

d. Calibration of Apparatus With the Scholander Micrometer Burette

- (1) Note that for calibration of other apparatus the temperature of the micrometer and of the apparatus calibrated must be the same, but that the absolute temperature is immaterial. This is so because the initial calibration of the micrometer burette gives calibration constant equating scale divisions of the micrometer with volume.
- (2) As an example let us assume that a serological pipette of 0.1 ml capacity is to be calibrated.
 - (a) Place tightly on the tip of the burette a piece of strong capillary rubber tubing extending about 2 cm beyond the burette tip
 - (b) Make sure that the micrometer is filled almost to 10
 - (c) Insert firmly the mouth end of the pipette and clamp it almost horizontal, with the tip end slightly higher than the mouth end. (If the pipette is clamped upright subsequent pressure of the mercury column might give erroneous readings or even spillage.)
 - (d) Manipulate micrometer until mercury column is exactly at top mark of pipette
 - (e) Read micrometer
 - (f) Force mercury column exactly to tip of pipette
 - (g) Read micrometer again
 - (h) Calculate volume of pipette as follows

$$\text{ml in pipette} = (\text{Reading 1 minus Reading 2}) \times (\text{Micrometer calibration})$$

4 Standard Solutions

a. Definitions

- (1) The *atomic weight* of an element is the relative weight of its atom compared to the common isotope of oxygen as 16.
- (2) The *molecular weight* of a compound is the sum of the atomic weights of all the atoms composing the molecule.
- (3) The *equivalent weight* or *combining weight* of an element or compound is that weight which will react with or release 8 units of oxygen or any equivalent thereof. Equivalent weight depends upon the specific reaction under consideration.
 - (a) The *gram equivalent* is the equivalent weight in grams
 - (b) The *miliequivalent (mEq)* is the equivalent weight in milligrams
- (4) A *molar solution* contains one gram molecular weight in 1 liter. e.g. a molar solution of sulfuric acid contains 98.08 gm of sulfuric acid diluted to a liter of solution.
- (5) A *normal solution* contains one gram equivalent weight of a substance in a liter of solution. The gram equivalent weight depends upon the reaction for which the substance is used. E.g. a normal solution of sulfuric acid will contain $\frac{98.08}{2} = 49.04$ gm of the acid diluted to one liter with water.
- (6) A *normal reducing solution* contains in one liter of solution one gram of oxidizable hydrogen or its equivalent in other reducing substances. Oxalic acid ($\text{H}_2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$) contains two hydrogen atoms oxidizable by potassium permanganate (KMnO_4) so that its normal reducing solution contains $\frac{126}{2} = 63$ gm per liter.
- (7) One liter of a *normal oxidizing solution* will oxidize one gram atom of hydrogen or equivalent reducing substance. A normal solution of KMnO_4 for use in the reaction with oxalic acid contains $\frac{158.03}{5} = 31.606$ gm per liter.

■ Preparations of Standard Solutions

a. Hydrochloric Acid HCl , mol. wt. 36.47

- (1) Preparation of 1000 N Solution Mix 500 ml of water and 500 ml of concentrated hydrochloric acid (sp gr 1.2). At 20°C adjust density to 1.098 with more acid or water as needed. Distill at the rate of 3-4 ml/minute and collect the last quarter of the distillate for use. Record the barometric pressure during distillation. Prepare exactly 1000 N HCl by use of the following table.

Barometric Pressure mm Hg	HCl Concentration % by weight	Required for One Liter 1000 N HCl gm
730	0.93	179.56
740	0.99	179.77
750	0.40	179.98
760	0.1	180.19
770	0.197	180.41

Prepare standard hydrochloric acid by diluting the proper weight of HCl to volume. Eg. Barometric pressure is 760. To prepare exactly 1000 N HCl weigh out exactly 180.19 gm of distillate and dilute to 1 liter with water.

- (2) Standardization This is primary standard and needs no standardization.

b. Potassium Hydrogen Phthalate $\text{C}_8\text{H}_5(\text{COOH})\text{COOK}$, mol. wt. 204.14

- (1) Preparation of 0.1000 N Solution Obtain pure dry salt from the U. S. Bureau of Standards. Dilute 0.414 gm to 1 liter with water. When titrating with this solution use phenolphthalein for indicator. Before the end point is reached boil the aliquot being titrated so as to remove dissolved CO_2 .
- (2) Standardization This is a primary standard and needs no standardization.

c. Sodium Hydroxide NaOH , mol. wt. 40.01

- (1) Stock Concentrated Solution For many purposes it is desirable to keep on hand a concentrated solution. In a 500 ml Pyrex flask or bottle mix approximately 200 gm NaOH and 300 ml water. Cool and stopper with a rubber not glass stopper. This keeps indefinitely but should not be exposed to air except as necessary. Carbonates are practically insoluble at this concentration and will settle out. The supernatant fluid is approximately 17 N in NaOH .
- (2) Preparation of 1000 N Sodium Hydroxide Boil approximately 1400 ml of distilled water to remove CO_2 and cool to room temperature. Decant or filter through asbestos 70 ml of concentrated stock solution. Dilute 59 ml of this to exactly one liter with boiled & distilled water.
- (3) Standardization Using phenolphthalein as indicator and standard potassium acid phthalate in the burette pipette 0 ml portions of sodium hydroxide into 50 ml Erlenmeyer flasks. Add approximately 15 ml of the standard acid bring to boil and titrate to end point. If alkali is over 1000 N add water according to the following equation:
- To 1000 ml of NaOH add $(1000) \times (\text{actual normality} - 1000)$
- Stop at standardization until exactly 1000 N is reached. Store in Pyrex with rubber not glass stopper. Avoid exposure to air.

d. Oxalic Acid, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_2\text{O}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ mol. wt. 126.06

- (1) Preparation of 0.1000 N Solution Dissolve exactly 6.303 gm of pure dry oxalic acid in water and dilute to 1 liter. This keeps indefinitely.
- (2) Standardization Titrate against hot sodium hydroxide with phenolphthalein as indicator.

78 Instrumentation

m Sulfuric Acid, H_2SO_4 , mol. wt. 98.08

- (1) Preparation of 1 N Solution Add about 500 ml water to a 1 liter volumetric flask Add approximately 29 ml of concentration sulfuric acid ($sp \approx 1.84$) Dilute to 1 liter with water
- (2) Standardization Titrate against standard sodium hydroxide The concentration should be near 1 N

f Benzoic Acid C_6H_5COOH mol wt 122.05

- (1) Preparation of 0.1000 N Solution Weigh out exactly 12.205 gm dry acid into a one liter volumetric flask Add about 500 ml warm 95% ethyl alcohol, dissolve and dilute to 1 liter
- (2) Standardization Titrate against hot sodium hydroxide using phenolphthalein as indicator

g Silver Nitrate $AgNO_3$ mol wt. 169.89

- (1) Preparation of 0.1000 N Solution Dissolve 16.989 gm pure fused silver nitrate in water add about 100 ml of concentrated nitric acid and dilute to 1 liter Keep in the dark in a brown bottle
- (2) Standardization This may be used as a primary standard without standardization However if standardization is desired a gravimetric procedure is recommended as follows
 - (a) Make an approximately 1% solution of HCl by diluting 100 ml of concentrated HCl with 900 ml of water
 - (b) Running triplicates prepare 250 ml beakers with exactly 50 ml of silver nitrate solution
 - (c) With stirring add 75 ml of HCl small portions at a time
 - (d) Bring to boil and allow to cool and settle in the dark
 - (e) Saving all washings filter through weighed sintered glass filter Wash with 5 successive 50 ml portions of water containing a few drops of nitric acid and test the last washing with silver nitrate for presence of chloride If negative wash with two 50 ml portions of plain water
 - (f) Record volume and temperature of total washings
 - (g) Dry precipitate to constant weight at 110 C
 - (h) Calculation

$$\text{Normality of } AgNO_3 = \frac{(\text{gm ppt}) + \left(\frac{\text{total ml washings}}{1000} \times \text{loss/liter} \right)}{\left(\frac{\text{ml } AgNO_3 \text{ used}}{1000} \right) \times (143.34)}$$

- (i) Solubility of $AgCl$ in 1% HCl is
 0.000 gm $AgCl$ /l at 20 C and
 0.0027 gm $AgCl$ /l at 30 C

n Potassium Thiocyanate $KSCN$ mol. wt 97.16

- (1) Preparation of 0.10 N Solution Dissolve 9.8 gm $KSCN$ in water and dilute to 1 liter
- (2) Standardization To 20 ml of 0.1000 N $AgNO_3$ add 5 ml concentrated HNO_3 5 ml of water and 1 ml of saturated aqueous ferric alum solution Titrate with $KSCN$ to the first permanent salmon pink color

i Sodium Oxalate $Na_2C_2O_4$ mol. wt. 133.99

- (1) Preparation of 0.1000 N Solution Weigh out exactly 6.700 gm of pure dry salt (Bureau of Standards) Dissolve and dilute to 1 liter with water
- (2) Standardization This is a primary standard and requires no standardization.

j. Potassium Permanganate KMnO_4 , mol. wt. 158.03

- (1) Preparation of 0.1 N Solution Dissolve approximately 3.3 gm pure KMnO_4 in 1 liter of water. This must age. Let stand in dark several months and filter through asbestos.
- (2) Standardization To 20 ml of 0.1000 N sodium oxalate in a 500 ml Erlenmeyer flask add 80 ml of water and 3 ml of concentrated H_2SO_4 . Heat to 60°C and titrate to first pink persisting 30 seconds. Be sure to run adequate numbers of blanks.

k. Potassium Iodate KIO_3 , mol. wt. 214.03

- (1) Preparation of 0.1000 N Solution Weigh out exactly 3.06 gm pure dry KIO_3 dissolve in water and dilute to 1 liter.
- (2) Standardization This is a primary standard and need no standardization.

l. Potassium Dichromate $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$, mol. wt. 294.23

- (1) Preparation of 0.1000 N Solution Dissolve exactly 4.904 gm of pure salt in water and dilute to exactly 1 liter.
- (2) Standardization This may be used as a primary standard.

m. Sodium Thiosulfate $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$, mol. wt. 248.19

- (1) Preparation of 0.1000 N Solution Dissolve 4.819 gm of pure salt in approximately 100 ml water and add 1 ml of approximately 1 N NaOH . Dilute to 1 liter with water.
- (2) Standardization against Iodate To 5 ml of standard 0.1000 N iodate in an Erlenmeyer flask add 10 ml of 10% KI and 5 ml of 1 N H_2SO_4 or HCl . Titrate with thiosulfate until the solution is pale yellow. Add a few drops of aqueous starch solution (2%) and titrate to disappearance of blue color.
- (3) Standardization against Permanganate Dissolve approximately 1 gm of KI in 10 ml of water. Add approximately 3 ml of concentrated HCl and pipette exactly 5 ml of 0.1000 N KMnO_4 . Titrate with thiosulfate until bright yellow, then add $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 ml of 1% starch and titrate to disappearance of the blue color.
- (4) Standardization with Dichromate In a 500 ml Erlenmeyer flask mix approximately 300 ml of water, 5 gm of KI , 4 gm of NaHCO_3 and then excess of concentrated HCl . Add exactly 10 ml of 0.1000 potassium dichromate and let stand in the dark 10 minutes. Titrate with thiosulfate using $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 ml of 1% starch as indicator.

n. Iodine I_2 , mol. wt. 253.82

- (1) Preparation of 0.1 N Solution In approximately 50 ml of water dissolve 30 gm of pure potassium iodide and 13 gm of iodine (resublimed). Dilute with water to 1 liter.
- (2) Standardization In a 100 ml Erlenmeyer flask mix exactly 10 ml of iodine and approximately 100 ml of water. Titrate with 0.1000 N thiosulfate to faint yellow. Add approximately 1 ml of 1% starch solution and titrate to disappearance of blue color.

J INSTRUMENTATION MISCELLANEOUS REFERENCES**Balance**

Lowry O H Simple Quartz Torsion Balance J Biol Chem 152 209, 24 (Feb) 1944

Burette

Longwell H and Hill R M A Modified Rebb's Burette for Titrating Solutions Which React With Mercury J Biol Chem 112 3133 (Dec) 1936

Scholander I P, Edwards H A and Irving L Improved Microburette Apparatus J Biol Chem 148 493-500 (June) 1943

Scholander I P Microburette, Science 83 171-8 (Feb) 1941

Fehberg L B A Method of Microtitration Biochem J 19 (1) 0 (Feb) 1925

80 Instrumentation

Electron Microscope

Wyckoff, H W G *Electron Microscopy Technique and Applications* New York 1949
Interscience Publishers, p 248

Electrophoresis

Abramson H A Moyer L S and Gorin M H *Electrophoresis of Proteins* New York
1949 Reinhold Publishing Corp

Alberty R A *An Introduction to Electrophoresis I Methods and Calculations* J Chem
Ed 25 496 433 (Aug) 1948

Bluz G and Pedersen K O *Electrophoresis and Ultracentrifugation of Lipids Free Hu
man Serum* Acta Chem Scandnav 1 (5) 511 590 1947

Jager B V Schwartz T B Smith E L, Nickerson M and Brown D M *Comparative
Electrophoretic and Chemical Estimation of Human Serum Albumin an Evaluation
of Six Methods* J Lab & Clin Med 35 76 86 (Jan) 1950

Labhart H and Staub H *Mikro Elektrophoresis*, Helv Chim Acta 30 () 1954 1964
1947

Lang E R Van Winkle Q and France W H *Electrophoresis in an Ultracentrifugal
Field* J Colloid Sci 2 315 332 (June) 1947

Longworth L G *A Modification of the Schlieren Method for Use in Electrophoretic
Analysis* J Am Chem Soc 61 549 530 (Feb) 1939

Longworth L G *The Quantitative Interpretation of the Electrophoretic Pattern of
Proteins* J Physical & Colloid Chem 51 171 183 (Jan) 1947

Moore D H and White J U *A New Compact Tiselius Electrophoresis Apparatus* Rev
Sci Instr 19 700 706 (Oct) 1948

Popyak G and McCarthy, E I *Osmotic Pressure of Experimental and Human Lipaemic
Sera Evaluation of Albumin Globulin Ratios With the Aid of Electrophoresis*
Biochem J 40 789 803 1946

Stern K G *Aminco Stern Electrophoresis Apparatus* American Instrument Company
Silver Springs Md Bull No 4175 (June) 1949

Flame Photometer

Domingo W R, and Klyne W *Photoelectric Flame Photometer* Biochem J 45 400
408 1949

Gas Analysis

Scholander P F and Evans H J *Microanalysis of Fractions of a Cubic Millimeter of
Gas* J Biol Chem 169 (3) 551 560 (Aug) 1947

Scholander P F and Irving L *Micro Blood Gas Analysis in Fractions of a Cubic
Millimeter of Blood* J Biol Chem 169 (3) 561 569 (Aug) 1947

Infrared Spectrometer

Gore H C *Infrared Spectrometry of Small Samples With the Reflecting Microscope*
Science 110 710 711 (Dec) 1949

Manometric Techniques

Dixon M *Manometric Methods as Applied to the Measurement of Cell Respiration and
Other Processes* ed 2 London 1943 Cambridge University Press

Holmes E *The Metabolism of Living Tissues* New York 1937, The Macmillan Company

Laser H and Rothschild L *A New Manometric Method for Determination of Respira
tory Quotients* Biochem J 45 93 91, 1949

Umbreit W W Burris R T and Stauffer J F *Manometric Techniques and Related
Methods for the Study of Tissue Metabolism* 1st ed., 4th Printing Minneapolis
(Feb) 1948 Burgess Publishing Company

Mass Spectrometer

Hipple J A and Shephard M *Mass Spectrometry* Anal Chem 21 3 36 (Jan.) 1949

Kerwin L *New Type Mass Spectrometer* Rev Scient Instruments 21 96 97 (Jan) 1950

Near A O *Mass Spectrometer* Rev Scient Instruments 28 398 1947

Washburn R W *Mass Spectrometer* U S Nav Bull Suppl (March April) 1948.

Wiley H F *A Mass Spectrometer for Isotope Ratio Determinations* Science 110 51
355 (Oct) 1949

Microrespirometer

Scholander P F *Volumetric Microrespirometers* Rev Sci Instr 13 3 33 (Jan) 194

Oximeter

Milikan G A *The Oximeter an Instrument for Measuring Continuously the Oxygen
Saturation of Arterial Blood in Man* Rev Scient Instruments 13 (10) 434 444 (Oct)
1942

- Hemingway A and Taylor C H Laboratory Tests of the Oximeter With Automatic Compensation for Vasomotor Changes *J Lab & Clin Med.* 33 987-991 (Sept) 1944
 Comroe J H Jr., and Walker P Normal Human Arterial Oxygen Saturation Determined by Equilibration With 100% O₂ in Vivo and by the Oximeter *Am J Physiol* 152 365-371 (Feb) 1948

Pipettes

- Shohl A. T A Pipet for Microanalyses *J Am Chem. Soc* 60 417 (Feb) 1938

Polarography

- Kolthoff I M and Lingane J J Polarography (Revised Reprint), New York 1948 Interscience Publishers

Respirometer

- Scholarer P F Volumetric Plastic Micro Respirometer, *Rev Scient Instruments* 21 378-380 (Apr) 1950

Ultracentrifuge

- Pedersen K O Ultracentrifugal Studies on Serum and Serum Fractions *Uppsala, Sweden* 1945, Almquist and Wiksells
 Pickels E G The Ultracentrifuge Practical Aspects of the Ultracentrifugal Analysis of Proteins *Chem Rev* 30 341-355 (June) 1947
 Svedberg T., and Pedersen K O The Ultracentrifuge, London 1940 Oxford University Press

Ultrafiltration

- Lavietes P H Anaerobic Ultrafiltration *J Biol Chem* 100 26-45 (Aug) 1937

Ultramicroanalysis

- Kirk P L Quantitative Ultramicroanalysis, New York 1950 John Wiley & Sons Inc.

80 Instrumentation

Electron Microscope

Wyckoff R W G *Electron Microscopy Technique and Applications*, New York, 1949
Interscience Publishers p 249

Electrophoresis

Abramson H A, Mover L S and Gorin M H *Electrophoresis of Proteins* New York
1942 Reinhold Publishing Corp

Alberty R A *An Introduction to Electrophoresis I Methods and Calculations* J Chem
Ed 25 476-437 (Aug) 1948

Bliz G and Pedersen K O *Electrophoresis and Ultracentrifugation of Lipid Free Fu-*
man Serum Acta Chem Scand 1 (5), 511-520 1947

Jager H V, Schwartz T B, Smith E L, Nickerson M and Brown D M *Comparative*
Electrophoretic and Chemical Estimation of Human Serum Albumin: an Evaluation
of Six Methods J Lab & Clin Med 35 78-86 (Jan) 1950

Leibhart H, and Staub H *Mikro-Elektrophorese*, *Heir (heim) Acta* 50 (7) 194-199
1947

Lang E F, Van Winkle Q and Frantz W G *Electrophoresis in an Ultracentrifugal*
Field J Colloid Sci 2 315-337 (June) 1947

Longworth J G *A Modification of the Schlieren Method for Use in Electrophoretic*
Analysis J Am Chem Soc 61 59-30 (Feb) 1939

Longworth J G *The Quantitative Interpretation of the Electrophoretic Pattern of*
Proteins J Physical & Colloid Chem 51 171-183 (Jan) 1945

Moore D H, and White J U *A New Compact Tiselius Electrophoresis Apparatus* Rev
Sci Instr 19 1007-06 (Oct) 1948

Popjak G and McCarthy E F *Osmotic Pressure of Experimental and Human Lipoprotein*
Sera: Evaluation of Albumin Globulin Ratios With the Aid of Electrophoresis,
Biochem J 40 799-803 1946

Stern K G *Amisco Stern Electrophoresis Apparatus* American Instrument Company
Silver Springs Md, Bull No 2175 (June) 1949

Flame Photometer

Domingo, W R and Klyne W *Photoelectric Flame Photometer* Biochem J 43 400
409 1949

Gas Analysis

Scholander P F and Evans H I *Microanalysis of Fractions of a Cubic Millimeter of*
Ga J Biol Chem 169 (3) 561-560 (Aug) 1947

Scholander, P F and Irving L *Micro Blood Gas Analysis in Fractions of a Cubic*
Millimeter of Blood, J Biol Chem 169 (3) 561-563 (Aug) 1947

Infrared Spectrometer

Gore, R C *Infrared Spectrometry of Small Samples With the Reflecting Microscope*,
Science 110 710-711 (Dec) 1949

Manometric Techniques

Dixon M *Manometric Methods as Applied to the Measurement of Cell Respiration and*
Other Processes ed. London 1943, Cambridge University Press

Holmes F *The Metabolism of Living Tissues* New York 1937 The Macmillan Company

Laser, H and Rothchild L *A New Manometric Method for Determination of Respira-*
tory Quotients Biochem J 45 593-612 1949

Umbreit, W W, Burris R T, and Stauffer J F *Manometric Techniques and Related*
Methods for the Study of Tissue Metabolism 1st ed., 4th Printing, Minneapolis,
(Feb) 1949 Burgess Publishing Company

Mass Spectrometer

Hipple J A and Shephard M *Mass Spectrometry* Anal Chem 21 37-36 (Jan) 1949

Kerwin I *New Type Mass Spectrometer* Rev Scient Instruments 21 96-97 (Jan) 1950

Near A O *Mass Spectrometer* Rev Scient Instruments 18 209 1947

Washburn H W *Mass Spectrometer*, U S Nav Bull Suppl (March-April) 1948

Wile, H F *A Mass Spectrometer for Isotope Ratio Determination* Science 110 354
355 (Oct) 1949

Microrespirometer

Scholander P F *Volumetric Microrespirometers* Rev Sci Instr 13 32-33 (Jan) 1942

Oximeter

Milikan G A *The Oximeter an Instrument for Measuring Continuously the Oxygen*
Saturation of Arterial Blood in Man Rev Scient Instruments 13 (10) 464-464 (Oct)
1942

- Hemingway A., and Taylor G. H. Laboratory Tests of the Oximeter With Automatic Compensation for Vasomotor Changes *J Lab & Clin. Med.* 29 987-991 (Sept.) 1944
 Cumro, J. H. Jr., and Walker P. Normal Human Arterial Oxygen Saturation Determined by Equilibration With 100% O₂ in Vivo and by the Oximeter *Am. J. Physiol.* 152 365-371 (Feb.) 1948

Pipettes

- Shohl A. T. A Pipet for Microanalyses *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 50 417 (Feb.) 1928

Polarography

- Klotzloff I. M. and Lingane J. J. *Polarography* (Revised 3rd print), New York 1946, Interscience Publishers

Respirometer

- Scholander P. F. Volumetric Plastic Micro Respirometer *Rev. Scient. Instruments* 21 783-80 (Apr.) 1950

Ultracentrifuge

- Pedersen K. O. *Ultracentrifugal Studies on Serum and Serum Fractions* Upsala Sweden, 1945 Almqvist and Wiksells
 Pickels E. O. The Ultracentrifuge Practical Aspects of the Ultracentrifugal Analysis of Proteins *Chem. Rev.* 55 341-355 (June) 1945
 Svedberg T. and Pedersen K. O. *The Ultracentrifuge* London 1940 Oxford University Press

Ultrafiltration

- Lavietes P. H. Anaerobic Ultrafiltration *J. Biol. Chem.* 120 267-275 (Aug.) 1937

Ultramicroanalysis

- Kirk P. L. *Quantitative Ultramicroanalysis* New York 1940 John Wiley & Sons Inc.

SECTION IV

BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES

A MINERALS

1 Total Water and Total Solids in Food, Tissue, Cells, Serum and Feces

Reference

Association of Official Agricultural Chemists ' Official and Tentative Methods of Analysis Total Solids Method I Official ' ed. 5, Washington D C 1940 p 712

Principle

The difference in weight between a sample before and after drying at 110 C overnight is the amount of water in the sample The residue represents the total solids of the sample

Apparatus

- 1 A number of weighing bottles with lids
- 2 An analytical balance
- 3 An oven maintained at 110 C
- 4 A desiccator

Reagents

None

Procedure

- 1 Weigh accurately a dry weighing bottle that has been cooled in a desiccator for at least one half hour
- 2 Add the sample and weigh again.
- 3 Open the dish and leave it in a 110 C oven overnight
- 4 Cool in the desiccator close and weigh again.

Calculation

$$1 \text{ gm water } \% = \frac{(\text{Weight of bottle before drying} - \text{weight of bottle after})}{\text{gm sample taken}} \times 100$$

$$2 \text{ gm solids } \% = \frac{(\text{Weight of bottle after drying} - \text{initial weight of bottle})}{\text{gm sample taken}} \times 100$$

Example

Weight of weighing bottle	10.9586 gm
Weight with sample of muscle	12.5543 gm
Weight after drying	11.3507 gm
Therefore, weight of sample	1.5956 gm
weight of residue	0.3921 gm
and weight of water	1.2035 gm

$$\text{gm water } \% = \frac{1.2035}{1.5956} \times 100 = 75.4$$

$$\text{gm solids } \% = \frac{0.3921}{1.5956} \times 100 = 24.6$$

Precautions

- 1 In the presence of unsaturated fat in large concentration the weight of the residue of a specimen sometimes reaches a minimum and then rises again as oxygen is absorbed. It is desirable to make weighings as often as every six hours to determine the minimum.
- 2 In the presence of a high concentration of water preliminary drying on a steam bath is necessary to prevent frothing which often occurs when a sample is placed directly into an oven.

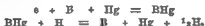
2 Total Base in Serum, Urine Cells and Tissue

Reference

Consolazio W V and Talbott J H The Determination of Total Base in Biological Material by Electrodialysis J Biol Chem. 132 753 67 (Feb) 1940

Principle

The basic ions are electro dialysed into mercury with which they amalgamate. The amalgam is decomposed with standard acid and the excess acid back titrated with standard alkali.



Apparatus

- 1 Total base machine with accessories (Macalaster Bicknell Company Cambridge Massachusetts). An individual unit is illustrated in Fig 15. This includes two milliammeters a pilot lamp a rheostat a shunt and a switch. It is operated at 110 or 20 volts DC the possibility of using lower voltages has not been tested fully. It draws 65 milliamperes at full load. The anode is a platinum electrode fused in a Pyrex cup and connected by a metal socket directly to the source of power. The anode acid conductor of Adair and Keys (Adair H S and Keys A B J Physiol 81 16 1934) has been eliminated. Anode cups should not be cleansed with cleaning solution. Precipitation of chromium on platinum may introduce serious errors. It is recommended that the cups be brushed with water filled with concentrated nitric acid and allowed to stand for several hours. Several rinses with distilled water remove all adherent base.
- 2 #300 plain transparent cellophane (Dupont)
- 3 Rehberg microburette 0 ml
- 4 Slow speed rotating motor for applying collodion
- 5 Membrane tubes. These are prepared as follows. Cut cellophane into 3 inch squares and soak for 5 minutes in distilled water. Apply the wet squares to the open end and opposite the constriction. Now with the thumb and the forefinger pull the wet membrane taut by applying pressure along the tube wall and away from the former opening. The membrane should always be stretched across the grain since this axis has greatest elasticity. A good procedure to follow is to stretch the membrane slightly cross grain before applying it to the membrane tube. Allow the membrane to dry 12 hours. The excess cellophane is now trimmed with a sharp razor or scalpel about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch down the tube wall. The partially made membrane tubes are now rotated parallel to the floor about 20-30 rpm and while they are rotating a thin coat of collodion is applied. Starting at the edge of the tube pour a continuous stream about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch from the tube end. The collodion sets in a minute or two. Care should be taken that collodion does not flow over the membrane face. After drying (35 hours) the finished membrane tubes are rinsed thoroughly with distilled water and stored in distilled water in the refrigerator. Membrane tubes prepared in this fashion have

ELECTRODIALYSIS UNIT FOR TOTAL BASE

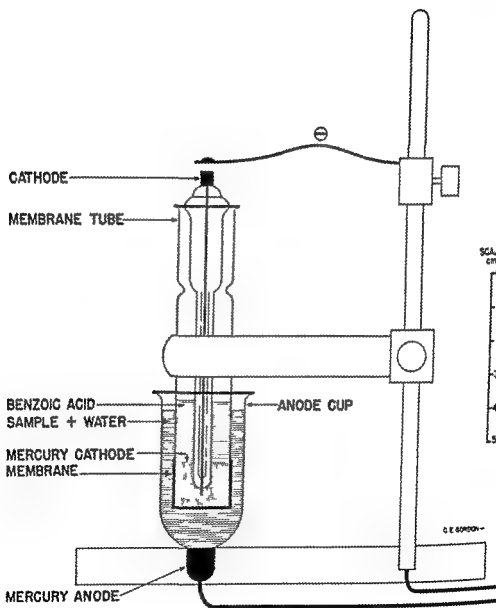


Fig 15

been used successfully two months later. To remove the membranes from dried membrane tubes the collodion seal should be soaked at least 15 minutes in water. It then merely becomes necessary to run the fingernail down the collodion seal and remove the old membrane in one piece.

6 Krogh syringe pipettes 0.2 ml capacity and 1.7 ml capacity

Reagents

- 1 Water glass distilled over alkaline permanganate. It must meet the specifications for conductivity water.
- 2 Mercury base free. Prepare this by cleaning with 5% nitric acid with subsequent thorough washing with distilled water.
- 3 Stock solution of benzoic acid ($\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COOH}$) 1.000 N. Dry benzoic acid by placing it in a vacuum desiccator at least 48 hours. Accurately weigh 122.047 gm dissolved in 100 ml absolute EtOH and make up to liter with absolute EtOH. If stored in the cold it can be kept indefinitely.
- 4 Benzoic acid 0.0 N made from stock solution. Pipette exactly 5 ml of 1.000 N benzoic acid into a 50 ml volumetric flask. Dilute to about 40 ml with glass distilled water with persistent agitation reprecipitated benzoic acid will dissolve. Dilute to mark.
- 5 Sodium hydroxide 0.200 N (Kahlbaum CO free).
- 6 Phenolphthalein 0.10% (Lamotte) dilute 1:1 with EtOH.
- 7 Collodion (Mallinckrodt) CP.
- 8 Standard solution of mixed ions. Dissolve and dilute to exactly one liter with glass distilled water: 8.190 gm NaCl, 0.73 gm KCl, 0.18 gm $\text{CaCl}_2 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ and 0.095 gm MgCl_2 . The resulting solution contains per liter 140 mEq Na, 5 mEq K, 5 mEq Ca^{++} and 2 mEq Mg^{++} making a total base of 150 mEq per liter.
- 9 Concentrated nitric acid.

Procedure

- 1 Wash anode cups with soap suds. Drain, rinse and leave filled with concentrated HNO_3 . Rinse anode cups with distilled water several times then once with glass distilled water.
- 2 From a burette add to each cup approximately 0.5 ml mercury and with a broken tip pipette approximately 10 ml of glass distilled water.
- 3 Add 0.2 ml serum, cells or urine or weighed tissue approximating 0.1 gm (the quantity used depends upon the base content). Rinse several times with water in anode cup keeping the tip of the Krogh (automatic) pipette below the surface of the water to prevent splashing. Then flush out pipette with 2 ml of water. With each run have 0.2 ml of standard total base solution which has to be used for calculating the blank.
- 4 Always rinse membrane tubes several times with distilled water and once with glass distilled water before use. To each membrane tube add approximately 1 ml of mercury.
- 5 Add exactly a measured 1.7 ml of 0.002 N benzoic acid. The amount added depends on base unknown (1.7 ml is equivalent to 170 mEq of base/liter of unknown when 0.2 ml of unknown is used).
- 6 Set membrane tubes in solution in anode cups submerged about 0.5 cm.
- 7 Close circuit by attaching all electrode contacts and turn on current. After letting it run low for 1 hour advance the rheostat and let it run overnight on high. Dialysis is complete when milliammeter indicates no current or not more than 1 milliamperes for all 9 units.
- 8 Remove contacts and lift membrane tube above solution in cups.
- 9 Rinse off electrodes in membrane tubes with 10 ml glass distilled water.
- 10 Add 1 drop of phenolphthalein.
- 11 Titrate to first sign of pink color with 0.0005 N NaOH using Rehberg burette.

Precautions

- 1 In order to avoid erratic results only glass distilled water should be used.
- 2 Water gives irregular blanks therefore use one standard during each group of analyses to obtain the blank correction.

3 Sodium in Serum, Urine Cells Tissues Diets and Stools (Gravimetric Method)

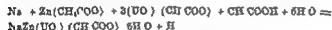
A. IN SERUM

References

- Butler A. M. and Tothall E. An Application of the Zinc Uranyl Acetate Method for Determination of Sodium in Biological Material *J Biol Chem* 93 171 180 (Sept) 1931 193
- Consolazione W. V. and Dill D. B. The Determination of Sodium *J Biol Chem* 157 587 59 (Feb) 1941

Principle

The ash from biological material is treated with uranyl zinc acetate and the triple salt of sodium uranyl zinc acetate is precipitated quantitatively. The precipitate is estimated gravimetrically.



Apparatus

- 1 Jena or Pyrex sintered glass filters (fine)
- 2 Platinum or quartz crucibles 8 ml capacity
- 3 Small electric stirring motor with platinum wire
- 4 Muffle oven set at 600 C
- 5 Electric centrifuge or good analytical filter paper (Whatman #40) and funnels
- 6 Syringe pipettes 10 ml and 0 ml
- 7 Analytical balance
- 8 An oven set at 110 C
- 9 Rubber stoppers #6 solid
- 10 Watch glasses
- 11 Source of suction

Reagents

- 1 Uranyl zinc acetate (UZA)
 - a. 100 gm of sodium free uranyl acetate $\text{UO}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2)_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$
46 ml of acetic acid (CH_3COOH) 30% by volume
Water to make up to 600 gm
 - b. 100 gm of zinc acetate $\text{Zn}(\text{CH}_3\text{COO})_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$
23 ml of acetic acid 30% by volume
Water to make up to 600 gm

Warm both solutions on steam bath. Mix while hot let stand ~4 hours and seed with sodium uranyl zinc acetate. Stir well and filter before using.

Ethyl alcohol (EtOH) 95% saturated with sodium uranyl zinc acetate. Filter before use.

- 3 Sulfuric acid concentrated
- 4 Ethyl ether anhydrous (C_2H_5)₂O
- 5 Calcium hydroxide powdered (sodium free)
- 6 Hydrochloric acid one N (10 ml concentrated HCl in 100 ml of water)
- 7 Sodium uranyl zinc acetate (triple sodium salt)

Procedure

- 1 Pipette exactly 1 ml of serum into a platinum or quartz crucible
- 2 Add one drop of concentrated sulfuric acid and char at 110 ° for at least 15 hours
- 3 Ash in muffle oven (600 °C) overnight
- 4 To the bottom of an accurately weighed sintered glass filter fit a #6 rubber stopper
- 5 Add approximately 15 ml of freshly filtered UZA.
- 6 To the ashed serum add 5 to 7 drops of one N hydrochloric acid.
- 7 By means of a medicine dropper transfer the sample quantitatively to the weighed crucible while mechanically stirring the UZA
- 8 Wash remaining serum ash with three 0.2 ml portions of approximately 0.1 N HCl transferring it to the crucible
- 9 Now wash the crucible with 2 ml of UZA.
- 10 Stir mechanically for a total of 5 minutes. Then raise the stirring rod with 2 ml of UZA cover the crucible with a watch glass and let stand for 30 minutes at room temperature
- 11 Filter the ingredients in crucible by suction
- 12 Using capillary pipettes, wash 5 times with 2 ml portions of freshly filtered 95% alcohol saturated with the triple salt of UZA.
- 13 Then wash 5 times with 2 ml portions of absolute ether
- 14 Dry by vacuum. Clean outside of crucible with a clean cloth and place in a desiccator for 1 hour
- 15 Weigh

Calculation

- 1 If 1.0 ml of serum was used $\text{mEq Na/liter} = (\text{weight of precipitate in grams} - \text{blank in grams}) \times 650$
- 2 To convert mEq Na to mg Na, multiply by 23

Example

- 1 Weight of precipitate was 0.2220 gm and weight of blank was 0.0010 gm, $\text{mEq Na/liter serum} = (0.2220 - 0.0010) \times 650 = 143.0 \text{ mEq/l}$
- 2 $\text{mg Na} = 143.0 \times 23$
- 3 This calculation is assisted by Table 4.

Precautions

- 1 In washing out the precipitate be sure that no water is added as the sodium zinc uranyl acetate precipitate dissolves very readily

TABLE 4 SERUM SODIUMWhen 1 ml of serum is analyzed, $\text{mEq Na/liter} =$

$$(\text{gm ppt} - \text{gm blank}) \times 650 \text{ or} \\ (\text{mg ppt} - \text{mg blank}) \div 0.65$$

MG PPT MINUS MG BLANK	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	MILLEQUIVALENTS SODIUM PER LITER SERUM									
190	1.4	124	1.5	126	1.6	128	1.7	130	1.8	132
200	1.5	131	1.6	133	1.7	135	1.8	137	1.9	139
210	1.6	137	1.7	139	1.8	141	1.9	143	2.0	145
220	1.7	144	1.8	146	1.9	148	2.0	150	2.1	152
230	1.8	150	1.9	152	2.0	154	2.1	156	2.2	158
240	1.9	157	2.0	159	2.1	161	2.2	163	2.3	165
250	2.0	163	2.1	165	2.2	167	2.3	169	2.4	171

92 *Biochemical Procedures*

- 5 To the ash add 0.2 ml of 20% H PtCl
- 6 Agitate the tube for $\frac{1}{2}$ to one minute or until complete solution occurs and K PtCl₃ begins to precipitate
- 7 Add approximately 5 ml absolute EtOH and mix contents thoroughly with stirring rod. Rinse the rod with 1.2 ml absolute EtOH.
- 8 Let the tubes stand for 30 minutes
- 9 Centrifuge gently for 10 minutes at about 1500 rpm
- 10 Aspirate or decant supernatant liquid. (Save it for platinum recovery if desired)
- 11 Wash contents with 5 ml of absolute EtOH mix with stirring rod and rinse rod as before
- 12 Centrifuge again for 2-3 minutes at 1500 rpm, aspirate the supernatant liquid and save residues
- 13 Place tubes in 70 C water bath
- 14 Bring temperature to boiling and slowly maintain for 5-10 minutes until EtOH is completely volatilized. If EtOH is not completely evaporated it will reduce the iodoplatinate to free platinum black
- 15 Leave the tubes in hot water and add approximately 4-5 ml of water to each.
- 16 Dissolve salt (K PtCl₃) completely. If the salt is not dissolved free platinum will be formed upon addition of KI.
- 17 Add approximately 1 ml 2 N KI mix and let stand 5 minutes in hot water
- 18 Then cool and titrate with 0.2 ml Rehberg burette using 0.1000 N Na₂S₂O₃ until complete disappearance of red color. The remaining solution will be lemon yellow. Save the residue for recovery of the platinum present

Calculation

If 1 ml serum used $\text{mEq K/liter serum} = \text{ml of Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3 \times \text{normality} \times 1000$

To convert mEq potassium per liter to mg potassium per 100 ml multiply mEq/liter by 3.9 (i.e. equivalent weight of potassium $\times 1/10$)

Example

Titration figure was 0.0530 ml of 0.1000 N sodium thiosulfate and the blank was 0.0030 ml

$$\text{mEq K/liter of serum} = (0.0530 - 0.0030) \times 0.1000 \times 1000 = 5.0$$

Precautions

- 1 Make certain that all the alcohol is evaporated before adding the water
- 2 Then make certain that the precipitate is dissolved in the water before adding the potassium iodide. (If not free platinum will be formed upon addition of the KI)
- 3 Be sure that the ash is white otherwise muffle again
- 4 It is wise to check the accuracy of the method with a standard solution (see total base)

B POTASSIUM IN RED BLOOD CELLS

Reference

Consolazione W V (Unpublished)

- 1 Pipette exactly 0.1 ml of cells with automatic syringe pipette into quartz or Vycor tube as for serum
- 2 Add 1 drop of saturated sodium sulfate (Na₂SO₄)
- 3 Add 1 drop of H₂SO₄. Dry at 110 C
- 4 In order to ash add 1 drop of concentrated HCl and place in 100 C oven until dry. This step prevents occlusion of K salts on the iron, since all ferric oxide is converted to ferric chloride
- 5 Now proceed as for Serum, steps 4-18

C POTASSIUM IN URINE

- 1 Into a quartz or Vycor tube pipette 2 ml of urine
Add 1 drop of sodium sulfate solution
- 3 Add 1 drop of sulfuric acid solution
- 4 Proceed as for Serum steps 3-18

D POTASSIUM IN DIET STOOLS AND TISSUE

- 1 Use approximately 0.5 to 1 gm for food, feces or tissue. Ash in muffle.
To the proper amount of HCl extract of ash add 1 drop of Na_2SO_4 . Do not add H_2SO_4 .
Dry at 110°C. Do not ash.
- 4 Proceed as for Serum steps 5-18
- 5 Pyrex tubes may be used here in place of quartz tubes since no ashing is employed after step

5 Calcium in Serum, Urine, Food, Tissue and Feces

A. IN SERUM

References

- Kramer H and Tisdall F F. A Simple Technique for the Determination of Calcium and Magnesium in Small Amounts of Serum. *J Biol Chem* 47: 475-481 (Aug.) 1921
- Clark E P and Collip J B. A Study of the Tisdall Method for the Determination of Blood Serum Calcium With a Suggested Modification. *J Biol Chem* 44: 461-464 (March) 1925

Principle

Calcium is precipitated as the oxalate which is titrated in hot acid solution against standard potassium permanganate



Apparatus

- 1 A quantity of 15 ml conical centrifuge tubes
- A water bath with boiling water
- 3 A 3 or 5 ml microburette
- 4 An electric centrifuge
- 5 Accurately calibrated 1 and 2 ml syringe pipettes

Reagents

- 1 Phenol red approximately 0.04% in water
- 2 Ammonium oxalate approximately 45 gm per liter
- 3 Ammonium hydroxide approximately 0.35 N i.e. approximately 2 ml of concentrated NH_4OH diluted to 100 ml with water
- 4 Sulfuric acid approximately N prepared by diluting 3 ml concentrated H_2SO_4 to 100 ml with water
- 5 Standard potassium permanganate 0.01 N. This is best prepared from a well aged 0.1 N standard (3.161 gm KMnO_4 per l) and should be standardized weekly against oxalate as follows:
 - a A standard 0.1 N solution of sodium oxalate is prepared by diluting exactly 6.700 gm of pure dry $\text{Na}_2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4$ to exactly one liter
 - b A standard 0.01 N solution is prepared by diluting exactly 10 ml of the 0.1 N solution to exactly 100 ml.

94 *Biochemical Procedures*

- In conical tubes place exactly 2 ml of the 0.01 N standard and approximately 2 ml of 1 N H₂SO₄. Heat in the water bath at 60-70°C and titrate while hot against the dilute KMnO₄.

d Calculation Normality of dilute KMnO₄ = $\frac{2}{\text{Titration figure in ml}} \times 0.01$

6 Ammonia Approximately a 2% solution

7 Calcium Standard (Primary Standard)

0.250 gm of dry calcium carbonate (pure Iceland spar) in a small amount of water in a 1000 ml flask. Add some dilute HCl (1:10) to dissolve the crystals and then add a few ml of acid in excess. Dilute to 1000 ml with water and mix. This solution is stable indefinitely and contains 0.1 mg of Ca per ml. It corresponds to serum with a Ca content of 10 mg/100 ml.

Procedure

- 1 Pipette exactly 2 ml of serum into a conical tube
- 2 Add approximately 1 ml of ammonium oxalate and 1 drop of phenol red. Mix by rotation of the tube
- 3 Add 2% ammonia drop by drop until the indicator turns red
- 4 Stand at room temperature for at least 30 minutes for precipitation and then centrifuge at high speed for 10 minutes. Do not use an angle head centrifuge
- 5 Using a fine capillary and slow suction, suck off and discard the supernatant fluid taking great care not to lose any of the precipitate. Do not try to decant the supernatant
- 6 Pipette approximately 3 ml of 2% NH₄OH down the sides of the tube and stir the precipitate by twirling the tube by hand.
- 7 Centrifuge at high speed for 3 minutes, suck off the supernatant fluid and repeat steps 6 and 7 until no color of phenol red remains in the precipitate. Wash 4 times in this way
- 8 Tap the tube sharply to loosen the precipitate and add 2 ml of 1 N H₂SO₄
- 9 Place tubes in boiling water until the precipitate dissolves
- 10 Titrate with 0.01 N KMnO₄ to the first permanent pink color lasting 30 seconds. Tube and contents must never become cooler than 70°C during the titration.
- 11 With each run set a reagent blank consisting of 2 ml of 1 N H₂SO₄ and titrate as in Steps 9 and 10. The blank should not be above 0.05 ml if reagents are satisfactory

Calculation

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{mg Ca/100 ml serum} = \\ & \frac{(\text{ml titration} - \text{ml blank})}{2} \times \text{Normality KMnO}_4 \times 0.04 \times 100 = \\ & (\text{ml titration} - \text{ml blank}) \times \text{Normality KMnO}_4 \times 1002 \end{aligned}$$

Example

Normality of KMnO₄ was 0.0095. Titration was 1.10 ml. Blank was 0.03 ml.
Therefore mg Ca per 100 ml serum = (1.10 - 0.03) (0.0095) (1002) = 10.2

Precautions

- 1 The phenol red turns reddish purple in Step 3, never true purple
- 2 Take great care not to lose precipitate in Steps 5, 6 and 7
- 3 The titration must be carried out above 70°C. When the first drop of KMnO₄ is added it persists for some time. As soon as some manganous salt is formed, the titration proceeds more rapidly to the end point.

- 4 Wash at least 4 times with ammonia. The amount and type of washing should be determined for each laboratory. It depends upon shape of tubes efficiency of centrifuge and probably the quality of reagents especially distilled water. In our laboratory we get very erratic results with only two washings.
- 5 Be sure that the distilled water is of constant quality free of calcium.

B. CALCIUM IN URINE

Reference

(Same as for serum)

Principle

Same as in serum calcium. The presence in urine of magnesium iron and phosphate in significant amounts makes attention to the acidity during precipitation very important.

Apparatus

(Same as for serum)

Reagents

- 1 Phenol red, sulfuric acid and standard potassium permanganate as in serum calcium.
- 2 Ammonium hydroxide 4N. Dilute 9 ml of concentrated NH_4OH to 100 ml with water.
- 3 Acetic acid. Dilute 10 ml of glacial acetic acid to 100 ml with water.
- 4 Sodium acetate saturated. Approximately 100 gm are added to 100 ml of water.
- 5 Oxalic acid 1N. Dissolve 93 gm of acid in one l of water.

Procedure

- 1 Use freshly collected urine without added stabilizers particularly without added oxalate. Pipette exactly 1 ml of urine into a conical tube.
- 2 Add 1 drop of phenol red and then 4 N NH_4OH drop by drop until the indicator is pink.
- 3 Quickly add 10^{cc} acetic acid drop by drop until indicator turns yellow.
- 4 Add 1 ml of oxalic acid and 1 ml of sodium acetate.
- 5 Mix well and stand 1-2 hours at room temperature.
- 6 Proceed exactly as in Steps 4 through 10 in serum calcium.

Calculation

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mg Ca per 100 ml urine} &= \\ \frac{(\text{ml titration} - \text{ml blank})}{\text{ml urine}} \times (\text{normality KMnO}_4) \times 20.04 \times 100 &= \\ (\text{ml titration} - \text{ml blank}) \times \text{normality KMnO}_4 \times .004 & \end{aligned}$$

Example

Normality of KMnO_4 was 0.0096. Titration was 1.55 ml. Blank was 0.05 ml.
Therefore mg Ca per 100 ml urine = $(1.55 - 0.05) (0.0096) (.004) = .28$

Precautions

- 1 Use fresh urine before precipitation has taken place. If the urine must be allowed to stand add 4 ml of glacial acetic acid per 100 ml of urine and correct appropriately in the calculations.
- 2 Other precautions as in serum calcium.
- 3 Wash at least 4 times with ammonia. The exact number of washings has to be determined for each laboratory.

- 4 This method is not very specific Under some conditions as during therapy with sulfaguanidine, urine contains substances which interfere with the estimation Under such conditions the urine has to be ashed with sulfuric acid 3 drops of concentrated sulfuric acid to every 2 ml of urine

C CALCIUM IN FOOD TISSUE AND FECES

Reference

- Corley, R C, and Denis W The Determination of Calcium in Tissue Feces and Milk *J Biol Chem* 66 601 603 (Dec) 1925

Apparatus

- 1 A quantity of porcelain or platinum crucibles
- Muffle oven set at 600 C
- 3 A quantity of good analytical filter paper (Whatman #40) and funnels
- 4 Rubber stoppers
- Rest of apparatus same as for serum

Reagents

- 1 Concentrated nitric acid
- 2 Hydrochloric acid one ml concentrated HCl to two parts of water
- 3 Alizarin red indicator in water
- 4 Litmus paper
- 5 Oxalic acid, 2.5 percent in water
- 6 Ammonium oxalate 3 percent in water
- 7 Ammonium oxalate, 0.5 percent in water
- 8 Sodium acetate 1.0 percent in water
- 9 Sulfuric acid (1 N)
- 10 Concentrated ammonia
- 11 The rest of the reagents are the same as for serum

Procedure

- 1 For food tissue and feces use samples weighing approximately 2 gm
- 2 Ignite in a porcelain or platinum crucible to a white ash with the aid of a few drops of conc HNO₃ and dissolve with HCl
- 3 Bring the volume to approximately 75 to 150 ml
- 4 Make alkaline with concentrated ammonia adding it drop by drop Use litmus or alizarin red as an indicator
- 5 Then add concentrated HCl drop by drop until just acid to litmus
- 6 Add 10 drops of concentrated HCl (sp gr 1.20)
- 7 Add 10 ml of 2.5% oxalic acid
- 8 Stopper flask with a rubber stopper mix and stand for 12 hours
- Add an excess of 3% ammonium oxalate and cool to room temperature
- 10 Then add 8 ml of 20% sodium acetate solution (For feces use 15 ml)
- 11 Stopper and shake vigorously for 10 minutes
- 12 Filter and wash precipitate with 0.5% ammonium oxalate (This is to wash free of chloride)
- 13 Then wash 3 times with cold distilled water The exact number of washings has to be determined in each laboratory
- 14 Transfer precipitate quantitatively to a 50 ml beaker washing last traces off filter paper with approximately 5 ml of 1 N sulfuric acid
- 15 Add approximately 25 ml of water and stir until precipitate is all dissolved. It may be necessary to add more sulfuric acid or to warm gently
- 16 Dilute with water to exactly 100 ml in a volumetric flask
- 17 Titrate 10 ml aliquots with 0.01 N KMnO₄ as for urine

Calculation

mg Ca per 100 gm sample =

$$\frac{(\text{ml titration} - \text{ml blank})}{(\text{gm sample} \times 10/100)} \times (\text{normality KMnO}_4) \times (0.04) \times (100)$$

Example

A sample of food weighed 1.9546 gm. Normality of KMnO_4 was 0.0095

Sample was diluted to 100 ml and 10 ml aliquots were titrated. Titration figure was 50 ml. Blank was 0.04 ml.

mg Ca/100 gm food =

$$\frac{(2.50 - 0.04)}{(1.9546 \times 10/100)} \times 0.0095 \times 0.04 \times 100 = 39.5$$

6 Magnesium in Serum**References**

Briggs A. P. A Colorimetric Method for the Determination of Small Amounts of Magnesium. *J Biol Chem* 52: 349-355 (June) 1927

Principle

Magnesium is precipitated as magnesium ammonium phosphate and the phosphate is estimated by the colorimetric method of Techopp and Techopp or that of Fiske and Subbarow.

**Apparatus**

- 1 A quantity of 15 ml conical centrifuge tubes
- An electric centrifuge
- 3 A quantity of rubber policeman
- 4 Refrigerator
- 5 Water bath set between 60-70°C
- 6 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 7 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm

Reagents

- 1 Monobasic potassium phosphate (KH_2PO_4) approximately 0.5% solution in water
- 2 Ammoniacal alcohol. This is prepared from 200 ml of 85% EtOH and 50 ml of concentrated NH_4OH diluted to one l with water
- 3 Trichloroacetic acid (CCl_3COOH) 15% solution in water. Store in refrigerator
- 4 Techopp and Techopp phosphorus reagents (See phosphorus method for reagents)
- 5 Ammonium oxalate ($(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$) approximately 40% in water
- 6 Concentrated ammonium hydroxide (NH_4OH) low in magnesium and phosphate. Hydrochloric acid approximately 1 N and N/5
- 7 Standard magnesium solution. 0.1413 gm of magnesium ammonium phosphate ($\text{MgNH}_4\text{PO}_4 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$) per liter in approximately 0.01 N sulfuric acid. Add 2 ml of chloroform for a preservative. Of this 5 ml = 0.07 mg Mg
- 8 Molybdic acid photorex and sodium bisulfite as described in the method on phosphorus

Procedure

- 1 Mix in a 15 ml conical centrifuge tube
 - 20 ml of serum
 - 20 ml of water
 - 10 ml of ammonium oxalate solution

Mix by inversion and centrifuge

(The precipitate may be used for determination of calcium)

- 2 Into a conical centrifuge tube pipette 40 ml of the supernatant liquid
- 3 Add 60 ml of 1% trichloroacetic acid, mix and centrifuge
- 4 Transfer 50 ml of supernatant fluid to cone tipped 1.5 ml centrifuge tube
- 5 Add 1 ml of 2% potassium acid phosphate solution (KH_2PO_4)
- 6 Add 4 ml of concentrated ammonia (NH_4OH)
- 7 Scratch side of tube with rubber policeman until precipitate forms and rinse rod with a few ml of water
- 8 Let stand overnight in refrigerator
- 9 Centrifuge decant and wash with 5 ml of ammoniacal alcohol
- 10 Centrifuge and decant again
- 11 Dissolve the precipitate in 1 ml of 1 N HCl
- 12 Transfer quantitatively to a calibrated 25 ml colorimeter tube
- 13 Estimate phosphate (equivalent to magnesium) by adding the following phosphate reagents
 - 0.4 ml of NaHSO_4
 - 0.4 ml of molybdic acid
 - 0.4 ml of Photorex
- 14 Dilute to exactly 25 ml
- 15 Heat for 20 minutes at 60-70°C in water bath then cool under running water
- 16 Set reagent blank at 100% T at wave length 660 mμ and read unknowns

Calculation

- 1 A standard curve is based on samples containing 0.01 to 0.05 mg of magnesium per milliliter and treated as above
- 2 mg of magnesium per 100 milliliters of serum =

$$(\text{mg magnesium in cuvette}) \times \frac{2}{(r)} \times \frac{4}{(10)} \times 100 =$$

$$(\text{mg magnesium in cuvette}) \times 16$$

Example

Magnesium in cuvette was determined to be 0.04 mg
 $\text{mg magnesium}/100 \text{ ml serum} = 0.04 \times 16 = 2.4$

Precautions

- 1 All reagents must be as low in magnesium as it is possible to procure them

7 Inorganic Iron in Serum**Reference**

Kitzes G, Elvehjem C A and Schuetz H A The Determination of Blood Plasma Iron *J Biol. Chem.* 155: 653-660 (Oct) 1944.

Principle

Serum or plasma is boiled in water to form a gelatinous solution the proteins are precipitated out with trichloroacetic acid and the filtrate is treated with alpha, alpha bipyridine to produce a pink color which is measured photo colorimetrically

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 3 A number of 15 ml conical graduated centrifuge tubes
- 4 A number of 1, 3, 4 and 5 ml volumetric pipettes
- 5 A quantity of glass stirring rods
- 6 A constant temperature bath set at 90-95°C
- 7 An electric centrifuge

Reagents

- 1 Trichloroacetic acid 5% in water If not free of iron this acid should be redistilled.
- Indicator p-nitrophenol 0.1% solution in water
- 3 Ammonium hydroxide solution approximately 6 N in water
- 4 Buffer solution (pH 4.58) To prepare this 27.2 ml of glacial acetic acid and 33.4 gm of anhydrous sodium acetate are dissolved in water and made up to 250 ml
- 5 Thioglycolic acid solution (Eastman Practical Grade)
- 6 Alpha-alpha-bipyridine reagent Dissolve 0.5 gm of reagent in 5 ml of glacial acetic acid and dilute to 100 ml with water
- 7 Redistilled water (iron free) Redistill in a glass still
- 8 Standard iron solution Dissolve iron wire (99.8%) in a mixture of nitric acid and hydrochloric acid and dilute with water to give a concentration of 1 mg/ml From this solution standard solutions of 100 and 1 mcg per ml are made

Procedure

- 1 Pipette exactly 3 to 5 ml of plasma or serum (containing approximately 3 to 9 mcg of inorganic iron) into a 15 ml conical centrifuge tube
- 2 Add 3 ml of redistilled water and mix with plasma
- 3 A blank should be prepared at the same time using all the reagents
- 4 Place the tubes in boiling water for 3 minutes or until the solution becomes opaque This must be done very carefully so as not to get a gelatinous coagulation from which it will be difficult to extract the iron
- 5 Remove the tubes while the solution is still liquid and opaque and allow to cool by placing them in a beaker of cold water
- 6 Add 1 ml of trichloroacetic acid (5%) stir carefully and thoroughly so that the acid is mixed intimately with the solution The precipitate that is formed becomes fine and flocculant A small blunt end stirring rod is preferred so as not to run the end of it through the centrifuge tube
- 7 Place the tubes in a water bath set between 90-95°C for about three minutes stirring the solution once or twice
- 8 Remove the tubes from the bath and cool again in cold water
- 9 Then centrifuge the tubes at 2000 to 3000 rpm for about five minutes
- 10 Remove the tubes and carefully decant the supernatant fluid into a 15 ml graduated tube
- 11 To the precipitate remaining in the tubes add 4 ml of redistilled water and 1 ml trichloroacetic acid Then break up the precipitate and stir it well
- 12 Again place in the water bath (90-95°C) for 3 minutes stirring each solution once or twice Remove and cool the tubes in cold water
- 13 Centrifuge the tubes for 5 minutes and then decant the supernatant fluid into the tube containing the first filtrate
- 14 Add 1 drop of p-nitrophenol indicator and then add ammonium hydroxide solution drop by drop until the solution becomes yellow
- 15 Add 1 ml of the buffer solution and dilute to exactly 10 ml Mix thoroughly and centrifuge

- 16 Pipette 10 ml into a cuvette and then add 2 drops of thioglycolic solution. (*Do not get this solution on fingers or skin as it is very toxic*) Mix by tapping the tube or by a slight rotary motion
- 17 Add 1 ml alpha alpha-bipyridine reagent and a faint pink color will develop. Mix carefully but thoroughly
- 18 Set the blank at 100% T at 510 mμ and read the unknowns and blank

Calculations

A standardization curve is set up on the Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer with standard solutions of iron ranging from one gamma to twenty gamma. The calibration constant K is computed as in the section on spectrophotometry

Then mcg inorganic iron/100 ml serum =

$$\frac{K(2 - \log \% T) \times 15 \times 100}{\text{ml aliquot} \times \text{ml serum}}$$

Example

Five ml of serum were analyzed K was 45.33 $\%T''$ was 8.5 Aliquots of 10 ml were used.

mcg inorganic iron/100 ml serum =

$$\frac{45.33 (2 - \log 8.5) \times 15 \times 100}{10 \times 5} = 118.5$$

Precautions

Thioglycolic acid is very toxic. Be careful with it.

8 Copper in Serum

A. METHOD I

Reference

Robinson J C A Simple Method for the Determination of Serum Copper *J Biol Chem* 179 1103 1109 (July) 1949

Principle

The addition of sodium diethyldithiocarbamate to a solution containing copper produces a golden brown color that can be measured colorimetrically. The copper salt can be rapidly and quantitatively extracted from an aqueous solution by isoamyl alcohol which also intensifies the color. This color is stable for at least two hours at a pH between 5.7 and 9.2.

Iron interferes with the color but the addition of sodium pyrophosphate converts it to iron pyrophosphate which does not react with the carbamate.

Apparatus

- 1 Test tubes 13 x 100 mm with ground glass stoppers
- 2 Pipettes. Serological 0.2 ml graduated to 0.01 ml
- 3 Mechanical shaker Kahn
- 4 A water bath set between 50 to 60 C
- 5 Spectrophotometer In this laboratory a Coleman Model 6 equipped with 1 x 75 mm cuvettes is used
- 6 Syringe pipettes exactly 0.1 ml 0.2 ml 1.0 ml and 3.0 ml
- 7 Glass still for metal free water
- 8 Electric centrifuge

Reagents

- 1 Sodium pyrophosphate. Saturate red distilled water with the salt
- 2 Ammonium hydroxide 10 to 12^o. Distill concentrated ammonia (30^o reagent) into red distilled water to saturation. Dilute to required concentration with red distilled water
- 3 Sodium diethylthiocarbamate 30^o aqueous solution. Remove copper by shaking with carbon tetrachloride which has been distilled over calcium oxide. The solution is stable for some weeks if stored in the dark. (Sodium diethylthiocarbamate the reagent used to react with copper in this procedure gives colored complexes with a number of heavy metal cations. In biological material however on the chief interfering substance. This interference of iron is satisfactorily eliminated by developing the copper carbamate complex in an ammoniacal solution containing pyrophosphate and having pH 9 or greater. The color intensities of other interfering metals such as nickel and cobalt are weight for weight only 1/20 1/30 as great as that given by copper. Because the concentration of these ions in serum is of such relatively low order the interference is negligible.)
- 4 Metal free water. Distilled water redistilled from resistant glass apparatus should be used in the preparation of all reagents and in the final running of equipment
- 5 Standard copper solution 0.100 mg Cu/ml. Prepare stock solution by dissolving 0.98 gm of uneffloresced $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ in red distilled water and diluting to one liter. From this stock solution on the working standards may be prepared. It is best to use a solution containing 1 mcg per ml because the final volume of the aqueous phase should be kept at a minimum. To prepare this the dilution is 1 ml of stock solution to 100 ml with water
- 6 Isoamyl alcohol. Distill from all glass apparatus saturate with water and store at 4^o C

Procedure

- 1 Into each of glass stoppered test tubes accurately deliver 10 ml serum. Add to each of the tubes 0.2 ml of saturated solution of sodium pyrophosphate. Mix by tapping gently
- 2 To each of the tubes add exactly 0.04 ml of 10.1^o ammonium hydroxide. Again mix by tapping
- 3 Add 0.2 ml sodium diethylthiocarbamate to one of the tubes and 0.1 ml water to the other which is the serum blank. Mix and allow to stand for one hour
- 4 Pipette exactly 3.0 ml of isoamyl alcohol into each tube
- 5 Place tubes in 1-shake rack and securely fasten into a horizontal position on a mechanical shaker. (It is convenient to place a sponge against one end of the shaker and clamp the rack so that the stoppered ends of the tubes are firmly pressed against the sponge.) Shake for 15 minutes
- 6 Place tubes in centrifuge cups and cool until water used in balancing the cups begins to form crystals of ice
- 7 Centrifuge at 4000 rpm for 10 minutes. If the minimum required volume (15 ml for 1 x 75 mm cuvette) of extract is not obtained gently shake the precipitate free into the isoamyl alcohol and repeat centrifugation
- 8 Carefully pipette the isoamyl alcohol fractions into 1" x 5 mm cuvettes stopper and measure optical density at 440 mμ. (If cloudy extracts are obtained place cuvettes for a few seconds in water warmed to 50-60^o C)
- 9 It is necessary to prepare a reagent blank substituting distilled water for serum for each series of determinations. Very low readings about 99-100 per cent transmittance are obtained.

Calculations

Let O_c represent the optical density due to the serum copper, O the optical density of the carbamate extract from serum, O the optical density of the serum extract and O the optical density of the reagent blank

Then $O_c = O - (O + O)$

and Copper mcg per 100 ml serum \approx

$O_c \times \text{calibration constant} \times \text{dilution factor} \times 100$

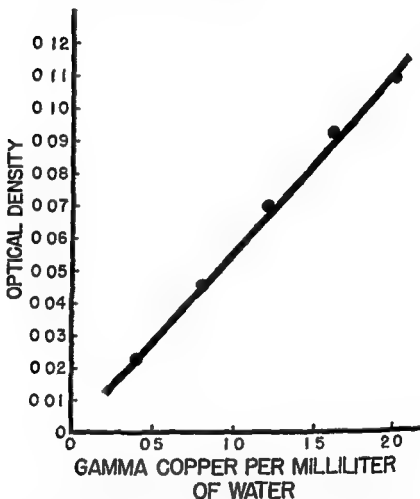


Fig 10—Example of calibration curve for copper in serum. Ordinate optical density abscissa copper mcg per ml of water

Example

O was 0.09 O was 0.06 O was 0.01, and K (mcg copper per ml per unit optical density) was 17.5

In the analysis, the copper of 1 ml serum was extracted into 3 ml of isoamyl alcohol therefore copper mcg per 100 ml serum \approx

$$(0.09 - 0.06 - 0.01) \times 17.5 \times \frac{3}{1} \times 100 = 105$$

Experimental Considerations

As previously mentioned the final color is due to three components serum copper, copper in an impurity in the reagents and substances other than copper carbamate. A large percentage of the density of the final color is due to materials extracted from the serum other than copper carbamate. This point is demonstrated in Figs 16 and 17 which show that the maximum light absorption for both an isoamyl alcohol extract of copper carbamate from aqueous solution and an isoamyl alcohol extract of the serum blank occurs in the same general region of the spectrum.

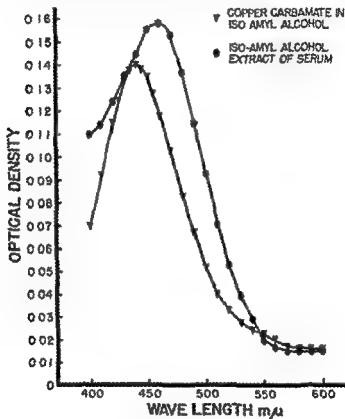


Fig 17—Spectral transmission curve of copper carbamate and serum. Ordinate optical density, abscissa wave length in millimicrons.

The ratio of color to the concentration of copper carbamate in isoamyl alcohol is linear up to a concentration of about 0.005 mg. Above this value however there is an appreciable deviation from Beer's law. This should be borne in mind particularly when doing recovery experiments and in such experiments concentration figures should be obtained from a calibration curve rather than use of the calibration constant.

Precautions

1. Be certain the tubes are cool before centrifuging the specimens.
2. All reagents must be nearly free of metals of the iron, cobalt, nickel series as well as of copper.

B METHOD III**Reference**

Cartwright E Jones J and Wintrobe M A Method for the Determination of Copper in Blood Serum *J Biol Chem* 160 593 600 (Oct) 1945

Principle

The addition of sodium diethyldithiocarbamate to a solution containing copper produces a golden brown color that can be measured colorimetrically The copper salt can be rapidly and quantitatively extracted from an aqueous solution by isoamyl alcohol which also intensifies the color This color is stable for at least 2 hours at pH 5.7 to 9.2

Iron interferes with the color but the addition of sodium pyrophosphate converts it to iron pyrophosphate which does not react with the carbamate

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model #6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 3 A quantity of 15 ml centrifuge tubes graduated
- 4 Electric centrifuge
- 5 A water bath set at 90-95 C
- 6 A quantity of glass stirring rods
- 7 Glass water still

Reagents

- 1 Redistilled water is used in all the reagents
- 2 Trichloroacetic acid 20% in water
- 3 Sodium pyrophosphate saturated solution
- 4 Ammonium hydroxide solution 10 to 1% percent
- 5 Sodium diethyldithiocarbamate solution 1%
- 6 Standard copper solution as used in the method of Robinson (1949)
- 7 Isoamyl alcohol

Procedure

All glassware used must be carefully cleaned and then rinsed three times with redistilled copper free water

- 1 Pipette 3 to 5 ml samples preferably 5 ml of serum or plasma into ungraduated 15 ml Pyrex centrifuge tubes It is convenient to set up that number of tubes which can be centrifuged simultaneously
- 2 Add 3 ml of redistilled water to each mix with glass rods and place in boiling water until they become opaque This must be done very carefully or else the solutions will become very gelatinous and coagulation of this type will hinder the extractions which are to follow
- 3 When the tubes are opaque and still liquid, remove them and cool in a beaker containing cold water
- 4 Add 2 ml of 20% trichloroacetic acid mix thoroughly and break up the precipitate that forms so that it is finely flocculant Then place in water bath at 90-95 C for five minutes
- 5 Stir this solution carefully and frequently
- 6 Cool before, remove the rods and centrifuge the tubes at 3000 rpm for about five to ten minutes
- 7 Remove and decant the supernatant liquid into a clean dry 15 ml graduated centrifuge tube
- 8 To the original tubes add 2 ml of water and 1 ml of trichloroacetic acid being sure to break up the precipitate well by stirring the solution carefully and thoroughly

- 9 Heat again at 90-95 °C for five minutes by carefully stirring the solution to enhance the extraction of the copper
- 10 Cool again in the cold water centrifuge and decant the solution into the same tubes containing the first filtrate
- 11 Repeat this operation once again using the same quantities of the water and trichloroacetic acid.
- 12 Make the filtrate up to 15 ml. It will contain some precipitate which came over with each decantation
- 13 Centrifuge this down draw off a 10 ml aliquot and place this aliquot in a Coleman Jr 150 = 19 mm spectrophotometer tube
- 14 A blank of all the reagents is prepared in the same way. This may be prepared directly in the Coleman tube
- 15 To the filtrate and blank in the Coleman tubes add 1 ml of a saturated solution of sodium pyrophosphate
- 16 Add 1 ml of ammonium hydroxide solution
- 17 Add 1 ml of the 0.1% sodium diethylthiocarbamate solution
- 18 Add 1 ml of distilled water to bring the total volume up to 15 ml. Mix the solutions thoroughly and carefully
- 19 Set the blank at 100% T (Optical density) and read the unknowns as soon as possible

Calculation

With the blank at 100% T copper mcg per 100 ml serum = (concentration in cuvette) $\times \frac{(\text{final dilution})}{(\text{ml serum})} \times \frac{(\text{total dilution})}{(\text{aliquot})} \times 100$

Example

5 ml of serum were diluted finally to 15 ml in trichloroacetic acid. The photometer reading was 0.3% T in the case equivalent to 0.3 mcg of copper per ml in the cuvette

Therefore copper mcg per 100 ml serum = $0.3 \times \frac{15}{5} \times \frac{15}{10} \times 100 = 144$

Precautions

- 1 Be careful that the solutions do not become gelatinous as this will vitiate results
- 2 All reagents must be nearly free of heavy metals

9 Chloride in Serum and Urine

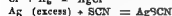
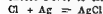
A. CHLORIDE IN SERUM

Reference

- Keys A. The Microdetermination of Chlorides in Biological Materials. J. Biol. Chem. 119: 39-403 (July) 1937

Principle

The chloride is precipitated as silver chloride with standard silver nitrate and the excess silver is titrated against thiocyanate with ferric alum as indicator



Apparatus

- 1 A number of round bottom test or centrifuge tubes of 15 ml capacity
- 2 A variety of volumetric pipettes including 1 ml, 2 ml and 10 ml graduated in 0.1 ml divisions

- 3 One dropping bottle for storing indicator
- 4 Water bath (boiling)
- 5 Assorted bottles, beakers and flasks for reagents and samples
- 6 Automatic syringe pipettes to deliver 0.1 and 0.2 ml
- 7 Micro burette, 3 ml

Reagents

For field use it is convenient to carry all reagents except nitric acid weighed out dry in small bottles and to dilute them with distilled water as needed. When many analyses are to be done the best procedure is to have the facilities to make up 'strong standards' and to prepare 'working standards' by diluting the 'strong standard'.

- 1 'Strong' AgNO_3 . In a mixing cylinder dissolve 23.785 gm AgNO_3 and dilute to exactly 1 liter with distilled water. Tap water may be used if it is chloride free.
- 2 'Working standard' AgNO_3 . Dilute exactly 100 ml of strong standard to 1 liter with distilled or chloride free tap water.
- 3 'Strong' KCNS . Dilute 14.34 gm dry crystals to 1 liter with distilled or chloride free tap water.
- 4 'Working standard' KCNS . Dilute exactly 100 ml of 'strong KCNS ' to 1 liter with distilled or chloride free tap water.
- 5 HNO_3 , concentrated, chloride free, reagent grade.
- 6 Ferric alum indicator. Prepare a saturated solution of ferric ammonium sulphate in distilled or chloride free tap water using approximately 40 gm to every 100 ml of water. Just before use, add conc HNO_3 drop by drop until the color is yellow not red. This converts ferrous ions to ferric. For use, the indicator is stored in a dropping bottle.
- 7 Standard solution of NaCl , 100 mEq/liter. Dilute 5.845 gm pure NaCl to exactly 1 liter. This reagent is used solely for standardizing the silver nitrate and potassium thiocyanate and keeps indefinitely.
- 8 Distilled or chloride free tap water.

Procedure

- 1 Prepare and store samples of serum as described under the section on handling blood.
- 2 Deliver exactly 0.2 ml of serum by means of an automatic pipette into a 15 ml test tube.
- 3 Deliver into the same tube 6 to 8 successive washings of the pipette with distilled or chloride free tap water.
- 4 Add exactly 2.0 ml of 'working standard' AgNO_3 to each tube.
- 5 Add approximately $\frac{1}{4}$ ml of conc HNO_3 to each tube. Digest on a boiling water bath not less than a half hour. More does not matter.
- 6 Cool tubes in ice or cold water bath. This step is essential for a sharp end point.
- 7 Add 3 or more drops of ferric alum indicator.
- 8 Fill the microburette with 'working standard' KCNS and titrate to the first permanent pink color lasting a half minute or more.

Standardization

If the quality of the chemicals is good and weights are accurate the 'strong' AgNO_3 will be 0.1400 N and the 'working standard' 0.0140 N. The strong KCNS will be 0.2000 N and the 'working standard' 0.0200 N. This ideal situation rarely occurs and the solutions must be standardized as follows.

- 1 Pipette exactly 5 ml of 'working standard' AgNO_3 into a small Erlenmeyer flask.
- 2 Add 10 drops of ferric alum indicator.

- 3 Add approximately 1 ml conc HNO
- 4 With working standard KCNS in the burette titrate to the first pink color lasting 1 minute
- 5 Repeat until satisfactory triplicate estimations are obtained
- 6 Run the standard solution of sodium chloride exactly as for serum until satisfactory triplicates are obtained
- 7 The normalities of the working standards of AgNO and KCNS may be calculated from the two equations

$$(a) \text{ Normality AgNO} = \frac{\text{Titration in step 5}}{5} \times \text{Normality KCNS}$$

$$(b) \text{ Normality NaCl} =$$

$$\frac{(\text{Normality AgNO}) - (\text{ml step 6} \times \text{Normality KCNS})}{0.00}$$

- 8 With the known values substituted equations (a) and (b) may be solved as simultaneous equations
- 9 An example of standardization is

Concentration of NaCl standard = 0.100 N
 Calibration of syringe pipette = 0.00 ml
 Titration in Step 5 = 3.66 ml
 Titration in Step 6 = 0.440 ml
 Let normality of AgNO = (AgNO) and
 normality of KCNS = (KCNS)

$$(a) (\text{AgNO}) = \frac{3.66}{5} \times (\text{KCNS}) = 0.732 (\text{KCNS})$$

$$(b) 0.100 = \frac{2 (\text{AgNO}) - 0.440 (\text{KCNS})}{0.00}$$

$$0.00 = 2 (\text{AgNO}) - 0.440 (\text{KCNS})$$

Substituting from (a) above

$$0.00 = 2 \times 0.732 (\text{KCNS}) - 0.440 (\text{KCNS})$$

$$0.00 = 1.024 (\text{KCNS})$$

$$\text{and } (\text{KCNS}) = \frac{0.000}{1.024} = 0.0195$$

$$\text{From (a) above } (\text{AgNO}) = (0.732) \times (0.0195) = 0.0143$$

Calculation

- 1 In the case of serum mEq chloride/liter serum =

$$\frac{(2 \times \text{Normality AgNO}) - (\text{ml titration} \times \text{Normality KCNS})}{\text{Calibration of Syringe Pipette in ml}} \times 1000$$

- 2 Line charts are useful for routine calculations when reagents and pipettes are always the same. The line chart for serum is constructed by marking off the vertical axis according to the titration figure and the horizontal axis for serum chloride. Two points only are required with a straight line drawn accurately between. These two points are obtained by substituting all of the figures which are constant in the equation above and then calculating the serum value for titration figures of 0.200 and also 0.500 ml.

For urine set up a chart with the vertical axis titration figure from 0 to 1.500 ml and urinary chloride from 0 to 2 gm sodium chloride per 100 ml as the

horizontal axis The two necessary points are obtained by substituting all of the constant values in the equation above and then calculating for titration figures of 0 and 1.350 ml

Example

Working standard 'AgNO = 0.0139 N

Working standard' KCNS = 0.0234 N

Titration figure = 0.370 ml of KCNS

$$\text{mEq chloride/liter serum} = \frac{(2 \times 0.0139) - (0.370 \times 0.0234)}{0.200} \times 1000 = 95 \text{ mEq/l}$$

Precautions

- 1 Be sure to titrate with a good daylight or daylight bulb against a white back ground.
- 2 Do not expose to bright light the silver standards or the test tubes containing unknowns to which silver nitrate has been added.
- 3 Chloride in serum and urine is of course stable indefinitely at any temperature. Therefore samples may be kept for months before analysis provided there is no evaporation.
- 4 The operator may leave chloride analyses for hours at any stage provided the tubes containing silver nitrate are not left in the light.
- 5 The titration must be carried out in the cold. Otherwise the results will be erratic.

B CHLORIDE IN URINE**Principle Apparatus Reagents**

Same as for serum

Procedure

- 1 Collect and store samples as described previously.
- 2 Deliver exactly 0.1 ml of urine by means of an automatic syringe pipette into a 15 ml test tube.
- 3 4 5 Steps 3, 4 and 5 are identical for urine and serum except urine need not be digested in a boiling water bath unless there is good reason to suspect that the urine contains protein.
- 6 7 8 Steps 6, 7 and 8 are identical for urine and serum.
- 9 When the urine contains a high concentration of chloride 2 ml of working standard AgNO may not suffice to precipitate all the chloride. When this is the case the first drop of thiocyanate produces a red color. In such cases add 1 ml more of working standard AgNO, and proceed with the titration. The titration figure is then the final reading minus the reading before the first drop of KCNS.

Calculation

- 1 Grams NaCl/100 ml urine =

$$\frac{(\text{ml AgNO} \times \text{Normality AgNO}) - (\text{ml KCNS} \times \text{Normality KCNS})}{(\text{calibration of syringe pipette in ml})} \times 5.85$$

- 2 The use of line charts was described under serum.

Example

Working standard AgNO = 0.0139 N

Working standard KCNS = 0.005 N

Syringe pipette contains 0.1 ml

3 ml AgNO had to be used

Titration figure 0.550 ml of KCNS

Therefore gm NaCl/100 ml =

$$\frac{(3 \times 0.0139) - (0.550 \times 0.005)}{0.100} \times 585 = 1.78 \text{ gm/100 ml}$$

Precautions

Same as for serum

Inorganic Phosphorus in Serum Urine Food and Feces

N SERUM

Reference

Fiske C H and Subbarow Y. The Colorimetric Determination of Phosphorus
J Biol Chem 66 375 400 (Dec) 1925

Principle

Inorganic phosphate reacts with molybdate and a blue color is formed by reduction with para amino naphthol sulfonic acid

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman J Spectrophotometer Model #6
- Electric centrifuge
- 3 A series of pipettes including 0.5 ml 5.0 ml and two 10 ml graduated in 0.1 ml divisions
- 4 Round bottomed 15 ml centrifuge tubes with #1 rubber stoppers
- 5 Coleman Jr cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 6 Pan of water and source of heat for water bath
- 7 An accurately calibrated syringe pipette 1.0 ml
- 8 A quantity of 50 ml volumetric flasks

Reagents

- 1 Trichloroacetic acid approximately 10% in water
- 2 Sulfuric acid approximately 10 N In a mixing cylinder carefully pour 100 ml of conc H₂SO₄ into 900 ml of water After cooling dilute to exactly 360 ml with water
- 3 Molybdate I (for standards and urine) 0.5% ammonium molybdate in 5 N H₂SO₄ In a one liter mixing cylinder dissolve 0.5 gm of salt in 500 ml of 10 N H₂SO₄ and dilute to one liter with water
- 4 Molybdate II (for serum) 2.5% ammonium molybdate in 3.3 N H₂SO₄ In a one liter mixing cylinder dissolve 0.5 gm of the salt in 100 ml of 10 N H₂SO₄ and dilute to one liter with water
- 5 Para aminonaphtholsulfonic acid (ANSA) To a 50 ml mixing cylinder add 0.5 gm ANSA and 195 ml of 15% sodium bisulfite (metabisulfite gives the same results) Add 5 ml of 0% sodium sulfite Mix If the ANSA does not dissolve within a half hour add more sulfite 5 ml at a time until solution is complete Store in a brown bottle It keeps for about 2 weeks
(If the dry ANSA is more than slightly colored brown or purple it must be recrystallized as follows and sealed in airtight containers if necessary
In approximately one liter of water at about 90 °C dissolve 150 gm of sodium bisulfite and 10 gm of sodium sulfite Add about 30 gm ANSA and stand 15 minutes with intermittent shaking Filter by suction while still hot Cool the filtrate and add 10 ml of concentrated HCl Let stand for 10 minutes Filter off the crystals wash once with 300 ml of cold water and twice with 100 ml portions of 95% alcohol Dry in air in the dark and store in a brown bottle.)

110 Biochemical Procedures

- 6 Standard phosphate In a two liter mixing cylinder place exactly 0.351 gm pure KH_2PO_4 approximately 20 ml 10 N H_2SO_4 and approximately one liter distilled water. When dissolved dilute to exactly two liters. This solution keeps indefinitely in refrigerator. 1 ml equals 0.04 mg P.

Procedure

- 1 To a 15 ml centrifuge tube add exactly 9.0 ml of 10% trichloroacetic acid.
- 2 Add exactly 1.0 ml serum mix and centrifuge till clear.
- 3 To a cuvette add exactly 5.0 ml of filtrate.
- 4 Add exactly 1.0 ml Molybdate II.
- 5 Then add 0.5 ml ANSA and 3.5 ml of distilled water. Stopper and mix. Read in 10 minutes.
- 6 Prepare a blank using Molybdate I and set at 100% T at 660 m μ . Read unknowns.
- 7 Prepare a standard curve using Molybdate I with 0.01 to 0.05 mg P at 0.01 mg intervals.

Calculation

$$\text{mg P/100 ml serum} = \frac{(\text{mg P in cuvette}) \times 10 \times 100}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml serum})}$$

Example

Sample of serum was 1 ml. Aliquot was 5 ml of a 10 ml trichloroacetic acid filtrate. % T was 41.0 equivalent on the calibration curve to 0.02 mg P in the cuvette.

$$\text{mg inorganic P/100 ml serum} = \frac{(0.02) \times 10 \times 100}{(5) \times (1)} = 4.0 \text{ mg P}$$

Precautions

1. The quality of the ANSA is critical. If there is any doubt recrystallize it before using.

B IN URINE

Procedure

- 1 Dilute exactly 1.0 ml of urine to 50 ml with distilled water.
- 2 To a cuvette add 5.0 ml of diluted urine.
- 3 Add 1.0 ml of Molybdate I.
- 4 0.5 ml of ANSA and 3.5 ml of water. Stopper and mix.
- 5 Place blank at 100% T and read the unknowns at 660 m μ .

C IN FOOD AND FECEES

Reference

Official A. O. A. C. Method

Corley R. C. and Denis W. The Determination of Calcium in Tissues, Feeces and Milk. *J. Biol. Chem.* 66: 601-603 (Dec) 1925.

Apparatus

- 1 Steam bath
- 2 Crucibles (porcelain or quartz)
- 3 Muffle furnace at 600 C
- 4 Coleman Spectrophotometer Model #6
- 5 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm

Reagents

- 1 Standard potassium dihydrogen phosphate solution
Dissolve 0.4394 gm of pure dry KH_2PO_4 in water and make up to a liter. 50 ml of this solution is diluted to 200 ml and gives a standard of which 2 ml equals 0.05 mg of P.
- 2 Ammonium molybdate solution
Dissolve 1 gm of ammonium molybdate in 300 ml of water. Dilute 75 ml of H_2SO_4 to 200 ml and add to the ammonium molybdate solution.
- 3 Magnesium nitrate solution
Dissolve 160 gm of MgO in HNO_3 (1 volume conc HNO_3 plus 1 volume water), avoiding excess of the acid. Add a little MgO in excess. Boil, filter from the excess MgO , Fe_2O_3 , etc. and dilute to 1 liter.
- 4 Hydrochloric acid 1 part plus 4 parts of water.

Preparation of Solution

- 1 To 1 gm of sample in a small crucible add 1 ml of the magnesium nitrate solution and place on steam bath.
- 2 After a few minutes cautiously add a few drops of HCl taking care that formation of gas bubbles does not push portions of sample over edge of crucible.
- 3 Make or 3 further additions of a few drops of HCl while sample is on bath so that as it approaches dryness there is a tendency for it to char.
- 4 If contents of crucible become so viscous that no further drying may be obtained on bath, complete drying on a hot plate. Then put on crucible cover, transfer to cold muffle and ignite at dull red heat for at least 6 hours (600°C) or until an even gray ash is obtained. (It may be necessary to cool crucible, dissolve ash in a little water or alcoholic glycerol, evaporate to dryness and return uncovered to muffle for 4-5 hours longer.)
- 5 Cool, take up with HCl (1 plus 4) and transfer to 100 ml beaker.
- 6 Add 5 ml of HCl and evaporate to dryness on steam bath to dehydrate SiO_2 .
- 7 Moisten residue with 1 ml of HCl , add about 50 ml of water, heat a few minutes on bath, transfer to 100 ml volumetric flask, cool, immediately make to volume and filter, discard first portion of filtrate.
- 8 From this point on for feces take 3 ml of dilution and for food take 10 ml of dilution.
- 9 The procedure is the same as for phosphorus in urine, steps 2-5.

B ALTERNATIVE METHOD FOR SERUM

Reference

Tschopp E. and Tschopp E. *Helv Chim Acta* 15: 793-809, 1932.

Principle

A blue complex forms upon the interaction of phosphates and para-methylamino phenol sulfonic acid. The intensity of the color is measured colorimetrically.

Apparatus

- 1 A quantity of 15 ml conical centrifuge tubes.
- 2 A quantity of analytical filter paper and funnels to match.
- 3 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6.
- 4 Cuvettes 10 x 150 mm.
- 5 Centrifuge.
- 6 A water bath set at approximately 60°C.
- 7 Syringe pipette 0.1, 1.0 ml and 4.7 ml.

Reagents

- 1 Trichloroacetic acid (CCl_3COOH) 10% filtered. Keep in refrigerator.
- 2 Sodium bisulfite (NaHSO_3) 0% solution in water.

112 Biochemical Procedures

3 Ammonium molybdate (Merck Reagent Grade 81% MoO₃) in 1 N sulfuric acid. Dissolve 25 gm phosphate free salt in water and 50 ml 10 N H₂SO₄. Dilute to 500 ml. Do not use if blue tinge develops. Keep in wax lined soft glass bottle to guard against decomposition.

4 Photorex

Dissolve in water and dilute to 1 liter

20 gm β methyl amino phenol sulfonic acid

2000 gm sodium bisulfite

100 gm sodium sulfite

5 Phosphate standard solution

Dissolve in water and dilute to 1 liter

0.35 gm potassium phosphate monobasic

(pure dry salt) and 100 ml of 10 N sulfuric acid

1 ml is equivalent to 0.03 mg P

Procedure

- 1 To a 10 ml cone tipped centrifuge tube add exactly 1 ml serum and 9 ml trichloroacetic acid
- 2 Mix by inversion and centrifuge for 5 minutes. Filter supernatant fluid through quantitative filter paper
- 3 Pipette 5 ml of filtrate into a cuvette (preferably graduated at 10 ml)
- 4 Add 0.1 ml sodium bisulfite and mix
- 5 Add 0.1 ml Molybdate and mix
- 6 Add 0.1 ml photorex and mix.
- 7 Dilute to exactly 10 ml and mix or add 4.7 ml of water
- 8 Immediately heat for 20 minutes in hot water bath at 60 C. After 20 minutes cool the tube in running water to room temperature
- 9 For a blank make up with water and all reagents as for unknowns. Heat similarly. Set at 100% T at 660 m μ (or 635 m μ). Then read the unknowns

Standard Curve

Dilute standard in such a way that 5 ml of solution contains 0.05 mg through 0.4 mg of phosphorus

Calculation

From the phosphate standard curve determine value of galvanometer readings for unknowns in mg of phosphate. As 5 ml of filtrate is equivalent to 0.5 ml serum multiply by 2. To calculate mg of phosphorus per 100 ml multiply by 100

mg P/100 ml serum = (mg P in cuvette obtained from standard table) \times 2 \times 100

Example

A reading of 41.0% T was equivalent to 0.02 mg of phosphorus on the calibration chart. In the cuvette was the equivalent of 0.5 ml serum (5 ml of a 1 to 10 dilution). Therefore mg P/100 ml serum = (0.02) \times 200 = 4.0

Precaution

- 1 Be sure to heat all tubes immediately at 60 C and for exactly 20 minutes.

11 Sulfur in Urine

A. TOTAL SULFATE IN URINE

Reference

Folin O. On Sulphur and Sulphur Determinations J Biol Chem 1: 131-139 (Jan) 1906

Principle

The sulfuric acid of the conjugated sulfates is set free by boiling with acid. The total sulfates are precipitated as barium sulfate and weighed

**Apparatus**

- 1 Porcelain crucibles
- Analytical balance
- 3 Muffle oven set at 600 C
- 4 A desiccator for drying crucibles over calcium oxide
- 5 250 ml Erlenmeyer flasks
- 6 Analytical grade filter paper and funnels

Reagents

- 1 Barium chloride (BaCl_2) 5% in distilled water
- " Hydrochloric acid (HCl) concentrated.

Procedure

- 1 Pipette 25 or 50 ml of urine into a 250 ml Erlenmeyer flask. (Less than 25 ml gives erratic results)
- 2 Add 5 ml of conc HCl and 20 ml water
- 3 Cover with watch glass boil gently for 30 minutes and cool
- 4 Dilute to approximately 150 ml with water
- 5 Add 5 ml of BaCl_2 (5%) along the side of the flask
- 6 Do not shake or disturb but mix gently by tilting the flask back and forth
- 7 Let stand for 1 hour and filter through analytical grade filter paper
- 8 Wash filter with 50 ml of distilled water and place filter paper plus precipitate into a weighed crucible
- 9 Dry and ignite in muffle oven at 600 C
- 10 Cool in a desiccator and weigh

Calculation

- 1 gm S/liter urine =

$$(\text{gm ppt}) \times \frac{\text{atomic wgt S}}{\text{molecular wgt BaSO}_4} \times \frac{1000}{\text{ml urine}}$$

$$= (\text{gm ppt}) = \frac{3.06}{33.43} \times \frac{1000}{\text{ml urine}}$$

$$= \frac{\text{gm ppt}}{\text{ml urine}} \times 137.5$$

Example

- 1 Precipitate of BaSO_4 1.00 mg
- Urine analyzed 5 ml

$$\text{gm S/lite urine} = \frac{0.1}{5} \times 137.5 = 0.69\%$$

This computation is facilitated by Table G

Precautions

- 1 At least 5 ml of urine have to be used in this method. Otherwise recovery of added sulfate is erratic and usually low

TABLE 6
SULFUR IN URINE

When 25 ml of urine are analyzed, gm S/liter urine = (gm ppt) \times .5 or (mg ppt) \times 0.0055

mg ppt	0	2	4	6	8
	GRAMS SULFUR PER LITER OF URINE				
0	0	01	02	03	04
10	06	07	08	09	10
20	11	12	13	14	15
30	17	18	19	20	21
40	22	23	24	25	26
50	28	29	30	31	32
60	33	34	35	36	37
70	39	40	41	42	43
80	44	45	46	47	48
90	50	51	52	53	54
100	55	56	57	58	59
110	61	62	63	64	65
120	66	67	68	69	70
130	72	73	74	75	76
140	77	78	79	80	81
150	83	84	85	86	87
160	88	89	90	91	92
170	94	95	96	97	98
180	99	100	101	102	103
190	105	106	107	108	109
200	110	111	112	113	114
210	116	117	118	119	120
220	121	122	123	124	125
230	127	128	129	130	131
240	132	133	134	135	136
250	138	139	140	141	142
260	143	144	145	146	147
270	149	150	151	152	153
280	154	155	156	157	158
290	160	161	162	163	164
300	165	166	167	168	169
310	171	172	173	174	175
320	176	177	178	179	180
330	182	183	184	185	186
340	187	188	189	190	191

B INORGANIC SULFATE IN URINE

Reference

Fohn O On Sulphate and Sulphur Determination *J Biol Chem.* 1 131 159 (Jan.) 1906

Principle

The inorganic sulfates are precipitated at once as barium sulfate

Apparatus

- 1 A variety of 250 ml Erlenmeyer flasks
- 2 Crucibles (porcelain)
- 3 Desiccator
- 4 Analytical balance
- 5 Analytical filter paper
- 6 Muffle oven—600 C

Reagents

- 1 Hydrochloric acid dilute One volume to 4 volumes of distilled water
- 2 Barium chloride 5% solution

Procedure

- 1 Pipette 5 ml of urine into a 250 ml Erlenmeyer flask
- 2 Add approximately 100 ml of water
- 3 Then acidify with 10 ml of hydrochloric acid.
- 4 Add 10 ml of barium chloride solution slowly drop by drop to the cold solution
- 5 Allow to stand for one hour and filter
- 6 Wash the filter paper with 50 ml of water and then place the filter paper plus the precipitate into a weighed crucible
- 7 Dry and ignite in muffle oven at 500-600°C (overnight)
- 8 Cool in a desiccator and weigh

Calculation

1 gm S per liter urine =

$$(\text{gm ppt}) \times \frac{\text{atomic wgt S}}{\text{molecular wgt BaSO}_4} \times \frac{1000}{\text{ml urine}}$$

$$= (\text{gm ppt}) \times \frac{32}{330.4} \times \frac{1000}{\text{ml urine}} = \frac{\text{gm ppt}}{\text{ml urine}} \times 137.5$$

Example

Precipitate of BaSO₄ = 105.0 mg
 Urine analyzed = 75 ml
 gm inorganic S per liter urine = $\frac{0.1050}{25} \times 137.5 = 0.578 \text{ gm}$

(This calculation is facilitated by Table 6)

Precautions

- 1 At least 75 ml of urine have to be used in this method otherwise recovery of added sulfate is erratic and usually low

ETHEREAL SULFATES**Reference**

Folin O On Sulphate and Sulphur Determination *J Biol Chem* 1:131-150 (Jan) 1906

Calculation

Total S - Inorganic S = Etheral sulfates

Example

0.686 gm - 0.578 = 0.108 gm

2 Minerals Miscellaneous References**Alkaline Earths**

allmann S Quantitative Separation of Calcium Barium and Strontium *Anal Chem* 20:449-451 (May) 1949

Aluminum

trafford N and Wyatt P H The Separation and Determination of Very Small Amounts of Aluminum and Iron in Water *Analyst* 68:319-34 (Nov) 1943

Vollf H Spektrochemische Untersuchungen über den Aluminiumgehalt des Blutes *Biochem Ztschr* 319:18 No 1 1943

Antimony

Jaren T H Colorimetric Micro-Determination of Antimony With Rhodamine H *Anal Chem* 33(7):487-491 (July) 1947

116 *Biochemical Procedures*

Bromine

- Wuth A A Rational Bromide Treatment, *J A M A* 111 2013 2017 (June) 19 7
 Tsyvina, B S Determination of Small Quantities of Calcium Zavodskaya Lab 11
 142 144 1949
 Tyner E H Determining Small Amounts of Calcium in Plant Materials *Anal Chem* 20
 76 80 (Jan) 1948

Chlorine

- Binkley F A Colorimetric Reaction of Chloride Ion *J Biol. Chem* 173 (1) 403 405
 (March) 1948
 Ellms J W and Hauser S J Ortho Toluidine as a Reagent for the Colorimetric Estima-
 tion of Small Quantities of Free Chlorine *J Indust Engin Chem* 11 915 917 (Nov)
 1913
 Hoffman W S Photoelectric Clinical Chemistry New York, 1941 W Morrow and Com-
 pany pp 129 137
 Schales O and Schales S A Simple and Accurate Method for the Determination of
 Chloride in Biological Fluids *J Biol Chem* 140 (3) 819 824 (Sept) 1941
 Taylor W A Lamotte Wuth Bromide Comparator *J Lab & Clin Med* 13 49 496
 (Oct March) 19 7 1948
 Stiff, H A Jr The Colorimetric Determination of Blood Chloride by the Iodometric
 Method *J Biol Chem* 172 (2) 695 698 (Feb) 1948
 Swift H H Arcand H M Lutwack R and Meier, D J Determination of Chloride
Anal Chem 22 (2) 306 308 (Feb) 1950
 Whitehorn J C Simplified Method for the Determination of Chlorides in Blood or
 Plasma *J Biol Chem* 41 419-460 (Feb) 1921
 Zimmerman W J and Layton E M Jr Polarographic Micromethod for the Determina-
 tion of Blood Chloride *J Biol Chem* 181 (1) 141 147 (Nov) 1949

Calcium

- Alten F Weiland H and Knippenberg Kolorimetrische Calciumbestimmung uber
 das Ickrolonat *Biochem Ztschr* 265 266 85 89 1933
 DeLuca H A Photometric Microdetermination of Calcium *Canad. J Research* 25
 449 454 (Sept) 1947
 Klement R Rapid and Simple Determination of Small Quantities of Calcium *Z Anal
 Chem* 128 431 435 1948
 Korenman I M and Gutnik G B Determination of Small Quantities of Calcium
 Zavodskaya Lab 15 136 138 1919
 Murnaghan M F Micro Diffusion Method for the Determination of Calcium in Blood
Serum Analyst 74 546 549 (Oct) 1949
 Ringbom A and Merikanto B A Titrimetric Method for the Determination of Calcium
Acta Chem Scandinav 3 931 No 1 1949
 Roe J H and Kahn B The Colorimetric Determination of Blood Calcium *J Biol
 Chem* 81 18 (Jan) 1929
 Shohl A T The Effect of Hydrogen Ion Concentration Upon the Determination of
 Calcium *J Biol Chem* 50 527 536 (Feb) 1920
 Shohl A T, and Pedley F G A Rapid and Accurate Method for Calcium in Urine
J Biol Chem 50 337 344 (Feb) 1920
 Sobel A E and Sklarsky S A Direct Acidimetric Microtitration Method for Calcium
J Biol Chem 122 665 672 (Feb) 1938
 Trevan J W and Bainbridge H W The Estimation of Calcium in Blood Serum *Bio-
 chem. J* 20 4 3 426 No 2 1926

Cobalt

- Claassen A and Westerveld W Photometric Determination of Cobalt With Nitroso K
 Salt *Rec Trav Chim* 67 720 724 1948
 McNaught K J The Determination of Cobalt in Animal Tissue Modification of the
 Method *Analyst* 67 97 98 (March) 1940
 Van Klooster H S Nitroso H Salt a New Reagent for the Detection of Cobalt *J Am
 Chem Soc* 43 740 749 (Jan) 1921
 Willard H H and Kaufman S Colorimetric Determination of Cobalt Using Nitroso K
 Salt *Anal Chem* 19 505 (July) 1947

Copper

- Oglethorpe C C and Smith C G Determination of Copper Volumetrically by the
 Iodine Thiocyanate Method *Analyst* 68 325 338 (Nov) 1943

Iodine

- Barker S B . Determination of Protein Bound Iodine *J Biol Chem* 173 715 74 (April) 1948
- Connor A C Curtis G M and Swenson R E A Simplified Method for the Determination of the Protein Bound Blood Iodine and Its Chemical Application *J Clin Endocrinol* 9 (11) 1185 1189 (Nov) 1949
- Dobouloz P Monge Hedde M F and Fondarai J Colorimetric Microdetermination of Iodine *Bull Soc Chim Biol France* pp 898 899 1947
- Fine M D Report on Iodine *J Assoc Offic Agric Chemists* 32 (3) 555 558 1949
- Gomberg H J Beierwaltes W H and Lampe I Radio Iodine Uptake in Humans V Absolute Determination of Radio Iodine in the Thyroid *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 73 40 408 (March) 1950
- Gross W G Wood L K and McHargue J S Spectrophotometric Determination of Iodine *Anal Chem* 20 900 901 (Oct) 1948
- Lacourt A and Timmermans A M Contributions to the Volumetric Micro Method for the Determination of Organic Iodine *Anal Chim Acta* 1 (2) 140 148 1947
- McCullagh D H A New Method for the Determination of Iodine *J Biol Chem* 107 (1) 35 44 (Oct) 1934
- Salters W T and McKay E A Iodine in Blood and Thyroid of Man and Small Animals *Endocrinol* 35 30 330 (Nov) 1944
- Stimmel B F and McCullagh D H A Note Concerning the Determination of Iodine *J Biol Chem* 116 (1) 1 4 (Nov) 1936

Iron

- Cooke W D Hazel F and McNabb W M Volumetric Determination of Small Amounts of Iron *Anal Chem* 21 1011 (Aug) 1949
- Hahn P F Bals W F Hettig R A Hamen M D and Whipple G H Radio active Iron and Its Excretion in Urine Bile and Feces *J Exper Med* 70 443 451 (Nov) 1939
- Worwood A J The Determination of Iron in Biological Material *Biochem J* 41 (1) 89 41 1947

Magnesium

- Flaschka H Rapid Determination of Calcium and Magnesium *Monatsh* 80 506 509 1949
- Garner R J Colorimetric Determination of Magnesium in Plasma or Serum by Means of Titan Yellow *Biochem J* 40 (3/6) 8 8 831 1946
- Kunkel H O Pearson P R and Schweigert B S The Photoelectric Determination of Magnesium in Body Fluid *J Lab & Clin Med* 32 (8) 10 7 1033 1944
- Michaels G D Anderson C T Margen S and Hassell L W Colorimetric Determination of Ca and Magnesium in Small Amounts of Urine Stool and Food *J Biol Chem* 180 175 180 1949

Manganese

- Gate F M and Ellis G H A Micro Colorimetric Method for the Determination of Manganese in Biological Materials With 4,4-Tetramethyldiaminotriphenylmethane *J Biol Chem* 168 3 544 (May) 1947
- Kun L Microdetermination of Manganese in Biological Material by Means of Catalysis *J Biol Chem* 170 509 514 (Oct) 1947

Mixtures

- Boyle A J Whitehead T, Bird E, J Batchelor T M, Isert T, Jacobson S D and Myers G H The Use of the Emission Spectrograph for the Quantitative Determination of Na K Ca Mg and Fe in Plasma and Urine *J Lab & Clin Med* 34 (5) 6 5 630 1949
- Folley J P The Microdetermination of Sodium Potassium Calcium and Chloride in a Single Plasma Sample *Canad. J Research* 26 E 189 195 (April) 1948

Phosphorus

- Brigg A P Some Applications of the Colorimetric Phosphate Method *J Biol Chem* 69 5 65 (March) 1944
- Kuttner T and Cohen H H Micro Colorimetric Studies I Molybdo Acid Stannous Chloride Reagent The Micro Estimation of Phosphate and Calcium in Pus Plasma and Spinal Fluid *J Biol Chem* 75 517 53 (Nov) 1947
- Soyenkov B A Micromethod of Phosphate Determination *J Biol Chem* 1 447 457 (May) 1947

Potassium

- Breh F, and Gaebler O H The Determination of Potassium in Blood Serum *J Biol Chem* 87 (1) 81 90 (May) 1930
- Chen Y C, and Shen S S Determination of Potassium by Zinc Cobaltinitrite *J Chinese Chem Soc* 11 (1) 11 14 1941
- Dahr E Determination of Potassium in Urine by Means of Periodic Acid *Acta physiol Scandinav* 12 229 234, 1946
- Folch J, and Lauren M Estimation of Potassium in Biological Materials as Potassium Phosphotungstate *J Biol Chem* 169 (3) 539 549 (Aug) 1947
- Harris J E A Modified Silver Cobaltinitrite Method for Potassium Determination *J Biol Chem* 136 619 627 (Dec) 1940
- Looney J M and Dyer C G A Photoelectric Method for the Determination of Potassium in Blood Serum *J Lab & Clin Med* 28 (3) 355 363 (Dec) 1947
- Shohl A T and Bennett H B A Micro Method for the Determination of Potassium as Iodoplatinate *J Biol Chem* 78 643 657 (Aug) 1928
- Van Rysselberge P J Quantitative Determination of Potassium by Sodium Cobaltinitrite Method *Indust & Engin Chem Anal Ed* 3 (1) 3 4 (Jan) 1931

Sodium

- Albanese, A A and Lein M The Microcolorimetric Determination of Sodium in Human Biologic Fluids *J Lab & Clin Med* 33 246 250 (Feb) 1948
- Bills C E McDonald F G Neidermeier W and Schwartz M C Sodium and Potassium in Foods and Waters Determination by the Flame Photometer, *J Am Dietet A* 25 (4) 304 314 (April) 1949
- Butler A M and Tuthill E An Application of the Uranyl Zinc Acetate Method for Determination of Sodium in Biological Material *J Biol Chem* 93 171 180 (Sept) 1931
- Hald P M Heinsen A J and Peters J P The Estimation of Serum Sodium From Bicarbonate Plus Chloride *J Clin Investigation* 26 (5) 983 990 (Sept) 1947
- Marinis T P Muirhead F L Jones F and Hill J M Sodium and Potassium Determinations in Health and Disease *J Lab & Clin Med* 32 (10) 1 08 1 16 (Oct) 1947
- McCance R A and Shipp H L A Colorimetric Determination of Sodium *Biochem J* 25 449 456, No 2 1931
- Stone, H C H and Goldzieher J W A Rapid Colorimetric Method for the Determination of Sodium in Biological Fluids and Particularly in Serum *J Biol Chem* 181 511 522 (Dec) 1948
- Weinbach A P A Micromethod for the Determination of Sodium *J Biol Chem* 110 (1) 95 100 (June) 1935
- Willebrands A F Jr Determination of Na and K in Blood Serum and Urine by Means of the Flame Photometer *Nederl tijdschr v geneesk* 93 III 2351 2356 1949

Sulfur

- Erdos J Procedure for the Micro Determination of Sulphur *Mikrochemie ver Mikrochim Acta* 34 286 288 1949
- Kahn B S and Leiboff M L Colorimetric Determination of Inorganic Sulphate in Small Amounts of Urine *J Biol Chem* 80 623 630 (Dec) 1928
- Klimenko V G Microdetermination of Sulphur in Biological Materials *Biokhimiya* 14 14, 1949
- Leclerc M Volumetric Determinations of Sulphate *Mém Services Chim état* 3^e 15 19 1945
- Letonoff, T V and Reinhold J G A Colorimetric Method for the Determination of Inorganic Sulfate in Serum and Urine *J Biol Chem* 114 (1) 147 158 (May) 1938
- Power, M H and Wakefield E G A Volumetric Benzidine Method for the Determination of Inorganic and Etheral Sulphate in Serum *J Biol Chem* 123 665 678 (May) 1938
- Shu Chuan Liang Y W and Tzu Cheng C Gravimetric Determination of Sulphur as Barium Sulphate II. Elimination of Chromic Ion Interference by Means of Tannin *J Chinese Chem Soc* 14 9 16 1946
- Sperber I A Direct Turbidimetric Method for Determining Etheral Sulfates in Urine *J Biol Chem* 172 (2) 441 444 (Feb) 1948
- Steyermark A Bass E and Littman H Microdetermination of Sulfur in Organic Compounds *Anal Chem* 20 537 (June) 1948
- Stockholm M and Koch F C A Quantitative Method for the Determination of Total Sulfur in Biological Material *J Am. Chem Soc* 45 (9) 1953 1959 (Aug) 19 3
- Wakefield E G The Colorimetric Determination of Total and Inorganic Sulphates in Blood Serum Urine and Other Body Fluids *J Biol Chem* 81 713 711 (March) 19 9

Total Base

Fiske H. H. A Method for the Estimation of Total Base in Urine J Biol Chem 51 (1)
55 61 (March) 1920

Stadie W C and Ross E U A Micro Method for the Determination of Base in Blood
and Serum and Other Biological Materials J Biol Chem 88 735 54 (Oct) 19 5

Water

Sapirstein L A A Simple Method for the Densimetric Determination of Heavy Water
J Lab & Clin Med 35 793 794 (May) 1950

Zinc

Hoch F L and Vallee H L Precipitation by Trichloroacetic Acid as a Simplification in
Determination of Zinc in Blood and Its Components J Biol. Chem 181 (1) 295 306
(Nov) 1949

Vallee H I and Gibson J O 2nd An Improved Dithizone Method for the Determina-
tions of Small Quantities of Zinc in Blood and Tissue Samples J Biol Chem 176
435 443 (Oct) 1948

SECTION IV

BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

B PROTEIN AND NITROGEN COMPOUNDS

1 Total Nitrogen (Micro Kjeldahl) in Serum Urine, Food and Feces

A. IN SERUM AND URINE

References

- Keys A A Rapid Micro Kjeldahl Method, *J Biol Chem* 132 181 187 (Jan) 1940
- Ma T B and Zuazaga G Micro Kjeldahl Determination of Nitrogen A New Indicator and an Improved Rapid Method, *J Ind & Eng Chem (Anal Ed)* 14 280 282 (March) 1942

Principle

Serum and urine are digested with a phosphate catalyst plus hot sulfuric acid and converted to ammonium sulfate. The ammonia is liberated by the addition of alkali, distilled into a boric acid solution and titrated directly with standard acid.

Apparatus

- 1 Calibrated syringe pipette, 0.2 ml (Krogh type)
- 2 A quantity of 100 ml Kjeldahl (micro) flasks with standard tapered joints
- 3 A manifold of six micro burners with a good hood
- 4 Micro Kjeldahl ammonia apparatus (Procured at Macalaster Buehler Co Cambridge Mass. See Fig 18)
- 5 A 2 ml burette (Krogh syringe)
- 6 A number of 15 ml round bottom test tubes (Fehberg type)
- 7 A number of 100 ml volumetric flasks (for food and fecal analyses)
- 8 Luer lok syringe 5 ml

Reagents

- 1 Mixed indicator Prepare in 95% alcohol 10 ml bromocresol green (0.1%) and 2 ml methyl red (0.1%). This solution keeps well at room temperature
- 2 Boric acid 2% (approximately) Stored in a glass stoppered bottle it keeps indefinitely
- 3 Hydrochloric acid or sulfuric acid 0.3 N accurately titrated
- 4 Sodium hydroxide 30% (approximately) Store in bottle with rubber stopper. Keeps indefinitely
- 5 Catalyst Powder and mix potassium phosphate, dibasic (K_2HPO_4) and hydrated copper sulfate ($CuSO_4$) in the proportion (approximately) 4 : 1
- 6 Concentrated sulfuric acid CP (ACS)
- 7 Grease for glass joints Use pure glycerol or a mixture of 50 ml glycerol with 5 gm NaOH
- 8 Standard ammonium sulfate Dilute exactly - 30 gm of ammonium sulfate to 1000 ml of water. This is equivalent to 0.5 mg N/ml

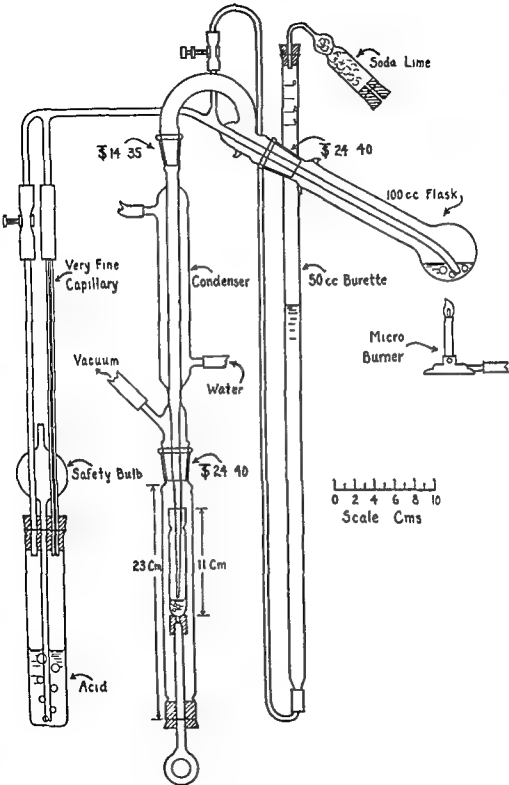


Fig 18.—Still for distillation of ammonia in a partial vacuum, showing complete apparatus in use during distillation. (It produced with permission of the manufacturers.)

Procedure

- 1 Pipette exactly 0.2 ml of serum or urine with a syringe pipette into digestion flask, taking care to deliver to the very bottom of the flask. Wash out pipette with distilled water 6 times
- 2 Add roughly 2 gm of catalyst (phosphate mixture)
- 3 Add approximately 1.5 ml of concentrated sulfuric acid.
- 4 Digest over burners with exhaust or in hood until solution becomes a clear green. Let flasks cool gradually to room temperature
- 5 Pipette 1 ml of 2% boric acid into collecting tubes (15 ml)
- 6 Add one drop of mixed indicator to each tube
- 7 Add approximately 10 °0 ml distilled water down side of digestion flask.
- 8 Distill contents of flask into boric acid contained in Rehberg tube as follows
 - a Lubricate mouth of flask with glycerol—NaOH and attach to still
 - b Attach Rehberg tube containing boric acid to still so that delivery tube is just below surface of boric acid
 - c Turn on vacuum slowly
 - d When pressure is uniform throughout still add approximately 6 ml of sodium hydroxide to flask by opening cock under burette
 - e Wait 1 to 2 minutes until the evolution of gas decreases (when the rate of bubbling in the acid tube will decrease) and turn on full vacuum
 - f Light micro burner under flask with very low flame for the first few minutes gradually increasing the flame until it touches the flask
 - g Collect distillate. At intervals lower boric acid tube so that delivery tip remains only ½ inch below surface of distillate
 - h Collect 9-10 ml distillate
 - i Pull acid tube below tip of delivery tube
 - j Distill 5-6 more drops and turn off gas flame
 - k In 15-20 seconds turn off vacuum
 - l Wait for bubbling to quiet down and open capillary cock slowly
 - m Allow time for pressure within and without still to equalize
 - n Remove collecting Rehberg tube and flask.
 - o Remove digestion flask by holding its bulb with a towel. Be sure to drain off excess alkaline solution on tip of glass tube which inserts into the flask.
- 9 Titrate contents of micro tube with 0.3 N H₂SO₄ until solution first turns a distinct orange. Use micro burette (2 ml) and air pressure for stirring

Blank

Digest and titrate as above a solution of distilled water with 1 gram digest mixture and 1 ml of acid.

Standard

Place 5 ml of standard ammonium sulfate (NH₄)₂SO₄ in a digestion flask and proceed as usual

Calculation

- 1 Grams N per 100 ml of serum or urine =

$$\frac{0.014 \times (\text{ml titration} - \text{ml blank}) \times (\text{Normality of acid}) \times 100}{\text{Volume of sample in ml}}$$

- 2 To convert nitrogen to protein in serum multiply by the factor of 6.25

Example

- 1 Normality of standard acid = 0.335 N

$$(\text{Equivalent to } 14 \times \frac{1}{1000} \times 0.335 \text{ gm nitrogen per ml})$$

- 2 Amount of serum used in analyses was 0.231 ml
- 3 ml of standard acid used in titration was 0.560 ml
- 4 Blank analysis = 0.03 ml acid.
- 5 Therefore

$$\frac{0.14 \times (0.560 - 0) \times (0.5) \times 100}{0.231 \text{ ml}} = 1.09 \text{ gm nitrogen per 100 ml}$$

- 6 Then
- 1.09 gm nitrogen/100 ml $\times 6.25 = 6.8$ gm protein/100 ml

Precautions

- 1 Never allow the distillate to be above the boric acid level
- 2 In digesting the sample do not allow the sample to dry. If necessary add more concentrated sulfuric acid
- 3 Rinse out the 0.2 ml syringe pipette at least 6 times with water adding all washings to the flask
- 4 Be sure that enough alkali is added to liberate the ammonia. This can be determined by a change in color from green to blue or brown.
- 5 The catalyst recommended above serves for most biological fluids. If unusual compounds might be present it is necessary to check the efficiency of the catalyst and perhaps to use selenium or mercury as catalyst

3 NITROGEN IN FECEES AND FOOD

- 1 Once the food and feces are diluted with water and homogenized in a Waring blender it is convenient to pipette out 0.2 ml for digesting
- 2 We use a calibrated 5 ml Luer Lok syringe for measuring as it has a larger bore than the regular syringe
- 3 Add 0.2 ml of concentrated H_2SO_4 and 4 gm of the catalyst
- 4 After digestion to a clear green the flask is cooled and diluted very slowly to 100 ml (actually only concentrated H_2SO_4 is left in the flask so be very cautious)
- 5 Then distill either 10 or 20 ml of solution

2 Serum Proteins (Biuret Method)

Reference

Wolfson W Q, Cohn C, Calvary E and Ichiba F. Studies in Serum Proteins. V. A Rapid Procedure for the Estimation of Total Protein, True Albumin, Total Globulin, Alpha Globulin, Beta Globulin and Gamma Globulin in 1.0 ml of Serum. *Am J Clin Path* 18, 3730 (Sept.) 1943

Principle

The albumin and the three major globulin fractions are determined after precipitation and measured colorimetrically in a spectrophotometer by the addition of an alkaline copper sulfate reagent (biuret) which produces a bluish purple color.

Apparatus

- 1 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 2 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model #6
- 3 Centrifuge tubes—15 ml round bottom
- 4 Centrifuge tubes—15 ml conical
- 5 Centrifuge—electric
- 6 Incubator set at 37°C
- 7 Calibrated 0.1, 0.2, 0.4, 0.6 and 0.8 ml syringe pipettes.
- 8 Rubber stoppers #1 solid.

Reagents

- 1 23% sodium sulfate : Exactly 23 grams of anhydrous sodium sulfate in distilled water at 37 C. Make up to 100 ml and keep in an incubator at 37 C
- 2 29% sodium sulfite solution : Exactly 28 gm in water at 28 C. Shake and dissolve
- 3 Saline ammonium sulfate : In a liter volumetric flask dissolve 193 gm of ammonium sulfate in approximately 500 ml of water. Add 40 gm of sodium chloride (NaCl) dissolve and make up to 1000 ml
- 4 Biuret reagent (Weichselbaum T E. *Am J Clin Path* 16 Tech. Sec 10 40 49 1946) : Dissolve 90 gm of Rochelle salts in about 400 ml of 0.2 N NaOH. Add 10 gm of $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$. When dissolved add 10 gm of potassium iodide and make up to 2000 ml with 0.2 N NaOH. Store in rubber stoppered waxed glass bottle
- 5 Span ether reagent (We are indebted to the Atlas Powder Co. of Wilmington Delaware for Span) :

1 ml Span - 20	}	Filter through fast paper and dilute to 100 ml with ether
99 ml Ether (USP)		
- 6 Ether USP

Procedure for Total Protein

For a standard curve use saline as the diluent and use protein concentrations of 10 to 80 gm per 100 ml at intervals of one gram. Use serum albumin concentration of 25 gm per 100 ml

- 1 Pipette exactly 0.1 ml of serum into a 15 ml round bottom tube and dilute to 5 ml with 4.9 ml of distilled water. Mix well by inversion
- 2 Transfer exactly 3 ml to a cuvette
- 3 Add exactly 3 ml of biuret reagent and mix by inverting the tube
- 4 Prepare a blank with 3 ml of water and 3 ml of biuret reagent. Save the same blank for determination of albumin plus alpha globulin and for gamma globulin.
- 5 Let stand for at least 30 minutes and read at 540 m μ placing the blank at 100% T. The color is stable for 24 hours

Procedure for Serum Albumin Plus Alpha Globulin

- 1 Pipette exactly 2.4 ml of sodium sulfate solution into a test tube. This solution is always kept in an incubator at 37 C.
- 2 Add exactly 0.1 ml of serum and mix by inversion. *Do not shake*
- 3 Add approximately 1 ml of ether stopper and mix by inversion for 30 seconds. Centrifuge for 5 to 10 minutes at 1500 to 2000 r.p.m.
- 4 Hold tube on a slant and withdraw exactly 1.5 ml of clear centrifugate and transfer to a cuvette
- 5 Add exactly 1.5 ml of distilled water and 3.0 ml of biuret reagent. Mix well.
- 6 Read after 30 minutes at 540 m μ , setting blank at 100% T.

Procedure for Serum Albumin

- 1 Pipette exactly 4.9 ml of sodium sulfite solution into a 15 ml round bottom tube.
- 2 Add exactly 0.1 ml of serum and mix thoroughly by inversion
- 3 Add about 1 ml Span ether reagent stopper and invert gently for 30 seconds. *Do not shake*. In some cases up to 30% of the albumin is lost by vigorous shaking. Centrifuge as above
- 4 Pipette exactly 3.0 ml of the clear centrifugate into a cuvette
- 5 Add 3 ml of biuret reagent and mix well by inversion. Prepare a blank by using 3 ml sodium sulfite plus 3 ml biuret reagent
- 6 Let stand 15 minutes and read at 540 m μ setting the blank at 100% T

Procedure for Serum Gamma Globulin

- 1 Pipette exactly 9.8 ml of saline ammonium sulfate solution into 15 ml conical tube
- 2 Layer exactly 0.2 ml of serum on top of the solution. Stopper and mix by careful slow repeated inversion for about a minute or two until the turbidity has reached a maximum
- 3 Remove exactly 1.0 ml of the mixture and discard.
- 4 Cork and centrifuge at 2500 to 4500 rpm for 5 minutes. If turbid cool under tap water for a few minutes and centrifuge again. Supernatant fluid must be clear.
- 5 Decant supernatant fluid and centrifuge for 5 minutes more. Invert tubes on a layer of paper toweling or filter paper for a few minutes.
- 6 First pipette exactly 3.0 ml of biuret reagent to the precipitate and 3.0 ml water and shake briskly for 30 seconds.
- 7 Allow to stand for 15 minutes, centrifuge down any slight residual turbidity remaining and decant into a cuvette.
- 8 For the blank use 3.0 ml biuret reagent plus 3.0 ml water. Allow to stand 30 minutes and read at 540 mμ with the blank at 100% T.
- 9 Divide the protein value obtained by 3 to obtain the serum gamma globulin concentration. This is the reason for discarding the 1 ml in step 3.

Calculation

Serum total globulin = Total protein - Serum albumin

A/G Ratio = Serum albumin ÷ Serum globulin

Serum alpha globulin = (Serum albumin + alpha globulin) - Serum albumin

Serum beta + gamma globulin = Total protein - (albumin + alpha globulin)

Serum beta globulin = (Serum beta + gamma globulin) - Serum gamma globulin

Example

- 1 Total protein: A reading of 5.0% T on the calibration chart is equivalent to 4.16 mg of protein in actual amount. In the final analyses we actually used 0.06 ml of serum (3 ml of a 0.1 to 5.0 ml dilution).
Therefore 4.16 mg = 0.06 ml of serum
or 69 gm of protein per 100 ml of serum.
- 2 Albumin: A reading of 66% T is equivalent to 2.60 mg of albumin in actual amounts. We used 0.06 ml of serum (3 ml of a 0.1 to 5 ml dilution).
Therefore 2.60 mg = 0.06 ml of serum
or 43 gm albumin per 100 ml of serum.
- 3 Alpha globulin plus albumin: A reading of 61% T is equivalent to 2.1 mg of albumin + alpha globulin in actual amounts. We used 0.06 ml of serum (3 ml of a 0.1 to 5 ml dilution).
Therefore 2.1 mg = 0.06 ml of serum
or 35 gm of albumin plus alpha globulin per 100 ml of serum.
- 4 Serum gamma globulin: A reading of 77% T is equivalent to 1.66 mg gamma globulin in actual amounts. We used 0.18 ml of serum (9 ml of a 0.2 to 10 ml dilution).
Therefore 1.66 = 0.18 ml serum
or 0.87 gm of gamma globulin per 100 ml of serum.
- 5 Total protein (69 gm) - albumin (43 gm) = total globulin (26 gm)
Therefore albumin/globulin ratio = 1.6
- 6 Alpha globulin = (Serum albumin + alpha globulin 5.4 gm) - albumin (4.3) = 0.9 gm.
- 7 Beta + gamma globulin = Total protein (6.9) - albumin + alpha globulin (5.4) = 1.5 gm
- 8 Beta globulin = beta + gamma globulin (1.56) - gamma globulin (0.87) = 0.69 gm

Precautions

- 1 In the albumin determination, *do not shake the tube vigorously*. In some cases up to 30 per cent of the albumin is lost in this way
- 2 This method depends on exact pipetting. Therefore we have used syringe pipettes throughout the procedure
- 3 In the serum gamma globulin add the biuret reagent *first* before adding the water
- 4 The serum albumin must be analyzed by the Kjeldahl method for exact analysis

3 Albumin and Globulin in Serum**Reference**

Howe P W The Use of Sodium Sulfate as the Globulin Precipitant in the Determination of Proteins in Blood J Biol Chem 49 93 107 (Nov) 19 1

Principle

Serum proteins are fractionated by precipitation of globulin in sodium sulfate. The albumin in solution is analyzed by one of the total nitrogen methods

Apparatus

- 1 An incubator set at 37 C
- 2 Filter paper analytical grade (Whatman No 40)
- 3 Ammonia still and standard tapered flasks (see total nitrogen analyses)
- 4 Nitrogen digestion unit
- 5 An accurately calibrated 0.5 ml syringe pipette
- 6 A quantity of 50 ml Erlenmeyer flasks
- 7 A supply of funnels

Reagents

- 1 Sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4) anhydrous a 22% solution in water. Keep in 37 C oven
- 2 Thymol crystals
- 3 Other reagents are the same as those for *Nonprotein Nitrogen* and *Total Nitrogen*

Procedure

- 1 Pipette exactly 0.5 ml of serum and 15 ml of sodium sulfate solution into a 50 ml Erlenmeyer flask.
- 2 Add 1 crystal of thymol
- 3 Place in incubator at 37 C for 3 hours
- 4 Heat a funnel, a 50 ml Erlenmeyer flask and filter paper (Whatman No 40) by placing in the same oven
- 5 Filter solution through heated filter into heated flask to prevent precipitation of sodium sulfate. The filtrate contains albumin and nonprotein nitrogen. If the filtrate is not clear repeat filtration using the same filter paper
- 6 Digest exactly 5 ml of the filtrate for nitrogen determination using *Key's* method
- 7 Estimate nonprotein nitrogen in the original sample of serum following *Daly's* method as described in the description of nonprotein nitrogen

Calculation

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Total protein} &= (\text{Total N} - \text{NPN}) \times 6.25 \\
 \text{Albumin} &= (\text{N in filtrate} - \text{NPN}) \times 6.25 \\
 \text{Globulin} &= \text{Total protein} - \text{albumin} \\
 \text{A/G ratio} &= (\text{Albumin} \div \text{Globulin})
 \end{aligned}$$

Example

Total serum nitrogen = 1.05 gm. per 100 ml serum
 Nonprotein nitrogen = 40.0 mg per 100 ml serum
 Total nitrogen in filtrate = 0.67 gm per 100 ml serum
 Total protein = $(1.05 - 0.04) \times 6.25 = 6.32$ gm/100 ml
 Albumin = $(0.67 - 0.04) \times 6.25 = 3.94$ gm/100 ml
 Globulin = $6.32 - 3.94 = 2.38$ gm/100 ml
 A/G ratio = $3.94 \div 2.38 = 1.66$

Precautions

- 1 Time and temperature are critical. Be sure to incubate for exactly 3 hours at exactly 37 C
- 2 Be sure to have filter paper funnel and flask at exactly 37 C

Whole Blood Hemoglobin and Serum Protein (Copper Sulfate Specific Gravity)

References

- Phillips H A Van Slyke D D Hamilton P B Dole V P Emerson K. Jr and Archibald R M Measurement of the Specific Gravities of Whole Blood and Plasma by Standard Copper Sulphate Solutions *J Biol Chem.* 183 305 330 (March) 1950
- Van Slyke D D Hiller A Phillips R A Hamilton P B, Dole V P Archibald R M and Eder H A The Estimation of Plasma Protein Concentration from Plasma Specific Gravity *J Biol Chem* 183 331 343 (March) 1950
- Van Slyke D D Phillips R A Dole V P Hamilton P B Archibald R M and Plazin J Calculation of Hemoglobin from Blood Specific Gravities *J Biol Chem* 183 349 360 (March) 1950

Principle

The concentration of protein in serum and hemoglobin in cells determines in large part their specific gravities the specific gravity of whole blood = accounted for by that of serum and cells. The present method estimates specific gravity by the behavior of drops of serum and whole blood in solutions of copper sulfate of various specific gravity. The serum protein and whole blood hemoglobin are then calculated or more simply read off from a line chart.

Apparatus

- 1 30 square oz bottles of copper sulfate solution from sp gr 1.021 through 1.033 and 1.05 through 1.068. These bottles should have their sp gr etched clearly on them.
Four 0.5 ml tuberculin syringes.
- 3 Four hypodermic needles #20 or finer
- 4 Four stylets for cleaning needles.
- 5 Heparinized vials (8 ml) for collecting whole blood.

Reagents

- 1 Copper sulfate solid CuSO4 \cdot 5H2O finely granular or powdered
 - a. Copper sulfate solution sp gr 1.100. Allow 1 liter for every 500 samples of blood. It is most conveniently carried in large amounts from the base laboratory into the field but can be made up as follows. Four pounds of copper sulfate are placed in a gallon jug. About 2.5 liters distilled or rain water are added. (Tap water may be used if it is not more than sp gr 1.003 compared with distilled water as 1.000 at the same temperature. Use urinometer for this comparison.) The bottle is stoppered and shaken vigorously for 5 minutes and

the end of which time the temperature is recorded to the nearest $\frac{1}{2}$ degree C. The saturated supernatant solution is immediately decanted and is filtered through cotton into a clean dry jug. The solution of sp gr 1.100 is now made at once by diluting accurately to 1 liter the amount of saturated solution indicated in Table 7. Once made the solution of sp gr 1.100 keeps in definitely. Prepare 4 liters at a time.

TABLE 7

ML OF SATURATED COPPER SULFATE SOLUTION TO BE DILUTED TO 1 LITER TO MAKE STOCK SOLUTION OF SPECIFIC GRAVITY 1.100

Temperature in C or F refers to the temperature of the saturated solution at the time of saturation (end of shaking for 5 minutes)

TEMPERATURE			TEMPERATURE			TEMPERATURE		
°	F	ml	C	F	ml	°	F	ml
10.0	50.0	578	20.0	68.0	483	30.0	86.0	415
10.5	50.9	573	20.5	68.9	484	30.5	86.9	413
11.0	51.8	568	21.0	69.8	480	31.0	87.8	410
11.5	52.7	563	21.5	70.7	477	31.5	88.7	417
12.0	53.6	558	22.0	71.6	473	32.0	89.6	414
12.5	54.5	553	22.5	72.5	469	32.5	90.5	411
13.0	55.4	548	23.0	73.4	466	33.0	91.4	409
13.5	56.3	543	23.5	74.3	463	33.5	92.3	406
14.0	57.2	538	24.0	75.2	460	34.0	93.2	403
14.5	58.1	534	24.5	76.1	456	34.5	94.1	401
15.0	59.0	529	25.0	77.0	453	35.0	95.0	398
15.5	59.9	525	25.5	77.9	450	35.5	95.9	395
16.0	60.8	521	26.0	78.8	447	36.0	96.8	392
16.5	61.7	516	26.5	79.7	445	36.5	97.7	390
17.0	62.6	512	27.0	80.6	441	37.0	98.6	388
17.5	63.5	508	27.5	81.5	439	37.5	99.5	384
18.0	64.4	504	28.0	82.4	436	38.0	100.4	381
18.5	65.3	500	28.5	83.3	434	38.5	101.3	379
19.0	66.2	496	29.0	84.2	431	39.0	102.2	376
19.5	67.1	492	29.5	85.1	428	39.5	103.1	373

- b Copper sulfate sp gr 1.100. An alternative to method 2 a is to dissolve exactly 170 gm of pure $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ in water. Amounts of water recommended for preparing the solution sp gr 1.100

Temperature C	ml of Water
10.17 C	1004
17.22 C	1005
26.26 C	1006
26.29 C	1007
29.33 C	1008
33.36 C	1009
36.38 C	1010
38.40 C	1011

- 3 Copper sulfate solutions. These solutions are most conveniently made according to Table 7 by running the stock solution of sp gr 1.100 from a burette into a 50 ml graduated mixing cylinder, diluting to the mark with water, mixing, adding to the appropriate bottle, rinsing the cylinder and starting over. These solutions should be changed when 50 drops of whole blood or serum have been added. It is therefore advisable to make up in the field about 500 ml each of those most commonly used.

Procedure

- 1 The amounts needed are about 0.5 ml each of whole blood and serum prepared as described in a previous section. The whole blood must be mixed thoroughly by inversion of its container immediately before use. The whole blood serum and solutions of copper sulfate must all be at approximately the same temperature.

TABLE 8

OF STOCK COPPER SULFATE SOLUTION OF GRAVITY 1.000 TO BE DILUTED TO 50 ML TO PREPARE STANDARD SOLUTIONS OF GRAVITY G TO WITHIN ±0.001

CuSO ₄ IN MIXING CYLINDER		CuSO ₄ IN MIXING CYLINDER	
SP GR	ML	SP GR	ML
1.009	3.67	1.043	1.00
9	4.16	41	21.50
10	4.66	45	00
11	5.15	46	7.50
1	5.6	47	3.00
13	6.14	48	23.50
14	6.64	49	24.00
15	7.13	50	24.50
16	7.63	51	5.00
17	8.1	52	5.50
18	8.6	53	6.00
19	9.11	54	6.50
0	9.61	55	7.00
1	10.10	56	7.50
	10.60	57	8.00
3	11.09	58	28.50
4	11.9	59	9.00
5	1.0	60	9.50
6	1.5	61	30.00
7	13.00	62	30.50
8	13.54	63	31.00
9	14.03	64	31.50
20	14.5	65	3.00
31	1.01	66	3.50
3	15.50	67	33.00
33	16.00	68	33.5
34	16.50	69	34.04
35	17.00	0	34.6
36	1.50	1	35.08
37	18.00		35.69
38	18.50	73	36.1
39	19.00	4	36.64
40	19.50	75	37.15
41	0.00		
4	0.50		

- 2 For whole blood the range 1.05 through 1.09 is used for serum the range 1.01 through 1.033. Fill a syringe with its needle attached to about the 1 ml mark. If the syringe has just been used for a preceding estimation, empty it so far as practicable by pulling the plunger back and forth several times before finally filling the syringe with the new sample.
- 3 With the copper sulfate rack in a convenient position, remove the stopper from sp gr 1.060 for whole blood and 1.03 for serum. Hold the syringe in an almost vertical position with the tip of the needle about one-half inch above the solution.

LINE CHART FOR CALCULATING PLASMA PROTEINS, HEMOGLOBIN AND HEMATOCRIT FROM GRAVITIES OF PLASMA AND BLOOD

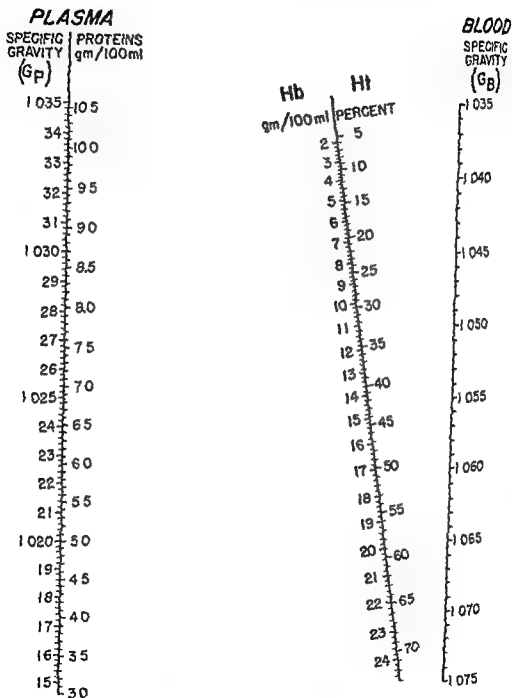


Fig 19—(From Copper Sulfate Method for Measuring Specific Gravities of Whole Blood and Plasma by Robert A. Phillips, Donald D. Van Slyke, Inc. at P. Dole, Kendall Emerson, Jr. Paul B. Hamilton, Reginald M. Archibald. (Reproduced by permission of the author))

4. Deliver a drop from the syringe keeping steady pressure on the plunger. For satisfactory estimation the drop must break the surface and fall at least an inch into the solution without leaving a streamer attached to the surface.
5. Watch the progress of the drop in the solution. When its specific gravity is exactly the same as that of the solution the drop will fall for a few seconds, come to a complete halt without moving up or down for about 10 seconds, and will then slowly fall to the bottom because it will take up copper and become heavy. When its specific gravity is greater than that of the solution the drop will continue to fall to the bottom. If the drop is lighter than the solution it will fall for a few seconds, halt for a second or two, and begin to rise. It will continue to rise until it takes up enough copper to fall to the bottom. If a drop rises on one bottle and falls in the next lightest the specific gravity lies between those of the two bottles and must be estimated to the nearest 0.000 by noting carefully the relative rates of rise in one bottle and fall in the next.
6. Record the specific gravity to the nearest 0.000, and proceed to the next sample.

Calculations

Calculate serum protein in grams per 100 ml and hemoglobin in grams per 100 ml by referring to the line chart Fig 19.

To find plasma protein use the two scales on the left hand line. (Note that for plasma the scales read from bottom to top and for the others from top to bottom.) To find hemoglobin or hematocrit from G_a and \bar{H} stretch thread between the numbers on the two outside lines and read the answer on the inside line. To approximate hemoglobin or hematocrit from G alone stretch the thread between observed \bar{H} and mean normal G and read from the middle line. The ranges for normal values are as follows:

	Men	Women
Whole blood specific gravity	1.055 to 1.0635	1.053 to 1.0603
Plasma specific gravity	1.040 to 1.050	1.040 to 1.050

When oxalate is used for an anticoagulant a correction must be made. For each mg of 3 ammonium oxalate potassium oxalate added per ml of blood deduct 0.0004 from both G and G_a .

Example

Serum sp gr = 1.064

Whole blood sp gr = 1.060

From line chart serum protein = 7.35 gm per 100 ml and
hemoglobin = 15.9 gm per 100 ml

Precautions

1. The samples and bottles of copper sulfate must be at approximately the same temperature otherwise very serious errors can be made. Thorough mixing of the whole blood is essential.
2. When particles remain on the surface or when the drops fail to break the surface cleanly the surface should be cleaned with a wooden applicator.
3. In the absence of tuberculin syringes ordinary medicated coppers can be used.
4. The ranges of specific gravity suggested above are for normal soldiers in whom hypoproteinemia and anemia are extremely rare. For other populations other ranges might be necessary.
5. The calculations for hemoglobin and hematocrit are valid only for normochromic normocytic blood.

EQUATIONS ON WHICH THE LINE CHARTS ARE BASED

(This is copied from the revised method, Don Baxter, Inc., Glendale California whose permission has been given to reprint it here)

The equations given below may be used in place of the line charts to calculate results

Total plasma protein concentration from plasma specific gravity The equation used is

$$(1) P = 369 (G_p - 1.0065)$$

P is the plasma protein concentration in grams per 100 ml G_p is the specific gravity of the plasma 1.0065 is the gravity of protein free plasma ultrafiltrate. In this equation as formerly used in the literature and in previous publications of the copper sulfate method the constant 343 was used instead of the present 369. The value 343 was originally derived by Moore and Van Slyke from observations on nephritis patients for use with such patients.

Hematocrit values We have used the formulation of Ashworth and Tigertt for calculating hematocrit values from gravities. Let G_b , G_p and G_c represent the specific gravities of blood, plasma and centrifuged cells, respectively and H the hematocrit number in terms of ml of cells per 100 ml of blood. Then the weight of 100 ml of blood 100 G_b can be equated to the sum of weight of the cells and plasma as follows

$$(2) 100 G_b = H G_c + (100 - H) G_p$$

Rearrangement of Equation 2 to calculate H gives

$$(3) H = 100 \times \frac{G_b - G_p}{G_c - G_p}$$

Ashworth and Tigertt pointed out that if cell gravity in different bloods is nearly constant one can substitute its mean value for G_c in Equation 3 and use the latter to estimate hematocrit values from observed G_b and G_p values.

To estimate the value of G_c from observed G_b , G_p and H Equation 3 is rearranged to give Equation 4

$$(4) G_c = \frac{100 (G_b - G_p) + H G_p}{H}$$

Ashworth and Adams measured in a series of normal and pathological bloods the values of G_b , G_p and H, and calculated G_c by Equation 4. They thus found the mean value of G_c to be 1.0971. We have made similar observations in a series of 20 normal bloods and have obtained a mean G_c of 1.0970 identical with the value found by Ashworth and Adams. Substituting this value for G_c in Equation 3 gives

$$(5) H = 100 \times \frac{G_b - G_p}{1.0970 - G_p}$$

Equation 5 was used to calculate the hematocrit scale

In the experiments both of Ashworth and Adams and of the writers the hematocrit values used in Equation 4 to calculate G_c were obtained by the usual conventional technique for clinical hematocrits using *Wintrobe* tubes heparinized blood was centrifuged at 3000 rpm for 60 minutes the center of the centrifuge tube being 18 centimeters from the axis.

When a centrifuge was used in which the centers of the tubes were only 9 cm. from the axis 3000 rpm for an hour gave 51 instead of 4 as the mean

134 Biochemical Procedures

Apparatus

- 1 Special graduated centrifuge tube (65 ml)
- 2 Electric centrifuge
- 3 Accurate stopwatch

Reagents

- 1 Teuchiya's solution Mix 15 gm of phosphotungstic acid 50 ml of concentrated hydrochloric acid (HCl) and 1000 ml of 95% ethyl alcohol

Procedure

- 1 Pipette exactly 40 ml urine into a special centrifuge tube that is calibrated to 60 ml
- 2 Add 25 ml of phosphotungstic reagent
- 3 Mix several times by inversion and allow to stand *exactly* 10 minutes
- 4 Centrifuge for exactly 10 minutes at 1800 r p m and read amount of precipitate in terms of ml

Calculation

gram protein/liter = ml of precipitate \times 7.2 \times dilution (if any)

Example

Urine diluted 1 to 10

Reading 0.11 ml

$$\text{gram protein/liter} = (0.11) \times (7.2) \times \frac{(10)}{1} = 7.9$$

Precautions

- 1 The timing is very important exactly 10 minutes being required
- 2 With urine from patients with nephritis it may be necessary to dilute the urine before analysis. A dilution of 1 to 10 is usually satisfactory

6 Fibrinogen in Plasma

Reference

Butler, A. M. and Montgomery, H. The Solubility of the Plasma Proteins *J Biol Chem* 99 1,3 195 (D.C.) 1937

Principle

Fibrinogen is precipitated in a phosphate buffer and the supernatant fluid is analyzed for nitrogen. Fibrinogen is calculated by difference.

Apparatus

- 1 A quantity of 25 ml flasks or test tubes
- 2 Rubber stoppers
- 3 Analytical grade filter paper
- 4 Funnels
- 5 Apparatus for micro Kjeldahl determinations (see total nitrogen)

Reagents

- 1 Phosphate buffer 30 molar pH 6.5 Into a one liter flask put 403.5 gm of mono-basic potassium phosphate (KH_2PO_4) add 375 ml of accurate 4 N potassium hydroxide (KOH) and dilute to 1 liter with water
- 2 Other reagents are the same as those for the total nitrogen method.

Procedure

- 1 To exactly 10 ml of phosphate buffer add 1 ml of plasma from citrated blood
- 2 Mix stopper. Let stand overnight at room temperature

- 3 Filter through good analytical filter paper
4. Analyze a 3 ml al quot for nitrogen by the micro Kjeldahl method
- 5 Determine total nitrogen of the plasma by the micro Kjeldahl method

Calculation

Fibrinogen = (total nitrogen - soluble nitrogen) \times 6.25

Example

Total nitrogen = 1.05 gm per 100 ml plasma
 Soluble nitrogen = 0.98 gm per 100 ml plasma
 grams fibrinogen per 100 ml plasma = $(1.0 - 0.98) \times 6.25 = 0.44$

Precautions

- 1 The pH of the precipitating fluid is critical. It should be 6.5
- 2 Be sure that the blood is treated (0.5 ml) of saturated sodium citrate per 100 ml of blood)

Nonprotein Nitrogen in Serum and Whole Blood

Reference

Daly C A. The Determination of Non Protein Nitrogen With Special Reference to the Koch McNeekin Method. J Lab Clin Med 18: 179-1285 (Sept) 1933

Principle

Combined nitrogen is converted to ammonia which forms a yellow color in the presence of Nessler's solution

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
 A variety of 15 ml round bottomed centrifuge tubes with rubber stoppers (#1 solid)
- 2 Electric centrifuge
- 3 Micro burners in the laboratory or gasoline stove in the field
- 4 Folin digestion tubes graduated at 1.5 and 5 ml
- 5 Glass beads for digestion. These should be about 1 mm in diameter
- 6 A variety of pipettes including 0.5 ml, 1.0 ml, 5.0 ml graduated in 0.1 ml and 10 ml graduated in 0.1 ml
- 7 Cuvettes 19 \times 130 mm

Reagents

- 1 Nitrogen standard. Exactly 0.236 gm of dry ammonium sulfate is made up to exactly one liter with distilled water. One ml of this contains 0.05 mg N. It keeps for weeks in the cold.
 Trichloroacetic acid approximately 8 gm in 100 ml water. It keeps for at least 6 weeks in the cold.
- 2 Digestion mixture. A stock concentrated solution is prepared by pouring slowly and carefully with cooling 2.5 ml of concentrated nitrogen free sulfuric acid into 45 ml of water. The working mixture is prepared by diluting exactly 31 ml of the stock solution to 100 ml with distilled water.
- 3 Hydrogen peroxide. Superoxol (30% H₂O₂) is diluted with distilled water in the proportion 1 to 10. This 3% H₂O₂ keeps for a week in the cold.
- 4 Gum ghatti. Approximately 1 gm is dissolved in 100 ml of water and the solution is filtered through cotton.
- 5 Nessler's solution (after Koch). In a 1 liter mixing cylinder place 40 gm of mercuric iodide, 20 ml of water and 20 gm of potassium iodide. Mix until dissolved and dilute to 100 ml. Add with mixing 27 ml of 10% sodium citrate followed by

975 ml of exactly 10% sodium hydroxide. After the solution has cooled to room temperature dilute to exactly 1600 ml with water and store in a Pyrex vessel. It keeps indefinitely but does throw down a deposit.

Procedure

- 1 Precipitate protein by adding exactly 0.5 ml of blood or serum to exactly 4.5 ml of 8% trichloroacetic acid in a 15 ml centrifuge tube. Stopper and mix by inversion. Do not shake or foaming will be annoying.
- 2 Centrifuge at high speed for 5 minutes. If necessary filter to take out particles.
- 3 To a digestion tube add exactly 1.0 ml filtrate, 1.0 ml of digestion mixture and 2 small glass beads.
- 4 Place the digestion tube in a slanting position directly over a free flame. When boiling commences add exactly 2 drops of 3% H_2O_2 (Superoxol usually has some combined nitrogen in it and therefore the exact amount of H_2O_2 is important). During digestion the fluid should turn brown and then become clear. At the end dense white fumes of SO_3 will appear in the middle part of the tube.
- 5 Cool in the air. Inspect the digest to be sure there is no brown in it, and if there is, redigest.
- 6 At the same time as steps 3, 4 and 5 set up a blank tube containing 1 ml of water and a standard tube containing exactly 1 ml (= 0.050 mg N) of standard and treat them exactly like the unknowns.
- 7 Add approximately 10 ml of water and the 0.5 ml of gum ghatti solution.
- 8 Dilute to exactly 15 ml with water.
- 9 Add exactly 5 ml of Nessler's solution with continuous mixing.
- 10 Set spectrophotometer at 5.0 $\text{m}\mu$ with blank at 100% T and read unknowns.
- 11 Make up a standard curve using a range of 0.01 mg to 0.07 mg N at intervals of 0.01 mg preferably from standards run through the whole method.

Calculations

- 1 mg nonprotein N/100 ml serum =

$$\frac{(\text{mg N in cuvette}) \times 5 \times 100}{(\text{ml filtrate}) \times (\text{ml serum})}$$

Example

- 1 Unknown read 74.5% T equivalent to 0.03 mg N in cuvette. Serum was diluted 0.5 to 5.0 with trichloroacetic acid. Of the filtrate 1 ml was used for analysis.

$$\text{mg nonprotein N/100 ml serum} = \frac{(0.03) \times 5 \times 100}{(1.0) \times 0.5} = 30.0 \text{ mg N}$$

- 2 Since all samples of serum and blood are treated always alike, it is a saving of time to set up the standard curve in the manner shown in Fig. 20 and to read the final concentration directly.

Precautions

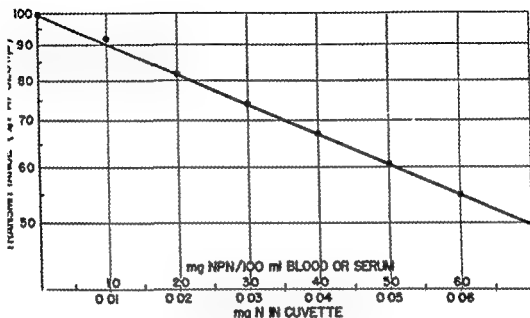
- 1 Both Nessler's solution and gum ghatti deposit sediments on standing for several days. Hence before each day's run it is desirable to decant off enough of the clear supernatant fluid from each for the analyses in prospect.
- 2 The commonest source of error is splattering during digestion. This can be avoided by keeping the tubes in gentle motion until boiling starts.

8 Creatinine in Urine

Reference

- Folin O and Wu H. A System of Blood Analysis. *J Biol Chem.* 33: 93-107 (March) 1919.

NON-PROTEIN NITROGEN IN SERUM AND BLOOD



%T VS NPN — DIRECT CONVERSION

%T	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	Mg NPN/100 ml Blood or Serum									
50	70	68	66	64	62	60	58.5	57	55	53
60	51.5	50	48	46.5	45	43	42	40.5	39	37
70	36	34.5	33	31.5	30	28.5	27.5	26	25	23.5
80	22	21	20	18.5	17	16	15	13.5	12.5	12
90	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	2.5	1.5	0.5
	NORMAL. 25 to 35 mg/100 ml									

G.E. WOODSON

Fig. 3—Use of calibration curve and conversion table for facilitating computation of results in estimating nonprotein nitrogen. The same format is useful for all kinds of colorimetric procedures.

Principle

Creatinine reacts with picrate in alkaline solutions at room temperature and in a few minutes a stable intense orange color is produced which can be measured in a photocolormeter

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 3 100 ml volumetric flasks
- 4 Calibrated syringe pipettes 0.1 ml and 10 ml
- 5 Volumetric pipettes of 20 ml capacity

Reagents

- 1 Sodium hydroxide, a 10% solution in water
- 2 Picric acid a 1% solution in water Gentle heating may be required to dissolve the acid Mix 100 ml NaOH and 100 ml picric acid and dilute to 1000 ml. This solution is called the alkaline picrate solution
- 3 Crystalline creatinine zinc chloride Dissolve and dilute 1.6108 gm to 1000 ml in 0.1 N hydrochloric acid This solution contains 1.0 mg of creatinine per ml

Procedure

- 1 Into a 100 ml volumetric flask measure accurately 0.1 ml of urine with a syringe pipette
- 2 Dilute to approximately 90 ml with distilled water and add exactly 20 ml of the mixed sodium hydroxide and picric acid mixture
- 3 Allow to stand for exactly 15 minutes after a gentle mixing and then dilute to 100 ml mark
- 4 A blank using exactly 90 ml of the alkaline picrate mixture is set up and diluted to 100 ml
- 5 An aliquot (10 ml) of the blank is pipetted into a cuvette and set at 100% T at a wave length of 540 mμ
- 6 Then read aliquots of the unknowns

Calculation

- 1 Prepare a standard curve from creatinine zinc chloride solution
 - a Dilute exactly 5 ml of standard to 100 ml This gives a solution of 0.05 mg creatinine per ml
 - b Into 100 ml volumetric flasks pipette 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4 and 0.5 ml of the dilute standard
 - c Add 20, 19, 18, 17, 16 and 15 ml of water respectively
 - d Add exactly 20 ml of the same alkaline picrate used for analysis of unknowns
 - e Stand exactly 15 minutes and then dilute to 100 ml
 - f Set blank at 100% T and read all standards at 540 mμ
 - g Plot the %T curve on semi log paper

$$\text{mg creatinine/liter urine} = \frac{(\text{mg creatinine/ml of final solution}) \times 100 \times 1000}{(1000) \times (0.1)} = (\text{mg creatinine/ml final solution}) \times 1000$$

Example

A reading of 81.0% T was equivalent to 0.0009 mg/ml of final solution Therefore
 gm creatinine/l urine = 0.0009 x 1000 = 0.9 gm/l

Precautions

- 1 Many variables affect the intensity of the creatinine picrate. Important among these are time of standing, temperature, concentration of alkali and presence of noncreatinine color producing substances. Therefore it is essential to establish standard conditions and to adhere strictly to these.

9 Creatine in Urine

Reference

- Folin O and Wu H A System of Blood Analysis J Biol Chem 38 80 100 (March) 1919

Principle

Creatine is converted to creatinine when boiled or autoclaved with acid. The creatinine is determined before and after the boiling treatment and creatine originally present in the urine is calculated by difference.

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- Cuvettes 10 150 mm
- 3 A quantity of 100 ml volumetric flask
- 4 Calibrated ring pipettes 0.1 ml and 10 ml
- 5 Autoclave set at 15 pounds pressure
- 6 A quantity of volumetric pipettes of 10 and 0 ml capacity

Reagents

- 1 Sodium hydroxide a 10% solution
- Picric acid a 1% solution in water. It may be necessary to warm this to obtain a clear solution.
- 3 Crytalline creatinine zinc chloride. The same concentration as for creatinine (1 mg/ml)
- 4 Hydrochloric acid 10 ml of concentrated HCl plus 100 ml of distilled water

Procedure

- 1 Into a 100 ml volumetric flask measure accurately 0.1 ml of urine with a syringe pipette. Add exactly 10 ml of picric acid solution, approximately 0 ml of water and ml of HCl solution.
- 2 Autoclave at 15 pounds pressure at a temperature of 115 to 120 C for 30 minutes.
- 3 Allow to cool to room temperature.
- 4 Add exactly 10 ml of sodium hydroxide and dilute to 100 ml after exactly 15 minutes of standing.
- 5 Run a blank using 10 ml of picric acid solution and 0 ml of water. Autoclave as above and run exactly as unknowns.
- 6 Set blank at 100% T at 50 mμ.

Calculation

- 1 (Total creatinine - preformed creatinine) = Creatine (as creatinine)
To convert creatine expressed as creatinine into the amount of creatine itself multiply by 1.16
- 2 (Total creatinine - preformed creatinine) $\times 1.16$ = Creatine

Example

- 1 Total creatine = 11.0 gm per liter urine
- 2 Preformed creatine = 0.0 gm per liter
- 3 $(11.0 - 0.0) \times 1.16 = 0.3$ gm of creatine per liter urine

Precautions

- 1 The precautions are the same as for creatinine with one important addition the hydrolysis of creatine may be affected markedly by temperature and acidity. Hence conditions during hydrolysis must be controlled rigidly.

10 Urea Nitrogen**A. UREA NITROGEN IN BLOOD AND SERUM****Reference**

- Getzkoew C J and Masen J M. An Accurate Method for the Determination of Blood Urea Nitrogen by Direct Nesslerization. *J Biol Chem* 143: 531-544 (Feb) 1942

Principle

The enzyme urease hydrolyzes urea into ammonium carbonate quantitatively at ordinary temperatures.

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model #6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 × 150 mm
- 3 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes
- 4 Water bath set at 55 °C
- 5 Electric centrifuge
- 6 Syringe pipettes exactly 0.2 ml and 0.3 ml

Reagents

- 1 Urease 10% solution. Mix 4 gm of urease (Squibba Powder) 27 ml of distilled water and 13 ml of 95% ethyl alcohol. This solution keeps only for one working day.
- 2 Sodium tungstate a 10% solution in water.
- 3 Sulfuric acid 2% N. Exactly 6.6 ml concentrated sulfuric acid (H₂SO₄) is made up to 360 ml with distilled water.
- 4 Dilute Nessler's reagent. Place 500 ml of 10% NaOH solution into a liter flask add 150 ml of Nessler's (for NPN) and dilute to 1000 ml with water. Mix and use on same day.
- 5 Standard solution of nitrogen. Exactly 0.236 gm of dry ammonium sulfate is diluted to exactly one liter with distilled water. Store in refrigerator. 1.0 ml = 0.05 mg of nitrogen.
- 6 Permutit prepared according to Folin (Folin O and Bell R D. Applications of a New Reagent for the Separation of Ammonia. *J Biol Chem* 29: 399 March 1917). Permutit is an insoluble sodium aluminum silicate (zeolite) that is used to absorb ammonia from solutions. It is best prepared (freeing the ammonia) by washing with 10% NaOH and then with 2% acetic acid. Decant wash with distilled water and dry in the air without heat. The recommended powder to use is 60 mesh.

Procedure

- 1 Add exactly 0.0 ml distilled water to a 15 ml centrifuge tube.
- 2 Add exactly 0.1 ml serum with a syringe pipette.
- 3 Add exactly 0.2 ml urease solution and incubate at 55 °C for 15 minutes.
- 4 Add exactly 0.3 ml of sodium tungstate solution.
- 5 Add exactly 0.3 ml of 2/3 N sulfuric acid and allow to flocculate.
- 6 Add exactly 1 ml of distilled water. Mix by inversion. Centrifuge until clear.

- 7 Into a cuvette add exactly 5 ml of supernatant fluid and 5 ml of water
- 8 Prepare a blank by adding 0 ml of dilute Nessler's solution to 10 ml of water
- 9 Set blank at 100% T at a wave length of 500 mμ
- 10 Add 2 ml of Nessler's to the unknowns and read immediately
- 11 Prepare a standard curve using a range of 0.1 mg to 0.07 mg

Calculation

$$\text{mg urea N/100 ml serum} = \frac{(\text{mg N in cuvette}) \times 10 \times 100}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml serum})}$$

Example

A reading of 65% T was obtained equal to 0.0 mg N in the cuvette. Of serum 0.5 ml was used and a 5 ml aliquot of the supernatant fluid

$$\text{mg urea N/100 ml serum} = \frac{(0.0) \times 10 \times 100}{(5) \times (0.5)} = 0.0 \text{ mg urea N}$$

Precautions

- 1 The samples must be read immediately as they cloud up in 1 to 2 minutes. Incubation time and temperature are important
- 2 The urease solution is unstable and must be replaced daily

B. UREA NITROGEN IN URINE**Procedure**

- 1 To a 50 ml flask add approximately 5 ml of urine
- 2 Add approximately 5 gm of permittit. Stopper and shake for 5 minutes. (The permittit absorbs the ammonia from the urine)
- 3 Allow to settle and decant off clear supernatant fluid
- 4 Dilute exactly 1 ml of ammonia free urine to exactly 50 ml with water
- 5 Pipette exactly 10 ml of diluted urine into a 15 ml centrifuge tube
- 6 Add exactly 10 ml distilled water
- 7 Add exactly 0.5 ml of urease solution and incubate for 15 minutes at 55°C
- 8 Add 0.4 ml of sodium tungstate solution
- 9 Add 0.4 ml of 1/3 N sulfuric acid and dilute to 10 ml (5 ml water)
- 10 Allow to flocculate and centrifuge until clear
- 11 Use 0 ml of supernatant fluid in a cuvette
- 12 Add 3.0 ml distilled water
- 13 Add 2.0 ml dilute Nessler's reagent and read immediately at 500 mμ
- 14 Set blank consisting of 10 ml of water and 0.5 ml of Nessler's solution at 100% T
- 15 Use same standard curve as for serum

Calculation

$$\text{gm urea N/liter urine} = \frac{(\text{mg N in cuvette}) \times (\text{ml dilution}) \times (1000)}{(1000) \times (\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml urine})}$$

Example

A reading of 63.0% T was equivalent to 0.01 mg N in the cuvette. Dilution was 100. 1 ml of urine was diluted to 50 ml of this 1 ml was diluted to 10 ml. An aliquot of 2.0 ml was taken for analysis.

$$\text{gm urea N/liter urine} = \frac{(0.01) \times (50) \times (10) \times (1000)}{(1000) \times (2) \times (1)} = 5.0 \text{ gm N}$$

Precautions

Same as for urea nitrogen in serum and blood

Precautions

- 1 The precautions are the same as for creatinine with one important addition the hydrolysis of creatine may be affected markedly by temperature and acidity. Hence conditions during hydrolysis must be controlled rigidly.

10 Urea Nitrogen**A. UREA NITROGEN IN BLOOD AND SERUM****Reference**

- Gentzkow C J and Masen J M. An Accurate Method for the Determination of Blood Urea Nitrogen by Direct Nesslerization. *J Biol Chem* 143: 531-544 (Feb) 1942

Principle

The enzyme urease hydrolyzes urea into ammonium carbonate quantitatively at ordinary temperatures.

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model #6
- 2 Cuvettes 10 x 150 mm
- 3 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes
- 4 Water bath set at 55 °C
- 5 Electric centrifuge
- 6 Syringe pipettes exactly 0.2 ml and 0.3 ml

Reagents

- 1 Urease 10% solution. Mix 4 gm of urease (Squibbs Powder) 27 ml of distilled water and 13 ml of 95% ethyl alcohol. This solution keeps only for one working day.
- 2 Sodium tungstate a 10% solution in water.
- 3 Sulfuric acid 2/3 N. Exactly 66 ml concentrated sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) is made up to 80 ml with distilled water.
- 4 Dilute Nessler's reagent. Place 500 ml of 10% NaOH solution into a liter flask add 150 ml of Nessler's (for NPN) and dilute to 1000 ml with water. Mix and use on same day.
- 5 Standard solution of nitrogen. Exactly 0.236 gm of dry ammonium sulfate is diluted to exactly one liter with distilled water. Store in refrigerator. 1.0 ml = 0.05 mg of nitrogen.
- 6 Permunit prepared according to Folin (Folin O and Bell R D. Applications of a New Reagent for the Separation of Ammonia. *J Biol Chem*, 23: 3-9 March 1917). Permunit is an insoluble sodium aluminum silicate (zeolite) that is used to absorb ammonia from solutions. It is best prepared (freeing the ammonia) by washing with 10% NaOH and then with 2% acetic acid. Decant wash with distilled water and dry in the air without heat. The recommended powder to use is 60 mesh.

Procedure

- 1 Add exactly 2.0 ml distilled water to a 15 ml centrifuge tube.
- 2 Add exactly 0.7 ml serum with a syringe pipette.
- 3 Add exactly 0.2 ml urease solution and incubate at 55 °C for 15 minutes.
- 4 Add exactly 0.3 ml of sodium tungstate solution.
- 5 Add exactly 0.3 ml of 2/3 N sulfuric acid and allow to flocculate.
- 6 Add exactly 7 ml of distilled water. Mix by inversion. Centrifuge until clear.

- Into a cuvette add exactly 5 ml of supernatant fluid and 5 ml of water
 8 Prepare a blank by adding . ml of dilute Nessler's solution to 10 ml of water
 9 Set blank at 100% T at a wave length of 500 mμ
 10 Add . ml of Nessler's to the unknowns and read immediately
 11 Prepare a standard curve using a range of 0.1 mg to 0.07 mg

Calculation

$$\text{mg urea N/100 ml serum} = \frac{(\text{mg N in cuvette}) \times 10 \times 100}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml serum})}$$

Example

A reading of 65% T was obtained equal to 0.0 mg N in the cuvette. Of serum 0.2 ml was used and a 5 ml aliquot of the supernatant fluid

$$\text{mg urea N/100 ml serum} = \frac{(0.0) \times 10 \times 100}{(5) \times (0.2)} = 0.0 \text{ mg urea N}$$

Precautions

- 1 The samples must be read immediately as they cloud up in 1 to 2 minutes. Incubation time and temperature are important
- 2 The urease solution is unstable and must be replaced daily

B UREA NITROGEN IN URINE**Procedure**

- 1 To a 50 ml flask add approximately 5 ml of urine
- 2 Add approximately . gm of permitt. Stopper and shake for 5 minutes (The permitt. absorbs the ammonia from the urine)
- 3 Allow to settle and decant off clear supernatant fluid
- 4 Dilute exactly 1 ml of ammonia free urine to exactly 50 ml with water
- 5 Pipette exactly 1.0 ml of diluted urine into a 15 ml centrifuge tube
- 6 Add exactly 1.0 ml of distilled water
- 7 Add exactly 0.2 ml of urease solution and incubate for 15 minutes at 55°C
- 8 Add 0.4 ml of sodium tungstate solution
- 9 Add 0.4 ml of 2/3 N sulfuric acid and dilute to 10 ml (7 ml water)
- 10 Allow to flocculate and centrifuge until clear
- 11 Use .0 ml of supernatant fluid in a cuvette
- 12 Add .0 ml of distilled water
- 13 Add .0 ml dilute Nessler's reagent and read immediately at 500 mμ
- 14 Set blank consisting of 10 ml of water and . ml of Nessler's solution at 100% T
- 15 Use same standard curve as for serum

Calculation

$$\text{gm urea N/liter urine} = \frac{(\text{mg N in cuvette}) \times (\text{ml diluted}) \times (1000)}{(1000) \times (\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml urine})}$$

Example

A reading of 63.0% T was equivalent to 0.01 mg N in the cuvette. Dilution was . One ml of urine was diluted to 50 of this 1 ml was diluted to 10. An aliquot of .0 ml was taken for analysis

$$\text{gm urea N/liter urine} = \frac{(0.01) \times (50) \times (10) \times (1000)}{(1000) \times (.0) \times (1)} = 5.0 \text{ gm N}$$

Precautions

Same as for urea nitrogen in serum and blood

11 Amino Acid Nitrogen in Urine**Reference**

Folin O A Colorimetric Determination of the Amino Acid Nitrogen in Normal Urine *J Biol Chem* 51 393 394 (April) 1952

Principle

The 1 to 2 percent of the total nitrogen which is combined as amino acids in the urine is estimated colorimetrically

Apparatus

- 1 Cuvettes 25 x 105 mm
Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model #6
- 3 Tubes graduated to 25 ml
- 4 Dark room or equivalent
- 5 Accurately calibrated 5 ml syringe pipette

Reagents

- 1 Permunit
- 2 1.25% sodium carbonate in water
- 3 0.1 N hydrochloric acid (HCl)
- 4 Sodium beta naphthoquinone-4 sulfonate 0.5% in water
- 5 Phenolphthalein indicator
- 6 Sodium acetate 2.5% in a 2.5% aqueous solution of acetic acid
- 7 Sodium thiosulfate 4% in water
- 8 Standard solution Amino acetic acid 0.516 gm plus 20 gm sodium benzoate up to 100 ml 0.1 N HCl (0.1 mg of amino acid nitrogen per ml)

Procedure

- 1 Dilute exactly 5.0 ml of urine to 25 ml add 1.0 gm of permunit and shake (This step removes free ammonia)
- 2 Decant into another 3 gm of permunit. Shake and decant again
- 3 Pipette 5.0 ml of ammonia free diluted urine into a 5 ml cuvette
- 4 Add 1.0 ml of 0.1 N HCl
- 5 Add 1.0 ml of 1.25% sodium carbonate and dilute to 10 ml
- 6 Then add 5 ml of sodium beta naphthoquinone-4 sulfonate solution and mix.
- 7 Stand overnight in dark and make acid to phenolphthalein
- 8 Add 5.0 ml of sodium thiosulfate and dilute to 25 ml
- 9 Set blank at 100% T and read at 480 mμ
- 10 Set up standard curve using 100 to 400 mg amino acid nitrogen

Calculation

$$mg \text{ amino N/liter urine} = \frac{(\text{mg amino N in cuvette}) \times (\text{dilution}) \times 1000}{(\text{ml aliquot in cuvette}) \times (\text{ml urine in original sample})}$$

Example

A reading of 29.0% T was equivalent to 0.20 mg amino nitrogen in cuvette. Of urine 5 ml samples were diluted to 25 ml of which 5 ml was analyzed.

$$mg \text{ amino N/liter urine} = \frac{(0.20) \times (25) \times (1000)}{(5) \times (5)} = 1.00 \text{ mg amino nitrogen}$$

Precautions

- 1 Depending on the intensity of color developed at Step 8 more or less diluted urine may be required at Step 3

12 Uric Acid

A. URIC ACID IN SERUM

Reference

Benedict S M and Franke M A Method for the Direct Determination of Uric Acid in Urine J Biol Chem 52 38 391 (June) 19 2

Principle

Uric acid reduces phosphotungstic acid and cyanide with the formation of a blue color which is measured colorimetrically

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model #6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 3 A quantity of 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes
- 4 Electric centrifuge
- 5 Water bath set at 5 C
- 6 Calibrated syringe pipette 0.5 ml
- 7 Burette

Reagents

- 1 Sodium tungstate ($\text{Na}_2\text{WO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$) 10% solution in water
- 2 Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) /3 N
66 ml concentrated sulfuric acid made up to 360 ml with distilled water
- 3 Lithium chloride (LiCl)
3 gm LiCl and 1 ml hydrochloric acid (conc) made up to 1 liter with water
- 4 Silver nitrate (AgNO_3)
11.6 gm silver nitrate per liter distilled water
- 5 Sodium cyanide (NaCN) a 10% solution in water freshly made **POISON**
- 6 Color reagent Arsenophosphotungstic acid **POISON**
Stock. Dissolve 100 gm sodium tungstate ($\text{Na}_2\text{WO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$) in about 600 ml of water in a 1 liter flask. Add 50 gm pure arsenic pentoxide followed by 5 ml of syrupy phosphoric acid (85%) and 0 ml concentrated hydrochloric acid. Bring to a boil and add 10 ml of bromine water (The stock solution is 0 ml water saturated with bromine). Boil until color disappears and continue to boil until all traces of bromine are driven off. Dilute to 1000 ml. This color reagent keeps indefinitely.
For use dilute stock color reagent with equal portions of water before use
- 7 Benedict Hitchcock Stock Standard Solution
Dissolve 9 gm of pure crystallized sodium phosphate ($\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 12\text{H}_2\text{O}$) and 1 gm monobasic sodium phosphate ($\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$) in about 50 ml hot water. Filter if not clear. Make up to 500 ml with hot water and pour this solution on exactly 0.0 mg of pure uric acid suspended in a few ml of water in a 1 liter volumetric flask. Shake gently until uric acid is in solution. Cool and add exactly 14 ml of glacial acetic acid dilute to 1 liter and mix well. Add 8 ml chloroform to prevent bacterial growth. Keep in refrigerator. Good for two months or more. 1 ml = 0.02 mg uric acid
- 8 Dilute uric acid standard made by diluting stock uric acid standards 1:10 so that 1 ml contains 0.01 mg uric acid

Procedure (Serum)

- 1 Into a 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tube pipette exactly 0.5 ml serum from an accurately calibrated syringe pipette
- 2 Add exactly 8.5 ml water
- 3 Add exactly 0.5 ml sodium tungstate solution ($\text{Na}_2\text{WO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$)

- 4 Then add exactly 5 ml sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4)
- 5 Stopper shake vigorously for approximately 15 seconds and centrifuge for 5 minutes
- 6 Transfer exactly 5 ml of the above filtrate into another 15 ml centrifuge tube
- 7 Add exactly 2.5 ml lithium chloride solution (LiCl) and mix by inversion
- 8 Then add exactly 2.5 ml silver nitrate solution (Steps 8 and 9 are said to remove non uric acid interfering substances)
- 9 Stopper mix and centrifuge for 5-10 minutes Disregard cloudiness of solution
- 10 Drain quantitatively into a cuvette
- 11 Add exactly 0.5 ml of color reagent **POISON**
- 12 Add 1 ml fresh NaCN Use burette or syringe pipette for both steps 11 and 12
- 13 Let stand for 15 minutes at 25°C then read in a spectrophotometer with wave length at 540 $\text{m}\mu$ The instrument should be set at 100% T against a blank of 10 ml water 0.5 ml color reagent and 1.0 ml cyanide

Calculation

- 1 Make up a standard curve using from 5 meg to 35 meg of uric acid per sample at intervals of 5 gamma
- 2 $\text{mg uric acid}/100 \text{ ml serum} =$

$$(\text{mg uric acid in cuvette}) \times \frac{(\text{dilution})}{(\text{ml aliquot})} \times \frac{100}{(\text{ml serum})}$$

Example

A reading of 78% T was equivalent to 0.008 mg uric acid in the cuvette Of serum 0.5 ml was diluted to 10 ml of which 5 were taken for analysis

$$\text{mg uric acid}/100 \text{ ml serum} = (0.008) \times \frac{10}{5} \times \frac{100}{0.5} = 3.2 \text{ mg}$$

Precautions

- 1 Use a burette for both the cyanide and color reagent
- 2 The cyanide should be made up every two weeks and kept in the refrigerator
- 3 Time and temperature are critical

B URIC ACID IN URINE**Principle Apparatus Reagents**

Same as for uric acid in serum

Procedure

- 1 Dilute the urine routinely 1 to 20 ml being satisfactory Occasionally 1 to 50 may be necessary
- 2 Pipette exactly 1 ml of the dilute urine into a cuvette
- 3 Add exactly 0 ml of water
- 4 Proceed as for Serum steps 11 12 and 13

Calculation

- 1 Use the same standard curve as for Serum
- 2 $\text{mg uric acid}/\text{liter urine} =$

$$(\text{mg uric acid in cuvette}) \times \frac{(\text{dilution})}{(\text{ml aliquot})} \times \frac{(1000)}{(\text{ml urine used})}$$

Example

A reading of 67% T was equivalent to 0.012 mg uric acid in the cuvette One ml of urine was diluted to 20 of which one ml was used for analysis

$$\text{mg uric acid}/\text{l urine} = 0.012 \times \frac{20}{1} \times \frac{1000}{1} = 240 \text{ mg uric acid}/\text{l}$$

Precautions

Same as for Serum

13 Uric Acid (Uricase Method)

A URIC ACID IN URINE

Reference

- Buchanan O H Block W D and Christman A A The Metabolism of the Methylated Purines I The Enzymatic Determination of Urinary Uric Acid *J Biol Chem* 157 191 '01 (Jan) 1945

Principle

The enzyme uricase when incubated with urine specifically destroys all the uric acid. Therefore by measuring the color intensity of a specimen before and after incubation one can calculate the true uric acid in the urine

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model No 6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 3 A quantity of 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes
- 4 An electric centrifuge
- 5 A water bath set at 5 C
- 6 A water bath set at 45 C
- 7 Calibrated syringe pipettes 1 ml () and 0.5 ml
- 8 Calibrated ml burettes ()
- 9 A good food chopper or Waring Blendor
- 10 A refrigerator set at 4 C
- 11 A quantity of 50 ml volumetric flasks
- 12 A quantity of filter paper
- 13 An interval timer

Reagents

- 1 Color reagent arsenophosphotungstic acid (for preparation see uric acid in serum) *POISO*
- 2 Urea cyanide solution Dissolve 1 gm of sodium cyanide and 50 gm of anhydrous sodium carbonate in 400 ml of water. Cool add 5 gm of urea and dilute to 500 ml with water. This solution is stable for several months even though a slight precipitate will settle out on standing *POISO*
- 3 Uric acid standard solution 0.01 per cent This solution is made up in a 0.15 per cent solution of lithium carbonate (15 gm dissolved in 1000 ml of distilled water)
- 4 Sodium carbonate 0.1% solution Dissolve 1 gm Na_2CO_3 in 1000 ml of water
- 5 Toluene C.P. (reagent grade)
- 6 Sodium tungstate a 10% solution in water
- 7 Sulfuric acid 0.3 N
- 8 Acetone C.P. (reagent grade)
- 9 Benzene C.P. (reagent grade)
- 10 Sodium hydroxide an 0.1 N solution
- 11 Borate buffer (pH 9) Dissolve 1.4 gm of boric acid in 1000 ml of 0.1 N sodium hydroxide
- 12 Thymol blue indicator 0.04% solution
- 13 Uricase preparation of (M B Blanch and F C Koch A New Method for the Determination of Uric Acid in Blood With Uricase *J Biol Chem* 130 443 454 Oct 1939)
 - a One pound of fresh beef kidney is mechanically defatted and then ground finely in a food chopper or Waring Blendor
 - b Dehydrate with 4 washings of acetone (500 ml each) over a period of 48 hours at 4 C 12 hours being allowed for each extraction

- c Dry the tissue quickly with the aid of a fan at room temperature
- d Treat the dry material twice (at room temperature) with 100 ml of benzene the first treatment for 6 hours followed by filtering and the second for 19 hours
- e The material is dried at room temperature and then ground to 60 mesh.
- f Store at 4 C

14 *Measurement of uricolytic activity*

- a To 10 ml of a standard uric acid solution (0.01% in 0.15% lithium carbonate) add 1 ml of 0.125% sodium carbonate
- b Add 1 drop of toluene and increasing amounts of the kidney pulp
- c Incubate for two hours at 45 C with occasional stirring
- d Add 30 ml of distilled water
- e Add 1 ml of a 10% sodium tungstate solution
- f Add 3 ml of 2/3 N sulfuric acid
- g Shake and filter
- h Then determine the uric acid content in the clear filtrate
- i The amount of uricase to be used per analysis should be determined as the point where all the uric acid is destroyed. 2.0 mg of the powder should destroy 3.4 mg of uric acid after incubation

Procedure Total Color

- 1 Pipette exactly 1 ml of urine (using a syringe pipette) into a 50 ml flask, dilute to the mark with distilled water and mix
- 2 To another 50 ml flask transfer exactly 10 ml of the diluted urine and add 10 ml of water
- 3 To a second flask add only 2.0 ml of water. This sample will be the blank
- 4 To each flask add 2.5 ml of urea cyanide solution using a syringe pipette
- 5 Then add with a syringe pipette 1 ml of arsenophosphotungstic acid
- 6 Immediately after the addition of the color reagent dilute to the 50 ml mark and mix thoroughly
- 7 Allow to stand at room temperature for exactly 40 minutes and read the samples at 690 mμ, setting the blank at 100% T

Procedure Residual Color

- 1 Pipette exactly 3 ml of undiluted urine into a small flask add 10 ml of water and a few drops of 0.04 per cent thymol blue solution as indicator
- 2 Titrate with 0.1 N sodium hydroxide to a definite blue tint and record the amount of alkali required. Discard the mixture
- 3 Into a 50 ml flask pipette exactly 5 ml of undiluted urine
- 4 Add the predetermined amount of alkali (without indicator)
- 5 Add 250 mg of uricase powder
- 6 Add 5 ml of borate buffer and wash down the sides of the flask with 10 ml of water
- 7 Place in a water bath at 45 C for 3 hours
- 8 Then add 1 ml of sodium tungstate solution and 1.5 ml of 2/3 N sulfuric acid.
- 9 Dilute to 50 ml mark with water mix well and pour into a dry filter
- 10 Pipette exactly 10 ml of the filtrate into a 50 ml volumetric flask and add 15 ml of water
- 11 Continue with the addition of the color reagents and measure the color in the same way as described above for the total color
- 12 The same blank may be used or a 5 ml portion may be treated with uricase and all the other reagents

Calculation

- 1 (Total color) minus (Residual color) = true uric acid content
- 2 mg true uric acid per 100 ml urine =

$$\left[\text{mg (total color) uric acid in cuvette} \times \frac{\text{dilution}}{\text{ml of quot}} \times \frac{100}{\text{ml urine used}} \right] \\ \text{minus} \\ \left[\text{mg (residual color) uric acid in cuvette} \times \frac{\text{dilution}}{\text{ml of quot}} \times \frac{100}{\text{ml urine used}} \right]$$

Example

- 1 The reading for the total true color was equivalent to 0.006 mg uric acid in the cuvette. One ml of urine was diluted to 50 ml of which 10 ml was used and diluted to 100 ml. 10 ml was read in the cuvette.
- 2 The reading for the residual color was equivalent to 0.004 mg uric acid. 5 ml of urine was diluted to 50 ml of which 10 ml was used in the final sample and diluted to 100 ml. 10 ml was read in the cuvette.

$$\text{Total color mg/100 ml} = 0.006 \times \frac{50}{10} \times 10 \times \frac{100}{1} = 30 \text{ mg/100 ml}$$

$$\text{Residual color mg/100 ml} = 0.004 \times \frac{50}{10} \times 10 \times \frac{100}{5} = 4 \text{ mg}$$

$$\text{Therefore True uric acid mg/100 ml} = 30 - 4 = 26 \text{ mg}$$

Precautions

- 1 Use a burette or a syringe pipette for the sodium cyanide and urea cyanide. They are strong poisons.
- 2 Be sure to measure the uricolytic activity of each new batch of uricase.
- 3 Uricase is available commercially. However for most laboratories the price is prohibitive.

14 Paper Chromatography

This technique has afforded a new tool whereby many biological factors may be studied. One may investigate the amino acids in plant and animal tissue with a minimum amount of preparation and destruction. Only small quantities are required to demonstrate the presence of amino acids. Nor is its use confined solely to the estimation of amino acids. Its simplicity has permitted its ready adaptation to the analysis of such substances as sugars and organic acids. With proper development it holds more promise to the chemistry of proteins, carbohydrates, organic acids and to the isotopic derivatives thereof than any other technique in the last decade.

During the past few years filter paper chromatography has been applied to many different categories of compounds. The bibliography below is by no means complete but will serve to introduce the prospective user to some of the various phases of this versatile method.

Methodology

- Brimley ■ C. Quantitative Paper Chromatography. *Nature* 163: 215-16 (Feb.) 1949.
 Bull. H. B. Advances in Protein Chemistry by M. L. Anson and J. T. Edsall. New York City 1947. Academic Press vol. 3 p. 97.

- Bull H H Hahn J W and Baptist, V H Filter Paper Chromatography *J Am. Chem. Soc* 71 550 553 (Feb) 1949
- Chargaff E Levine C and Green C Techniques for the Demonstration by Chromatography of Nitrogenous Lipide Constituents Sulfur Containing Amino Acids and Reducing Sugars *J Biol Chem* 175 67 71 (Aug) 1948
- Consden R and Gordon A H Effects of Salt on Partition Chromatograms, *Nature* 167 180 181 (July) 1948
- Dent C E Detection of Amino acids in Urine and Other Fluids *Lancet* 2 18 637 (Nov) 1948
- Dunabin J E Mason H Seyfang A P and Woodman F J Spectrographic Examination of Chromatographic Columns *Nature* 164 916 (Nov) 1949
- Fink R M Dent C E and Fink K Application of Filter Paper Partition Chromatography to Radioactive Tracer Studies *Nature* 160 801 803 (Dec) 1947
- Fink R M and Fink K Radiocarbon and Filter Paper Partition Chromatography *Science* 107 253 254 (March) 1949
- Fisher, R H Parsons D S and Morrison G A Quantitative Paper Chromatography *Nature* 161 761 762 (May) 1948
- Fisher, R H Parsons D S and Holmes R Quantitative Paper Chromatography *Nature* 164 183 (July) 1949
- Keston A S Udenfriend S and Levy M Paper Chromatography Applied to the Isotopic Derivative Method of Analysis *J Am Chem. Soc* 69 3151 3156 (Dec) 1947
- La Cour L F and Drew R Partition Chromatography and Living Cells *Nature* 159 4035 307 (March) 1947
- Longnecker W H Glass Trough for Filter Paper Partition Chromatography *Science* 107 93 24 (Jan) 1948
- Lugg J W H and Overell B T Partition Chromatography of Organic Acids on a Paper Sheet Support *Nature* 160 4055 87 88 (July) 1947
- Martin A J P Partition Chromatography *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 49 240 264 (Feb) 1948
- Meinhard J E and Hall N F Surface Chromatography *Anal Chem* 21 185 188 (Jan) 1949
- Meinhard J E and Hall N F Surface Chromatography *Anal Chem* 22 (2) 344 351 (Feb) 1950
- Miettinen J K and Virtanen A I A New Technique in Paper Chromatography *Acta Chem Scandinav* 3 450 464 No 5 1949
- Nicholson D H Modified Technique for the Development of Paper Chromatograms *Nature* 163 954 (June) 1949
- Phillips H M P Use of Ultra Violet Fluorescence in Paper Chromatography *Nature* 161 53 (Jan) 1948
- Pollard F H McOmie J F W and Elbeih I I M Inorganic Paper Chromatography and Detection of Cations by Fluorescence *Nature* 163 216 219 (Feb) 1949
- Rutter L A Modified Technique in Filter Paper Chromatography, *Nature* 161 435 436 (March) 1948
- Schroeder W A Some Experiments in Systematic Quantitative Chromatography *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 49 24 217 (Feb) 1948
- Williams H J and Kirby H Paper Chromatography Using Capillary Ascent, *Science* 107 481 483 (May) 1948
- Winsten W A A Simplified Apparatus for One Dimensional Paper Partition Chromatography, *Science* 107 602 (June) 1948
- Wynn V Peptide like Contaminant of Filter Paper *Nature* 164 445 1949
- Zechmeister L History Scope and Methods of Chromatography *Ann. N Y Acad. Sci.* 49 145 160 (Feb) 1948
- Amino Acids**
- Agren G A Note on the Amino Acid Content of Bence Jones Protein *Acta Chem Scand* 3 (3) 301 302 1949
- Agren G and Nilsson, T Paper Chromatographic Analysis of Amino Acids and Other Ninhydrin Reacting Substances in Deproteinized Human Plasma *Acta Chem Scand* 3 525 538 No 2 1949
- Ames S R and Risley H A Aminoaciduria in Progressive Muscular Dystrophy *Fed. Proc* 7 1 142 (March) 1948
- Awapara J Application of Paper Chromatography to the Estimation of Some Free Amino Acids in Tissues of the Rat *J Biol Chem* 178 113 116 (March) 1949
- Berry H K and Cain L Biochemical Individuality IV Paper Chromatographic Technique for Determining Excretion of Amino Acids in the Presence of Interfering Substances *Arch Biochem* 24 (1) 1 9 189 (Nov) 1949
- Block R J Quantitative Estimation of Amino Acids on Paper Chromatograms *Science* 108 608 609 (Nov) 1948

- Blois H J Quantitative Paper Chromatography A Simplified Procedure *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 72 (2) 337-341 (Nov) 1949
- Consden P Gordon A H and Martin A J Qualitative Analysis of Proteins A Partition Chromatographic Method Using Paper *Biochem J* 39 224-23 1944
- Consden P Gordon A H and Martin A J The Identification of Amino Acids Derived From Cystine in Chemically Modified Wool, *Biochem J* 40 90-97 1946
- Consden P Gordon A H and Martin A J Gramicidin S The Sequence of Amino Acid Residues *Biochem J* 41 596-607 1947
- Dent C E Partition Chromatography on Paper as Applied to the Investigation of Amino Acids and Peptides in Normal and Pathological Urine *Biochem J (Proc)* 40 (4) xlv-xlv 1946
- Dent C E Partition Chromatography on Paper A Qualitative Method for Identifying Amino Acids in Urine and Its Application to the Fanconi Syndrome *Trans of Fourteenth Meeting Conference on Metabolic Aspects of Convalescence* New York (Nov) 1946
- Dent C E The Amino Aciduria in Fanconi Syndrome A Study Making Extensive Use of Techniques Based on Paper Partition Chromatography *Biochem J* 41 (2) 240-253 1946
- Dent C E Methionine Metabolism and Alpha Amino Acid Science 105 31 336 (March) 1947
- Dent C E Stepka W and Steward F C Detection of Free Amino Acids of Plant Cells by Partition Chromatography *Nature* 160 40 2 687 (Nov) 1947
- Goldberg H J V Gilda J E and Tshkoff G H Paper Partition Chromatography Free Amino Acids in Saliva *J Dent Research* 27 493-496 (Aug) 1948
- Gordon A H Martin A J and Evans R L Partition Chromatography of Free Amino Acids and Peptides *Biochem J* 37 Proc xlv 1943
- Heston A S Ulstrup S and Levy M Quantitative Analysis of Protein Hydrolysates on Paper Chromatograms by Means of the Isotopic Derivative Method *Fed Proc* 107 1 164 (March) 1948
- Landau A J and Awapara J U of Modified Ninhydrin Reagent in Quantitative Determination of Amino Acids by Paper Chromatography *Science* 109 294 (April) 1949
- Martin A J P and Mittelmann R Quantitative Microanalysis of Amino Acid Mixtures on Paper Partition Chromatograms *Biochem J* 43 53 58 1949
- Moore S and Stein W H Partition Chromatography of Amino Acids on Starch *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 49 1-49 1948 (Feb) 1948
- Moore S and Stein W H Photometric Ninhydrin Method for Use in the Chromatography of Amino Acids *J Biol Chem* 176 367-374 (Oct) 1948
- Moore S and Stein W H Chromatography of Amino Acids on Starch Columns Solvent Mixtures for the Fractionation of Protein Hydrolysates *J Biol Chem* 178 53-78 (March) 1949
- Nastain L Quantitative Chromatographic Estimation of Amino Acids *Nature* 161 763-764 (May) 1948
- Poison A Wooley V J and Wyckoff H G W The Quantitative Chromatography of Silk Hydrolyzates *J Am Chem Soc* 70 103-104 (June) 1948
- Pope C O and Stein M F The Determination of Amino Nitrogen Using a Copper Method *Biochem J* 3 10 0 10 9
- Rockland L B and Dunn M S Quantitative Determination of Amino Acids on Filter Paper Chromatograms by Direct Photometry *J Am Chem Soc* 71 (1) 41-44 (Dec) 1949
- Sanger F The Free Amino Groups of Insulin *Biochem J* 39 50 515 1945
- Stein W H and Moore S Chromatography of Amino Acids on Starch Columns Separation of Phenylalanine, Leucine, Isoleucine, Methionine, Tyrosine and Valine *J Biol Chem* 178 337-365 (Oct) 1948
- de Verdier C H and Agren G Paper Chromatographic Analysis of Amino Acids and Peptides in Tissue Extracts and Enzyme Hydrolyzed Proteins *Acta Chem Scandinav* 2 783-790 1948
- Winegrad H M and Toennesen G Detection of Sulfur Containing Amino Acids on Paper Chromatograms *Science* 108 506-507 (Nov) 1949
- Woodward A J Micro Estimation of Amino Nitrogen and Its Application to Paper Partition Chromatography *Nature* 161 169 (Jan) 1948
- Woodward A J Method for the Estimation of Micro Amounts of Amino Nitrogen and Its Application to Paper Partition Chromatography *Biochem J* 45 417-417 1949
- Young N F and Homburger F The Application of Paper Chromatography to the Study of Amino Aciduria in Patients With Liver Disease *Fed Proc* 8 1 11 (March) 1949

Carbohydrates

- Brown F Hirst E L Hough L Jones J K N and Wadman H Separation and Identification of Methylated Sugars on the Paper Chromatogram, *Nature* 161 770 (May) 1948
- Flood A E Hirst E L and Jones J K N Quantitative Analyses of Mixtures of Sugars by the Method of Partition Chromatography Part I. Standardization of Procedure *J Chem Soc* 128 1679 1683 1948
- Flood A E Hirst E L and Jones J K Quantitative Estimation of Mixtures of Sugars by the Paper Chromatogram Method *Nature* 160 405 86 (July) 1947
- Horrocks R H and Manning G B Partition Chromatography on Paper Identification of Reducing Substances in Urine *Lancet* 256 1042 1045 (June) 1949
- Hough L Jones J K N and Wadman W H Application of Paper Partition Chromatography to the Separation of the Sugars and Their Methylated Derivatives on a Column of Powdered Cellulose *Nature* 162 448 (Sept) 1948
- Partridge S M with a note by Westall T G Filter Paper Partition Chromatography of Sugars 1 General Description and Application to the Qualitative Analysis of Sugars in Apple Juice Egg White and Foetal Blood of Sheep *Biochem J* 4 23 750 No 2 1948
- Partridge S M Application of Paper Partition Chromatogram to the Qualitative Analysis of Reducing Sugars *Nature* 168 4003 270 (Aug) 1946

Miscellaneous

- Allsopp A Chromatographical Study of Mesostemetic Plant Tissue *Nature* 161 4108 833 835 (May) 1948
- Ames M and Risley H A Determination of Creatine Creatinine and Related Compounds in Urine by Means of Paper Chromatography *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 69 267 269 (Oct Dec) 1948
- Bate Smith E C Paper Chromatography of Anthocyanins and Related Substances in Petal Extracts *Nature* 161 4100 83, 835 (May) 1948
- Bentley H R and Whitehead J K Use of Furan Derivatives in Paper Chromatography *Nature* 164 182 183 (July) 1949
- Cavallini D Frontali N and Toschi G Determination of Keto Acids by Partition Chromatography on Filter Paper *Nature* 163 563 569 (April) 1949
- Christ G L Burton C J and Botty M C Use of X Ray and Electron Diffraction as Methods of Analysis in Biochemical Chromatography, *Science* 108 91 92 (July) 1943
- Crammer J L Paper Chromatography of Flavin Nucleotides *Nature* 161 4059 350 (March) 1948
- Dingemans E Huusma L Velt L H and de Laat B M Clinical Method for the Chromatographic Colorimetric Determination of Urinary 17 Keto Steroids *J Clin Endocrinol* 6 (8) 535 548 (Aug) 1946
- Edman P Hammarsten E Low B and Reichard P Partition Chromatographic Separation of Adenine and Guanine *J Biol Chem* 178 395 398 (March) 1949
- Ekman B Paper Chromatography of Primary Aromatic Amines *Acta Chem. Scand* 2 393 394 No 4 1948
- Franklin A F and Quastel J H Paper Chromatography of Proteins and Enzymes *Science* 110 447 451 (Oct) 1949
- Hais I M and Pecáková L Paper Partition Chromatography of Riboflavin Decomposition Products *Nature* 163 763 (May) 1949
- Hess W C Chromatographic Separation of Cholesterol and Cholesterol Esters in Blood 1 *Lab & Clin Med* 32 1163 1168 (Aug) 1947
- Holiday E R and Johnson E A Location of Paper Chromatogram Mixtures of Purine and Pyrimidine Derivatives in Ultra violet Light *Nature* 163 216 17 (Feb) 1949
- Klaener R O A Paper Chromatographic Method for the Quantitative Estimation of Penicillin Entities *J Bact* 57 101 109 (Jan) 1949
- Lacourt A Sommerey G Degeynde E Baruh J and Gillard J Quantitative Inorganic Paper Chromatography Sub Micro Separation and Determination of Aluminum Iron and Tantalum *Nature* 163 992 1000 (June) 1949
- Lederer M Chromatographic Separation of Antimony Anal *Chim Acta* 2 61 6 1948
- Lederer M Paper Chromatography of the Noble Metals *Nature* 162 776 777 (Nov) 1948
- Markham H and Smith J D Chromatography of Nucleic Acid Derivatives *Nature* 163 250 251 (Feb) 1949
- Maw G A The Detection of Creatine and Creatinine by Partition Chromatography *Biochem J* 43 139 142 1948
- Mitchell H K Gordon M and Haskins F A Separation of Enzymes on Filter Paper Chromatopile *J Biol Chem* 180 1071 1076 (Oct) 1949

- Polson A. New Amino Acids in Bacterial Hydrolysates *Nature* 161 408S 151 15 (March) 1948
- Ramsey L. L. Separation of *n*-Butyric and Isobutyric Acids by Partition Chromatography *J Assoc Offic Agr Chemists* 31 164 1948
- Ramsey L. L. and Patterson, W. I. Separation and Determination of the Straight Chain Saturated Fatty Acids C to C by Partition Chromatography *J Assoc Offic Agr Chemists* 31 139 150 1948
- Tabone J. Robert D. and Troestler J. Application of Paper Strip Chromatography to the Analysis of Biological Arylamides *Bull Soc Chim Biol* 30 547 559 1948
- Taurag A. Tong W. and Chaikoff I. L. Fractionation of Thyroid Iodine by Means of Filter Paper Partition Chromatography *Nature* 164 181 18 (July) 1949
- Tishkoff G. H., Zaffaroni A. and Tesluk H. Purified Liver Extract *Chemical Nature as Determined by Paper Partition Chromatography* *J Biol Chem* 175 847 86 (Sept) 1949
- Tomarelli H. M. and Florey K. Use of Papergrams in the Study of the Urinary Excretion of Radioactive Sulfur Compounds *Science* 107 630 631 (June) 1948
- Urbach K. F. and Giscafré L. Identification of Histamine in Blood by Paper Chromatography *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 68 430 431 (May) 1948
- Vischer E. and Chargaff E. The Separation and Characterization of Purines in Minute Amounts of Nucleic Acid Hydrolysates *J Biol Chem* 168 781 8 (May) 1947
- Vischer E. and Chargaff E. The Separation and Quantitative Estimation of Purines and Pyrimidines in Minute Amounts *J Biol Chem* 176 703 714 (Nov) 1948
- White J. W. Jr. Chromatographic Separation of Aliphatic 4-Dinitrophenylhydrazones *Anal Chem* 20 796 7 8 (Aug) 1948
- White J. W. Jr. and Dryden E. C. Separation of Aliphatic Alcohols by Chromatographic Adsorption of Their 3,5-Dinitrobenzoates *Anal Chem* 20 853 855 (Sept) 1948
- Winsten W. A. and Egen E. Paper Chromatography of Vitamin B₁₂ and Related Bacteriological Growth Factors *J Biol Chem* 181 (1) 109 1 0 (Nov) 1949
- Woodruff H. B. and Foster J. C. Analysis of Vitamin B₁₂ and Vitamin B₁ by Paper Strip Chromatography *J Biol Chem* 183 569 576 (Apr) 1950
- Zaffaroni A. Burton E. B. and Keutmann E. H. The Application of Paper Partition Chromatography to Steroid Analysis *J Biol Chem* 177 109 116 (Jan) 1949
- Zaffaroni A. Burton E. B. and Keutmann E. H. Adrenal Cortical Hormones: Analysis by Paper Partition Chromatography and Occurrence in the Urine of Normal Persons *Science* 111 68 (Jan) 1950

15 Proteins and Nitrogenous Compounds Miscellaneous References

Alanine

- Alexander B. and Seligman A. M. A Colorimetric Method for the Microdetermination of α -Alanine in Blood *J Biol Chem* 156 9 19 (June) 1949
- Wiss O. Microdetermination of Alanine in Blood *Helv Chim Acta* 31 5 1948

Albumin and Globulin

- Chow B. F. The Correlation Between the Albumin and Alpha Globulin Contents of Plasma *J Clin Investigation* 28 (5) 883 886 (Sept) 1947
- Cohn C. and Wolfson W. Q. Studies in Serum Proteins I The Chemical Estimation of Albumin and of the Globulin Fractions in Serum *J Lab & Clin Med* 32 (10) 1 03 1 07 (Oct) 1947
- Cohn C. and Wolfson W. Q. Studies in Serum Proteins II A Rapid Clinical Method for the Accurate Determination of Albumin and Globulin in Serum or Plasma *J Lab & Clin Med* 33 (3) 367 370 (March) 1949
- Isbister J. The Estimation of Serum Albumin by the Precipitation of Globulin with NaHSO₄ *Australian J Exper Biol & Med* 27 61 64 (Jan) 1949
- Kingsley G. P. A Rapid Method for the Separation of Serum Albumin and Globulin *J Biol Chem* 133 731 735 (May) 1940
- Petermann M. L., Young N. F. and Hogness K. H. A Comparison of the Howe and the Electrophoretic Methods for the Determination of Plasma Albumin *J Biol Chem* 169 (2) 379 387 (July) 1947

Allantoin

- Jarson H. W. A Colorimetric Method for the Determination of Allantoin *J Biol Chem* 94 (3) 727 7 8 (Jan) 1933

Amino Acids

- Moubasher R. Estimation of α -Amino Acids in Pure Solutions in Blood and in Urine With Perinaphthandian 3,4-Trioxo Hydrazide *J Biol Chem* 175 187 193 (Aug) 1948
- Sahyun M. Relationship of Amino Acids to the Nutritive Value of Proteins *Am J Digestive Disease* 53 (8) 301 02 (Aug) 1949

152 *Biochemical Procedures*

Amino Nitrogen

Danielson I S Amino Acid Nitrogen in Blood and Its Determination *J Biol Chem* 101 505 502 (July) 1933

Creatine

Fisher H B and Walhelms A E The Metabolism of Creatine I A Micro Method for the Determination of Creatine and Creatinine *Biochem J* 31 () 1131 1135 1937

Rose W C Helmar O M and Chanutin A A Modified Method for the Estimation of Total Creatinine in Small Amounts of Tissues *J Biol Chem* 75 (4) 543 543 (Nov) 1907

Addis T Barrett E and Menzies J T A Clinical Method for the Approximate Determination of Serum Creatinine Concentration *J Clin Investigation* 20 (5) 879 88 (Sept) 1947

Barclay J A and Kenney R A A Method for the Estimation of Creatinine *Biochem J* 41 (4) 586 589 1947

Cysteine

Nakamura K and Binkley F Colorimetric Estimation of Cysteine *J Biol Chem* 173 407 410 (March) 1948

Histidine

Langley W D Urinary Histidine Determination of Histidine in Urine Normal and Pregnancy Urines *J Biol Chem* 137 955 966 (Jan) 1941

Non protein Nitrogen

Fee D A Cruger D and Collier, H B A Photometric Modification of the Hypobromite Method for Non protein Nitrogen *J Lab & Clin Med* 34 (6) 873 876 (June) 1949

Rappaport F and Lichborn F Rapid Titrimetric Micromethod for the Determination of Non protein Nitrogen *J Lab & Clin Med* 32 (8) 1034 1036 1947

Wong S Y The Use of Persulphate in the Estimation of Nitrogen by Fohn's Direct Nesslerization Method *J Biol Chem* 55 431 436 (March) 19 3

Nucleic Acid

Steele R Sfortunato T and Ottolenghi L A Micromethod for the Determination of the Nucleic Acid *J Biol Chem* 177 231 235 (Jan) 1949

Plasma Protein

Albanese A A Saur M and Irby V The Microcolorimetric Estimation of Plasma Protein *J Lab & Clin Med* 32 (2) 296 299 1947

Barbour H G and Hamilton W F The Falling Drop Method for Determining Specific Gravity *J Biol Chem* 20 (2) 6 5 640 (Aug) 1906

Cohn E J Strong L E Hughes W L Jr Mulford D J Ashworth J N Melin M and Taylor H L Preparation and Properties of Serum and Plasma Proteins IV A System for the Separation into Fractions of the Protein and Lipoprotein Components of Biological Tissues and Fluids *J Am Chem Soc* 68 459 475 (March) 1946

Hunter D Nesslerization Technique and Its Effect on Serum Protein Values *Am J Clin Path* 17 (8) 650 653 (Aug) 1947

Kagan B M A Simple Method for the Estimation of Total Protein Content of Plasma and Serum I A Falling Drop Method for the Determination of Specific Gravity II The Estimation of Total Protein Content of Human Plasma and Serum by the Use of the Falling Drop Method *J Clin Investigation* 17 369 378 (July) 1938

Lowry O H and Hunter T H The Determination of Serum Protein Concentration With a Gradient Tube *J Biol Chem* 159 465 474 (July) 1945

Mulford D J Derivatives of Blood Plasma *Ann Rev Physiol* 9 3 7 356 1947

Roberts E and White A Studies on the Origin of Serum Proteins *J Biol Chem* 180 (4) 505 516 (Sept) 1949

Protein

Hiller A Greif R L and Beckman W W Determination of Protein in Urine by the Biuret Method *J Biol Chem* 176 1491 1499 (Dec) 1948

Purines

Hitchings G H and Fiske C H The Determination of the Purines *J Biol Chem* 140 (9) 491 499 (Aug) 1941

Hunter D and Givens H S The Metabolism of Endogenous and Exogenous Purines in the Monkey *J Biol Chem* 17 37 53 (Feb) 1914

Soodak M Pincus A and Cerecedo L R A Colorimetric Method for the Estimation of Uracil and Cytosine *J Biol Chem* 181 713 718 (Dec) 1949

Total Nitrogen

- Carpenter A M Dilution of Capillary Blood in the Microanalysis of Proteins *Am J Clin Path* 17 (7) 565-68 (July) 1917
 Kirk P L Kjeldahl Method for Total Nitrogen *Anal Chem* 22 () 354-358 (Feb) 1900

Tryptophan

- Albanese A A Davis V I and Levin M T Utilization of α -Amino Acids by Man
 VIII Tryptophan and Acetyltryptophan *J Biol Chem* 172 (1) 29-44 (Jan) 1948

Tryptophane

- Albanese A A and Frankston J E Estimation of Tryptophane in Human Urine *J Biol Chem* 157 59-63 (Jan) 1945
 Berg C P and Fohr W O The Tryptophane Content of Normal Human Urine *J Biol Chem* 170 () 51-59 (Oct) 1944
 Carpenter D C Spectrophotometric Estimation of Tryptophan *Anal Chem* 20 33-38 (June) 1948
 Gordon M and Mitchell H A Fluorometric Method for the Estimation of Tryptophan *J Biol Chem* 180 (3) 1065-1070 (Oct) 1949
 Spies J H and Chambers H C Chemical Determination of Tryptophane *Anal Chem* 20 30-39 (Jan) 1948
 Steer E and Savage M O Micromethod for Determination of Tryptophane in Bacteria and Protein *Anal Chem* 21 641-64 (May) 1949

Tyrosine

- Goodwin T V and Morton R A The Spectrophotometric Determination of Tyrosine and Tryptophan in Proteins *Biochim J* 40 648-657 1946

Urea

- Fohn O and Svedberg A An Improved Distillation Method for the Determination of Urea in Blood *J Biol Chem* 89 7-23 (Aug) 1930
 Obermer E and Milton R Further Notes on a New Colorimetric Technique for the Estimation of Urea in Urine *Analyst* 63 434-44 (Mar) 1938
 Van Slyke D D and Cullen G E A Permanent Preparation of Urease and Its Use in the Determination of Urea *J Biol Chem* 39 711-8 (Sept) 1914
 Van Slyke D D and Cullen G E The Determination of Urea by the Urease Method *J Biol Chem* 24 117-17 (Jan) 1916

Uric Acid

- Block W D and Geib N C An Enzymatic Method for the Determination of Uric Acid in Whole Blood *J Biol Chem* 165 (7) 747-76 (May) 1947
 Bulger H A and Johns H F The Determination of Plasma Uric Acid *J Biol Chem* 140 407-440 (Aug) 1941
 Fohn O Standardized Methods for the Determination of Uric Acid in Unaltered Blood and in Urine *J Biol Chem* 101 111-125 (June) 1934
 Fohn O The Preparation of Sodium Tungstate Free from Molybdate Together With a Simplified Process for the Preparation of a Correct Uric Acid Reagent *J Biol Chem* 108 311-314 (Aug) 1934
 Schaffer N E The Determination of Uric Acid in Urine With Crude Uricase *J Biol Chem* 153 163-166 (April) 1944
 Wolfson W Q Huddleston B and Levine P The Transport and Excretion of Uric Acid in Man II The Endogenous Uric Acid Chromatogram of Physiological Fluids *J Clin Investigation* 26 (5) 995-1001 (Sept) 1947

SECTION IV

BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

II CARBOHYDRATES AND DERIVATIVES

1 Blood Glucose (Colorimetric)

References

Folin O and Malmros H. An Improved Form of Folin's Micro Method for Blood Glucose Determination J Biol Chem 83 115 1'0 (July) 19 9

Principle

The glucose is oxidized with alkaline ferricyanide and the ferrocyanide produced is measured colorimetrically as Prussian blue. Gum ghatti is added to keep the Prussian blue in colloidal suspension. So intense is the resulting color that two separate determinations can be made on the extract from 0.1 ml of normal blood. The final color is a mixture of the yellows of the excess ferricyanide and ferric sulfate with the blue of the Prussian blue.



Prussian blue

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Junior Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 3 Tubes blood sugar type graduated at 1° 5 and 25 ml
- 4 Centrifuged tubes 15 ml round bottom
- 5 Micro pipettes, 0.1 ml. These pipettes are calibrated to be washed out
- 6 A water bath with boiling water
- 7 An electric centrifuge
- 8 A wire rack to hold the tubes while boiling

Reagents

- 1 Sulfuric acid. A 2/3 N solution made by diluting 67 ml of concentrated H_2SO_4 to 360 ml with water.
- 2 Sodium tungstate. A 10% solution in water.
- 3 Dilute tungstate solution. Transfer 20 ml of 10% sodium tungstate solution into a liter volumetric flask. Dilute to about 800 ml and while shaking add 70 ml 2/3 N H_2SO_4 . Dilute to 1000 ml with water.
- 4 Potassium ferricyanide solution $K_3Fe(CN)_6$. Dissolve 2 gm of pure potassium ferricyanide (recrystallized) in 500 ml flask and dilute to mark. Keep in dark bottle away from light.
- 5 Sodium carbonate. Dissolve 8 gm of sodium carbonate in 500 ml of water.
- 6 Ferric iron solution. Fill a liter cylinder to the mark with cold tap water. Push into this cylinder a circular piece of copper screening large enough to form a bowl well below the surface of the water. Place in it 20 gm gum ghatti # 1.

Cover cylinder and set as do for 18 to 24 hours. At the end of this time remove screen and undissolved residue. Strain through double thickness of towelling to remove dirt. By aid of heat dissolve 5 gm of anhydrous ferric sulfate in 75 ml of 8.7% phosphoric acid and 100 ml distilled water. Cool and mix with gum ghatti. To the final mixture add 1% potassium permanganate solution at first 5 ml at a time and later 3 ml at a time until the pink color remains perceptible for at least three minutes. This step is essential for oxidation of certain materials in the gum ghatti which reduces ferricyanide. Precaution: Avoid excess of KMnO_4 which leads to high and erratic results.

- 7 Standard stock glucose solution: Dissolve gm of benzoic acid in about 500 ml of hot water in a 1 liter flask. Weigh out exactly 20 gm of anhydrous glucose (Bureau of Standards) and place in the flask. Dilute to about 900 ml and cool. Then dilute to volume. The concentration of this solution is 2 gm/liter or 2 mg/ml.
- 8 Working glucose solution standard: Dissolve 2 gm of benzoic acid in about 500 ml of hot water. Add 10 ml of stock standard to a liter flask. Then add the hot benzoic acid solution and dilute to about 1500 ml. When cool dilute to mark. This solution contains 0.01 mg of glucose per ml. Store in icebox.

Procedure

- 1 Measure accurately 0.1 ml blood in a centrifuge tube containing 10 ml of dilute tungstic acid. Rinse out pipette 8 times. Stopper and shake tube vigorously.
- 2 Centrifuge 3-5 minutes at 1500 rpm.
- 3 Pipette out exactly 4 ml of filtrate into a tube graduated at 1.5 and 5 ml.
- 4 Add ml of 0.4% potassium ferricyanide.
- 5 Add 1 ml of sodium carbonate solution just before boiling.
- 6 At the same time set up tubes containing 4 ml of water for a blank and 4 ml of working glucose solution as a check on the standard curve. Treat as in Steps 4 and 5.
- 7 Heat in boiling water for exactly 8 minutes and cool as soon as possible in running cold water 1 or 2 minutes.
- 8 Add 5 ml of ferric iron alongside tube to prevent foaming.
- 9 Mix and after 5 minutes dilute to 5 ml mark.
- 10 Set blank at 100% T at 5.0 mμ wave length and read standard and unknowns.

Calculation

- 1 Set up a calibration curve with glucose at intervals in the range 0.01-0.10 mg glucose in cuvette setting blank at 100% T wave length 5.0 mμ.
- mg glucose/100 ml blood =

$$\frac{(\text{mg glucose in cuvette}) \times (\text{dilution}) \times 100}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml blood sample})}$$

Example

A reading of 50.5% T was equivalent to 0.04 mg glucose in the cuvette. Samples of blood were 0.1 ml diluted to 10.0 ml of which 4 ml were used for analysis. (The precipitate is about 0.1 ml containing very little glucose.)

$$\text{mg glucose/100 ml blood} = \frac{(0.04) \times (10) \times (100)}{(4) \times (0.1)} = 10 \text{ mg/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 Be sure the water is boiling before adding the sodium carbonate.
- 2 The boiling time is exactly 8 minutes.
- 3 The micro pipettes must be washed out at least 8 times to get out all the blood.

2 Glucose (Volumetric)**References**

- Shaffer P A and Hartman A F The Iodometric Determination of Copper and Its Use in Sugar Analysis *J Biol Chem.* 45 349-390 (Jan) 1921
 Somogyi M Notes on Sugar Determinations *J Biol Chem* 70 599-619 (Nov) 1928
 Somogyi M A New Copper Reagent *J Biol Chem* 160 61-68 (Sept) 1942

Principle

The chief advantage of this method is its usefulness when samples contain widely varying amounts of glucose. Being titrimetric it covers a very wide range without necessitating extra dilutions. Cupric ions are reduced to cuprous in a hot medium. In acid solution iodine is released stoichiometrically from an iodide-iodate mixture and is titrated with thiosulfate.

**Apparatus**

- 1 Filter paper quantitative
- 2 A number of special sugar tubes (see references)
- 3 Boiling water bath
- 4 A calibrated burette 10 ml in capacity
- 5 A quantity of 1.5 ml centrifuge tubes (round bottom) with #1 solid rubber stoppers

Reagents

- 1 Phosphate tartrate copper iodide solution Dissolve 28 gm disodium phosphate in 600 ml water. Add 40 gm Rochelle salts dissolve and add 100 ml of 1 N sodium hydroxide. Add 80 ml of a 10% solution of cupric sulfate and with constant stirring 180 gm anhydrous sodium sulfate. Dilute to one liter with distilled water and add 8 gm potassium iodide and 25 ml of 3.5% potassium iodate.
- 2 Sodium thiosulfate Prepare and standardize 0.1000 N thiosulfate as described in the section on volumetric analysis. As needed prepare 0.005 N thiosulfate by diluting 25 ml of 0.1 N to 500 ml.
- 3 Starch indicator To 50 ml of boiling water add 1 gm of soluble starch and stir until dissolved. Then dilute to 100 ml with cold water. To prevent molds dissolve 1 gm of ascorbic acid in the water before using it in the starch solution.
- 4 Sulfuric acid Dilute 10 ml of concentrated sulfuric acid to 300 ml with distilled water. This is approximately 2 N.
- 5 Zinc sulfate 1.5% solution in water
- 6 Barium hydroxide An 0.3 N solution is prepared by dissolving 5.0 gm $\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2$ in 1000 ml warm water. Titrate against zinc sulfate. These two solutions must be equal in strength.

Procedure

- 1 To a 15 ml centrifuge tube add 4.5 ml of barium hydroxide solution.
 - 2 Add exactly 1 ml of blood.
 - 3 Then add 4.5 ml of zinc hydroxide stopper and shake vigorously.
 - 4 Filter.
 - 5 Pipette exactly 2 ml of the filtrate into a special sugar tube.
 - 6 Add 2 ml of copper reagent.
- The blank consists of 2 ml of distilled water plus 2 ml of copper reagent.

- 8 Cover both tubes and heat in a boiling water bath for exactly 10 minutes. Cool under running water.
- 9 Add 1 ml of sulfuric acid rapidly to each tube while mixing gently.
- 10 Add 1 to 2 drops of starch indicator and titrate with 0.005 N sodium thiosulfate. The end point is the disappearance of the blue color.

Calculation

Addition of iodide to the copper reagent increases the speed of this method but cuts down its accuracy in the titration range 0 to 1 ml. Above a titration figure of 1 ml 1 ml of 0.005 N thiosulfate is equivalent to 0.135 mg glucose. However to save time in computation it is best to use a table derived empirically for the first ml (Table 9).

Example

The blank titration was 0.15 ml the unknown titration was 1.6 ml. One ml of blood was diluted to 10 ml of which 2 ml aliquots were analyzed. Reference to Table 9 shows that (unknown - blank) i.e. (1.6 - 0.15) is equivalent to 110 mg glucose per 100 ml blood.

Precautions

- Strict attention to every detail of this method is required. Especially important are:
 - Timing
 - Avoidance of reoxidation of cuprous compounds once they are formed
 - Temperature

TABLE 9
BLOOD GLUCOSE SHAFER HARTMAN METHOD

(Direct conversion of titration ml 0.005 N thiosulfate into blood glucose when 2 ml aliquots of a 1:10 dilution are analyzed)

ml CVK MINUS ml BLK	0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9
	mg GLUCOSE, 100 ml WHOLE BLOOD									
0	0	11	16	20	23	40	47	54	61	68
1	5	8	89	96	103	110	117	124	131	137
2	143	149	155	162	169	175	181	189	195	201
3	209	215	221	228	234	241	248	254	261	267
4	275	281	288	295	302	309	315	322	329	336
5	341	347	354	361	367	375	381	389	396	403
6	409	416	423	430	436	443	450	458	465	472
7	476	483	490	497	503	510	516	523	530	536
8	543	549	556	563	570	577	583	590	597	603
9	610	616	623	630	637	644	650	657	663	670

3 Lactic Acid

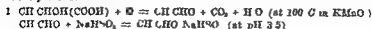
A. IN BLOOD AND SERUM

Reference

Edwards H T. A Simplified Estimation of Lactate in Normal Human Blood
J Biol Chem 125 571 583 (Oct) 1938

Principle

Lactic acid is oxidized to an aldehyde which is volatile. The acetaldehyde is absorbed by bisulfite and the bound bisulfite is estimated iodometrically. The steps in the procedure are:



2 **Glucose (Volumetric)****References**

- Shaffer P. A. and Hartman A. F. The Iodometric Determination of Copper and Its Use in Sugar Analysis *J Biol Chem* 45 349 390 (Jan) 1921
 Somogyi M. Notes on Sugar Determinations *J Biol Chem* 70 599 612 (Nov) 1926
 Somogyi M. A New Copper Reagent *J Biol Chem* 160 61 68 (Sept) 1945

Principle

The chief advantage of this method is its usefulness when samples contain widely varying amounts of glucose. Being titrimetric it covers a very wide range without necessitating extra dilutions. Cupric ions are reduced to cuprous in a hot medium. In acid solution iodine is released stoichiometrically from an iodide iodate mixture and is titrated with thiosulfate.

**Apparatus**

- 1 Filter paper quantitative
- 2 A number of special sugar tubes (see references)
- 3 Boiling water bath
- 4 A calibrated burette 10 ml in capacity
- 5 A quantity of 15 ml centrifuge tubes (round bottom) with #1 solid rubber stoppers

Reagents

- 1 Phosphate tartrate copper iodide solution. Dissolve 28 gm disodium phosphate in 600 ml water. Add 40 gm Rochelle salts dissolve and add 100 ml of 1 N sodium hydroxide. Add 80 ml of a 10% solution of cupric sulfate and with constant stirring 180 gm anhydrous sodium sulfate. Dilute to one liter with distilled water and add 8 gm potassium iodide and 25 ml of 35% potassium iodate.
- 2 Sodium thiosulfate. Prepare and standardize 0.1000 N thiosulfate as described in the section on volumetric analysis. As needed prepare 0.005 N thiosulfate by diluting 30 ml of 0.1 N to 500 ml.
- 3 Starch indicator. To 50 ml of boiling water add 1 gm of soluble starch and stir until dissolved. Then dilute to 100 ml with cold water. To prevent molds dissolve 1 gm of salicylic acid in the water before using it in the starch solution.
- 4 Sulfuric acid. Dilute 70 ml of concentrated sulfuric acid to 360 ml with distilled water. This is approximately 2 N.
- 5 Zinc sulfate. A 5% solution in water.
- 6 Barium hydroxide. An 0.3 N solution is prepared by dissolving 75.0 gm $\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2$ in 1000 ml warm water. Titrate against zinc sulfate. These two solutions must be equal in strength.

Procedure

- 1 To a 15 ml centrifuge tube add 4.5 ml of barium hydroxide solution.
- 2 Add exactly 1 ml of blood.
- 3 Then add 4.5 ml of zinc hydroxide stopper and shake vigorously.
- 4 Filter.
- 5 Pipette exactly 2 ml of the filtrate into a special sugar tube.
- 6 Add 1 ml of copper reagent.
- 7 The blank consists of 2 ml of distilled water plus 1 ml of copper reagent.

- 8 Cover both tubes and heat in a boiling water bath for exactly 10 minutes. Cool under running water.
- 9 Add 1 ml of sulfuric acid rapidly to each tube while mixing gently.
- 10 Add 1 to 2 drops of starch indicator and titrate with 0.005 N sodium molybdate. The endpoint is the disappearance of the blue color.

Calculation

Addition of iodide to the copper reagent increases the speed of this method but cuts down its accuracy in the titration range 0 to 1 ml. Above a titration figure of 1 ml 1 ml of 0.005 N molybdate is equivalent to 0.135 mg glucose. However, to save time in computation it is best to use a table derived empirically for the first ml (Table 9).

Example

The blank titration was 0.1 ml; the unknown titration was 1.6 ml. One ml of blood was diluted to 10 ml of which ml aliquots were analyzed. Reference to Table II shows that (unknown - blank) = (1.6 - 0.1) is equivalent to 110 mg glucose per 100 ml blood.

Precautions

- 1 Strict attention to every detail of this method is required. Especially important are:
 - a Timing
 - b Avoidance of oxidation of cuprous compounds once they are formed
 - c Temperature

TABLE 9
BLOOD GLUCOSE SHAFER-KARTMAN METHOD

(Direct conversion of titration ml 0.005 N molybdate into blood glucose when ml aliquots of a 1:10 dilution are analyzed.)

ml LNK ml N S ml BLK	0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9
	mg GLUCOSE/100 ml					WHOLE BLOOD				
0	0	11	18	25	3	40	47	54	61	68
1	73	8	89	96	103	110	117	124	131	137
2	143	149	155	16	169	175	18	189	195	0
3	209	215	1	28	234	41	48	54	61	68
4	275	281	88	95	30	309	315	3	39	336
5	342	349	356	363	370	376	383	389	396	403
6	403	416	4	49	436	443	449	456	46	469
7	476	482	489	496	503	510	516	523	529	536
8	543	549	556	563	570	577	583	590	596	603
9	610	616	623	630	637	644	650	657	663	670

II Lactic Acid

A. IN BLOOD AND SERUM

Reference

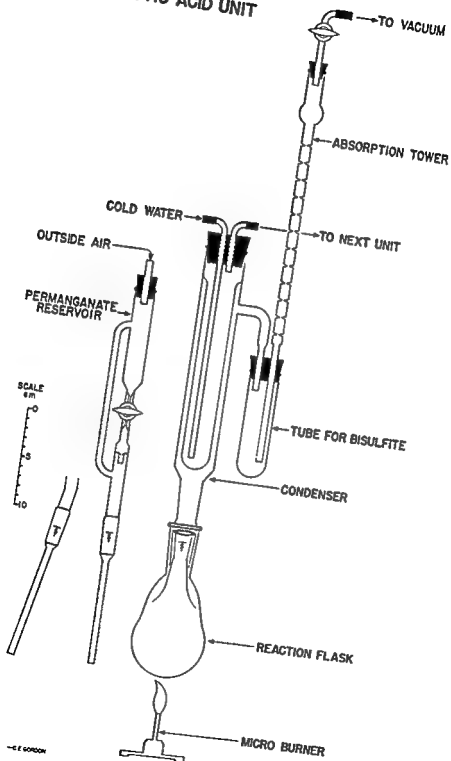
Edwards, H. T. A Simplified Estimation of Lactate in Normal Human Blood
J Biol Chem 125: 571-583 (Oct.) 1938

Principle

Lactic acid is oxidized to acetaldehyde which is volatile. The acetaldehyde is absorbed by bisulfite and the bound bisulfite is estimated iodometrically. The steps in the procedure are:

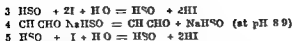
- 1 $\text{CH}_3\text{CHOH}(\text{COOH}) + \text{O} = \text{CH}_3\text{CHO} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ (at 100°C in KMnO_4)
- 2 $\text{CH}_3\text{CHO} + \text{NaHSO}_3 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{CH(OH)SO}_3\text{Na}$ (at pH 3.5)

LACTIC ACID UNIT



-E.E. GORDON

gram of the apparatus to scale. The reaction flask is 15 cm. Its capacity 5 ml.



Apparatus

- 1 Special lactic acid apparatus (See Fig 91)
- 2 50 ml centrifuge tubes
- 3 Electric centrifuge
- 4 0.5 ml pipettes or accurately calibrated syringe pipette
- 5 Micro burette 3 ml accurately calibrated

Reagents

- 1 Sodium tungstate ($\text{Na}_2\text{WO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$) approximately 10% Adjust to pH 8.9 using thymol blue as an indicator with dilute NaOH or H_2SO_4 . (High blanks can sometimes be avoided by boiling 1 liter of this with 0.5 ml of 3% H_2O) Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) 2/3 N made from special concentrated Pregl acid 66 ml H_2O made up to 360 ml of water
- 2 Manganous sulfate ($\text{MnSO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$) approximately 10%
- 3 Sulfuric acid approximately 10 N made from special Pregl sulfuric acid (to get a low blank) in distilled water 100 ml is made up to 360 ml with water (Concentrated acid is 36 N)
- 4 Sodium meta bisulfite (NaHSO_3) approximately 5% Keep in glass stoppered bottle Do not use after two weeks
- 5 Potassium permanganate (KMnO_4) approximately N/1000
- 6 Starch solution approximately 1%
- 7 Sodium meta bisulfite (NaHSO_3) 0.05% Make fresh daily
- 8 Iodine (I_2) approximately N/3 3 gm I_2 and 48 gm of KI made up to 1 liter Use crude iodine and USP KI Add more KI if necessary to get the iodine in solution
- 9 Iodine approximately N/10 Dilute from above
- 10 Iodine standard N/100 made by diluting standard N/10 iodine N/200 is stable for 23 days. N/10 is stable for several months Make up and standardize N/10 iodine
- 11 Disodium phosphate ($\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 12\text{H}_2\text{O}$) ground to a powder Use Eimer and Amend sodium phosphate secondary USP granular
- 12 Standard lithium lactate $\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCOOH}$ mol wt 95.940 Prepare the salt according to Friedemann and Graessner (J Biol. Chem. 100 291-308 March 1933) Prepare an accurate 0.1 M solution in 0.2 N H_2SO_4 . Dilute this stock standard 1 to 500 with 0.1 N H_2SO_4 . The diluted standard keeps well in the refrigerator. Of this 15 ml is equivalent to 0.270 mg lactate acid or 1.5 ml N/1000 iodine

Procedure

This method is also valid for trichloroacetic acid centrifugates from blood and muscle. Once the blood is hemolyzed it can be kept in the icebox at any stage of precipitation the value being constant for a week or more. It is best to remove the filtrate from precipitate if it will not be analyzed within a few days.

- 1 For whole blood pipette exactly 1 ml of whole blood into 45 ml of distilled water. For plasma pipette 1 ml plasma into 17 ml of distilled water. Mix. For cells pipette 1 ml of cells into 53 ml of distilled water. Mix. For cells it is best to use a pipette calibrated to contain and wash out.

Add mixing between additions

For whole blood pipette 0.5 ml of 2/3 N sulfuric acid and 2 ml of 10% tungstate

For plasma 1 ml of 2/3 N sulfuric acid and 1 ml of 10% tungstate

For cells 3 ml of 2/3 N sulfuric acid and 3 ml of 10% tungstate

- 3 Centrifuge 5-10 minutes at 3000 r.p.m. Note

a If alcohol is present boil the filtrate for 5 minutes with new reagents in Steps 4-6 before adding permanganate

- b If ether is present bubble cold air through the filtrate 15 minutes before using
- c In mild ketosis use the filtrate just as with normal blood
- 4 Clean absorption towers and test tubes with distilled water
- 5 Pipette 10 or 15 ml aliquots of the centrifugate into the reaction flasks (Lift up the KMnO_4 reservoir 6 inches, insert pipette lower reservoir to hold it, and allow pipette to drain while you do the other pipettings. This saves time.) For standard lactate use about 0.2 mg of lactate
- 6 Add approximately 5 ml 10 N sulfuric acid approximately 10 ml of 10% MnSO_4 and approximately 50 ml distilled water to each reaction flask. Mix these three in graduate and add all together. When first run is finished add fresh unknown solutions directly to the used solutions in the reaction flasks even when the old MnSO_4 H₂SO₄ solutions are deep brown or hot, or both. As many as 9 subsequent runs can be made without addition of fresh reagents or cleaning out the flasks (Add 0.5 ml 10 N H₂SO₄ every 4 runs)
- 7 Add approximately 15 ml 1% NaHSO_3 to each absorption tube but not through tower adjust absorption tower fill air intake reservoir with KMnO_4 (N/200) (approximately 9 ml) with stopcocks shut and connect all the rubber stoppers
- 8 Make sure water in condenser is flowing. Adjust the air to flow briskly (The exact rate does not matter provided it is brisk.) Light the burners bring to boiling point and add KMnO_4 by adjusting stopcocks to drip so that after 10 minutes a faint pink shows in each flask. About 1 drop every 5 seconds is needed. If KMnO_4 collects at dripping point a vigorous shake after the run will dispel the collection. (In subsequent runs a brown precipitate obscures the pink color but drop in the KMnO_4 at the usual rate.) Be sure to add all of the KMnO_4 in dropping reservoir in order to oxidize all unknown
- 9 Add KMnO_4 for a total of exactly 15 minutes. Continue boiling for 5 additional minutes
- 10 At the end of the 20 minutes turn off the burners and turn off the air flow. Loosen one tube at a time and wash the tower while holding the tube with the tip of the tower near the top of the tube
- 11 Wash the towers with four 2 ml portions of distilled water from a fast running 2 ml pipette. Do this by washing with the first portion around the top of the absorption tower and with the next three so as to cover $\frac{1}{4}$ of the tower each time. Wash the tip of the tower with about 1 ml of water

Titration

Note If room temperature is above 74°, the tubes must be kept cold in a pan of ice

- 1 Add 4 drops of starch to the tube
- 2 Add strong iodine first then 0.05 N iodine until a blue color persists (Avoid adding a large excess of I because this raises the blank. There is no need to hurry with the titration at this point)
- 3 Add 0.05% NaHSO_3 until the blue color is discharged (Clean this burette with distilled water and add fresh 0.05% NaHSO_3 each day)
- 4 Add 0.005 N iodine until a faint blue color persists 15 seconds. When you think you have reached the end point tip the tube so that the contents rinse down the sides. This prevents drops of iodine or NaHSO_3 on the sides of the tube giving bad results. Be sure the end point is still present after tipping
- 5 Add 3 spatulas full of $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 12\text{H}_2\text{O}$ to discharge the blue color and mix thoroughly by swirling the tube
- 6 Read the burette containing the standard N/200 iodine
- 7 Add N/200 iodine until the first faint blue color that persists for 15 seconds agitate the tube constantly. It does not matter if this end point fades after 15 seconds
- 8 Read the burette again.
- 9 Subtract the readings

- 10 Subtract the blank from this result (The blank should never be over 0.04 ml of 0.005 N iodine) It is well if possible to run a distilled water blank and a standard lactate solution with each run. The reagent blank should be the same as a water blank. If it is not change the reagents. The commonest sources of high blanks are the H_2SO_4 the Na_2WO_4 and the excess iodine during titration. The blank appears to be due to the distilled water used.
- 11 Duplicate titrations must agree to 0.0 ml of 0.005 N I_2 .

Calculation

mg lactic acid/100 ml blood =

$$\frac{\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{ml titration} \\ - \text{ml blank} \end{array} \right) \times \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{normality of} \\ \text{iodine} \end{array} \right) \times (45) \times (\text{dilution}) \times 100}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml blood sample})}$$

Example

The standard iodine was 0.0049 N. One ml of whole blood was diluted to 50 ml of which 15 ml aliquots were used. The average titration was 1.09 ml and the blank 0.04 ml of iodine.

mg lactic acid/100 ml blood =

$$\frac{(1.09 - 0.04) \times 0.0049 \times 45 \times 50 \times 100}{15 \times 1} = 77.2 \text{ mg/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 There are many steps in this method three of which (oxidation binding of aldehyde titration) are subject to many errors. Most technicians need a great deal of practice before the method runs smoothly.
- 2 Cleaning the apparatus is best done by standing in a mixture of 4 vols concentrated HCl + 1 vol of 5% NaHSO_3 until the precipitated MnO_2 is dissolved. Then wash thoroughly with cold tap water and rinse off with distilled water. Precipitates of tungstic oxide can be removed with dilute NaOH . The burette containing 0.005 N NaHSO_3 and containing 0.005 N I_2 must be rinsed out with distilled water each day. The burette containing more concentrated iodine may be left until its contents have been completely used.

LACTIC ACID IN MUSCLE

Preparation of Specimen

- 1 Set the tube of a homogenizer tube in a pan of solid CO_2 . Pipette in 2 ml of 10% trichloroacetic acid and allow to freeze.
- 2 The muscle or tissue (approximately 50 mg) is weighed on a Roller-Smith type balance and frozen in powdered CO_2 .
- 3 It is then dropped into the test tube covered with 3 ml more of trichloroacetic acid and allowed to freeze solidly.
- 4 The tube is dipped in cold water until melting just begins. The pestle is inserted the motor started and the muscle is ground to a fine pulp. This takes about 2 minutes.
- 5 The pestle is withdrawn and washed off quantitatively into the test tube with ice-cold trichloroacetic acid.
- 6 Dilute to the 25 ml mark insert a clean rubber stopper and shake.
- 7 Centrifuge for 5 minutes at 500 rpm.
- 8 Pipette out an aliquot and proceed as for whole blood.

Glycogen in Tissue

Reference

- Good C. A., Hramer H. and Somogyi M. The Determination of Glycogen. *J. Biol. Chem.* 100: 485-491 (April) 1933.
- Association of Official Agricultural Chemists. *Methods of Analysis*, ed. 5. Washington D. C. 1940. Assoc. of Official Agricultural Chemists.

Principle

The tissue is hydrolyzed with boiling KOH which does not destroy glycogen. The glycogen is precipitated with ethyl alcohol and is hydrolyzed with boiling HCl. Sugar is then estimated by any appropriate macro method such as that of Shaffer Hartman Somogyi.

Apparatus

- 1 Conical 15 ml graduated centrifuge tubes
- 2 Hollow glass balls which fit the necks of the centrifuge tubes. These act as reflux condensers

Reagents

- 1 Potassium hydroxide (KOH) approx 54 N
- 2 Potassium hydroxide approx 0.01 N
- 3 Hydrochloric acid (HCl) 0.55 N. For this solution take 31.4 ml of 35% acid and dilute it to 500 ml with distilled water
- 4 Thymol blue approx 1% aqueous solution
- 5 Ethyl alcohol (EtOH) 95%
- 6 Glycogen standard solution 80 mg/100 ml. Weigh out 0.08 gm glycogen and dissolve in 100 ml of 20% KOH solution. This solution is stable in icebox for at least one week
- 7 Shaffer Hartman Somogyi sugar reagents

Procedure

- 1 Place 1-2 ml (enough to cover the muscle) of either cold or hot 20% KOH in the tube fitted with the air condenser
- 2 After weighing the frozen muscle (about 0.5 gm) drop it into the tube immediately replace the air condenser and place the tube in a boiling water bath. Boil for 30 minutes occasionally removing the tube and shaking it to aid the hydrolysis
- 3 Cool the tube to room temperature and add 95% alcohol. The volume added should equal 11 to 12 times the volume of solution already in the tube. Stir the solution vigorously with a platinum wire until a complete mixing results. Any glycogen will begin to precipitate here. Place the tube in warm water slowly and carefully bring the alcoholic solution to the boiling point and immediately remove the tubes from the water bath. Cool to room temperature. This completes the coagulation of the glycogen
- 4 After the precipitate has been allowed to settle somewhat note carefully the amount present. This value will be used later in the procedure
- 5 Remove the condensers and centrifuge the tube at the maximum speed for 15 minutes. Decant the solution and drain the tubes for a few minutes. If the rest of the estimation must be delayed this is the best place to stop. Place the tubes inverted in the icebox until the estimation can be resumed.
- 6 Remove the remaining alcohol by placing the tubes in boiling water or in an oven at 100° for about 5 minutes or until no more alcohol can be detected by its odor. This is not necessary if the tubes have stood in the icebox overnight
- 7 Cool and add 2.5% HCl in amounts according to the amount of precipitated glycogen noted earlier

Use about 6 ml HCl for	0.304 ml ppt
Use about 5 to 5½ ml HCl for	0.203 ml ppt
Use about 4 ml HCl for	0.102 ml ppt

Never use less than 1.5 to 2 ml HCl. Place the tubes with attached air condensers in boiling water and hydrolyze for 2½ hours. Cool to room temperature

- 8 Add 1 drop of thymol blue to each tube. If the solution is not to be estimated for over 8 hours adjust the pH in the range of 2 to 6 by adding KOH from a dropper until the indicator is yellow in color and place the covered tubes in the icebox until the determination can be resumed. Then adjust the pH of the solution to 8 with 30% KOH, 0.5% KOH and 2% HCl the end point is reached when the indicator has just reached a pale purple color.
- 9 Estimation of glucose by Shaffer Hartman Somogyi method. This method is recommended because it covers a wide range of glucose concentrations without necessitating many dilutions.
- Adjust the pH to 8 as in Step 8.
 - Dilute to a measured volume e.g. 5 ml and use aliquots containing 0.5-1.50 mg glucose. The volume of aliquot should be around 5 ml.
 - Measure glucose by the Shaffer Hartman Somogyi method.
- 10 Estimation of Glucose by Method of Folin and Wu. This method may be preferred by those who use it routinely for blood.
- Adjust pH to 8 as in Step 8.
 - Dilute the solution to a known volume with distilled water according to the amount of precipitated glycogen noted earlier. If the precipitate was greater than 0.4 ml dilute to 15 ml and use 1 ml of the solution and 1 ml of distilled water for the sugar determination.
- If ppt was 0.3-0.4 ml make up to 15 ml and use 2 ml
 If ppt was 0.2-0.3 ml make up to 15 ml and use 2 ml
 If ppt was 0.1-0.2 ml make up to 10 ml and use 2 ml
 If ppt was 0.1 or less make up to 6 ml and use 2 ml
- Proceed as described under the method of Folin and Wu.

Calculation

$$1 \text{ mg glucose/100 gm tissue} = \frac{(\text{mg glucose/ml hydrolysate}) \times (\text{dilution}) \times (100)}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{gm tissue})}$$

For the Shaffer Hartman Somogyi method an empirical calibration curve is required. Set up glycogen standards at intervals in the range 0.5-1.50 mg/5 ml run through the hydrolysis technique previously described neutralize and estimate the glucose.

Example

A sample of muscle weighed 20. mg. After hydrolysis the solution was diluted to 0.5 ml and 0.1 ml aliquots were analyzed for glucose. The average concentration was found to be 0.16 mg glucose/ml of dilute hydrolysate.

$$\text{mg glycogen (as glucose)/100 gm tissue} = \frac{(0.16) \times 5 \times 100}{5 \times 0.6} = 30 \text{ mg/100 gm}$$

Precautions

- The chief source of error in this method is glycogenolysis in the tissue before the glycolytic system can be inhibited or inactivated. Extreme care is required in handling the tissue.

5 Alcohol in Blood and Urine

Reference

Gibson J. O. H. and Blodner H. The Determination of Ethyl Alcohol in Blood and Urine With the Photoelectric Colorimeter *J. Biol. Chem.* 126: 5-1559 (Nov) 1938

Principle

Alcohol is separated from blood filtrate by distillation. Alcohol is oxidized by potassium dichromate causing a loss of color.



Apparatus

- 1 An alcohol still (or a Kjeldahl ammonia still)
- 2 A quantity of 50 ml round bottom test tubes with a number of #1 solid rubber stoppers
- 3 An electric centrifuge
- 4 A quantity of 25 ml glass stoppered graduated cylinders
- A Coleman Junior Spectrophotometer
- 6 Cuvettes 19 x 1.0 mm
- 7 An accurately calibrated 2 ml syringe pipette

Reagents

- 1 Potassium dichromate ($K_2Cr_2O_7$) Dissolve 3.1943 gm pure salt in 1000 ml water
- 2 Sodium tungstate (Na_2WO_4) Dissolve 100 gm to make 1 liter
- 3 Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) Prepare 2/3 N H_2SO_4 by diluting 6.6 ml of concentrated acid to 360 ml with water
- 4 Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) Concentrated and 18 N both used
- 5 Potassium oxalate ($K_2C_2O_4$) Prepare a saturated solution in water One drop will prevent clotting in 10 ml of blood
- 6 Standard anhydrous alcohol free ethyl alcohol Mix together one liter absolute EtOH 0.5 gm NaOH and 7.5 gm $AgNO_3$ dissolved in 3 ml water Reflux ■ to 3 hours Distill and store first 800 ml in brown bottle for use as standard

Procedure

- 1 Pipette exactly 2 ml of oxalated blood into 14 ml water in a 50 ml centrifuge tube
- 2 Add 2 ml of 2/3 N sulfuric acid mix
- 3 Add 2 ml of 10% sodium tungstate
- 4 Mix and centrifuge for 10 minutes
- 5 Place in a 100 ml Kjeldahl flask 10 ml of blood filtrate For urine use 1 to 10 ml depending on the concentration of alcohol suspected and add water to make 10 ml in the flask
- 6 Distill off 6 to 7 ml into 20 ml glass stoppered cylinder containing 5 ml of 18 N sulfuric acid and 2 ml of potassium dichromate The volume in the cylinder should be about 15 ml after distillation The cylinder is cooled in an ice bath during distillation
- 7 Mix and after sealing glass stopper with a drop of conc sulfuric acid heat cylinder and contents in a water bath for 20 minutes at 75-80°C
- 8 Then cool to room temperature and dilute to exactly 20 ml
- 9 Mix and decant into a colorimeter tube
- 10 At the same time prepare a reagent blank by mixing 5 ml 18 N H_2SO_4 13 ml water and 2 ml of potassium dichromate
- 11 Set colorimeter at 440 mμ and a water tube at 100% T

Calculation

- 1 Prepare a calibration curve from standard alcohol solutions containing 0 to 150 mg per 100 ml at intervals of 15 mg per 100 ml and running them through the whole method Note that in this case the higher the % T the more concentrated is the alcohol

$$\text{mg alcohol/100 ml fluid} = \frac{(\text{mg alcohol in cuvette}) \times (\text{dilution}) \times (100)}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml fluid sample})}$$

Example

A reading of 60% T was equivalent to 0.15 mg alcohol in the cuvette During the analysis 3 ml blood were diluted to 20 ml of which 10 ml aliquots were analyzed

$$\text{mg alcohol/100 ml blood} = \frac{(0.15) \times 20 \times 100}{10 \times 2} = 150 \text{ mg/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 In this method the commonest sources of error are
 - a Loss of alcohol during distillation
 - Erratic color from failure to observe conditions of oxidation exactly
 - The alcohol standard is critical it must be water and aldehyde free

6 Total Bisulfite Binding Capacity**Reference**

- Thompson R H ■ and Johanson R E Blood Pyruvate in Vitamin B Deficiency
 Biochem J 29 674 700 (May) 1935

Principle

On occasion as in exercise or in thiamine deficiency an increase in the keto acids of blood ■ observed. The present method gives a measure of the increase of total keto acids in the blood by virtue of their capacity to combine with bisulfite in acid solution. These complexes are broken down in alkaline solution and the bisulfite is titrated iodometrically. The present method is not useful in the presence of ketosis.

For specific compounds such as pyruvic acid and alpha ketoglutaric acid the reader should use methods recommended in the bibliography of the succeeding pages.

Apparatus

- 1 An electric centrifuge
- 2 An accurately calibrated 3 ml burette
- 3 A number of 5 ml round bottom tubes
- 4 An ice bath
- 5 A number of 2 ml volumetric flasks
- 6 A number of 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes

Reagents

- 1 Trichloroacetic acid a 4% solution in water
- Thymol blue indicator
- 3 Sodium meta bisulphite a 5% solution in water
- 4 Starch indicator (see lactate method)
- 5 Standard iodine 0.005 N (see lactate method)

Procedure

- 1 Pipette 3 ml of 4% trichloroacetic acid into a 15 ml centrifuge tube
- 2 Add exactly 1 ml of blood and mix by inversion
- 3 Centrifuge for 5 minutes
- 4 Transfer 8 ml to ■ ml volumetric flask and adjust pH to 7.30 using thymol blue (orange color)
- 5 Dilute to 5 ml with water
- 6 Pipette out 10 ml samples into lactate titration tubes
- 7 Add 1 ml of sodium bisulfite (5%)
- 8 Allow to stand at room temperature for 15 minutes
- 9 Titrate in ice bath as in lactate. The end point is difficult
- 10 Set up a blank from trichloroacetic acid treated as blood filtrate

Calculation

Bisulfite binding capacity expressed as mg pyruvic acid/100 ml blood =

$$\frac{(\text{ml titration} - \text{ml blank}) \times (45) \times (\text{normality of iodine}) \times \text{dilution} \times 100}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml blood used})}$$

Example

A titration of 0.05 ml and a blank of 0.04 ml were obtained. Of blood 1 ml had been precipitated in 10 ml. 8 ml of this were diluted to 25 ml and 10 ml aliquots were titrated. Iodine was 0.005 N.

Bisulfite binding capacity expressed as mg pyruvic acid =

$$\frac{(0.25 - 0.04) \times 45 \times 0.005 \times 25 \times 10 \times 100}{10 \times 8 \times 1} = 147$$

Precautions

The end point is difficult and titration must be carried out in the cold.

7 Carbohydrates Miscellaneous References**Aldehydes**

Siggia S and Maxcy W. Improved Procedure for Determination of Aldehydes. *Anal Chem* 18 10³ 10⁵ (Dec) 1941.

Citric Acid

Goldberg A S and Bernheim A R. Citric Acid Determination. *J Biol Chem* 156 33 46 (Nov) 1944.

Natelson M, Lugovoy J H and Pincus J M. Determination of Micro Quantities of Citric Acid in Biological Fluids. *J Biol Chem* 170 597 606 (Oct) 1947.

Saffran M and Denstedt O F. A Rapid Method for the Determination of Citric Acid. *J Biol Chem* 175 849 855 (Sept) 1948.

Tausky H H. A Micro Colorimetric Method for the Determination of Citric Acid. II A Note on the Substitution of Ferrous Sulphate for Hydrazine Sulphate as the Reducing Agent. *J Biol Chem* 181 195 198 (Nov) 1949.

Wolcott G H, Boyer P D. A Colorimetric Method for the Determination of Citric Acid in Blood and Plasma. *J Biol Chem* 172 729 736.

Glucose

Benedict S R. The Analysis of Whole Blood. II The Determination of Sugar and Saccharoids (Non fermentable Copper Reducing Substances). *J Biol Chem* 92 141 159 (June) 1931.

Fohn O and Wu R. A System of Blood Analysis. *J Biol Chem* 38 106 110 (May) 1919.

Hall D A. A Simplified Method of Blood Sugar Estimation. *Brit. M J* pages 351 353 (Feb) 1950.

Kingsley G R and Reinhold J G. The Determination of True Glucose in Blood by Reduction of Ferricyanide. *J Lab & Clin Med* 34 (5) 713 719 (May) 1949.

Polis E D, and Sortwell M. Rapid Photocolorimetric Micro Procedure for Blood Sugar Using Copper Reduction With Perchloric Acid Deproteinized Filtrates. *Arch Biochem* 11 (2) 233 (Oct) 1946.

Schaless O and Schaless S S. A Simple Method for Determination of Glucose in Blood. *Arch Biochem* 8 (2) 285 292 (Nov) 1945.

Glycogen

Wagner M. The Estimation of Glycogen in Whole Blood and White Blood Cells. *Arch. Biochem* 11 (2) 249 53 (Oct) 1946.

Inulin

Little J M. A Modified Diphenylamine Procedure for the Determination of Inulin. *J Biol Chem* 180 747 754 (Sept) 1949.

Robson J M, Ferguson M H, Olbrich O and Stewart M P. The Determination of the Renal Clearance of Inulin in Man. *Quart J Exper Physiol* 35 111 134 (June) 1949.

Roe J H, Epstein J H and Goldstein N P. A Photometric Method for the Determination of Inulin in Plasma and Urine. *J Biol Chem* 178 839 845 (April) 1949.

Lactic Acid

Friedemann T E and Graesser J B. The Determination of Lactic Acid. *J Biol Chem* 100 291 303 (March) 1933.

Milton H. Notes on Mendel and Goldscheider's Method for Determining Lactic Acid in Blood. *Analyst* 61 91 96 (Feb) 1936.

Mannitol

Cercoran A C and Page I H A Method for the Determination of Mannitol in Plasma and Urine *J Biol Chem* 170 165 171 (Sept) 1947

Methylpentose

Dische Z and Shettles L B A Specific Color Reaction of Methylpentoses and a Spectrophotometric Method for Their Determination *J Biol Chem* 175 595 603 (Sept) 1948

Pentose

Dische Z Spectrophotometric Method for the Determination of Free Pentose and Pentose in Nucleotides *J Biol Chem* 181 319 329 (Nov) 1949

Dunstan S and Gillam A E A Micro Method for the Determination of Pentoses by Photoelectric Spectrophotometry *J Chem Soc Suppl Issue No 1* S140 144 1949

Roe J H and Rice E W A Photometric Method for the Determination of Free Pentoses in Animal Tissues *J Biol Chem* 173 50 51 (April) 1948

Pyruvic Acid

Klein D The Determination of Pyruvic Acid in Blood in Presence of Acetoacetic Acid *J Biol Chem* 137 311 316 (Jan) 1941

Tsao M and Brown S Pyruvic Acid Determination A Micro Method *J Lab & Clin Med* 35 (2) 303 303 (Feb) 1950

SECTION IV

BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

D FATS AND DERIVATIVES

1 Total Lipids in Serum

Reference

Bloor W ■ The Determination of Small Amounts of Lipid in Blood Plasma
J Biol Chem 77 ■ 73 (April) 1923

Principle

The lipids are extracted with ether alcohol and saponified with sodium ethylate. Fatty acids and cholesterol are extracted with petroleum ether and oxidized with silver and potassium dichromate. The excess dichromate is titrated with sodium thio sulfate.

Apparatus

- 1 A quantity of 25 and 50 ml volumetric flasks
- 2 A steam bath
- 3 Special quantitative filter paper (Whatman 40)
- 4 A quantity of 125 ml glass stoppered Erlenmeyer flasks
- 5 An electric oven set at 124 C

Reagents

- 1 Ether alcohol mixture 3 volumes of 95% ethyl alcohol (C_2H_5OH) and 1 volume of ethyl ether (C_2H_5O)
- 2 Sodium thiosulfate ($Na_2S_2O_3$) 0.1000 N (See section on volumetric methods.)
- 3 Potassium iodide (KI) a 10% solution made freshly
- 4 Starch suspension (See lactate method)
- 5 Silver dichromate (Ag_2CrO_4) Dissolve 5 gm of silver nitrate in 25 ml of water. Add 5 gm of H_2CrO_4 dissolved in 50 ml of water. Stir and centrifuge. Wash precipitate twice with water to remove NO_3^- . Dissolve in 500 ml of concentrated H_2SO_4 .
- 6 Petroleum ether b.p. 40-60 C
- 7 Sodium ethylate (C_2H_5ONa) Introduce 3 gm of fresh sodium ethylate into 100 ml of absolute $EtOH$ containing 1 ml of 95% alcohol ($EtOH$). Cool. Store in cool dark place.
- 8 Dilute sulfuric acid To one volume concentrated H_2SO_4 add 8 volumes of water.
- 9 Potassium dichromate ($K_2Cr_2O_7$) 1.0000 N (See section under standardization)
- 10 Methyl red indicator (0.1% in water)

Procedure

- 1 Into 40 ml of the ether alcohol mixture in a 50 ml volumetric flask pipette exactly 3 ml of serum or plasma.
- 2 Let stand 1 hour. Make up to 50 ml with ether alcohol.
- 3 Mix. Filter through filter paper.
- 4 Add 0 ml of filtrate to 1-5 ml Erlenmeyer flask.
- 5 Add 2 ml of sodium ethylate.
- 6 Evaporate on steam bath to disappearance of alcohol odor. Do not overheat.
- 7 Remove last traces of alcohol by stream of air.
- 8 To the residue add 1 ml of dilute sulfuric acid.
- 9 Heat mixture on steam bath for one minute.

- 10 Pour 10 ml petroleum ether onto hot mixture and allow to come to a boil
- 11 Rotate flask gently \approx 3 minutes
- 12 Add 1 drop of methyl red to see the separation between ether-water layer
- 13 Pour only hot ether extract into 25 ml volumetric flask
- 14 Repeat extractions with 3 to 5 ml portions of petroleum ether combining the extracts
- 15 Cool and dilute to 5 ml with petroleum ether. Mix
- 16 Pipette 10 ml aliquots of the extract into 15 ml glass stoppered Erlenmeyer flasks
- 17 Evaporate remove last traces of ether with a stream of air
- 18 Add 5 ml of Ag_2CrO_4 reagent and 3 ml of 10000 N K_2CrO_7 rotating flask while adding reagents
- 19 Heat loosely stoppered flask at 140 C in an electric oven for 15 minutes a blank being treated with Ag_2CrO_4 and K_2CrO_7 in the same manner
- 20 Stir solutions and again leave at 124 C for 40 minutes more. If at end of 5 minutes the solution is green add more of the dichromates
- 21 To hot flasks add 75 ml of water
- 22 Add 10 ml of KI. Do not stir
- 23 Titrate with thiosulfate until the yellow color fades. Add starch indicator and titrate to the disappearance of blue color. The flask may be agitated vigorously as the iodine is taken up by the thiosulfate

Calculation

- 1 This method measures principally palmitic oleic and stearic acids and cholesterol. A factor of 1 mg total fat = 0.370 ml 1 N dichromate has been determined empirically for the mixture typical of plasma

- 2 mg total lipids/100 ml plasma =

$$\frac{(\text{ml thiosulfate blank} - \text{ml unknown}) \times (\text{dilution}) \times (\text{dilution}) \times (100)}{(3.60) \times (\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml plasma used})}$$

Example

Three ml plasma were extracted in 50 ml. 20 ml aliquots were saponified and diluted to 5 ml and 10 ml aliquots were oxidized. Titration of blank was 33 ml 0.1 N thiosulfate that of unknown was 26.0 ml

$$\text{mg total lipids/100 ml plasma} = \frac{(33 - 26) \times 5 \times 50 \times 100}{3.60 \times 10 \times 20 \times 3} = 406 \text{ mg/100 ml}$$

Precautions

Being rather empirical this method requires rigid adherence to time-temperature specifications

2 Total Cholesterol

Reference

Modification of Bloor W. H.: The Fatty Acids of Blood Plasma J Biol Chem 56 711, 4 (July) 1933

Principle

For some clinical purposes the quick method recommended here for determining total cholesterol will prove satisfactory. Cholesterol is extracted into a mixture of ether and alcohol which is then evaporated. A greenish blue color is developed from the residue in the presence of chloroform, acetic anhydride and sulfuric acid

Apparatus

- 1 A quantity of 15 ml round bottomed test tubes
- Calibrated 15 ml conical test tubes

- 3 0.2 ml accurately calibrated syringe pipette
- 4 A number of 10 ml pipettes
- 5 Graduated pipettes
- 6 Cork and rubber stoppers
- 7 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 8 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 9 An electric centrifuge
- 10 A variety of #4 cork stoppers
- 11 A boiling water bath

Reagents

- 1 Mixture of ether and alcohol. 3 volumes of anhydrous ethyl alcohol (C_2H_5OH) and 1 volume of ethyl ether ($C_2H_5_2O$)
- 2 Chloroform ($CHCl_3$) dry Merck's reagent
- 3 Acetic anhydride (CH_3CO) O Merck's reagent
- 4 Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) conc ACS
- 5 Stock standard cholesterol 400 mg cholesterol in 100 ml chloroform
- 6 Working standard cholesterol dilute stock standard 1 to 100 with chloroform
10 ml = 0.4 mg cholesterol

Procedure

- 1 To 0.8 ml of ether alcohol in a calibrated cone tipped centrifuge tube add exactly 0.2 ml serum. Stopper with a rubber stopper.
- 2 Allow to rest on side 60 minutes with occasional shaking or place in a rotator for 30 minutes.
- 3 Adjust volume to exactly 10 ml with ether alcohol mix, install tight cork stopper and centrifuge 5 to 10 minutes. Check the volume after centrifuging.
- 4 Place an 8 ml aliquot of the ether alcohol supernatant fluid in a 15 ml round bottomed test tube.
- 5 Evaporate to dryness in a water bath. AVOID OPEN FLAME. This takes about 10 minutes. Cool.
- 6 Add 10 ml chloroform + 4 ml acetic anhydride and 0.2 ml sulfuric acid. Stopper with rubber stopper. Mix.
- 7 Stand 10 minutes at $25 \pm 1^\circ C$ preferably in water bath.
- 8 At the same time set up a reagent blank starting with steps 1 and omitting serum.
- 9 Transfer unknowns and blanks to cuvettes and read at 660 m μ with the blank set at 100% T.

Calculation

- 1 Set up a calibration curve covering the range 0 to 0.5 mg cholesterol in the cuvette with samples of standard cholesterol run through the whole method.
- 2 $\text{mg cholesterol/100 ml serum} = \frac{(\text{mg cholesterol in cuvette}) \times (\text{dilution}) \times 100}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml serum used})}$

Example

A reading of 72% T was equivalent to 0.15 mg cholesterol in the cuvette. For analysis 0.2 ml of serum was extracted in 10 ml solvent, of which 8 ml was analyzed.

$$\text{mg cholesterol/100 ml serum} = \frac{(0.15) \times 10 \times 100}{8 \times 0.2} = 93.7 \text{ mg/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 This method is recommended only for clinical purposes not for cases in which high precision and fractionation are required.
- 2 Beware of open flames at all stages.

3 Free and Combined Cholesterol in Blood

References

- Schoenheimer R and Sperry W M A Micro Method for the Determination of Free and Combined Cholesterol *J Biol Chem* 106 ,45 760 (Sept) 1934
 Sperry W M and Brand F C The Colorimetric Determination of Cholesterol *J Biol Chem* 150 315 4 (Oct) 1943

Principle

Cholesterol exists in plasma partly free and partly esterified or combined. Differential precipitation with digitonin enables the two forms to be calculated by difference when measured colorimetrically in acetic anhydride and sulfuric acid.

Apparatus

- 1 Filter paper quantitative—extracted with hot alcohol until completely free of sterols
- 2 Preserving jars either pint or quart with rubber gaskets
- 3 A dark cabinet containing a water bath. A wooden packing box equipped with door or curtain. The cabinet is fitted with a pan or tray about 4 inches deep. The larger the water bath the easier it will be to control the temperature. Provisions should be made for a thermometer and a funnel for the addition of water by drilling holes in the top of the box.
- 4 Cvettes 19 × 150 mm
- 5 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 6 A quantity of 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes
- 7 A 110°C oven
- 8 An incubator set at 7°C
- 9 A quantity of 5 ml volumetric flasks
- 10 A quantity of stirring rods
- 11 A steam bath

Reagents

- 1 Acetone alcohol mixture. One volume of redistilled acetone is mixed with one volume of absolute alcohol.
- 2 Ether peroxide free.
- 3 Acetone ether mixture. One volume of redistilled acetone to two volumes of peroxide free ether.
- 4 Digitonin solution. Dissolve 400 mg in 100 ml of distilled water by heating on a steam bath. The solution must be clear. A sediment will develop on standing but this can be removed by filtration or centrifuging before use.
- 5 Potassium hydroxide solution 33% in water.
- 6 Phenolphthalein solution a 1% solution in alcohol.
- 7 Acetic acid solution. Dilute 10 ml acetic acid up to 100 ml with distilled water.
- 8 Glacial acetic acid (ACS or reagent grade).
- 9 Acetic anhydride 99 to 100% chloride free.
- 10 Sulfuric acid concentrated.
- 11 Stock cholesterol solution in glacial acetic acid. 100 mg of cholesterol per 100 ml of glacial acetic acid. The cholesterol must be pure white and odorless and it must melt sharply at not below 147°C. If not recrystallized from an anhydrous solvent such as absolute alcohol, methyl alcohol or ethylene chloride.
- 12 Use a working standard of 0.1 mg/ml. Dilute 10 ml of the stock cholesterol to 100 ml with glacial acetic acid.
- 13 Acetic anhydride-sulfuric acid mixture. Add acetic anhydride (enough for a series of determination) into a glass stoppered flask chill it in an ice bath and add concentrated sulfuric acid in the proportion of 1 ml to 20 ml of anhydride. Agitate the contents during the addition while the flask is kept in the ice bath. Insert the stopper remove from the bath shake vigorously for a few moments and return to the bath.

Procedure**1 Preparation of Sample**

- a Pipette 7 to 10 ml of acetone alcohol solution into a 20 ml volumetric flask and pipette exactly 1 ml of serum into the solution. Mix after the addition of the serum by swirling the solution.
- b Heat the flask over a steam bath and rotate the flask to prevent bumping.
- c When the solution boils, cool the flask to room temperature and dilute to the mark with acetone alcohol solution.
- d Filter into a clean flask.
- e Pipette samples for free cholesterol and total cholesterol at once to avoid concentration changes due to evaporation.

2 Isolation of Free Cholesterol

- a Pipette 7 ml of the filtrate into a 15 ml centrifuge tube, add approximately 3.5 ml of digitonin solution and one drop of 10% acetic acid solution.
- b Stir thoroughly and leave rod in the tube. Place the tube in a preserving jar, cover tightly and leave it overnight at room temperature.
- c Transfer tube to a rack, stir to break up clumps of precipitate and to free particles which may adhere to the sides of the tube near the surface of the liquid. Remove the rod and place it in the rack, making certain that no precipitate on rod is lost.
- d Centrifuge until the precipitate is packed tightly enough to permit decanting without any loss. Then drain the tube for a few moments by touching the lip to a clean towel.
- e Replace the stirring rod and wash down the wall of the tube and rod with approximately 4 ml of acetone ether solution.
- f Stir thoroughly, return rod to rack, centrifuge and decant again.
- g Wash the precipitate twice more with ether instead of the acetone ether mixture.
- h Replace the rod and set the tube aside for color development. (Be sure that the ether has been completely evaporated before proceeding.)

3 Total Cholesterol Digitonide

- a Add 3 drops of the 33% KOH solution to a 15 ml centrifuge tube, pipette 3 ml of the extract into the tube and stir at intervals with a vigorous up and down motion of a stirring rod until no droplets of the alkali can be seen at the tip of the tube.
- b Place a layer of sand about 5 cm deep in a preserving jar and heat it in a water bath until the temperature of the sand is about 41°C. Place the tube in the sand, cover the jar tightly and put it in an incubator 37 to 40°C for 30 minutes.
- c Remove the tube to a rack, allow to cool, raise the stirring rod and add alcohol acetone to the 8 ml mark.
- d Then add 1 drop of phenolphthalein solution and titrate with 10% acetic acid solution. About 4 ml should be required. Add one drop in excess.
- e Add 3 ml of the digitonin solution, stir thoroughly and place the tube in a preserving jar. Cover it tightly and leave it at room temperature for at least 3 hours, preferably overnight. Carry out the centrifuging and washing as described for free cholesterol, except that in this case only one ether washing is necessary.

4 Development of Color in All Specimens

- a Heat a shallow pan containing a layer of sand (about 3 cm deep) to 110 to 115°C in an oven. Place the tubes containing the precipitate in the sand in the order in which readings are to be taken and return the pans to the oven for 30 minutes.
- b While the precipitates are drying in the oven, adjust the water bath to 5°C and maintain it at this temperature during the rest of the procedure.
- c After 30 minutes, remove the sand bath from the oven and pipette 0.1 ml of glacial acetic acid into the first tube while it is still in the hot sand.
- d Allow the acid to wash down the rod and the wall of the tube. Stir the contents vigorously and have the tube containing the rod in the sand while acid is being added to the next two or three tubes (2 or 3 minutes in all).

- e Stir again remove the tube from the sand allow to cool and place it in a rack in the water bath Continue in this manner until acetic acid has been added to all the centrifuge tubes in the series to be read and all have been placed in the water bath
- f In each series of determinations run at least two standards Pipette 1 ml of standard cholesterol (0.1 mg per ml) into centrifuge tubes insert stirring rods and place in the water bath along with the unknowns Place one at the beginning and one at the end of the series of unknowns
- g Start a stopwatch Then pipette 2 ml of glacial acetic acid and 4 ml of the mixed reagent into a cuvette mix thoroughly and use as a blank
- h After 9 minutes remove one of the standards from the water bath wipe it dry and pipette 4 ml of the mixed reagent into it
- i Stir vigorously for a few moments and pour into a cuvette Leave in water bath for 3 minutes
- j Then add 4 ml of mixed reagent to all the tubes shake vigorously and note time Pour into a cuvette and leave in a bath for 3 minutes
- k Set the blank at 100% T (or D = 0) at 6.5 μ Then remove each tube from the bath dry with a clean dry towel and read (be careful not to stir up the small quantity of sediment at the bottom of the tube)

Calculation

$$\text{mg of total cholesterol} = C_T = \frac{1667}{D} \times D_u$$

$$\text{mg of free cholesterol} = C = \frac{714}{D} \times D_u$$

$$\text{mg of combined cholesterol} = C = C_T - C$$

$$\text{Per cent cholesterol combined} = \frac{100 C}{C_T}$$

Where D_s is the mean optical density of the standards and
 D_u is the density of the unknown

Precautions

- 1 The centrifuging for free should be for 15 minutes at 300 r.p.m. at the first stage For total 5 to 7 minutes is usually enough for the acetone ether and ether washings
 The acetic anhydride reagent should be made up for each series of determinations Some heat is produced when mixed and a period of 10 minutes should be allowed before the reagent is used as an equilibrium is reached at that time
- 2 The water bath should be maintained at 30°C
- 3 Be careful of water as it interferes with the reaction (avoid splashing)

4 Lipid Phosphorus in Blood and Serum

Reference

Youngburg G. E. and Youngburg M. V. The phosphorus Metabolism I. A System of Blood Phosphorus Analysis J. Lab. & Clin. Med. 16 153-166 (Nov.) 1930

Principle

The extracted lipids are oxidized with sulfuric acid and hydrogen peroxide and the phosphate present is measured by the method of Fiske and Subbarow

Apparatus

- 1 Large test tubes graduated at 10 ml.
- 2 A boiling water bath
- 3 A quantity of filter paper (quantitative)
- 4 A quantity of broken china ware
- 5 Wire racks

- 6 An electric hot plate or microburners
- 7 A quantity of 5 ml volumetric flasks
- 8 Other apparatus as in phosphorus method (Fiske and Subbarow)

Reagents

- 1 Alcohol ether mixture Mix 3 volumes of 95% redistilled alcohol and one volume of redistilled ether
- 2 Sulfuric acid 5 N Dilute 50 ml of concentrated sulfuric acid to 350 ml with distilled water
- 3 Hydrogen peroxide 30% (Superoxol)
- 4 Ammonium molybdate 2.5 per cent solution
- 5 Amino-naphtholsulfonic acid solution (ANSA) (see phosphorus method)

Procedure

- 1 Into a graduated 20 ml test tube pipette 18 ml of the alcohol ether mixture
- 2 Add exactly 1 ml of plasma or serum drop by drop
- 3 Mix and place in a boiling water bath until the contents of the tube boil Allow to cool at room temperature
- 4 Dilute to 20 ml with alcohol ether mixture mix and filter through quantitative filter paper
- 5 Pipette exactly 8 ml of the filtrate into a large test tube Add a silica pebble and place in a wire rack
- 6 Heat the rack and tubes over an electric hot plate until evaporated to dryness
- 7 Then add 2.5 ml of 5 N sulfuric acid and digest over a hot plate or microburner (Place the tube in a slanting position and heat until the mixture turns brown or black)
- 8 Allow to cool and add 1 drop of hydrogen peroxide allowing it to fall directly into the mixture
- 9 Replace the tube and continue heating until colorless
- 10 When colorless cool the tube add some water heat again and transfer the contents to a 5 ml volumetric flask washing with water to about 15 ml volume
- 11 Then add 0.5 ml of ammonium molybdate solution
- 12 Add 1 ml of ANSA reagent mix and dilute to 5 ml with water
- 13 For a blank add 2 ml of water and digest with sulfuric acid and peroxide as above in Steps 7-10
- 14 Using the Fiske and Subbarow phosphorus curve set the blank at 100% T at 660 m μ and read the unknowns

Calculation

- 1 Use the phosphorus curve of the method of Fiske and Subbarow
- 2 mg lipid phosphorus (as P)/100 ml serum =

$$\frac{(\text{mg P/ml unknown}) \times (\text{dilution 1}) \times (\text{dilution 2})}{(\text{aliquot 1}) \times (\text{ml serum})} \times 100$$

Example

A reading of 85% T was equivalent to a concentration of 0.0015 mgP/ml in the cuvette In the analysis one ml of serum was extracted in 20 ml of alcohol ether of which 8 ml were finally diluted to 25 ml in the phosphorus analysis

mg lipid phosphorus (as P)/100 ml serum =

$$\frac{(0.0015) \times 20 \times 25 \times 100}{8 \times 1} = 9.4 \text{ mg P/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 These in general are the same as for phosphorus estimations

5 Acetone Bodies

A. TOTAL IN BLOOD

References

- Van Slyke D D Studies of Acidosis VII J Biol Chem 32 455 494 (Dec) 1911
 Van Slyke D D and Fitz P Studies in Acidosis VIII The Determination of β Hydroxybutyric Acid Acetoacetic Acid and Acetone in Blood J Biol Chem 32 49 497 (Dec) 1917

Principle

Acetone in hot sulfuric acid solutions forms an insoluble precipitate with mercuric sulfate. Acetoacetic acid breaks down to acetone on heating and beta hydroxybutyric acid treated with potassium dichromate in hot acid solutions forms acetone. The three compounds may therefore be estimated by weighing the mercuric acetone sulfate.

Apparatus

1. Reflux condensers with interchangeable 500 ml Erlenmeyer flasks
An oven set at 110°C
2. Sintered glass Pyrex crucibles with medium porosity
3. Volumetric pipettes 8 ml or an accurately calibrated syringe pipette
4. A desiccator
5. An accurate analytical balance
6. Quantitative filter paper
7. Graduated cylinders 50 ml capacity
8. Volumetric flasks 100 ml

Reagents

1. Copper sulfate ($\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$) a 10% solution in water
2. Calcium hydroxide (CaOH) a 10% suspension in water
3. Mercuric sulfate (HgSO_4) Dissolve 73 gm of red oxide of mercury in 1000 ml of 4 N sulfuric acid. Gentle warming may be required.
4. Sulfuric acid Make a 4 N solution by diluting 40 ml of concentrated H_2SO_4 to 60 ml of water.
5. Potassium dichromate ($\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$) a 5% solution in water
6. Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) 17 N 1.0 ml of concentrated sulfuric acid diluted to 360 ml of water.
7. A mixture of HgSO_4 solution and 17 N sulfuric acid in the ratio 30 volumes HgSO_4 to 10 volumes H_2SO_4
8. Sodium hydroxide 5 N 6 gm of sodium hydroxide made up to 100 ml of water

Procedure

1 Preparation of Blood

- a. Pipette exactly 8 ml of blood into 80 ml of water in 100 or 50 ml graduated cylinders. Mix.
- b. Add with mixing 16 ml of 10% HgSO_4 . Allow to stand one-half hour or more.
- c. Dilute to 100 ml with distilled water. Mix and allow to stand 1 hour or over in refrigerator.
- d. Filter through quantitative filter paper.
- e. Use 100.125 ml of filtrate (= 5 ml blood) for analysis.

Preparation of Sintered Glass Filter

- a. Add 10-15 ml of aqua regia to cup and let stand overnight. Filter and wash out by running 100 ml of hot distilled water through filter. Dry 1 hour at 110°C. Cool for one-half hour in desiccator and weigh.

a. *Precipitation of Mercuric Acetone Sulfate*

- a To a wide mouthed flask add 45 ml of $\text{HgSO}_4 - \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ reagent
- b Add 125 ml of blood filtrate
- c Attach \blacksquare a reflux condenser
- d Light a medium sized flame
- e Bring to a boil
- f Add 5 ml of potassium dichromate solution If the dichromate is added before solution comes to a boil the oxidation is to acetic acid instead of to acetone \blacksquare that there is a significant loss
- g Boil for 90 minutes after adding dichromate Keep boiling until just before filtering them through Pyrex crucibles
- h Filter while still very hot using suction Wash with 100-200 ml of water
- i Dry one hour at 110 C Weigh after cooling for one half hour

Calculation

- 1 In this method certain assumptions have to be made in the calculation
 - a That 1 mg acetone yields 200 mg precipitate, that 1 mg acetoacetic acid yields 114 mg precipitate and that both substances react quantitatively
 - \blacksquare That beta hydroxybutyric acid yields only 75% under the conditions of this method and that 1 mg of beta hydroxybutyric acid yields 845 mg of precipitate
 - c That in most specimens of blood and urine the molecular proportion of beta hydroxybutyric acid is 75% of the total acetone bodies
 - d Under the conditions described the following factors are valid when the equivalent of 5 ml of blood is analyzed and calculated as acetone For total acetone bodies 1 mg of precipitate equals 1.28 mg of total acetone bodies/100 ml blood for beta hydroxybutyric acid 1 mg of precipitate equals 1.30 and for acetone + acetoacetic acid, 1 mg of precipitate equals 1.00
- 2 mg total acetone bodies (as acetone)/100 ml blood = (mg ppt) \times 1.28

Example

The precipitate from the blood of a diabetic weighed 1.1 mg

mg total acetone bodies (as acetone)/100 ml blood = $1.1 \times 1.28 = 1.55$ mg/100 ml

Precautions

This method is rather empirical Hence great care must be taken to follow the instructions explicitly

B TOTAL IN URINE

Procedure

1. *Preparation of Urine*

- a Pipette exactly 10 ml of urine into 100 ml volumetric flask Add about 30 ml water
- b Add .0 ml copper sulfate reagent
- c If not turbid add approximately 5 \blacksquare NaOH drop by drop until turbidity persists
- d Add 20 ml calcium hydroxide reagent
- e Dilute to mark shake and keep in refrigerator at least one hour preferably over night
- f Filter

\blacksquare Blank for Urine

- a Add 25 ml filtrate to a 125 ml flask
- b Add 0.5 ml 17 N sulfuric acid
- c Boil not less than 5 nor more than 10 minutes
- d Filter and wash with 100 ml of water into 45 ml of mixed reagent ($\text{HgSO}_4 - \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$)

- e Boil in condenser not more than 45 minutes Do not add dichromate
- f Remove and filter through sintered glass filter
- g Weigh

3 Preparation of Mercuric Acetone Sulfate

- a To a 500 ml flask add 45 ml of HgSO_4 H₂SO₄ reagent 2.5 ml of urine filtrate and 100 ml water
- b Proceed as under blood

Calculations

- 1 For urine the same considerations hold as for blood. For urine under the conditions of this method (= the equivalent of 5 ml urine analyzed) the factors are total acetone bodies 1 mg ppt = 256 for beta hydroxybutyric acid 64 and for acetone 00
- $$\text{mg total acetone bodies (as acetone)/100 ml urine} = (\text{mg ppt} - \text{mg blank}) \times 256$$

Example

The urine from a mild diabetic was analyzed. The blank weighed 1 mg the unknown 56

$\text{mg total acetone bodies (as acetone)/100 ml urine} = (56 - 12) \div 256 = 112 \text{ mg/100 ml}$

Precautions

Same as for blood

IV INDIVIDUAL ACETONE BODIES

Principle

Acetone reacts directly with mercuric sulfate in hot acid solution. Acetoacetic acid breaks down quantitatively to carbon dioxide and acetone which reacts at once. Beta hydroxybutyric acid yields acetone only when an oxidizing agent (dichromate) is present.

Apparatus and Reagents

Same as for blood total acetone bodies

Procedure

- 1 In either blood or urine determine acetone plus acetoacetic acid by running through the procedures described above but with the following alterations
 - a Do not add dichromate
 - b Boil for not less than 15 nor more than 45 minutes
- In either blood or urine determine beta hydroxybutyric acid by running through the whole procedure including dichromate after the following preliminary steps to remove acetone and acetoacetic acid
 - a The filtrates equivalent to 5 ml blood or 25 ml urine are mixed with 100 ml water and 2 ml 50% sulfuric acid.
 - b They are boiled 10 minutes in an open flask and cooled
 - c They are diluted to 150 ml with water

Calculation

- 1 $\text{mg (acetone plus acetoacetic acid as acetone)/100 ml} = \text{mg ppt} \times 100 \text{ (for blood)}$
 $(\text{mg ppt} - \text{mg blank}) \times 200 \text{ (for urine)}$
- 2 $\text{mg beta hydroxybutyric acid (as acetone)/100 ml} = \text{mg ppt} \times 130 \text{ (for blood)}$
 $(\text{mg ppt} - \text{mg blank}) \times 65 \text{ (for urine)}$

Fats and Derivatives, Miscellaneous References**Acetoacetic Acid**

Rosenthal S M A Colorimetric Method for the Estimation of Acetoacetic Acid in the Blood *J Biol Chem* 179 1 35 1944 (July) 1949

Acetone

Adams C A and Nicholls J H The Analysis of Mixtures Containing Acetone Ethyl Alcohol and Isopropyl Alcohol, *Analyst* 54 29 (Jan) 19 9

Behre J A A Modified Salicylaldehyde Method for the Determination of Acetone Bodies in Blood and Urine *J Biol Chem* 138 25 34 (Oct) 1940

Greenberg L A and Lester D A Micro Method for the Determination of Acetone and Ketone Bodies *J Biol Chem* 154 (1) 177 190 (June) 1944

Hockabay W H Newton C J and Mettler A V Optimum Conditions for Titrimetric Determinations Determination of Acetone, *Anal Chem* 19 838 841 (Nov) 1947

Rappaport, F and Baner B Microdetermination of Acetone and Diacetic Acid in Blood *J Lab & Clin Med* 28 1770 1772 (Nov) 1943

Rothers A C H Note on the Sodium Nitroprusside Reaction for Acetone *J Physiol* 37 491 494 (Dec) 1908

Acetyl Acetone

Witter R F Snyder J and Stotz E Colorimetric Determination of Acetylacetone and Related β Diketones *J Biol Chem* 176 493 500 (Nov) 1943

Cholesterol

Kingsley, G R and Schaffert R H Determination of Free and Total Cholesterol by Direct Chloroform Extraction *J Biol Chem* 180 (1) 315 323 (Aug) 1949

Fatty Acids

Bloor W R A Colorimetric Procedure for the Determination of Small Amounts of Fatty Acid *J Biol Chem* 170 671 674 (Oct) 1947

Formic Acid

Bastrup J T Method for the Determination of Formic Acid in Urine *Acta Pharmacol et Toxicol* 3 303 311 1947

Grant W M Colorimetric Micromethod for Determination of Formic Acid *Anal Chem* 19 (3) 206 207 (March) 1947

Hydroxybutyric Acid

Shaffer P A and Marriott W M The Determination of Oxobutyric Acid *J Biol Chem* 18 26, 80 (Sept Oct) 1914

Phospholipid

Egsgaard, J Determination of the Phosphatide Content of Serum *Acta Physiol Scandinav* 16 (3) 171 178 1948

Hack M H Estimation of the Phospholipides in Human Blood *J Biol Chem* 169 (1) 137 143 (June) 1947

Harnes A R The Colorimetric Determination of Lipoid Phosphorus in Blood *J Biol Chem* 77 403 408 (May) 19 8

Total Fat

Bauer F C Jr, and Hirsch E F Esterified Fatty Acid Levels of Normal Human Sera *Arch Biochem* 23 (1) 137 140 (Aug) 1949

Fowweather F S and Anderson W N A Method for the Determination of Fat in Faeces *Biochem J* 40 (3) 350 351 1946

Stoddard J L and Drury I E A Titration Method for Blood Fat *J Biol Chem* 84 741 748 (Nov) 19 8

van der Kamer J H ten Bokkel Huinink H and Weyers H A Rapid Method for the Determination of Fat in Yeasts *J Biol Chem* 177 347 355 (Jan) 1949

Zuckerman J L Zymaris M C and Natelson S The Simple Method for the Determination of Fecal Fat and Fatty Acids *J Lab & Clin Med* 34 28, 286 (Feb) 1949

SECTION IV

BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

E VITAMINS

1 Vitamin A and Carotenoids (Carr Price)

A. IN BLOOD AND SERUM

Reference

May C D Blackfan K D McCreary J F and Allen F H Jr Clinical Studies of Vitamin A in Infants and Children *Am J Dis Child* 88 1167 1184 (June) 1940

Principle

Materials containing vitamin A when treated by a chloroform solution of antimony trichloride form a blue color (Carr Price reaction). Experience has shown a definite association between the blue color and vitamin A content of a wide variety of materials as determined by biological assay.

Apparatus

- 1 A special container for the antimony trichloride. This reagent has a tendency to pick up water easily and as a result the blue color is impossible to read in the colorimeter.
- 2 Cuvettes—Coleman 10 x 75 mm
- 3 Air pressure to evaporate the ether
- 4 Centrifuge tubes—15 ml round bottom
- 5 An electric centrifuge
- 6 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6 with the smallest cuvette holder (#6 108)
A water bath set at 45 C
- 8 93 cc glass pipettes 1 and 2 ml

Reagents

- 1 Antimony trichloride 99% in chloroform
- Ethyl alcohol 95%
- 3 Petroleum benzene (ether) USP
- 4 Vitamin A alcohol standard Made up in petroleum ether one gamma per ml
- 5 Beta carotene standard 3 gamma/ml in petroleum ether (1 gm vitamin A alcohol is 4 500 000 International Units i.e. 1 IU is 0.6 micrograms 1 IU is 0.6 micrograms beta carotene)

Procedure

- 1 To exactly 1 ml of serum add 2 ml of 95% ethyl alcohol
- 2 Then add 1 ml of petroleum ether stopper tightly and shake vigorously and continuously for 10 minutes for complete extraction

1) Biochemical Procedures

- 3 Centrifuge and pipette out accurately 1 ml of the ether layer into a small cuvette. Read immediately at 440 m μ the petroleum ether blank being set at 100% T.
- 4 The yellow color of the ether layer is due to the carotenoid pigments the bile pigments being unextracted under these conditions. The principal carotenoids in blood serum are carotene and xanthophyll. Estimation of the total amount of carotenoids is necessary in the determination of vitamin A, in order that the measurement of the total blue color formed by the Carr Price reaction may be corrected for that portion arising from the carotenoids.
- 5 Evaporate ether at 40 to 45 C to dryness by gently blowing dry air into the cuvette while it is partially immersed in water. Make sure that the ether odor is completely gone and that the cuvette is perfectly dry. Otherwise the Carr Price color will be a cloudy blue.
- 6 Place an antimony trichloride blank at 100% T at 670 m μ .
- 7 Add exactly 1 ml of antimony trichloride to the dry cuvette and read immediately. The galvanometer reading is taken at the point of maximum absorption of light that is maximum color formation. This is necessary as the blue color fades very fast (90-100 seconds).

Calculation

- 1 Run a calibration curve for carotenoids using beta carotene in the range 0 to 4 mcg/ml at 440 m μ .
- 2 Run a calibration curve for vitamin A alcohol in the range 0 to 15 mcg/ml at 670 m μ and following all the steps in the procedure.
- 3
$$\text{mcg carotenoids/100 ml serum} = \frac{(\text{mcg in cuvette at 440 m}\mu) \times (\text{dilution}) \times 100}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml serum})}$$
- 4
$$\text{mcg vitamin A alcohol/100 ml serum} = \frac{(\text{mcg in cuvette at 670 m}\mu) \times (\text{dilution}) \times 100}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml serum})} - (0.11 \times \text{mcg carotenoids})$$
- 5 The correction factor for blue color due to carotenoids is necessary in Equation 4 and was established empirically for a mixture of carotene and xanthophyll in the proportions usually present in serum.

Example

At 440 m μ the reading was 85.0% T equivalent to 0.70 mcg beta carotene in the cuvette.

At 670 m μ the reading was 80.5% T equivalent to 0.40 mcg in the cuvette. One ml of serum was extracted into 2 ml of petroleum ether of which 1 ml was used for analysis.

$$1 \text{ mcg carotenoids/100 ml serum} = \frac{(0.70) \times (2) \times (100)}{(1) \times (1)} = 140 \text{ mcg/100 ml}$$

$$2 \text{ mcg vitamin A/100 ml} = \frac{(0.40) \times (2) \times (100)}{(1) \times (1)} - (0.11 \times 140) \\ = 80 - 15 = 65 \text{ mcg/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 Be sure the antimony trichloride contains no water otherwise the solution will be cloudy.
- 2 Be sure the sample is dry before the addition of antimony trichloride.

B VITAMIN A IN FECES**Reference**

Friedemann T Personal communication

Apparatus

- 1 Water bath set at 60 C
- 2 Electric centrifuge etc. as for serum
- 3 An analytical balance
- 4 A quantity of 100 ml volumetric flasks
- 5 A quantity of 100 ml graduated cylinders

Reagents

- 1 Phosphoric acid (syrupy)
- 2 Sodium sulfate (anhydrous)
- 3 Sodium hydroxide (NaOH) 10 N 40 gm/100 ml water
- 4 Caprylic alcohol
- 5 Ethyl alcohol 50% in water
- 6 Methyl alcohol 70% in water
- 7 Other reagents are the same as for serum vitamin A

Procedure

- 1 Weigh out 10 gm of mixed feces into a 100 ml volumetric flask
- 2 Add 50 ml of 50% alcohol 5 ml of 10 N NaOH and 1 ml of caprylic alcohol
- 3 Heat for 5 minutes at 60 C cool and dilute to 100 ml
- 4 Pipette 10 ml of diluted feces into a 100 ml cylinder
- 5 Add 10 ml of water and 5 ml of petroleum ether
- 6 Shake for 5 minutes and remove top layer to a new test tube
- 7 Add 5 ml of syrupy phosphoric acid and shake well. (The phosphoric acid takes away interfering material without removing any of the vitamin A)
- 8 Remove phosphoric acid layer and wash with 10 ml of 50% ethyl alcohol
- 9 Dry out water with sodium sulfate and decant solution to measure color
- 10 To remove carotene shake two times with 70% methyl alcohol. This step will take out the carotene and also a little of the vitamin A
- 11 Continue as a method for serum vitamin A

Calculation and Precautions

See vitamin A in serum

2 Vitamin A and Carotenoids (Dichlorohydrin)**Reference**

Sobel A E and Snow M D The Estimation of Serum Vitamin A With Activated Glycerol Dichlorohydrin *J Biol Chem* 171 61: 53* (Dec) 194

A. USING THE COLEMAN UNIVERSAL MODEL 11**Principle**

A solution of activated glycerol dichlorohydrin (GDH) when added to a chloroform solution containing vitamin A produces a violet color. Advantages over the antimony trichloride method are principally two: first the color is stable for two to 10 minutes; second the reagent is not affected by traces of moisture. The interference of vitamins D and E, ergosterol, 7 dehydrocholesterol and cholesterol with the GDH reaction has been found to be negligible.

Apparatus

- 1 It is necessary to measure samples at 500 mμ or above. Hence the Coleman Universal Spectrophotometer Model 11 is recommended.

- 2 13 cm cuvettes and cuvette carrier obtained from the Coleman Electric Company
- 3 50 cm cuvettes obtained from the Pyrocell Manufacturing Company 07 East 84th Street New York 28 Carrier obtained from the Coleman Electric Company
- 4 555 mμ filter (filter combination 348° M608 10 mm and 5300, M954 40 mm) obtained from the Corning Glass Works Corning New York
- 5 An electric oven set at 60 C
- 6 A water bath set between 40-50 C
- 7 An electric centrifuge
- 8 Syringe pipette 1 ml accurately calibrated
- 9 A quantity of flat tipped glass stirring rods

Reagents

- 1 90 percent ethanol (USP)
- 2 1 N KOH in approximately 90 percent ethanol freshly prepared 5.6 gm KOH/100 ml
- 3 Petroleum ether b.p. 30-60 C
- 4 Nitrogen Ohio Chemical Company
- 5 Sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4) anhydrous analytical reagent grade
- 6 Chloroform Analytical reagent grade is washed with water distilled the first and last fractions are discarded and the remainder is kept over dry Na_2SO_4 .
- 7 Antimony trichloride, analytical reagent grade
- 8 Carotene 90 percent beta 10 percent alpha, from General Biochemicals Inc
- 9 Standard vitamin A solution About 40 to 50 mg of a vitamin A concentrate which comes in gelatin capsules control PC 3 from Distillation Products Inc were diluted in chloroform to give the desired concentration of vitamin A. The concentrate has $E_{1\%}^{1\text{cm}}$ value in absolute ethanol of 100.75. This value was supplied by the manufacturers and agreed with that found by the authors. Multiplying this value by 2000 the standard commercial conversion factor permits estimation of the vitamin A potency at 2,015,000 USP units per gm. If the extinction of the concentrate is divided by the extinction of crystalline vitamin A alcohol in ethanol 1780 the vitamin A content of the concentrate becomes by simple proportion 5.9 percent
- 10 Activated GDH Glycerol dichlorohydrin (Eastman Kodak practical grade a mixture of 1,3 and 2,3 dichlorohydrin from the Shell Chemical Company) is vacuum distilled in the presence of approximately 1 percent by weight of SbCl_3 at from 10 to 40 mm of pressure the first and last fractions being discarded. The distilled reagent should be colorless and clear (a sample of the reagent should not become even slightly cloudy on the addition of water). The presence of SbCl_3 in the distillate (shown when a sample of GDH becomes cloudy upon the addition of water) can be remedied by a second vacuum distillation. The activated reagent may be obtained from the J. H. Shohan Laboratories 78 Wheeler Point Road Newark 11 New Jersey

Procedure

- 1 Exactly 1 ml of serum is pipetted into a $\frac{5}{8} \times 4$ inch test tube
- 2 Add 1 ml of 95 percent ethanol and mix by tapping the tube (or for saponification 1 ml of the 1 N KOH in 90 percent ethanol is added and the contents of the tube mixed and placed in a 60 C oven for 20 minutes)
- 3 Add 3 ml of analytical reagent petroleum ether and shake for 10 minutes
- 4 After shaking the tube is centrifuged for about 30 seconds
- 5 The supernatant petroleum ether is aspirated and placed in a $\frac{5}{8} \times 4$ inch test tube. The aspirator is a fine tipped dropper

- With another 9 ml of the petroleum ether and shaking for only five minutes the extraction procedure is repeated
- 7 The extract is evaporated to dryness by placing the tube in a 40-50°C water bath and running a stream of nitrogen over it
- 8 Add 1 ml of analytical reagent grade chloroform to bring the dried extract into a solution
- 9 Then add 4 ml of GDH and mix with a flat tipped stirring rod.
- 10 Two minutes after mixture the solution is placed in a 10 mm cuvette. The absorption of the solution is measured first at 550 mμ (with the 555 mμ filter) against a blank consisting of 4 ml of GDH and 1 ml of chloroform. When the concentration of vitamin A is high read at 4 minutes
- 11 The wave length dial is then turned to 800 mμ the 555 mμ filter replaced with filter PC 5 and at 4 minutes after the initial mixture of the reagents the absorption is read at 800 mμ

Calculation

- 1 Prepare the calibration curve for vitamin A as follows
 - a Prepare solutions of vitamin A in chloroform solution containing standard solution as well as the GDH preheated to 25°C before use
 - b To 1 ml of the standard in a glass stoppered cylinder are added 4 ml of GDH
 - c The contents of the cylinder are mixed by inversion and are placed in a 25°C water bath for 5 minutes. The solution is then poured into the 5 cm cuvette
 - d The absorption of the pink color produced is read against a blank consisting of 4 ml of GDH and 1 ml of chloroform. The instrument is used with the wave length scale set at 550 mμ in conjunction with a 555 mμ filter
- Prepare the calibration curve for carotene at 800 mμ as follows
 - a Prepare standards of carotene in chloroform in the range 0.10 mcg/ml
 - b Carry these through all steps of the procedure reading them against a chloroform blank at 800 mμ using filter PC 5
- 3 Prepare a curve for correcting for carotene interference at 550 mμ as follows
 - a Prepare carotene standards in chloroform in the range 0.10 mcg/ml
 - b Run these through the vitamin A method reading them against the blank set at 100% T at 550 mμ with the 555 mμ filter
 - c Determine the interference factor of carotene at 550 mμ i.e. the apparent vitamin A mcg due to 1 mcg of carotene/100 ml serum when measured at 550 mμ

$$4 \text{ mcg carotene/100 ml serum} = \frac{(\text{mcg in cuvette at 800 m}\mu) \times 100}{(\text{ml serum})}$$

$$5 \text{ mcg vitamin A/100 ml serum} = \frac{(\text{mcg in cuvette at 550 m}\mu) \times 100}{(\text{ml serum})} - (\text{Factor} \times \text{mcg carotene/100 ml serum})$$

Example

- 1 At 800 mμ the reading was 78% T equivalent to 16 mcg carotene in the cuvette. At 550 mμ the reading was 81% T equivalent to 1.0 mcg vitamin A in the cuvette. One ml of serum had been extracted into 4 ml of petroleum ether all of which was evaporated to dryness and treated in the cuvette with 1 ml chloroform and 4 ml of GDH

$$2 \text{ mcg carotene/100 ml serum} = \frac{(16) \times 100}{1} = 160 \text{ mcg/100 ml}$$

$$3 \text{ mcg vitamin A/100 ml serum} = \frac{(1.0) \times 100}{1} - (0.15 \times 160) = (10 - 24) = 96 \text{ mcg/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 In this method exact timing is necessary for good results
- 2 When the concentration of vitamin A is high read at 4 minutes instead of 2

B VITAMIN A (DICHLOROHYDRIN METHOD) WITH BECKMAN SPECTROPHOTOMETER

Apparatus

- 1 A Beckman Spectrophotometer Model DU
- 2 Four matched Corex cells with 10 mm light path absorption cells
- 3 A four place cell holder
- 4 Syringe pipettes 0.6 ml and 2.4 ml accurately calibrated
- 5 Other apparatus same as for Coleman Universal Model 11

Procedure

- 1 Same as procedure for Coleman Universal up to and including step 7
- 2 Add 0.6 ml of chloroform with a syringe pipette
- 3 Stir and add 0.4 ml GDH
- 4 Read at 2 minutes but if the sample is high (a tolerance test) read between 3 and 4 minutes
- 5 Read at 555 mμ setting the blank at 100% T
- 6 Change wave length to 830 mμ and read again setting the blank at 100% T

Calculation

- 1 The calculation and calibration is the same as for the Coleman Model 11

Precaution

- 1 Use glass stoppered tubes for extraction
- 2 Saponification is a critical step complete saponification is essential

3 Thiamine in Urine Food Blood and Feces

A. IN URINE

Reference

- Hennessey D J and Ceretado L R : The Determination of Free and Phosphorylated Thiamin by a Modified Thiochrome Assay J Am Chem Soc 61 179 183 (Jan) 1939
- Connor H T and Straub G J Combined Determination of Riboflavin and Thiamine in Food Products Ind and Eng Chem Anal Ed 13 385 389 (June) 1941

Principle

Thiamine is adsorbed from urine in acid solution by means of activated zeolite. It is eluted with concentrated potassium chloride and is converted to thiochrome by ferricyanide in alkaline solution. Thiochrome is extracted into isobutyl alcohol and measured fluorometrically.

Apparatus

- 1 Photofluorometer Coleman Model 12 or 12B
- 2 Hennessey adsorption tubes or columns with long (5 to 5.5 inch) stems
- 3 Fine glass wool
- 4 Reaction vessels - 25 ml glass stoppered (interchangeable stoppers) vessels with a conical bottom
- 5 Reading cuvettes Coleman 19 x 150 mm
- 6 Syringe pipettes—5ml 10 ml
- 7 Wooden applicators for inserting the glass wool into the columns

Reagents

- 1 Potassium chloride 5% solution Dissolve 5.0 gm KCl in 100 ml 0.1 N HCl with the aid of heat Filter
Bromocresol green indicator 0.4% in 70% alcohol
- 3 Sodium acetate 2.5 M Dissolve 330 gm in 1000 ml distilled water
- 4 Decalco Wash 60 to 80 mesh Decalco 3 times with 3% acetic acid once with 5% HCl again with 3% acetic acid and then several times with distilled water Each washing consists of stirring the Decalco 15 minutes in the wash settling and decanting
- 5 Sodium hydroxide 1 N solution Dissolve 40 gm of sodium hydroxide in 1000 ml of distilled water
- 6 Sodium sulfate anhydrous
- 7 Acetic acid 0.5% solution in water
- 8 Isobutyl alcohol redistilled
- 9 Potassium ferricyanide a 1% solution in water This solution is stable for 6 months if kept in a dark bottle
- 10 Potassium hydroxide a 15% solution in water
- 11 Oxidizing reagent One part of 1% ferricyanide solution is mixed with 9 parts of potassium hydroxide (15%) Prepare fresh every day
- 12 Quinine sulfate standard
Stock standard 100 mg USP quinine sulfate per liter of 0.1 N H_2SO_4 Stable for 1 year
Intermediate standard 5 ml stock standard dilute to 100 ml with 0.1 N H_2SO_4
Working standard 5 ml intermediate standard to 500 ml 0.1 N H_2SO_4 Prepare daily
- 13 Thiamine standard (100 mcg/ml) Dissolve 50 mg USP thiamine standard in 200 ml of 95% CH₃OH Add 5 ml 0.1 N HCl and bring to 300 ml with distilled water Store in refrigerator It is stable for 6 months.

Collection of Sample

Individual samples are preserved by adding 0.5 ml of 0.1 N H_2SO_4 to each 100 ml of sample. 24 hour samples are collected in amber colored 1 gallon jugs which contain 5 ml of 0.1 N H_2SO_4 . The vitamin content of the acidified sample will remain unchanged over several weeks if the sample is kept in the refrigerator. A suitable aliquot is transferred to a 150 ml extraction flask the reaction is adjusted to pH 3.5 and the adsorption is carried out as described below.

Procedure

- 1 Place a small piece of glass wool in the tip of the column in adsorption column, fill the column with activated Decalco so that the bottom of the bottle is just covered
- 2 Wash the column with 3 ml 0.5% acetic acid and allow to drain
- 3 Take a 5 ml aliquot of urine in a 50 ml Erlenmeyer flask add 4 drops of bromocresol green and neutralize to a light greenish yellow color with 1 N NaOH
- 4 A blank consisting of 5 ml 0.5% acetic acid is run through the method with each set of samples. Run the samples through the columns and allow to drain by gravity into a waste pan
- 5 Rinse the flasks with 3 ml 0.5% acetic acid and put this through the columns
- 6 After this has drained through the columns are completely drained by using a small amount of air pressure at the top of the column. Recoveries of thiamine standard added to urine should also be run along with each batch of unknowns
- 7 Reaction vessels are placed under the adsorption column and the columns are eluted with 5 ml 25% KCl. After this has drained the columns are again blown out with a small amount of air pressure
- 8 To the 5 ml eluate 0.7 ml of oxidizing reagent is added with mixing

- 9 Then add 10 ml isobutanol stopper with the gla a stopper and shake 50 times. Each sample is done individually and after the layers have settled the bottom layer is drawn off with suction.
- 10 A small amount of anhydrous Na_2SO_4 is added and the vessel is agitated gently. The isobutanol layer must be clear after the sulfate has settled. If not repeat this step.
- 11 The sample is then decanted into cuvettes to be read on the Coleman Model 1^o Photofluorometer.
- 12 The H filters are used and after the machine has warmed up and has been balanced the working quinine sulfate standard is used to set the machine at 60.

Preparation of Standard Curve

- 1 Dilute the stock thiamine solution to 1 mcg/ml in 0.1 N H_2SO_4 to which has been added 10 ml 2.5 M sodium acetate/100 ml. Run a series of standards in the range 0.2 mcg per tube following all steps of the procedure.
- 2 Plot these values as described in the section on fluorometry.

Calculation

$$1 \text{ mcg thiamine/100 ml urine} = \frac{(\text{mcg in cuvette} - \text{blank}) \times (\text{total ml eluate}) \times 100}{(\text{ml eluate}) \times (\text{ml urine})}$$

- 2 The problem of the blank has never been solved completely in this procedure because urine contains many interfering substances. In particular N-methyl nicotinamide is adsorbed and eluted like thiamine fluoresces in alkaline solution and is only partially destroyed by ferricyanide. Najjar has recommended a blank consisting of urine treated in every way as for thiamine omitting the ferricyanide step and making an empirical correction. Mickelsen has recommended washing the final isobutyl layer with acid to remove non-thiochrome fluorescent. The reader will have to make his own choice of blank.

Example

The unknown samples read an average of 55 and the blank 5 equivalent to 0.68 mcg and 0.06 mcg of thiamine respectively in the cuvette. Five ml of urine had been used and eluted with 5 ml of KCl all of which was oxidized.

$$\text{mcg thiamine/100 ml urine} = \frac{(0.68 - 0.06) \times 5 \times 100}{5 \times 5} = 12.4 \text{ mcg/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 The samples must be shaken immediately after the addition of the oxidizing solution.
- 2 Be sure the Decalco is activated before using it.
- 3 The isobutyl alcohol must have a low blank. If it does not redistill it until it does read below 5 on the scale.

B THIAMINE IN FOOD, BLOOD AND FECES

Reference

Same as for thiamine in urine.

Principle

Same as for thiamine in urine except that in food, blood and feces bound thiamine has to be hydrolyzed to liberate free thiamine.

Apparatus

- 1 Digestion tubes. The same tubes are used for digestion as for nonprotein nitrogen. They are sufficiently accurate for many types of samples to serve as receiving tubes for the eluate. Heavy walled tubes made from ignition

tubes should be specified. It is necessary that they be heavy walled since they are also used as centrifuge tubes in some analyses (blood). As purchased they are calibrated at 1, 5, 25, 35 and 50 ml.

- 2 J shaped stirring rods. These are made from 1 inch lengths of 3 mm glass rod. The round bend at one end fits the bottom of the tube. With such a rod the contents of the tube can be violently agitated by rolling the rod back and forth between the thumb and index finger.
- 3 Hennessey adsorption tubes with the long (5 to 5.5 inch) stems are recommended.
- 4 Reaction vessels. Centrifuge tubes of about 50 ml capacity which are glass stoppered and pointed at the bottom (Wilkins Anderson #7105 GMR).
- 5 Waring Blender
- 6 Coleman Photofluorometer
- 7 Cuvettes 10 x 150 mm
- 8 An incubator set at 45 C

Reagents

These are the same as for thiamine in urine with a few additions.

- 1 Hydrochloric acid 0.1 N. Mix 1 ml of conc HCl with 110 ml of water.
- Sodium bicarbonate. To prepare a molar solution dissolve 84 gm up to 1000 ml with water.
- 3 Metaphosphoric acid. A 10 per cent solution is prepared at frequent intervals preferably each day. Since the acid deteriorates rapidly at room temperature it should be dissolved in cold water and stored in a refrigerator.
- 4 Enzymes. A 10 per cent solution of Takadiastase or Clarase is prepared at frequent intervals preferably each day. The preparation should yield a pale yellow solution and it should dissolve readily with very little residue. The insoluble material contains considerable quantities of thiamine. The solution is centrifuged and the clear supernatant solution is kept in a refrigerator.

Collection and Preparation of Samples

- 1 Blood. Blood is collected and is prevented from clotting with a minimum of heparin or oxalate. The sample is cooled immediately and the analysis is made within a few hours of collection. Five ml are transferred to an NPN tube the volume is adjusted to about 5 ml and 0.0 ml of 0.1 N HCl are added.
- Feces. Samples are collected in large glass vessels and stored in the cold. For digestion 5 gm samples are weighed on filter papers and filter paper and samples are transferred to NPN tubes. Three ml of 0.1 N HCl are added and the volume is adjusted to 35 ml. (Because of many factors which affect digestion, absorption and intestinal motility the composition of the stool may vary considerably from day to day even when the human subject is receiving a constant weighed diet. In order to be of any significance the collection should be carried out for at least 4 days. The storage bottles must be kept cold. Bacterial synthesis of thiamine due to growth of bacteria may greatly increase the vitamin content of the sample if it is not immediately analyzed or if it is not kept cold.)
- 3 Cereals and dry samples of food. The sample is finely ground by suitable means.
- 4 Fresh tissues animal and plant. The sample is rapidly cut into small strips or chunks. A weighed portion is homogenized with approximately 100 ml of water in the Waring Blender. It is then transferred quantitatively to a volumetric flask and the volume is brought to the mark. A suitable aliquot is transferred to an NPN tube.

Procedure — Extraction

- 1 The finely ground or homogenized sample is weighed or measured by means of a syringe pipette. It is transferred to an NPN tube the volume is brought to the 35 ml mark and a measured volume of 0.1 N HCl is added. The quantity of acid to be added should be determined for each type of material. Enough acid should be

added so that the acidity after 10 or more minutes in the boiling water bath is approximately pH 3. The contents of the tube are thoroughly emulsified by means of a J shaped stirring rod. They are then heated 30 minutes with frequent stirring in the boiling water bath.

- 2 The tube is now cooled in a cold bath of running water after which 1 drop of caprylic alcohol and a volume of M NaHCO₃ which is equivalent to the N HCl is added. The contents after stirring should have a reaction of pH 4 to 5.
- 3 Several blank tubes which contain equal volumes of N HCl and M NaHCO₃ are prepared at this time. They should be carried through the subsequent operations along with the sample.

Procedure—Hydrolysis of Bound Thiamine

- 1 Add 2 ml of enzyme solution. More of enzyme preparation is added to samples which contain much starch or viscous material. The tube is incubated 2 hours in a water bath at 40 to 50 C. The mixture is stirred frequently. (Some samples like blood required only 1 hour of incubation. Long incubation may introduce serious errors due to bacterial growth. The temperature should be kept near 45 C in order to prevent such growth.)
- 2 The tube is cooled in a bath of running water.

Procedure—Precipitation of Protein

- 1 The contents of the tube are transferred quantitatively to a volumetric flask of 50 ml capacity. 20 ml of HPO are added and the volume is brought to the mark. Sufficient time should be given to allow diffusion of the vitamin from the particles into the solution.
- 2 Filter or centrifuge. (The analysis may be discontinued at this time. The flasks may stand overnight in the refrigerator.)
- 3 Blood and samples which contain less than 1 microgram of thiamine are treated somewhat differently. Ten ml (or less if the protein content is small) of HPO solution are added, the volume is brought to 50 ml and the contents are mixed thoroughly. The supernatant solution is poured off after centrifugation. The residue is emulsified with 25 ml HPO solution (using the J rod) and the volume is again brought to the 50 ml mark. The clear supernatant solution is added to the first supernatant.

Procedure—Adsorption, Elution, Oxidation, Extraction

- 1 The necessary adsorption columns are prepared as under thiamine in urine.
- 2 An aliquot of the extract sufficient to contain 1 to 5 mcg of thiamine is adjusted to pH 3.5 by means of 0.1 N NaOH with bromocresol green as indicator. The extract is then passed through the column. After passage of all of the extract the flask is rinsed with several successive portions of about 5 ml each of distilled water and the washings are sent through the column. The fluid is allowed to drain completely after each of the washings.
- 3 With the tip of the column in an NPN tube four 5 ml portions of 5% KCl are sent through the column. Finally enough 5% KCl is sent through to bring the volume to exactly 25 ml.
- 4 Five ml portions of eluate (10 for blood) are added to extraction vessels and the rest of the procedure is followed as under thiamine in urine.

Calculation

- 1 Prepare calibration curves with standard thiamine as described under urine.
- 2 mcg total thiamine/100 gm initial substance =

$$\frac{(\text{mcg in cuvette} - \text{blank}) \times (\text{total eluate}) \times (\text{total extract}) \times 100}{(\text{ml eluate used}) \times (\text{ml extract used}) \times (\text{gm sample})}$$

Example

A sample of feces weighed 4.701 gm. The fluorescence of the unknown was equivalent to 0.60 mcg thiamine in the tube that of the blank was equivalent to 0.07 mcg. The sample had been diluted to 50 ml of which 50 ml had been sent through the zeolite. The zeolite had been eluted with 25 ml of HCl of which 5 ml samples were analyzed.

$$\frac{\text{mcg total thiamine}/100 \text{ gm feces} = (0.60 - 0.07) \times (5) \times (25) \times 100}{(5) \times (50) \times (4.701)} = 8 \text{ mcg}/100 \text{ gm}$$

Precautions

Same as for thiamine in urine

4 N¹ Methylnicotinamide in Urine**Reference**

Coulson R. A. Ellinger P. and Holden M. A Method for the Estimation of N¹ cotinamide Methochloride in Urine Biochem J 38 150 154 (1944)

Principle

N¹ methylnicotinamide a metabolic product of niacin breaks down in alkaline solution to a fluorescent compound which is soluble in isobutyl alcohol

Apparatus

Same as for thiamine in urine

Reagents

Same as for thiamine in urine with a few additions

- 1 Standard N¹ methylnicotinamide Dissolve 10 mg of the pure substance in 100 ml of 1% acetic acid (40 mcg/ml of solution)

Procedure

Same as for thiamine in urine down to the oxidation step. After eluting the column with HCl proceed as follows

- 1 To 5 ml of HCl eluate add 10 ml of isobutyl alcohol
Add 0.7 ml of 15% NaOH stopper and shake immediately for at least 50 times
Stand at least 10 minutes before reading
- 2 Proceed as in thiamine analysis with quinine standard at 40 (Maximum fluorescence develops slowly so that a period of standing is required before reading)

Standard Curve

Run a series of standard N¹ methylnicotinamide solutions. The range should be 40 gamma to 100 gamma per sample with intervals of 40 gamma.

Calculation

$$\text{mg N}^1 \text{ methylnicotinamide}/100 \text{ ml urine} = \frac{(\text{mcg in cuvette}) \times (\text{total eluate}) \times 100}{(1000) \times (\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml urine})}$$

Example

A reading of 30 on the gal. anometer was equivalent to 43 mcg in the cuvette. The blank was equivalent to 10 mcg. Five ml of urine were used for analysis and eluted with 5 ml of HCl all of which was used for analysis.

$$\text{mg N}^1 \text{ methylnicotinamide}/100 \text{ ml urine} = \frac{(43 - 10) \times 5 \times 100}{1000 \times 5 \times 5} = 0.66 \text{ mg}/100 \text{ ml}$$

Precautions

This is a method fraught with inaccuracies. At every step there are significant losses. Hence the results must be considered only semi quantitative.

5 Riboflavin in Urine, Blood, Food and Feces**A. IN URINE****Reference**

Connor, R T and Straub G J Combined Determination of Riboflavin and Thiamin in Food Products *Ind and Eng Chem Anal Ed* 13 385 389 (June) 1941

Principle

Riboflavin is measured fluorometrically after interfering substances are destroyed. An internal standard is used and the blank is determined after reduction of riboflavin to the leuco form which is not fluorescent.

Apparatus

- 1 Photofluorometer Coleman Model 12 or 12B
- 2 Cuvettes Coleman 19 x 150 mm
- 3 Syringe pipettes one and 2 ml
- 4 A number of 5 ml graduated cylinders with ground glass stoppers

Reagents

- 1 Buffer solution pH 4.7 Dissolve 111 gm of sodium acetate plus 54.4 ml of glacial acetic acid in 1000 ml of water
- 2 Potassium permanganate a 4% solution in water
- 3 Hydrogen peroxide a 3% solution in water
- 4 Standard riboflavin solutions Prepare a stock solution (100 mcg/ml) by dissolving 10 mg of standard in exactly 100 ml of 3% acetic acid. Store in a dark bottle in a refrigerator. This solution is stable for six months. For a working standard (1 mcg/ml) dilute the stock 1 to 100 with water.

TABLE 10

RIBOFLAVIN IN URINE

(For analyses in which 1 ml of urine is analyzed in 10 ml of solution. A is galvanometer reading with unknown. B with 1 mcg riboflavin internal standard and C with blank. This table gives approximately correct values in the range of normal urine.)

A C (ACROSS)	18	0	22	24	26	8	30	32	34	36
B A (DOWN)	mcg B/ml URINE									
20	82	89	98	107	115	1.3	1.9	1.35	1.45	1.64
1	78	85	94	10	110	1.18	1.04	1.30	1.39	1.46
22	75	82	90	98	105	1.13	1.19	1.07	1.33	1.41
23	1	79	87	94	101	1.09	1.13	1.20	1.28	1.35
4	69	75	84	90	98	1.04	1.10	1.17	1.04	1.31
5	66	72	81	88	94	1.00	1.04	1.13	1.00	1.6
26	64	70	8	84	90	97	1.03	1.09	1.15	1.20
27	6	68	75	81	88	94	1.00	1.06	1.10	1.19
8	60	65	73	79	85	90	97	1.00	1.09	1.14
29	58	63	70	76	80	88	93	99	1.05	1.10
30	56	61	68	74	79	85	90	96	1.0	1.07
31	54	60	66	72	77	82	88	93	99	1.04
32	52	58	65	70	75	79	85	91	96	1.02
33	51	56	63	68	73	78	84	90	96	1.0
34	50	55	61	66	71	75	80	85	91	96
35	48	53	59	64	69	73	78	84	88	93
36	47	52	57	62	67	71	75	80	86	91
37	46	51	56	61	65	69	73	78	84	89
38	45	49	54	59	64	67	71	75	8	86
39	44	48	53	58	60	65	69	74	80	84
40	43	47	52	56	61	64	67	7	77	8
41	42	46	51	55	59	63	66	70	75	80

- 5 Sodium fluorescein reference standard Dilute 10 mg of sodium fluorescein to 1000 ml in 3% acetic acid For a working standard (0.5 mcg/ml) dilute the stock 1 to 20 with water
- Pure sodium hydrosulfite powdered

Procedure

- 1 Pipette exactly 1 ml urine plus 3 ml buffer solution into a 25 ml graduated stoppered cylinder
- 2 Add one or two drops of 4% KMnO₄ until a pink or violet color persists for one minute
- 3 Then add two to four drops of H₂O (3%) until the color disappears
- 4 Make up to 10 ml with buffer solution mix and transfer to cuvettes
- 5 For a reagent blank use 1 ml distilled water instead of 1 ml of urine
- 6 Read samples within one hour (keeping in dark meanwhile) as follows
 - a Warm up instrument for 15 minutes before using Use B filter
 - b Balance at zero and set galvanometer at 25 with a sample of the dilute fluorescein reference in the cuvette
 - c Read the unknown (Reading A)
 - d To the sample add exactly 1 ml of standard B solution (10 mcg B)
 - e Mix thoroughly with stirring rod and read immediately (Reading B)
 - f To the same cuvette now add a small amount of sodium hydrosulfite on the end of a spatula stirring until dissolved
 - g Read immediately (Reading C)

Calculation

- 1 Reading A represents the galvanometer deflection due to riboflavin plus blank in 10 ml
- Reading B represents the galvanometer deflection due to added riboflavin in 11 ml
- Reading C represents the galvanometer reading due to the blank alone in 11 ml

TABLE 10 (CONT'D)

A C (ACROSS)	38	40	42	44	46	48	50	52	54	56
B A (DOWN)	mcg B ₂ /ml URINE									
20	109	116	124	130	138	144	150	157	164	170
21	153	160	167	173	180	188	194	200	206	211
3	147	154	160	167	174	181	188	194	200	204
4	141	148	154	161	167	174	178	185	191	198
5	136	143	149	155	161	168	174	178	184	190
6	131	138	143	150	156	164	168	173	178	184
7	123	133	139	144	151	157	161	167	173	178
8	119	129	135	140	146	152	156	162	167	173
9	115	125	130	136	141	147	151	156	162	168
10	111	121	126	132	137	143	147	152	158	163
11	107	117	122	128	133	139	143	148	153	159
12	103	113	118	124	130	135	139	144	149	154
13	99	109	114	120	126	131	135	140	145	150
14	95	105	110	116	121	126	131	136	141	146
15	91	101	106	112	117	122	126	131	136	141
16	87	97	102	108	113	118	122	127	132	137
17	83	93	98	104	109	114	118	123	128	133
18	79	89	94	100	105	110	114	119	124	129
19	75	85	90	96	101	106	110	115	120	125
20	71	81	86	92	97	102	106	111	116	121
21	67	77	82	88	93	98	102	107	112	117
22	63	73	78	84	89	94	98	103	108	113
23	59	69	74	80	85	90	94	99	104	109
24	55	65	70	76	81	86	90	95	100	105
25	51	61	66	72	77	82	86	91	96	101
26	47	57	62	68	73	78	82	87	92	97
27	43	53	58	64	69	74	78	83	88	93
28	39	49	54	60	65	70	74	79	84	89
29	35	45	50	56	61	66	70	75	80	85
30	31	41	46	52	57	62	66	71	76	81
31	27	37	42	48	53	58	62	67	72	77
32	23	33	38	44	49	54	58	63	68	73
33	19	29	34	40	45	50	54	59	64	69
34	15	25	30	36	41	46	50	55	60	65
35	11	21	26	32	37	42	46	51	56	61
36	7	17	22	28	33	38	42	47	52	57
37	3	13	18	24	29	34	38	43	48	53
38	0	9	14	20	25	30	34	39	44	49
39	0	5	10	16	21	26	30	35	40	45
40	0	1	6	12	17	22	26	31	36	41
41	0	0	4	10	15	20	24	29	34	39

2 mcg riboflavin/100 ml urine =

$$\frac{(A - C \times \frac{11}{10})}{(B \times \frac{11}{10} - A)} \times \text{mcg riboflavin added} \times \frac{\text{ml dilution}}{\text{ml urine}} \times 100$$

Example

- 1 One ml of urine was diluted to 10 and read 150 (Reading A) After 1 mcg of riboflavin was added the reading was 500 (Reading B) After hydrosulfite the reading was 50 (Reading C)

mcg riboflavin/100 ml urine =

$$\frac{150 - 5 \times \frac{11}{10}}{500 \times \frac{11}{10} - 150} \times 1 \times \frac{10}{1} \times 100 = 275 \text{ mcg/100 ml}$$

- A table (Table 10) has been constructed which for most practical purposes gives a good approximation to the correct value over most of the normal range The assumptions made are (a) the blank is usually small so that $\text{blank} \times \frac{11}{10}$ is equivalent to blank (b) Reading B - Reading A is almost constant so that $B \times \frac{11}{10} - A$ is also almost constant

Precautions

- 1 Keep samples in dark as much as possible
- 2 Because of the danger of reoxidation read immediately after adding hydro sulfite

B IN BLOOD FOOD AND FECES

Reference

Same as for riboflavin in urine

Principle

The determination consists of

- (1) liberation of bound alloxazine nucleotides by means of heat and acid
- (2) clarification of the sample and conversion of alloxazine nucleotides into riboflavin by means of Clarase or Takadiastase
- (3) removal of many impurities by adsorption on Supersorb and subsequent elution with pyridine solution at pH 5
- (4) oxidation of impurities in the eluate by means of KMnO_4 and
- (5) determination of fluorescence

Apparatus

Same as for thiamine in blood food and feces

Reagents

- 1 Hydrochloric acid approx N Conc HCl (sp gr 1.19) is diluted 1. times, or 83 ml are diluted to a volume of 1000 ml in distilled water
- 2 Sodium bicarbonate approx N Dilute 84 gm NaHCO_3 to 1000 ml
- 3 Isoamyl alcohol
- 4 Enzyme solution A 10% solution of Takadiastase (Parke Davis Detroit) or Clarase (Takamine Laboratories, Clifton N J) is prepared at frequent intervals preferably each day The preparation should yield a pale yellow solution and it

should dissolve readily with very little residue. The solution is centrifuged and the clear supernatant solution is kept in the refrigerator when not in use.

- 5 **Supernorb** (Florida Co., Warren, Pa.) The adsorbent is bought contains much fine material which must be removed. It also must be activated before it can be used. One pound or more is covered with a 1 per cent solution of acetic acid (in a large round bottom flask with short neck or 3 liter Erlenmeyer flask). The mixture is stirred very briefly by rotation allowed to stand until most of the adsorbent has settled and the supernatant solution is then poured off. This is repeated twice. It is similarly washed by decantation several times with distilled water after which it is transferred to a large Buchner funnel and washed further with distilled water. The Supernorb is then dried at room temperature in a large pan. In order to have the material in its maximum expanded state before use a small quantity is kept moistened in a wide mouthed bottle.
- 6 **Pyridine solution** Approximately 500 ml of distilled water, 200 ml of redistilled pyridine and 0 ml of glacial acetic acid are transferred to a 1000 ml volumetric flask after which the volume is made to the mark with distilled water.
- 7 **Potassium permanganate** Dissolve 31.6 gm $KMnO_4$ in one l distilled water. Keep this approximately 1% solution in a brown dropping bottle.
- 8 **Hydrogen peroxide** USP 3% Keep in a brown dropping bottle.
- 9 **Riboflavin stock solution** The reference standard (Dr. E. F. Cook, 43rd St and Woodland Ave Philadelphia) is dried for 4 hours over phosphorus pentoxide. 40 mg are transferred to a flask of 1000 ml capacity. Water to about 800 ml and 100 ml of approximately 1N H_2SO_4 are added. The solution is frequently shaken and is kept in the refrigerator or in a cool dark place until all of the vitamin is dissolved. The contents are warmed to a temperature of 60°C after which the volume is brought to the mark. The flask is protected from light in double brown paper bags. If kept in the refrigerator the stock standard solution is stable for at least 6 months (40 mcg/ml).
- 10 **Riboflavin working solution** Dilute 5 ml of the stock solution to a volume of 50 ml or 10 ml to a volume of 250 ml. Five ml of this intermediate standard and 4.5 ml (graduated cylinder) of pyridine solution are transferred to a 50 ml volumetric flask and the volume is brought to the mark. The sensitivity is adjusted to a galvanometer reading of 50 (0.16 mcg/ml).
- 11 **Sodium hydrosulfite solution** (Lycopon) Since sodium hydrosulfite reacts rapidly with atmospheric oxygen solutions must be prepared immediately before use. They must not be unnecessarily shaken. The surfaces should be small and solutions should be used not longer than 2 hours. To 5 ml of ice cold water contained in an NPN tube are added 1 gm of sodium hydrosulfite and 1 gm of $NaHCO_3$.
- 12 **Capryl alcohol**

Collection and Preparation of Samples

The conditions for collection and preparation of samples are the same as described in the directions for the determination of thiamine by the thiochrome method.

Special precautions must be taken to avoid unnecessary exposure of samples to strong light especially to sunlight.

Procedure

- 1 The finely ground or homogenized sample is weighed or measured by means of a pipette. It is transferred to an NPN tube the volume is brought to the 35 ml mark and a measured volume of 1N HCl (from 3 to 5 ml) is added. Enough acid should be added to bring the acidity of the boiled sample to pH 1 to 2. The quantity of acid to be added should be determined for each type of material.

- 2 The contents of the tube are thoroughly emulsified by means of a J shaped stirring rod. They are then heated 30 minutes to 1 hour with frequent stirring especially during the first 10 minutes in the boiling water bath.
- 3 The tube is now cooled in a cold bath of running water, after which 1 drop of caprylic alcohol and a volume of $M NaHCO_3$ which is equivalent to the $N HCl$ are added. The contents after stirring should have a reaction of pH 4 to 5.
- 4 Several blank tubes which contain equal volumes of $N HCl$ and $M NaHCO_3$ are prepared at this time. They should be carried through the subsequent operations along with the sample.
- 5 Add 0.0 ml of Clarase or Takadiastase solution. More of the enzyme solution is added to samples which contain much starch or viscous material. The tube is incubated 2 hours in a water bath at 40 to $50^\circ C$ the contents being stirred frequently.
- 6 The tube is cooled in a bath of running water after which the contents are transferred quantitatively to a volumetric flask of 250 ml capacity. The volume is brought to the mark. At this point the analysis may be discontinued and the flask may be stored in the refrigerator.
- 7 The solution is allowed to settle overnight or if analyzed immediately it is centrifuged. Filtration may cause large and variable errors due to adsorption of the vitamin by the paper. If filtered the first 25 ml of the solution should be discarded.
- 8 The columns are filled with Supersorb as described in directions for the determination of thiamine.
- 9 A suitable aliquot of the clear supernatant solution is transferred to a 150 ml extraction flask. Bromocresol green indicator and enough water to bring the volume to about 100 ml are added. The reaction is then adjusted to approximately pH 4.5 by means of $0.1 N HCl$ or $NaOH$.
- 10 The extract is passed through the column. After passage of all the extract the flask is rinsed with two successive portions of about 5 ml each of distilled water and the washings are sent through the column. The fluid is allowed to drain completely after each of the washings. The container below the column is removed and the liquid which has passed through the column is discarded. A calibrated NPN tube is put in its place below the column.
- 11 Small portions of pyridine solution are now added until exactly 25 ml of eluate have been collected at which point the elution is discontinued.
- 12 Oxidation of impurities in the pyridine eluate. Permanganate solution is added drop by drop until an excess is present as indicated by a violet color. After an interval of 1 to 5 minutes H_2O is added drop by drop until the solution is completely clear. Usually 4 drops of $KMnO_4$ and 8 drops of H_2O solutions are sufficient.
- 13 The volume is brought to the 50 ml mark and the solution is mixed by means of a J stirring rod.
- 14 Several tubes or cuvettes containing the standard should be prepared and they should be used alternately to prevent rise of temperature. It should be emphasized that the fluorescence changes with temperature. The standards should therefore be kept under the same conditions as the solutions which are to be examined. The standard tubes should be stoppered if they are to be used over a period of time.
- 15 The cuvette or tube is filled to the mark. The sensitivity of the apparatus is set by means of the standard after which the reading is taken with the unknown solution. This is reading A. An excess (0.2 ml) of sodium hydroxide solution is then added the contents are quickly mixed and the reading is made immediately. This is reading B. (The solution should be mixed with gentle rotation after addition of the hydroxide. Violent mixing produces bubbles which scatter the light and thus give high results. Riboflavin becomes nonfluorescent in

stantly. Biological materials contain many substances whose fluorescence is slowly destroyed by the hydrosulfite. The reading therefore should be made immediately after addition and mixing of the reagent.)

Standardization

1. Known quantities of the standard are adsorbed on Supersorb, eluted with pyridine, and treated with KMnO_4 as described above. Water blanks should be included in the series. The readings corrected by the blank are then plotted as mcg riboflavin/ml solution in the cuvette.

The presence of light adsorbing substances in the eluate may markedly alter the results, even though the recovery of added riboflavin may be quantitative. Milk, urine, and feces, for example, contain such substances. However, their effect is almost entirely eliminated by the adsorption and the KMnO_4 oxidation. The recovery should be determined for every type of sample. If repeated analyses yield quantitative recovery of added riboflavin, it is not necessary to make such determinations in subsequent analyses. It is suggested, however, that the recovery be tested at frequent intervals as a check on the accuracy of the technique.

Calculation

1. mcg riboflavin/ml solution in cuvette =

$$\frac{(\text{unknown reading } A - B) - (\text{Blank reading } A - B)}{\% \text{ recovery}} \times 100 \times \text{calibration factor}$$

2. mcg riboflavin/100 ml original material =

$$\frac{(\text{mcg riboflavin/ml in cuvette}) \times (\text{ml eluate}) \times (\text{total ml extract}) \times 100}{(\text{ml extract through column}) \times (\text{gm sample})}$$

Example

Weight of food 4 gm. Dilution after hydrolysis 50 ml. Total volume adsorbed 50 ml. Total volume elution 5 ml. Reading A 55. Reading B 11. Blank reading A 9. Blank reading B 5. Recovery 94%.

1. mcg riboflavin/ml solution in cuvette =

$$\frac{(55.11) - (9.5)}{0.4} \times 100 \times \frac{0.16}{50} = \frac{40}{0.4} \times 0.3 = 0.136 \text{ mcg/ml}$$

$$\text{mcg riboflavin/100 gm food} = \frac{0.136 \times 0.5 \times 50 \times 100}{50 \times 4} = 404 \text{ mcg/100 gm}$$

Precautions

Same as for riboflavin in urine.

6 Ascorbic Acid in Whole Blood, Serum, and Urine

A. WHOLE BLOOD AND SERUM (MACROMETHOD)

Reference

Roe, J. H. and Luehner, C. A. The Determination of Ascorbic Acid in Whole Blood and Urine Through the 4-dinitrophenylhydrazine Derivative of Dehydroascorbic Acid. *J. Biol. Chem.* 147: 393-404 (Feb.) 1943.

Principle

Ascorbic acid is converted to dehydroascorbic acid. In the presence of 4-dinitrophenylhydrazine, dehydroascorbic acid is coupled with the phenylhydrazine. In the presence of strong sulfuric acid, a colored compound is formed from the hydrazone.

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 3 Centrifuge tubes capacity of 50 ml
- 4 Incubator set at 37 C
- 5 A quantity of 125 ml Erlenmeyer flasks
- 6 An electric centrifuge
- 7 A quantity of 50 ml centrifuge tubes
- 8 Quantitative filter paper Whatman 40
- 9 An ice bath

Reagents

- 1 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine reagent. Dissolve 2 gm of hydrazine in 100 ml of 9 N sulfuric acid (3 parts of water and one part of concentrated sulfuric acid) Filter
- 2 Acid washed Norit. Place 200 gm Norit in a large flask. Add 1 liter of 10% HCl and heat to boiling. Filter with suction. Remove Norit cake to a large beaker and add 1 liter distilled water. Stir thoroughly and filter. Repeat until washings give a negative or very faint test for ferric iron. (Test filtrate with 1% potassium ferrocyanide)
Dry Norit cake in oven overnight at 110-120 C. (Norit is an activated charcoal)
- 3 Trichloroacetic acid a 6% solution in water
- 4 Sulfuric acid 85% solution. To 100 ml of distilled water add 900 ml of concentrated sulfuric acid (sp gr 1.84)
- 5 Thiourea a 10% solution. Dissolve 10 gm thiourea in 100 ml of 50% (by volume) aqueous ethyl alcohol. This reagent keeps satisfactorily for two months but to check it see that it readily reduces HgCl₂ or K₂MnO₄
- 6 Standard Vitamin C. Dissolve exactly 100 mg in 100 ml of 5% acetic acid (1 mg/ml). Dilute 10 to 100 with 6% trichloroacetic acid (100 mcg/ml). Add 1 ml of thiourea before making to volume

Procedure

- 1 Pipette 15 ml of 6% trichloroacetic acid into a 50 ml Pyrex centrifuge tube. Add 0.5 ml of whole blood (plasma) drop by drop and with a glass rod stir until fine suspension is produced
- 2 Let stand for at least 5 minutes and centrifuge
- 3 Transfer supernatant to Pyrex test tube. Add 0.75 gm (3 scoops) acid washed Norit and shake vigorously. Filter through 9 cm filter paper
- 4 Place 4 ml Norit filtrate in each of two matched photoelectric colorimeter tubes. Add 1 drop of 10% thiourea to each
- 5 Hold one tube as reserve for blank
- 6 Add 1 ml hydrazine reagent to other
- 7 Place second tube in constant temperature bath at 37 C. Keep tube immersed for exactly 3 hours
- 8 Remove tube and place this and the blank in an ice bath
- 9 To each tube add slowly 5 ml of 85% sulfuric acid. Add the acid drop by drop from the burette taking at least one to one and a half minutes for total addition. Mix thoroughly with tubes immersed
- 10 Add 1 ml hydrazine reagent to blank.
- 11 Remove and after 30 minutes at room temperature wipe the tubes clean and dry
- 12 Transfer to cuvettes
- 13 Set blank at 100% T at 540 mμ and read unknowns

Standard Curve

Prepare a standard curve by running a series of ascorbic acid standards through the method. The range should be from 0 to 35 mcg per tube at intervals of 5 mcg. Plot on semilog paper

Calculation

$$\text{mg total ascorbic acid/100 ml serum} = \frac{\text{mcg in cuvette} \times \text{total dilution} \times 100}{1000 \times \text{ml al quot} \times \text{ml serum}}$$

Example

A reading of 77.5% T was equivalent to 10 mcg of ascorbic acid in the cuvette. Five ml of blood were diluted to 10 ml of which 4 ml were taken for analysis.

$$\text{mg total ascorbic acid/100 ml serum} = \frac{10 \times 20 \times 100}{1000 \times 4 \times 5} = 10 \text{ mg/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 Norit must be free from ferric iron whose ions may irreversibly oxidize ascorbic acid. Ferric ions also react with hydrazine reagent producing interfering colors.
- 2 Thiourea by producing a reducing environment protects against interference by ferric ions and other oxidizing substances. The coupling reaction is not appreciably slowed by thiourea.
- 3 The final color is stable for 40 minutes. After 18 hours the maximum fading is 2 points on the galvanometer scale.
- 4 Glucose, xylose, fructose and glucuronic acid do not interfere in ordinary physiologic and pathologic ranges.

B. IN URINE (MACROMETHOD)**Reference Principle Apparatus and Reagents**

Same as for ascorbic acid in blood.

Procedure

- 1 To a 15 ml Erlenmeyer flask add exactly 5 ml of urine.
- 2 Add 5 ml of 6*N* trichloroacetic acid. (This stabilizes the ascorbic acid during extraction.)
- 3 Add 0.5 gm acid washed Norit and shake vigorously. (Norit oxidizes ascorbic acid to dehydro form.)
- 4 Filter.
- 5 Pipette 4 ml of filtrate into two colorimeter tubes.
- 6 Add 1 drop of thiourea to both.
- 7 Add 1 ml of 4-dinitrophenylhydrazine to one, excluding the blank.
- 8 Mix and incubate for 3 hours at 37°C.
- 9 Remove and place in ice bath.
- 10 Add 5 ml of 85% sulfuric acid slowly so as not to raise the temperature (1 to 1½ minutes).
- 11 Add 1 ml of hydrazine reagent to the blank.
- 12 Set blank at 100% T and read all specimens at 540 mμ.

Standard Curve

Same as for ascorbic acid in blood.

Calculation

$$\text{mg ascorbic acid/100 ml urine} = \frac{\text{mcg in cuvette} \times \text{total ml diluted} \times 100}{1000 \times \text{ml aliquot} \times \text{ml urine}}$$

Example

A reading of 7.5% T was equivalent to 10 mcg ascorbic acid in the cuvette. Five ml of urine had been diluted to 10 ml of which 4 ml aliquots were analyzed.

$$\text{mg total ascorbic acid/100 ml urine} = \frac{10 \times 10 \times 100}{1000 \times 4 \times 5} = 0.5 \text{ mg/100 ml}$$

Precautions

Same as for ascorbic acid in blood.

3 Biochemical Procedures

WHOLE BLOOD AND SERUM (MICROMETHOD)

Reference

- Bessey O A Vitamin Methods Vol 1, Academic Press Inc Publishers Edited by P Gyorgy New York, pages 303-30, 1950
- Lowry O H, Lopez J A and Bessey O A The Determination of Ascorbic Acid in Small Amounts of Blood Serum, J Biol Chem 160 609-615 (Oct) 1945

Principle

Same as for the method of Roe and Kuether

Apparatus

- 1 A Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer or a Beckman Spectrophotometer Model DU
- 2 A quantity of cuvettes 12 x 75 mm
- 3 1 cuvette holder for 12 x 75 mm cuvettes
- 4 A water bath or an incubator set at 38 C
- 5 An ice bath
- 6 Quantitative filter paper or an electric centrifuge
- 7 A quantity of 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes
- 8 A quantity of #1 solid rubber stoppers

Reagents

- 1 A 2% solution of 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine made up in 10 N sulfuric acid.
- 2 Thiourea a 5% solution in water This solution keeps well for one month if left at 4 C
- 3 Copper sulfate ($\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$) an 0.6% solution made up in 0.01 N sulfuric acid This solution is stable indefinitely
- 4 Sulfuric acid 65% solution Dilute 70 ml of concentrated sulfuric acid with 30 ml of distilled water Keep in the refrigerator
- 5 Trichloroacetic acid 4% solution
- 6 Trichloroacetic acid a 5% aqueous solution
- 7 For the combined reagent dilute 18 ml of the 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine solution 1 ml of copper sulfate solution and 1 ml of thiourea (This solution is stable for at least one week and should be centrifuged unless crystal clear)

Procedure

- 1 Pipette 4 ml of 5% trichloroacetic acid into a 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tube
- 2 Add exactly 1 ml of whole blood or serum stopper and mix
- 3 Centrifuge at 3000 rpm for 10 minutes
- 4 Pipette exactly 1 ml of the aliquot into each of two small test tubes
- 5 Into one tube add exactly 0.25 ml of the mixed thiourea copper sulfate and 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine reagent
- 6 Mix by tapping and incubate for 4 hours at 38 C
- 7 Chill in ice water and add 1.5 ml of cold 65% sulfuric acid solution The cold acid may be added at once
- 8 Now add 0.25 ml of the mixed reagent to the blank tube and mix by shaking
- 9 Set the blank at 100% T at 500 m μ and read the unknowns
- 10 Treat 1 ml of standard ascorbic acid solution (in 4% trichloroacetic acid solution) in the same way These solutions should cover a range of 3 to 21 mcg/ml at intervals of 3 mcg

Calculation

$$\text{mg total ascorbic acid/100 ml of serum} = \frac{\text{mcg in cuvette} \times \text{total dilution} \times 100}{1000 \times \text{ml aliquot} \times \text{ml serum}}$$

Example

One ml of blood was diluted to 5 ml of which one ml was used in the analysis. Ascorbic acid in the cuvette was 3.0 mcg
Therefore

$$\text{mg total ascorbic acid/100 ml of blood} = \frac{3 \times 5 \times 100}{1000 \times 1 \times 1} = 1.5$$

Precautions

- 1 The final concentration of acid is critical in this method and must be watched carefully
Variations in the concentration of thiourea will cause large variations in the final color
- 3 The age of the trichloroacetic acid appears to be immaterial.

7 Ascorbic Acid in Tissue**Reference**

Roe J H, Mills M B, Oesterling M J and Damron C M The Determination of Diketol-Gulonic Acid, Dehydroascorbic Acid and Ascorbic acid in the Same Tissue Extract by the 2,4-Dinitrophenylhydrazine Method J Biol Chem 174:201-208 (May) 1948

Principle

Same as for serum ascorbic acid

Apparatus

The same as for serum ascorbic acid with the addition of

- 1 A mortar and pestle
- An H₂S generator
- Carbon dioxide gas

Reagents

The same as for serum ascorbic acid with the addition of

- 1 Metaphosphoric acid 5% in water
Stannous chloride solution Dissolve 10 gm stannous chloride in 100 ml 5% metaphosphoric acid
- 3 Thiourea powdered
- 4 Bromine

Preparation of Tissue

- 1 Weigh accurately a sample of tissue of from 1 to 5 gm. This sample is ground in a mortar with 2 ml of 10% SnCl₂ solution. Add 100 ml of 5% metaphosphoric acid and mix thoroughly. (Do not use a Waring Blendor or homogenizing apparatus that would introduce increased amounts of oxygen into the slurry). The slurry is thoroughly mixed and filtered. (A solution with a dilution of 1 part of tissue in 100 parts of extract is desirable and in dilutions greater than this a concentration 1 to 10 per ml of total 4A, DHA and DKA is recommended. It is necessary to work rapidly to prevent changes in partition of the three compounds. A conversion of DHA to DKA of 7 percent in a solution containing 0.5 percent SnCl₂ - 5 percent HPO was observed in 1 hour at room temperature.

Procedure for Diketol-Gulonic Acid (DGA)

- 1 Place 100 ml of the original SnCl₂/HPO filtrate in a large tube. Introduce a gas filter tube with a sintered glass filter about 8 mm in diameter and pass H₂S through for 15 minutes.

- 2 To 40 ml of the H_2S saturated extract add 0.4 gm of powdered thiourea shake until dissolved and filter
- 3 Bubble CO_2 into the filtrate for 5 minutes
- 4 Pipette 4 ml aliquots into each of three colorimeter tubes
- 5 To two tubes add 1 ml of 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine The third tube will be a blank
- 6 Place in water bath at 37° C for 6 hours
- 7 From here on the analysis is the same as for serum ascorbic acid.

Procedure for the Sum of Dehydro-1-Ascorbic Acid (DHA) and Diketo-1-Gulonic Acid (DGA)

- 1 Pipette 4 ml aliquots of the original $SnCl_2$ HPO filtrate into each of three cuvettes
- 2 Add 1 ml of 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine to two of the tubes the third being used as a blank
- 3 Place in a water bath at 37° C for 6 hours
- 4 Continue as for serum ascorbic acid.

Procedure for the Sum of 1-Ascorbic Acid (AA) Dehydro-1-Ascorbic Acid (DHA) and Diketo-1-Gulonic Acid (DGA)

- 1 The remainder of the H_2S saturated solution is filtered to remove SnS (thiourea is not added) into a test tube suitable for bubbling gas. Air is drawn through a water trap before passing through the H_2S solution to minimize volume changes. Sufficient bromine is added to color the solution. Excess bromine is removed by bubbling air through the solution
- 2 Add powdered thiourea in sufficient quantities to make a 1% solution
- 3 Pipette 4 ml aliquots into three colorimeter tubes
- 4 Add 1 ml of 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine to two tubes the third being used as a blank.
- 5 Place in a water bath at 37° C for 6 hours
- 6 Continue as for serum ascorbic acid

Preparation of Calibration Curves

- 1 Because the rate of coupling is influenced by the acid solution used and the antioxidant present it is important in preparing a calibration curve to use the same concentration of HPO and thiourea or $SnCl_2$ as is used in the procedure followed for the unknown. A calibration curve is made with standard dehydro-ascorbic acid solution prepared by bromine oxidation of ascorbic acid as directed by Roe and Oetting. The standards are made up in 5 percent HPO solution containing 1 percent of thiourea. The tubes are incubated for 6 hours at 37° C. The curve obtained with 1 percent thiourea is practically the same as that obtained with 0.5 percent $SnCl_2$. Therefore calculations of DHA, DGA and AA are all made with the same standard curve.

Calculation

- 1 All three substances are of practically the same molecular weight and are expressed in terms of mg ascorbic acid, according to the procedure outlined under ascorbic acid.
- 2 DGA is measured directly
- 3 $DHA = (DHA + DGA) - DGA$
- 4 $AA = (AA + DHA + DGA) - (DHA + DGA)$

Precautions

- 1 Speed in handling the use and timing of reactions are the most important aspects of this method.

8 Rapid Field Methods for Ascorbic Acid, Riboflavin, Thiamine and N¹ Methylnicotinamide

References

- 1 For ascorbic acid see Farmer C J and Abt A F Proc Soc Exper Biol Med 114 146 150 1936
- 2 For riboflavin thiamine and N¹ methylnicotinamide see Johnson H E Sargent F H Robinson P F and Conclazio C F Estimation of Riboflavin Thiamine and N¹ methylnicotinamide Rapid Field Methods Ind and Eng Chem. Anal. Ed 17 384 387 (June) 1945

A. ASCORBIC ACID IN SERUM AND URINE.

Principle

The blue dye 6-dichlorophenolindophenol in acid solution is decolorized by ascorbic acid. An aqueous solution of the dye standardized against known amounts of ascorbic acid can therefore be used to titrate samples of serum and urine.

Apparatus

- 1 Burette 5 ml capacity graduated to 0.5 ml
Round bottom test tubes 15 ml capacity
- 2 Pipettes to deliver exactly 0.1 ml 0.5 ml and approx 3.5 ml Automatic syringe pipettes are the most satisfactory type
- 3 Suitable titration bench with good daylight or daylight electric shining against a white background.

Reagents

- 1 Metaphosphoric acid approximately 3% and 6% in aqueous solution. This takes a long time to dissolve and one should start making it several hours before use. It keeps for several days.
Buffered solution of 6-dichlorophenolindophenol. In the field this should be prepared from a dry mixture weighed out in the laboratory of 10 mg of the dye 1.6 gm KH₂PO₄ and 8 gm of Na₂HPO₄ all mixed together and stored dry in small envelopes. One envelope is dissolved in about 500 ml of water either distilled or tap if the latter's blank is known to be low. The aqueous solution of buffered dye will keep for several days but changes its standardization so that it must be standardized daily as described below.
- 2 Ascorbic acid 100 mg water soluble tablets prepared by reputable drug houses are satisfactory for making a standard solution but each fresh lot of tablets must be assayed before use. In a 100 ml mixing cylinder place about 0 ml of 3% metaphosphoric acid add 1 tablet ascorbic acid and fill accurately to the mark with water. The tablet is dissolved by inversion. After complete solution 1 ml of this strong standard is pipetted accurately into a 100 ml mixing cylinder containing about 0 ml of metaphosphoric acid. The cylinder is filled accurately to the mark and mixing is effected by inversion. This weak standard contains 10 mg of ascorbic acid per 100 ml and is used for standardizing the dye as described below.

Procedure

- 1 Before each day's work the dye must be standardized against a fresh solution of ascorbic acid. 4 ml of the weak standard ascorbic acid are pipetted accurately into a 15 ml test tube. Dye is added from the burette until the first pink color lasting 30 sec is reached. Satisfactory duplicate estimations must be obtained before any further steps are taken. The titration figure should be about 3 ml.
A reagent blank must be run before each day's work. 4 ml of the 3% metaphosphoric acid solution are pipetted accurately into a test tube and are titrated

against the dye. For satisfactory results the titration figure must be below 0.2 ml. If it is higher there is something wrong with the reagents most probably the water and this error must be corrected before any further steps are taken.

- 3 Estimation of vitamin C in urine. Urine is collected and stored with oxalic acid as a stabilizer as described in the section on urine. In the case of fasting specimens exactly 0.5 ml is pipetted into a test tube and approximately 3.5 ml of 3% metaphosphoric acid is added. In the case of loaded specimens exactly 0.1 ml of urine is used. In either case dye is added from the burette rather rapidly. The first definite pink lasting 15 sec is taken as the end point and no notice is taken of fading after this stage is reached. There are in urine reducing substances other than ascorbic acid which reduce the dye somewhat more slowly than does ascorbic acid. Rapid titration is therefore absolutely essential.
- 4 Estimation in serum. Exactly 2 ml of serum are added to exactly 6 ml of 6% metaphosphoric acid in a 15 ml centrifuge tube. The tube is stoppered with a clean rubber stopper and is gently inverted several times. Do not shake vigorously because of froth formation. The tube is centrifuged at high speed and exactly 4 ml of the supernatant fluid are pipetted into a test tube. Titration is carried out directly on the supernatant fluid, which already contains metaphosphoric acid.

Calculations

A. Standardization of the dye

$$\text{mg ascorbic acid equivalent to 1 ml of dye} = \frac{0.04}{\text{titration in ml} - \text{reagent blank in ml}}$$

B. Calculation for serum.

$$\text{mg ascorbic acid in 100 ml} = (\text{titration figure in ml} - \text{reagent blank in ml}) \times \text{equivalent of dye} \times 100$$

C. Calculation for fasting urine

$$\text{mg ascorbic acid in 100 ml} = (\text{titration figure in ml} - \text{reagent blank in ml}) \times \text{equivalent of dye} \times 200$$

D. Calculation for loaded urine

$$\text{mg ascorbic acid in 100 ml} = (\text{titration figure in ml} - \text{reagent blank in ml}) \times \text{equivalent of dye} \times 1000$$

Examples

- 1 Reagent blank = 0.10. 3.5 ml dye titrated 4 ml of weak standard therefore 1 ml dye = $0.04 \div (3.5 - 0.10) = 0.0127$ mg ascorbic acid.
- 2 Titration figure for serum = 0.85 ml. Therefore serum contains $(0.85 - 0.10) \times 0.0127 \times 100 = 1.0$ mg ascorbic acid per 100 ml.
- 3 Titration figure for fasting urine = 0.55 ml dye. Therefore fasting urine contains $(0.55 - 0.10) \times 0.0127 \times 200 = 1.1$ mg ascorbic acid in 100 ml.
- 4 Titration figure for loaded urine = 1.00 ml dye. Therefore loaded urine contains $(1.00 - 0.10) \times 0.0127 \times 1000 = 11.4$ mg ascorbic acid in 100 ml.
- 5 Use of constant factors. During a single day the standardization of the dye does not change. Hence calculation is facilitated by computing the Factor F representing the constant number by which the titration figure is multiplied to give the result directly in terms of mg ascorbic acid per 100 ml of serum, fasting urine or loaded urine. In example 1 above 1 ml of dye = 0.0127 mg ascorbic acid.

$$\text{Hence } F \text{ for serum} = (0.0127) \times (100) = 1.27$$

$$F \text{ for fasting urine} = (0.0127) \times (200) = 2.54$$

$$F \text{ for loaded urine} = (0.0127) \times (1000) = 12.7$$

ASCORBIC ACID

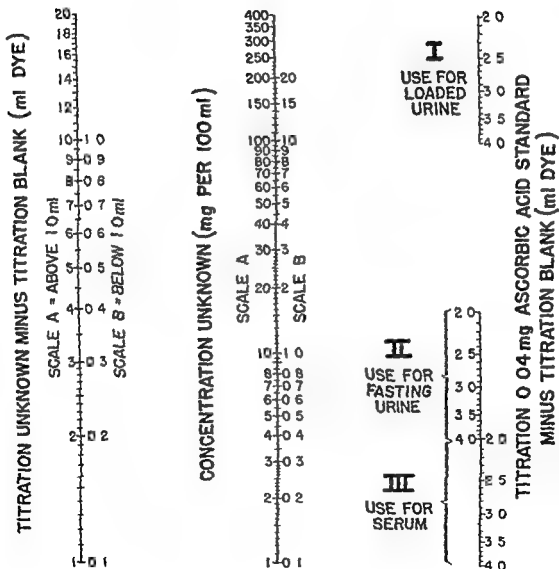


Fig 2 —Line chart for ascorbic acid. For use, see text.

Use of line chart The nomogram (Fig. 22) is for serum fasting urine and loaded urine. A string is stretched between the left hand line (titration minus blank) and the right hand line (titration of 0.04 mg. ascorbic acid minus blank) and the concentration of ascorbic acid in 100 ml of serum fasting urine or loaded urine is read off on the middle line. Section I of the right hand line is for use with loaded urine. Section II for fasting urine and Section III of serum when the procedure is exactly as described above.

Precautions

- 1 The reagents must be standardized at least once daily and in hot weather twice a day.
- 2 Titration of urine must be carried on as rapidly as is consistent with accurate work. Serum need not be titrated so rapidly because it does not contain significant amounts of non-ascorbic acid reducing substances.
- 3 It is emphasized that even in individuals whose body stores of vitamin C are very low the apparent urine level by this method never reaches 0 because of the presence in urine of reducing substances which are not ascorbic acid.

B RIBOFLAVIN IN URINE

Principle

Riboflavin in urine is extracted into isobutyl alcohol after a preliminary treatment in the presence of pyridine and acetic acid with potassium permanganate followed by hydrogen peroxide. The isobutyl layer is cleared with anhydrous sodium sulfate and is read fluorometrically.

Apparatus

- 1 Apparatus for collecting and storing urine as described in Section II.
- 2 Apparatus for visual fluorometry as described in the section on fluorometry. The comparator rack for reading solutions of riboflavin should have fixed on the side nearest the eye a suitable yellow glass filter with maximal transmission at 560 microns.
- 3 At least two dozen glass stoppered test tubes of 10 ml capacity. These are conveniently made from standard 10 ml glass stoppered footed mixing cylinders by removing the foot with a sharp tap of a tack hammer and rounding the bottom in the blast lamp.

Reagents (Assuming 100 specimens)

- 1 Reagents for storing urine as described in Section II.
- 2 A mixture of 1 part pyridine and 1 part glacial acetic acid. This should be made up fresh each day. 50 ml for 100 specimens.
- 3 5 ml aqueous 4% potassium permanganate.
- 4 10 ml aqueous 3% hydrogen peroxide. This keeps well and the potency of any batch should be such that two drops destroy 1 drop of 4% permanganate in the presence of acetic acid.
- 5 Isobutyl alcohol of low blank. Normal butyl alcohol is equally satisfactory. Each fresh batch of alcohol should be examined before the ultraviolet light and must be redistilled if there is perceptible fluorescence.
- 6 Anhydrous sodium sulfate 40 gm.
- 7 Water soluble tablets of riboflavin 5 mg for standards. Each batch must be assayed before use.

Procedure

- 1 All manipulations should be carried out in diffuse light. Only direct sunlight destroys riboflavin rapidly enough to make extreme precautions necessary against light.

- In the case of fast ng urine exactly 0.5 ml of urine is pipetted into a 10 ml glass stoppered test tube. In the case of loaded urine exactly 0.1 ml is added and 0.4 ml of water to keep volume relations constant.
- 3 0.5 ml of pyridine acetic acid mixture is added and mixed by gentle shaking of the rack.
 - 4 1 drop of potassium permanganate is added and mixed by a few gentle shakes of the rack. At this point the tubes may stand anywhere from $\frac{1}{2}$ to 5 minutes without affecting results.
 - 5 Two drops of hydrogen peroxide are added and mixed by gentle shaking of the rack. The permanganate should be destroyed within a few seconds. If it is not another drop of hydrogen peroxide may be necessary. In temperatures near freezing gentle warming of the tube may be necessary. This is conveniently done in a water bath at about 70° F.
 - 6 Exactly 1.5 ml of isobutyl alcohol are added by means of either an ordinary pipette or preferably from an automatic syringe pipette which avoids getting unpleasant vapors in the mouth. The glass stopper is inserted and the tube is shaken vigorously by hand with an up and down motion 25 times. The distribution coefficient of riboflavin between the aqueous phase and the alcohol pyridine acetic acid phase is such that more shaking has been proved to be unnecessary.
 - 7 The test tube is allowed to stand in the rack until the aqueous phase is nearly separated. This usually takes from 1 to 5 minutes being faster the higher the temperature.
 - 8 A small wide mouthed funnel is placed in the neck of the tube after the glass stopper has been removed and a small spatula of sodium sulfate is added to the tube. A gentle rotary motion imparted to the tube assists clearing of the alcohol layer.
 - 9 The tube is allowed to stand in the rack until it is water clear which usually takes one to two minutes. However a few turns on a hand centrifuge will materially hasten this step.
 - 10 Approximately 1 ml of the alcohol layer is transferred to a standard thin walled Pyrex test tube of dimensions 10 x 75 mm. This is best achieved with an automatic syringe pipette as described under fluorometry but any pipette can be used.
 - 11 Reading is conducted before the ultraviolet lamp as described under fluorometry. The alcohol solutions are stable in the dark for at least hours even at high temperatures and therefore there is no hurry in reading them. Make sure that standards and unknowns are at approximately the same temperature.
 - 12 After this initial reading if one wishes to obtain true riboflavin the tubes must be exposed to strong ultraviolet light for an hour or more. Where sunshine can be counted on it may be used but usually an ultraviolet lamp is essential. If this step is omitted satisfactory comparative results are still obtained since the amount of fluorescence not destroyed by ultraviolet light is remarkably constant at about 50% of the initial value. Following loading tests because of the high concentrations of riboflavin exposure to ultraviolet light may be safely omitted and a constant factor used.

Standard Solutions

Two types of standards will be described. The first and theoretically best is made by running aqueous solutions through the whole method. Such standards tend to be unstable and when a large number of estimations have to be done the second type of standard is recommended. These consist of aqueous solutions of riboflavin which are considerably more stable but somewhat less desirable otherwise. Both types of standard must be checked at least once a day for deterioration.

A Standards run through the whole method

- 1 Prepare two liters of water containing 0.3 ml of conc H₂SO per liter. Acidulated water is used in all subsequent steps because riboflavin is most stable in 0.01 N H₂SO.
- 2 Dissolve one 5 mg tablet in exactly 1 liter of acidulated water. This strong standard contains 5 mcg riboflavin per ml.
- 3 In a glass stoppered mixing cylinder make standard solutions by adding from a pipette the amount of strong standard shown in the table below diluting to exactly 25 ml with acidulated water mixing transferring to a dry 1 oz amber bottle for storage rinsing the mixing cylinder with water and starting the next dilution in the same cylinder.

CONCENTRATION RIBOFLAVIN REQUIRED mcg/100 ml	STRONG STANDARD REQUIRED ml	
0	0	In each case dilute to 25 ml with acidulated water
25	1.25	
50	2.5	
75	3.75	
100	5.0	
125	6.25	
150	7.50	
200	10.0	
250	12.50	
300	15.0	

- 4 Run 15 ml samples of the standards through the method as described in steps 1 to IV above. The final alcohol layers should be placed in clean dry glass stoppered standard test tubes the racks of which should be clearly marked with the value of the initial standard solutions.

II Aqueous standards for use with large numbers of estimations

- 1 Prepare two liters of water containing 0.3 ml of conc H₂SO.
- 2 Dissolve one 5 mg pill in exactly one liter of acidulated water. This strong standard contains 5 mcg riboflavin per ml.
- 3 Prepare a working standard by diluting exactly 20 ml of strong standard to exactly 50 ml with acidulated water.
- 4 Prepare a series of aqueous standards as in step A 3 but using the following table which is constructed on the assumption that the over all recovery of riboflavin in the method is 80% and that 0.5 ml samples of urine are to be used.

STANDARD DESIRED mcg RIBOFLAVIN PER 100 ml	WORKING STANDARD REQUIRED ml	
0	0	In each case dilute to exactly 25 ml with acidulated water
25	2.6	
50	4.0	
75	6.5	
100	8.5	
125	10.5	
150	12.5	
200	16.5	
250	21.0	
300	25.0	

- 5 Store these in brown bottles in a cool place. They will keep for one week.
- 6 For use as standards the aqueous solutions as they stand should be placed directly in the standard tubes without running them through the method. The racks of the tubes should be labeled with the numbers in the left hand column. The values then represent mcg of riboflavin per 100 ml of urine when 0.5 ml samples are analyzed.
- 7 Replace the standards in the tubes morning and afternoon when large numbers of estimations are being done.

Calculations

The calculations for fasting urines are as follows

$\text{mcg}/100 \text{ ml urine} = (\text{1st reading} - \text{reading after 1 hr in UV light})$ If the sample has not been exposed to sunlight or ultraviolet light $\text{mcg}/100 \text{ ml urine} = (\text{1st reading}) \times (0.5)$

The calculations for loaded urines are as follows

$\text{mcg}/100 \text{ ml urine} = (\text{1st reading} - \text{reading after 1 hr in UV light}) \times 5$ If the sample has not been exposed to sunlight or ultraviolet light $\text{mcg}/100 \text{ ml urine} = (\text{1st reading} \times 5) - (1.5)$

Examples

Fasting Urine First reading 50 Reading after sunshine 1.5 Therefore $\text{mcg riboflavin}/100 \text{ ml} = (50 - 1.5) = 48.5$

Loaded Urine First reading 90 Reading after sunshine 8.5 Therefore $\text{mcg riboflavin}/100 \text{ ml} = (90 - 8.5) \times 5 = 407.5$

Precautions

- 1 The commonest source of error in this method is the instability of the standards. These must be checked at least every day and when many readings are being made twice a day. Our experience has been that an ultraviolet bulb is far preferable to sunlight because of the extreme variability of the sunshine in climates where there is intermittent cloudiness.
- 2 Standards and unknowns must be at the same temperature when read.

THIAMINE AND *N*' METHYLNICOTINAMIDE**Principle**

These two substances are estimated by methods so similar that they are best described together except for the last steps. Both compounds are absorbed from urine on activated zeolite and eluted with potassium chloride. Thiamine is converted to thiochrome by ferricyanide in alkaline solution. *N*'methylnicotinamide (hereafter referred to as *N*MeN) is itself nonfluorescent but is converted to the fluorescent Factor F by mere addition of alkali. The thiochrome and Factor F are shaken into isobutyl alcohol and are estimated fluorometrically.

Apparatus

- 1 Apparatus for collection and storage of urine as described in Section II.
- 2 Apparatus for visual fluorometry as described in Section III.
- 3 Glass stoppered 10 ml test tubes as under riboflavin.
- 4 Beakers, pipettes, funnels and if available automatic syringe pipettes as under riboflavin.

Reagents

- 1 Activated zeolite. This requires considerable time, patience and sometimes experimentation in order to get a satisfactory product which will settle out rapidly and also absorb thiamine well. Commercial zeolite is crushed in a stone crusher or suitable mortar. (In our experience permutit and decalco are as good as zeolite.) That portion of the product which will pass a 100 mesh sieve is saved and suspended in 1% acetic acid in distilled water in large cylinders. The granules which settle to the bottom rapidly that is in about 3 minutes are separated from the lighter particles by decanting. These heavier particles are boiled three times with 1% acetic acid with settling and decanting between fresh additions of acetic acid. The product is washed with distilled water and dried in the oven at 110°C. It should be a white homogeneous powder and when about 200 mg are shaken with water in a 10 ml mixing cylinder all the particles should settle rapidly to the bottom in not more than 2 min. We have encountered great vari-

bility from batch to batch. When test runs with synthetic thiamine are made recovery is sometimes poor and the product may have to be reactivated by the technique of Najar and Wood (1940). Sometimes addition of ferricyanide results in the formation of Prussian blue. In such cases the product has to be washed with warm fairly strong solutions of hydrochloric or nitric acid. When a satisfactory product is finally obtained its activity remains constant for months if it is kept dry.

- 2 Aqueous potassium chloride approximately 5%. At temperatures near freezing the solubility properties necessitate lower concentrations.
- 3 Aqueous sodium hydroxide approximately 15%.
- 4 Bromocresol green, 1% in water.
- 5 Aqueous potassium ferricyanide 0.25%. This should be made up fresh every day, most conveniently from weighed samples stored dry in small stoppered test tubes.
- 6 Isobutyl alcohol. This must have a blank of essentially zero and each new batch has to be tested before use. It can be recovered by redistillation of the residue after analysis. Normal butyl alcohol can be used instead of isobutyl.
- 7 Acidulated water. This is most conveniently made up a gallon at a time. Approximately 60 ml of glacial acid are added to a gallon of distilled water. Tap water of low blank may be used but is usually inferior to distilled water.

Procedure

- 1 Urine is collected and stored as described in Section II. Thiamine and NMN are stable for at least a week even at high temperatures provided the pH of the sample is between 3 and 6. This pH is almost always attained with the oxalic acid in the storage bottle.
- 2 The acidity of the urine is checked soon after collection with bromocresol green as external indicator. The acidity is correct when the indicator turns any shade of green or yellow. If it is blue add glacial acetic acid drop by drop to the storage bottle until the acidity is correct.
- 3 Steps 4 through 8 which follow are identical for NMN and thiamine. It is therefore convenient to run both at the same time but with separate aliquots until the final stages which will be differentiated below. 2 ml of fasting urine are pipetted into a glass stoppered test tube or 0.5 ml of loaded urine.
- 4 About 200 mg of zeolite are delivered from a small spatula into the tube most easily through a small funnel and mixed by about ten rapid vigorous shakes of the rack. The time of standing at this stage is not critical up to ½ hr. No more than ten shakes are required.
- 5 Approximately 8 ml of acidulated water are added to the tube from a large syringe and the tube is mixed by inversion 10 times with the finger as a stopper. After a few seconds standing in the rack until the particles of zeolite have begun to settle the few particles adherent to the top and sides are washed down by closing the top with a clean finger and administering a single sharp upward jerk. The tube is replaced in the rack until the zeolite particles have settled to the bottom. In urine containing oxalic acid there is usually slight permanent turbidity which is disregarded in deciding when the zeolite has settled.
- 6 The supernatant fluid is withdrawn by means of suction through a long needle of stainless steel and is discarded. A mechanical vacuum pump is highly desirable but a 50 or 100 ml syringe may be used if necessary.
- 7 Approximately 8 ml of acidulated water are added and the processes of standing, inversion and removal of the supernatant fluid are repeated. This washing step is critical in both the estimation of NMN and thiamine but for different reasons. In the case of thiamine if washing is not effective the fluorescence obtained in the final step is off color with a silvery blue admixture to the true thiochrome mauve and reading is wholly unsatisfactory. In our experience tap water can be

used instead of distilled water but it may be necessary in this case to add more acetic acid to the water or even sometimes to wash three times before the thiochrome color is satisfactory. Thiamine is firmly bound to the zeolite and repeated washings remove the interfering substances without affecting the thiamine. Experimentation determines how many washings with the available water supply are required in order to get satisfactory results for thiamine. In the case of NMN in contrast to thiamine each washing diminishes the final fluorescence. Apparently NMN is relatively easily washed off the zeolite. In making routine surveys it is therefore essential to adopt and follow scrupulously a fixed technique of washing in order to be able to compare values for NMN from one place to another.

- 8 0.5 ml of potassium chloride is added to the tube and the rack is shaken gently so as to mix the zeolite with the potassium chloride but not to streak the zeolite far up the sides. The time necessary for elution is short not exceeding 30 seconds. From this point on the estimations of NMN and thiamine are different.

Final steps for thiamine

- 9 0.1 ml of potassium ferricyanide is added and mixed by a few gentle shakes of the rack.
- 10 0.5 ml of sodium hydroxide is added and mixed with a gentle shake of the rack. The time necessary for completing the oxidation from thiamine to thiochrome is only a few seconds. Overformed in this mixture it is stable for at least 1/2 hour.
- 11 Add 1 ml of isobutyl alcohol. The glass stopper is inserted and the tube is shaken vigorously 20 times up and down its long axis. This number of shakes insures complete distribution of thiochrome between the alcohol and the aqueous phases. More shaking is superfluous.
- 12 The tube is allowed to stand in the rack until separation of the phases is almost complete and is then centrifuged if necessary a few seconds in a hand centrifuge to insure complete clearing.
- 13 About 1 ml of the supernatant fluid is transferred to a small test tube by means of a pipette or a syringe and needle.
- 14 The fluorescence is matched against standards in the visual comparator as described in the section on fluorometry care being taken that standards and unknowns are at approximately the same temperature.

Final steps for *N*-methylnicotinamide

- 11 1 ml of isobutyl alcohol are delivered into the tube. No mixing is necessary at this point.
- 12 0.5 ml of sodium hydroxide is added the tube is stoppered with its glass stopper and is shaken 10 times as with thiamine. The addition of sodium hydroxide should be followed by shaking at once because Factor F in aqueous alkaline solution breaks down to nonfluorescent end products within a very few minutes but is stable in the isobutyl layer for days.
- 13 The tube is replaced in the rack and when separation of the phases is more or less complete it is centrifuged if necessary for a few seconds in a hand centrifuge.
- 14 1 ml of the supernatant layer is transferred to small test tube as under thiamine.
- 15 Fluorescence is matched in the comparator against standard solutions as described in the section on fluorometry. The color of Factor F develops relatively slowly after step 12. It is absolutely necessary to allow at least 5 minutes between step 12 and the final reading. The development of color goes on at the same rate either at step 13 or at step 14 becomes maximal in 5 minutes and then remains constant for at least an hour. Care should be taken that standards and unknowns are at approximately the same temperature.

Standards**A For thiamine**

In order to compensate for variability in the reagents standards are made by running solutions of thiamine hydrochloride through the method

- 1 Prepare 2 liters of acidulated distilled water by adding approximately 20 ml of glacial acetic to 2 liters of distilled water. This acidulated water is used in all subsequent steps since the vitamin is maximally stable at about pH 4 and is quickly destroyed above pH 7.
- 2 One 5 mg tablet of thiamine hydrochloride is dissolved in exactly one liter of acidulated water. This strong standard contains 5 mcg of thiamine hydrochloride per ml.
- 3 Dilute exactly 75 ml of strong standard to exactly 250 ml with acidulated water. This working standard contains 15 mcg of thiamine hydrochloride per ml.
- 4 Using a mixing cylinder and graduated pipettes make up the following series of standards.

CONCENTRATION OF THIAMINE HYDROCHLORIDE WORKING STANDARD REQUIRED
DESIRED (mcg/100 ml) **(ml)**

0	0	In each case dilute to exactly 25 ml with acidulated water
5	0.83	
10	1.67	
15	2.5	
20	3.33	
30	5.0	
50	8.3	
75	12.5	
100	16.7	
150	25.0	

- 5 The above standards are stored in 1 oz amber bottles in a dark cool place. They keep for at least 2 weeks.
- 6 Two ml of each of the series are run through the thiamine method. One ml of the isobutyl layer is placed in the standard comparator tube the rack of which is clearly labeled with the concentration of the original solution. Standards must be checked daily for deterioration.

B For N¹ methyl nicotinamide

- 1 Dissolve 10.0 mg N¹ methyl nicotinamide chloride in exactly 133 ml of 1% acetic acid in water.
- 2 Make up the following for storage in 1 oz brown bottles.

CONCENTRATION DESIRED (mg per 100 ml)	ml N ¹ METHYLNICOTINAMIDE	
0	0	In each case dilute to exactly 25.0 ml with 1% acetic acid.
0.25	0.8	
0.50	1.7	
0.75	2.5	
1.0	3.3	
1.5	5.0	
2.5	8.3	
3.75	12.5	
5.0	16.6	
7.5	25.0	

- 3 Store these standards in a cool place. They keep for 12 weeks. N¹ methyl nicotinamide is not fluorescent but is converted to F in alkaline isobutyl alcohol.

Calculations

- 1 Fasting specimens of urine
 mcg of thiamine per 100 ml and mg of NMN per 100 ml = reading on rack of standard.

Loaded urine

mcg of thiamine per 100 ml and mg of NMN per 100 ml = reading on rack of standard = 4.

- 3 On theoretical grounds most of the standard laboratory methods subtract *F* from thiochrome in calculating thiamine. We do not make this correction in the present method because of the demonstration by Hajjar and Keiron (1944) that *F* is about 80% destroyed by the addition of ferricyanide. Therefore only when the *F* is large in comparison with *B* is correction for *F* necessary. This has very rarely happened in our field surveys.

Examples

- 1 Fasting urine

Readings *B* 15 *F* 15 Therefore mcg *B* per 100 ml urine = 30 and mg NMN per 100 ml = 15

- 2 Loaded urine

Readings *B* 30 *F* 15 Therefore mcg *B* per 100 ml urine = $4 \times 40 = 160$
mg NMN per 100 ml urine = $4 \times 40 = 160$

Precautions

A For both thiamine and NMN

- 1 The chief sources of error in these methods are two: the difficulty of getting a satisfactory preparation of zeolite and the washing stages. Both of these difficulties have to be settled by experimentation.
- 2 Once prepared the standards for thiamine usually are stable for one to two weeks. They should be checked every day or two against freshly prepared standards.
- 3 The standards and unknowns should be at the same temperature when read because fluorescence is strongly affected by changes in temperature.

B For thiamine

- 1 For urine of subjects taking quinine or atabrine preliminary treatment of the specimen is essential.
 - (a) Pour approximately 7 ml of urine into a centrifuge tube.
 - (b) Add approximately 35 ml of isobutyl alcohol and about 10 mg Norite (1/4 of a small spatula). The exact amount of charcoal is critical; too much will destroy the thiamine.
 - (c) Close with thumb and shake 5 times.
 - (d) Centrifuge and use 2 ml samples of the water layer below the oily layer.

C For *N*¹ methylnicotinamide

- 1 In the final step be sure to use the following order: 0.5 ml KCl mix, 2 ml isobutyl alcohol, 0.5 ml NaOH. Shake at once. *F* is unstable in watery alkaline solutions but stable in the isobutyl layer. After the shaking with NaOH, *F* develops relatively slowly in the isobutyl layer; at least 5 minutes must elapse after the shaking before the specimen is read. You may either let the glass stoppered tubes sit for 5 minutes or else you may draw off the isobutyl layer into the reading tubes and read after 5 minutes. A minimum of 5 minutes waiting is absolutely essential. The color is stable up to one hour so that speed in reading is not necessary.
- 2 For urine of subjects taking quinine or atabrine preliminary treatment with charcoal is essential. The procedure is:
 - (a) Pour approx. 11 ml of urine into a centrifuge tube.
 - (b) Add approx. 1.5 mg Norite A (about 1/2 of a small spatula). The exact amount is not critical for *F* but enough is essential.
 - (c) Close with thumb and shake 25 times.
 - (d) Centrifuge and use 2 ml samples of supernatant fluid.

9 **Vitamins and Nutrition Miscellaneous References****Books**

- American Medical Association *The Vitamins A Symposium* Chicago 1939 American Medical Association
- Association of Official Agricultural Chemists *Official and Tentative Methods of Analysis of the Association of Official Agricultural Chemists* ed 6 Washington 1945 AOAC
- Association of Vitamin Chemists Inc *Methods of Vitamin Assay*, New York 1947 Interscience
- Bicknell F and Prescott F *The Vitamins in Medicine* ed 2 reprinted 1947 New York 1941 Grune and Stratton
- Coward K. H. *The Biological Standardization of the Vitamins* ed 2 London 1947 Bailliere Tindall and Cox
- Dann W J and Satterfield G H *Biological Symposia VII Estimation of the Vitamins* New York 1947 Jacques Cattell Press vol VII
- György P *Vitamin Methods* New York 1950 Academic Press Inc Publishers vol. I
- McLester J E *Nutrition and Diet in Health and Disease* ed 3 Philadelphia and London 1949 W. B. Saunders Company
- Rosenberg H B *Chemistry and Physiology of the Vitamins* New York 1946 Interscience
- Sahyun M *Proteins and Amino Acids in Nutrition* New York 1948 Reinhold Publishers Vol xv
- Sherman H C *Chemistry of Food and Nutrition* ed 2 New York 1940 The Macmillan Company
- Williams P R and Spies T D *Vitamin B (Thiamin) and Its Use in Medicine* New York 1940 The Macmillan Company
- U S Pharmacopoeial Conventions *The Pharmacopoeia of the U S of America* 13th Revision (USP XIII) Washington 1947
- Younans J B *Nutritional Deficiencies Diagnosis and Treatment* ed 2 Philadelphia Montreal London 1943 J B Lippincott Company

Ascorbic Acid

- Adams J Acker M and Friedman H A *Iodometric Titrimetric Determination of Ascorbic Acid* *J Am Pharmaceut Assoc Sci Ed* 36 (6) 170 172 (July) 1947
- Beisey O A *A Method for the Determination of Small Quantities of Ascorbic Acid and Dehydroascorbic Acid in Turbid and Colored Solutions in the Presence of Other Reducing Substances* *J Biol Chem* 126 (2) 771 784 (Dec) 1938
- Farmer C J and Abt A F *Determination of Reduced Ascorbic Acid in Small Amounts of Blood* *Proc Soc Exp Biol & Med* 31 146 150 (March) 1936
- Hochberg M Melnick D and Oser B L *Photometric Determination of Reduced and Total Ascorbic Acid* *Ind Eng Chem (Anal Ed)* 15 (3) 182 185 (March) 1943
- Huelin F L and Stephens I M *The Influence of Ferrous Iron in the Determination of Ascorbic Acid* *Australian J Exper Biol & Med Sc* 23 (1) 17 23 (March) 1947
- King C G *Chemical Methods for Determination of Vitamin C* *Ind Eng Chem (Anal Ed)* 13 (4) 5 207 (April) 1941
- Mills M B and Roe J H *A Critical Study of Proposed Modifications of the Roe and Koether Method for the Determination of Ascorbic Acid With Further Contributions to the Chemistry of This Procedure* *J Biol Chem* 170 (1) 159 164 (Sept) 1947
- Mundlin P L and Butler A M *The Determination of Ascorbic Acid in Plasma A Macromethod and Micromethod* *J Biol Chem* 122 6 3 636 (Feb) 1939
- Pecover V *The Microdetermination of Ascorbic Acid in Blood Plasma* *Australian J Exper Biol & Med Sc* 25 (2) 175 178 (June) 1947

Carotene

- Johnson R M and Baumann C A *Studies on the Reaction of Certain Carotenoids With Antimony Trichloride* *J Biol Chem* 169 (1) 83 90 (June) 1947

Choline

- Marenzi A D and Cardini C E *The Colorimetric Determination of Choline* *J Biol Chem* 147 (2) 363 370 (Feb) 1943
- Entenman C Tsurug A and Chaikoff I L *The Determination of Choline in Phospholipids* *J Biol Chem* 155 (1) 13 18 (Sept) 1944

Folic Acid

- Allfrey V Tepley L J Gessen C and King C H *A Fluorometric Method for the Determination of Pteroylglutamic Acid* *J Biol Chem* 178 465 481 (March) 1949
- Glazko A J and Wolf L M *Colorimetric Determination of Folic Acid and Adenine* *Arch. Biochem.* 21 241 243 (March) 1949

Nicotinic Acid

- Banerjee B Ghosh N C and Bhattacharya H A Chemical Method of the Estimation of Nicotinic Acid in the Presence of Sugar J Biol Chem 172 (2) 495 499 (Feb) 1945
- Harris L J and Raymond W D Assessment of the Level of Nutrition A Method for the Estimation of Nicotinic Acid in Urine Biochem J 33 (1) 037 051 (Dec) 1939
- Mueller A and Fox S H Chemical Determination of Nicotin J Biol Chem 167 (1) 291 9 (Jan) 1947
- Perlweig W A Levy E D and Sarett H P Nicotinic Acid Derivatives in Human Urine and Their Determination J Biol Chem 136 7 9745 (Dec) 1940
- Teeri A F and Shimer S E A Colorimetric Determination of Nicotinic Acid J Biol Chem 163 (1) 307 311 (April) 1944

Pyridone of N¹ Methylnicotinamide

- Rosen F Perlweig W A and Handler P A Fluorometric Assay for N¹ Methyl 6 pyridone 3 carboxylamide Proc Fed Soc 7 181 (March) 1943
- Rosen F Perlweig W A and Leder I A Fluorometric Method for the Determination of the 6 Pyridone of N¹ Methylnicotinamide in Urine J Biol Chem. 179 157 168 (May) 1943

4 Pyridoxic Acid

- Huff J W and Perlweig W A A Product of Oxidative Metabolism of Pyridoxine 2 Methyl 3 hydroxy 4 carboxy 5 hydroxymethylpyridine (4 pyridoxic acid) I Isolation From Urine Structure and Synthesis J Biol Chem 155 343 355 (Sept) 1944

Pyridoxine

- Hochberg H, Melnick D and Oser B L Chemical Determination of Pyridoxine in Biological Materials and Pharmaceutical Products The Multiple Nature of Vitamin B J Biol Chem 155 (1) 119 1 9 (Sept) 1944

Riboflavin

- Emmett A D Bird O D Brown R A Pearce G and Vandenberg J M Determination of Vitamin B₂ (Riboflavin) Comparison of Bioassay Microbiological and Fluorometric Methods Ind. Eng. Chem. (Anal. Ed.) 13 (4) 192 1 (April) 1941
- Loy H W Jr Report on Riboflavin (Microbiological)—Revised Method (Chemical)—Fluorometric Method Assoc. of Offic. Agric. Chemists 3rd (3) 461 464 1949
- Morell D M and Slater F C The Fluorometric Determination of Riboflavin in Urine Biochem. J 40 (5/6) 6, 657 1946
- Rubin S H De Ritter F Schuman F L and Bauerafeld J C Determination of Riboflavin in Low Potency Foods and Feeds Ind. Eng. Chem. (Anal. Ed.) 17 (3) 1 6 140 (March) 1945
- Slater F C and Morell W B A Modification of the Fluorometric Method of Determining Riboflavin in Biological Materials Biochem. J 40 644 65 1946

Thiamine

- Fgaas F and Meiklejohn A P The Estimation of Thiamine in Urine J Biol Chem 141 853 870 (Dec) 1941
- Friedemann T L and Kmiecik T C The Determination of Thiamine in Blood J Lab. & Clin. Med. 28 1 6 1 69 (July) 1943
- Henne y D J Chemical Methods for the Determination of Vitamin B Ind. Eng. Chem. (Anal. Ed.) 13 16 18 (April) 1941
- Hennessey D J, and Corecedo L R The Determination of Free and Phosphorylated Thiamin by a Modified Thiochrome Assay J Am. Chem. Soc. 61 (1) 1 9 193 (Jan) 1939
- Hochberg M Melnick D, and Oser B I Simplified Colorimetric Determination of Thiamine in Cereal Product Cereal Chem 22 () 83 90 (March) 1945
- Michelson O Condit, H and Keys, A. Determination of Thiamine in Urine by Means of the Thiochrome Technique J Biol. Chem 160 (1) 361 370 (Sept) 1945

Tocopherol

- Bence R The Determination of Tocopherol by the Color Reagent of Furrer and Meyer Z Physiol Chem. 282 15 157 194
- Minot A G The Determination of Tocopherol in Blood Serum J Lab. & Clin. Med. 29 (7) 7 90 (July) 1944
- Qualie M L and Buchler R A Simplified Hydrogenation Technique for the Determination of Blood Plasma Tocopherols J Biol. Chem 159 (3) 663 665 (Aug) 1945

Quaife M L, and Harris P L The Chemical Estimation of Tocopherols in Blood Plasma *J Biol Chem* 156 (2) 499 505 (Dec) 1944

Quaife M L Scrimshaw, N S and Lowry O H A Micromethod for Assay of Total Tocopherols in Blood Serum *J Biol Chem* 180 1-9 1935 (Oct) 1949

Trigonelline

Kodicek E and Wang Y L A New Method for the Estimation of Trigonelline in Urine and Foodstuffs *Nature* 148 334 (July) 1941

Vitamin A and Carotene

Adlersberg D Kann E Maurer A P Newerly K Winternitz W and Sobotka, H Studies on Serum Carotene in Man *Am J Digest Dis* 16 (8) 333 337 (Sept) 1949

Clausen S W, and McCoord A B The Carotinoids and Vitamin A in the Blood *J Pediat* 13 (2) 635 650 (Nov) 1938

Kawasaki, C and Suetsugu E Colorimetric Estimation of Vitamin A by Glycero-dichlorohydrin Reagent *J Pharm Soc Japan* 69 460 463 1949

Koch W and Kaplan D A Simultaneous Carr Price Reaction for the Determination of Vitamin A *J Biol Chem* 173 (1) 363 369 (March) 1948

Thompson, E Y A Photoelectric Spectrophotometer Suitable for the Measurement of Vitamin A by the Antimony Trichloride Reaction, *British J Nut* 3 (1) 43 50 1949

Vitamin D

DeWitt J B and Sullivan M X Spectrophotometric Procedure for Quantitative Estimation of Vitamin D *Ind Eng Chem (Anal Ed)* 18 117 119 (Feb) 1946

Muller P B The Colorimetric Determination of Vitamins A D and β Carotene With Particular Regard to Vitamin D *Helv Chim Acta* 30 (5) 117-1190 1949

Sebel A E Mayer A M and Kramer B A New Colorimetric Reaction of Vitamin D and D and Their Provitamins *Ind Eng Chem (Anal Ed)* 17 (3) 160 165 (March) 1945

SECTION IV

BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

F HORMONES

1 Ketosteroids in Urine

Reference

Consolazio W V and Talbott J H The Extraction and Determination of Ketosteroids in Urine *J Endocrinol* 27 355-39 (Sept.) 1940

Principle

The steroid linked to glucuronic acid is set free by hydrolyzing with hydrochloric acid and is extracted with carbon tetrachloride. Interfering substances are washed out and the resulting extract is equilibrated with alkaline meta dinitrobenzene. The final color is measured.

Apparatus

- 1 One continuous extractor unit. (See reference Made by MacMaster Bicknell Company Cambridge Mass See Fig 3)
- 2 Steam hydrolyzer (According to Consolazio and Talbott.)
- 3 All glass still to fit round bottom extraction flask
- 4 Automatic syringe pipette 0.1 ml capacity
- 5 Six pear shaped separatory funnels (10 ml capacity) with interchangeable ground glass stoppers.
- 6 Swivel separator funnel rack
- 7 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer
- 8 A quantity of 19 x 1.0 mm cuvettes.
- 9 A quantity of unglazed porcelain
- 10 A water bath set at 3 C.
- 11 An electric centrifuge
- 12 A steam bath

Reagents

- 1 Potassium hydroxide (KOH) exactly 2%
Ethyl alcohol (EtOH) aldehyde free
- 2 Meta dinitrobenzene $C_6H_3(NO_2)_2$ 2% Dissolve 20 gm in 100 ml of EtOH. Heat to 40 C and add 100 ml of 2% NaOH. After 5 minute cool and add 100 ml of water. Filter and wash thoroughly with water. Dry by suction. Recrystallize twice from 10 ml and 10 ml of absolute aldehyde free EtOH using 10 ml. Melting point 90.5-91.0 C. A mixture of 1% solution with equal portions of aqueous 2% NaOH gives no color after 60 minutes. A 2% solution in absolute aldehyde free EtOH stored in the dark may be used for 10-14 days.
- 3 Hydrochloric acid (HCl) concentrated
- 4 Carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4) C.I.
- 5 Ethyl alcohol (C_2H_5OH) absolute
- 6 Sodium hydroxide (NaOH) approximately 2% Dissolve 80 gm in 1000 ml water

214 *Biochemical Procedures*

- Quaife M L, and Harris P L The Chemical Estimation of Tocopherols in Blood Plasma, *J Biol Chem* 156 (2) 499-505 (Dec) 1944
- Quaife, M L, Scrimshaw, N S and Lowry O H A Micromethod for Assay of Total Tocopherols in Blood Serum *J Biol Chem* 180 1-9 1235 (Oct) 1949

Trigonelline

- Kodicek E, and Yang, Y L A New Method for the Estimation of Trigonelline in Urine and Food stuffs, *Nature* 148 ■ 24 (July) 1941

Vitamin A and Carotene

- Adlersberg D, Kann, S, Maurer A P Beverly K, Winternitz, W, and Sobotka H Studies on Serum Carotene in Man *Am. J Digest Dis* 16 (9) 333-337 (Sept) 1949
- Clausen ■ W and McCoord A B The Carotinoids and Vitamin A in the Blood, *J Pediatr* 13 (5) 635-640 (Nov) 1938
- Kawasaki C, and Ouenaga ■ Colorimetric Estimation of Vitamin A by Glycero-dichlorohydrin Reagent *J Pharm Soc Japan* 69 460-464, 1949
- Koch W and Kaplan, D A Simultaneous Carr Price Reaction for the Determination of Vitamin A *J Biol Chem* 173 (1) 363-369 (March) 1945
- Thompson S I A Photoelectric Spectrophotometer Suitable for the Measurement of Vitamin A by the Antimony Trichloride Reaction *British J Nut* 3 (1) 43-50, 1949

Vitamin D

- DeWitt, J H and Sullivan M T Spectrophotometric Procedure for Quantitative Estimation of Vitamin D *Ind. Eng Chem (Anal Ed)* 18 11, 119 (Feb) 1946
- Muller P B The Colorimetric Determination of Vitamins A D and β Carotene With Particular Regard to Vitamin D *Helv Chim Acta* 30 (5) 1142-1150 1949
- Sobel A E, Mayer A M and Kramer B A New Colorimetric Reaction of Vitamin D₂ and D and Their Provitamin *Ind Eng Chem. (Anal Ed)* 17 (3) 160-165 (March) 1945

SECTION IV

BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

F HORMONES

1 Ketosteroids in Urine

Reference

Consolazio W V and Talbott J H The Extraction and Determination of 17 Ketosteroids in Urine J Endocrinol 27 355 9 (Sept) 1940

Principle

The steroid linked to glucuronic acid is set free by hydrolyzing with hydrochloric acid and is extracted with carbon tetrachloride. Interfering substances are washed out and the resulting extract is equilibrated with alkaline meta-dinitrobenzene. The final color is measured.

Apparatus

- 1 One continuous extractor unit (See reference. Made by MacAlaster Bicknell Company Cambridge Mass. See Fig. 3)
- 2 Steam hydrolyzer (According to Consolazio and Talbott)
- 3 All glass still to fit round bottom extraction flask
- 4 Automatic syringe pipette 0.1 ml capacity
- 5 Six pear shaped separatory funnels (250 ml capacity) with interchangeable ground glass stoppers
- 6 Swivel separatory funnel rack
- 7 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer
- 8 A quantity of 19 x 150 mm cuvettes
- 9 A quantity of unglazed porcelain
- 10 A water bath set at 25 C
- 11 An electric centrifuge
- 12 A steam bath

Reagents

- 1 Potassium hydroxide (KOH) exactly 2 N
Ethyl alcohol (EtOH) aldehyde free
- 2 Meta-dinitrobenzene $\text{CH}(\text{NO}_2)_2$ Dissolve 0.0 gm in 750 ml of EtOH. Heat to 40 C and add 100 ml of 2 N NaOH. After 5 minutes cool and add 2500 ml of water. Filter and wash thoroughly with water. Dry by suction. Recrystallize twice from 120 ml and 0.0 ml of absolute aldehyde free EtOH using Norite. Melting point 90.5-91.0 C. A mixture of 1% solution with equal parts of aqueous 0.1 N NaOH gives no color after 60 minutes. A 1% solution in absolute aldehyde free EtOH stored in the dark may be used for 10-14 days.
- 3 Hydrochloric acid (HCl) concentrated
- 4 Carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4) C.P.
- 5 Ethyl alcohol ($\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$) absolute
- 6 Sodium hydroxide (NaOH) approximately 2 N Dissolve 80 gm in 1000 ml water

- 8 Sodium hydrosulfite (Lycopon) (Obtained from Central Scientific Company)
To 100 ml of 1 N NaOH add 10 gm of Lycopon Mix quickly pour into a separatory funnel and cover with light mineral oil
- 9 Androsterone standard. Dissolve 250 mg androsterone in 1000 ml aldehyde free absolute EtOH. One ml = 0.25 mg
- 10 Mineral oil.
- 11 Norite

Collection and Storage of Urine

Collect 3 overnight specimens on successive nights keeping the specimens cold and brought to the laboratory. Use no preservative. Pool the two specimens and if they measure not more than 1000 ml extract the total pool. No sample should be assayed which shows signs of putrefaction. If necessary to keep the urine as dry it and keep it in a refrigerator.

Procedure

- 1 Into a steam hydrolyzer measure 500 ml of urine and 50 ml of concentrated HCl. Hydrolyze with steam for 30 minutes.
- 2 Cool with running water.
- 3 Add approximately 80 ml of CCl₄ to extractor and approximately 75 ml of CCl₄ to a round bottomed flask.
- 4 Run hydrolyzed urine into extractor, make proper connections and extract for 60 minutes.
- 5 Into 4 separatory funnels pipette 10 ml of 2 N sodium hydroxide.
- 6 Suck CCl₄ extract into first funnel and wash extract flask with two 10 ml portions of CCl₄.
- 7 Wash 17 ketosteroids (a) 4 times with 10 ml of 3 N sodium hydroxide (b) 1 time with 10 ml of 10% Lycopon in 1 N NaOH until the pigment disappears. Shake for 30 seconds longer. Pigments disappear when all oxygen has been absorbed. Do not open separatory funnel until complete separation has occurred. Then deliver rapidly into a separatory funnel containing 550 ml of water. If this step is not carried out as described the red pigment appears again. (c) Wash with water.
- 8 After washing with water let settle for 10 minutes and deliver directly into distilling flask. Add a piece of unglazed porcelain.
- 9 Distill off CCl₄.
- 10 Dry thoroughly with suction and dilute to 50 ml or 100 ml with aldehyde free EtOH.
- 11 Into dry centrifuge tube pipette 0.5 ml of alcohol extract.
- 12 Add 0.5 ml of 2% meta-dinitrobenzene.
- 13 Add 0.5 ml of 1 N potassium hydroxide. Stopper with new clean cork.
- 14 Equilibrate for 5 minutes at 25°C.
- 15 Add 10.0 ml absolute EtOH. Mix.
- 16 Centrifuge. Transfer to a cuvette. (Caution: Centrifuge must be cold.)
- 17 Read within 15 minutes at 550 mμ setting the blank at 100% T.

Standard Curve

- 1 0.2 ml of androsterone in EtOH.
- 2 0.5 ml of meta-dinitrobenzene in alcohol.
- 3 0.5 ml of 2 N KOH.
- 4 Equilibrate 5 minutes at 25°C.
- 5 Add 10.0 ml of absolute EtOH. (If androsterone is dissolved in more than 0.2 ml of EtOH add androsterone to tube and evaporate EtOH with air current. Then add 0.5 ml aldehyde free EtOH, 0.5 ml meta-dinitrobenzene and proceed.) The points in the standard curve range from 0.05 mg through 0.5 mg of androsterone in the cuvette.

Calculation

$$\text{mg 17 Ketosteroids/1000 ml} = \frac{(\text{mcg in cuvette}) \times (\text{total ml extract}) \times 1000}{1000 \times (\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml urine sample})}$$

Example

Volume of urine extracted 500 ml Volume of extract 10 ml Volume of extract assayed 0.1 ml Reading 0.6%T equivalent to 180 mcg in cuvette

$$\text{mg 17 Ketosteroids/1000 ml urine} = \frac{180 \times 10 \times 1000}{1000 \times 0.1 \times 500} = 18 \text{ mg/1000 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 All glassware must be chemically clean especially after separation of urine. The glassware used after the ether phase must be dry. A useful additional precaution is to heat glassware in the oven to destroy any steroids. Stop-cock grease should not come in contact with solutions if possible. It is necessary to grease stopcocks each time they are used.
- 2 Cork stoppers must never come in contact with solutions. Use tinfoil over them or use ground glass junctions.

2 Hormones Miscellaneous References**Acetylcholine**

- Tower D B and McEachern D. Experiences With the 'Venus Heart Method' for Determining Acetylcholine. *Canad. J. Research* 26B: 183-187 (April) 1949.
- Wait R B. The Action of Acetylcholine on the Isolated Heart of Venus Mercenaria. *Biol. Bull.* 85: 70-85 (Aug.) 1943.

Adrenaline

- Annersten S, Gronwall A and Koiv E. The Fluorimetric Determination of Adrenaline in Blood Plasma. *Scandinav. J. Clin. & Lab. Invest.* 1: 60-69 1940.
- Bloor W P and Bullen S S. The Determination of Adrenalin in Blood. *J. Biol. Chem.* 138 (2): 27-39 (April) 1941.
- Jorgensen K S. Determination of Adrenaline Content of Blood With the Fluorescence Method. *Acta Pharmacol. Toxicol.* 1: 7-39 1941.
- Kobro M. Investigations of Adrenalin Concentration in the Blood. I. A Quantitative Chemical Method for Determination of the Concentration of Adrenalin in the Blood. *Acta med. Scandinav.* 124: 511-521 1946.
- Whitehorn J C. A Chemical Method for Estimating Epinephrine in Blood. *J. Biol. Chem.* 108 (3): 633-643 (March) 1935.

Androgens

- Callow N H, Callow R K and Emmens C W. Colorimetric Determination of Substances Containing the Grouping CH_2CO in Urine Extracts as an Indication of Androgen Content. *Biochem. J.* 32: 1312-1331 (June) 1938.
- Hilmer P E and Hess W C. Spectrophotometric Determination of Androsterone and Testosterone. *Anal. Chem.* 21: 82-83 (July) 1949.
- Langstroth G O, Talbot N B, and Fineman A. Spectrochemical Assay of Androsterone and Dehydroandrosterone in Simple Solutions. *J. Biol. Chem.* 130 (2): 585-591 (Oct.) 1939.
- Munson P J, Jones M E, McCall P J and Gallagher T F. A Colorimetric Method for Estimations of Dehydroandrosterone and Its Applications to Urine Extracts. *J. Biol. Chem.* 176: 73-82 (Oct.) 1948.
- Nielsen, A T. Colorimetric Assay of Testosterone. *Acta Endocrinol.* 1: 367-374 1949.

Cortical Steroids

- Schneider J J. Studies on the Excretion of Adrenocortical Compounds. I. Isolation of the 17-Hydroxy-11-Dehydrocorticosterone in Normal Males. *J. Biol. Chem.* 183: 363-366 (March) 1950.

Corticosteroids

- Corcoran A C and Page I H. Methods for the Chemical Determination of Corticosteroids in Urine and Plasma. *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 33: 176-183 (Oct.) 1945.
- Daughaday W H, Jaffe H and Williams F H. Chemical Assay for Cortisol. Determination of Formaldehyde Liberated on Oxidation With Periodic Acid. *J. Clin. Endocrinol.* 1: 166-174 (Feb.) 1948.

- Furchgott R F Rovenkrantz H and Shorr E Infra red Absorption Spectra of Steroids IV Adrenal Cortical Hormones and Related Steroids J Biol Chem 171 () 523 5 9 (Dec) 1947
- Talbot N B Saltzman A H Wom R L and Wolfe J K The Color metric Assay of Urinary Corticosteroid like Substances J Biol Chem 160 () 535 546 (Oct) 1945
- Venning E H Kazmin V E and Bell J C Biological Assay of Adrenal Corticoids Endocrinol 11 () 989 (Feb) 1946

Estrogens

- Cohen H and Bates R W A Simple Quantitative Colorimetric Method for Estrogenic Steroids J Clin Endocrinol 7 (10) 701 707 (Oct) 1947
- Dunford M A The Colorimetric Determination of Some Synthetic Oestrogens Canad J Research 7 B 646 65 (July) 1949
- Evans J S Varney R F and Koch F C The Mouse Uterine Weight Method for the Assay of Estrogens Endocrinol 28 47 752 (May) 1941
- Funkelstein M Microdetermination of Steroid Estrogens in Urine by Fluorometry Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 111 181 184 (Nov Dec) 1945
- Jailer J W A Fluorometric Method for the Determination of Estrogens Endocrinol 41 195 01 (Aug) 1947
- Malpress F H The Colorimetric Estimation of Stilboestrol Hexoestrol and Their Glucuronides in Urine Biochem J 43 13 1 6 1949
- Stevenson M F and Marron G F The Determination of Oestrogens in Human Pregnancy Urine A New Method of Correcting for the Brown Colour Developed in the Kober Reaction by Non oestrogenic Substances Biochem J 41 (4) 507 511 1947
- Sago C M and Roberts S The Determination of Protein Bound Blood Estrogen Endocrinol 41 3 3 4 (Oct) 1947
- Tubis M and Bloom A Colorimetric Determination of Diethylstilbestrol Ind Eng Chem (Anal Ed) 14 800 194
- Van Bruggen J T A Comparison of Methods Used for the Hydrolysis of Conjugated Urinary Estrogens J Lab & Clin Med 33 0, 215 (Feb) 1949

Gonadotrophins

- Dekanski J The Kohn Adsorption Method for the Quantitative Assay of Urinary Gonadotrophin Brit J Exper Path. 30 (4) 77 9 (Aug) 1949
- Haak M A I Jr and Sherman A I Quantitative Bio Assay of Chorionic Gonadotrophin With the Male Frog Endocrinol 44 54 545 (June) 1949
- Smith I H Albright F and Dodge E Modifications in Method for the Precipitation and Assay of Increased Amounts of Pituitary Gonadotropic Substances in the Urine J Lab & Clin Med 28 1761 1766 (Nov) 1943
- Varney R E and Koch F C A Method for the Assay of the Gonadotropin Content of Normal Human Urine Endocrinology 30 399 407 (March) 1942

Histamine

- Mintire F C Poth L W and Shaw J L The Purification of Histamine for Bioassay J Biol Chem 170 (2) 53 544 (Oct) 1947

Parathormone

- Opieńska Blauth J Preparation and Determination of Parathyroid Hormones Ann Univ Maria Curie Skłodowska Lublin Polonia Sec D 2 13 38 1947

Pituitary Adrenocorticotropin

- Fosham P H Thora G W Prunty F T G and Hills A G Clinical Studies With Pituitary Adrenocorticotropin J Clin Endocrinol 8 15 111 (Jan) 1948
- Locke W Albert A and Kepler E J Adrenocortical Activity of Human Urine Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 72 () 470 474 (Nov) 1949
- Sayers M A Sayers G and Woodbury L A The Assay of Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone by the Adrenal Isotopic Acid Depletion Method Endocrinol 42 379 383 (May) 1948

Protein Bound Iodine

- Ba sett A M Coons A H Salter W T and Simmons S M Protein Bound Iodine in Blood V Naturally Occurring Iodine Fractions and Their Chemical Behavior Am J Med Sc 202 516 5 1941

Steroids

- Farnett J Henly A A and Moos C J O R The Polarographic Estimation of Steroid Hormones I Polarography of Neutral 17 Ketosteroids in Urinary Extracts Biochem J 40 445 449 1946

- Clark L C Jr and Thompson H A New Series of Reagents for the Colorimetric Determination of Steroids *Science* 107 499 431 (April) 1948
- Dobriner K Lieberman S and Rhoads C P Studies in Steroid Metabolism I. Methods for the Isolation and Qualitative Estimation of Neutral Steroids Present in Human Urine *J Biol Chem* 172 241 261 (Jan) 1948
- Drekter I J Pearson S, Bartczak E and McGavack T H A Rapid Method for the Determination of Total Urinary 17 Ketosteroids *J Clin Endocrinol* 7 (1) 795 800 (Dec) 1947
- Engel L L Patterson H R Wilson H and Schinkel M The Colorimetric Estimation of Urinary Neutral Steroid Alcohols *J Biol Chem* 183 47 72 (March) 1950
- Fraser R W, Forbes A P Albright F Sulkowitch H, and Reifenshtein E Jr Colorimetric Assay of 17 Ketosteroids in Urine *J Clin Endocrinol* 1 234 36 (March) 1941
- Heard R D H and Sobel H VIII A Colorimetric Method for the Estimation of Reducing Steroids *J Biol Chem* 165 (2) 687 698 (Oct) 1946
- Holtorf, A F and Koch F C The Colorimetric Determination of 17 Ketosteroids and Their Application to Urine Extracts *J Biol Chem* 135 377 397 (Sept) 1940
- Lieberman S Dobriner K, Hill B R Fieser L F and Rhoads C P Studies in Steroid Metabolism II Identification and Characterization of Ketosteroids Isolated From Urine of Healthy and Diseased Persons *J Biol Chem* 172 263 295 (Jan) 1948
- Talbot N H Butler A M and McLachlan E The Colorimetric Assay of Total α and β 17 ketosteroids in Extracts of Human Urine *J Biol Chem* 132 (2) 595 603 (Feb) 1940
- Tompsett S L and Oastler E G The Excretion of Corticosteroids The Determination of the Total Free Reducing Ketosteroids in Urine *Glasgow M J* 28 349 365 (Nov) 1947
- Tompsett S L The Determination of Steroids in Urine *The Analyst* 74 617 (Jan.) 1949
- Wilson H and Carter P Stabilization of the Alcoholic Potassium Hydroxide in Colorimetric 17 ketosteroids Determinations *Endocrinol* 41 (5) 417 421 (Nov) 1947
- Thyroxine**
- Pitt Rivers R and Lerman J Physiological Activity of the Optically Active Isomers of Thyroxine *J Endocrinol* 5 (5) 293 298 (June) 1943

SECTION IV

BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

G ENZYMES

1 Lipase in Serum

Reference

Johnson T A and Bockus H L Diagnostic Significance of Determinations of Serum Lipase Arch Int Med 66 6 7 (July) 1940

Principle

This method depends on the estimation of fatty acids produced by the hydrolysis of an olive oil emulsion on which lipase in the blood serum has been acting during a 4 hour period under optimum conditions of pH and temperature

Apparatus

- 1 A water bath set at 100 C
- 2 An incubator set at 37.5 C
- 3 Accurately calibrated 0.5 ml and 1 ml syringe pipette
- 4 A 10 ml burette
- 5 A Waring Blender

Reagents

- 1 Phenolphthalein solution 1% in alcohol
- 2 Disodium hydrogen phosphate ($\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$) Dissolve 59.35 gm in 1000 ml of distilled water to make an M/3 solution
- 3 Potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) Dissolve 45.33 gm in 1000 ml of distilled water to make M/3 solution
- 4 Mixed buffer solution Mix 10 parts of $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ with 3 parts of KH_2PO_4
- 5 Olive oil emulsion a 50% solution Prepare by using a 5% solution of acacia as the emulsifying agent Add 0.1 percent of sodium benzoate as a preservative Mix in Waring Blender
- 6 Ethyl alcohol 95%
- 7 Sodium hydroxide 0.05 N See under volumetric analysis for making up 1 N sodium hydroxide and dilute exactly 20 times

Procedure

- 1 Pipette 3 ml of distilled water into each of two 15 ml centrifuge tubes A and B
- 2 Add exactly 1 ml serum to each and shake
- 3 Place tube A (control) in a 100 C water bath for 5 minutes to inactivate the lipase Be sure to cool before proceeding
- 4 Add 0.5 ml of buffer solution to each tube
- 5 Then add 0.5 ml of olive oil emulsion to each and shake
- 6 Incubate at 37.5 C for 4 hours
- 7 At the end of that time add 3 ml of 95% alcohol and 2 drops of phenolphthalein indicator
- 8 Titrate each tube to a faint pink color with 0.05 N sodium hydroxide

3 **Cholinesterase in Serum and Cells***Reference*

Michel H O Electrometric Method for the Determination of Red Blood Cell and Plasma Cholinesterase Activity, *Fed Proc* 8 99 (March) 1949

Principle

Cholinesterase hydrolyses acetylcholine bromide with the production of acetic acid. The resultant drop in pH is measured in a barbital phosphate buffer when serum is mixed with a known excess of acetylcholine bromide. Results are expressed as decrease in pH units per hour.

Apparatus

- 1 Constant temperature bath at 25 C
- 2 Beckman pH meter Model G
- 3 A number of 15 ml thin wall glass test tubes
- 4 Accurately calibrated 10 and 100 ml syringe pipettes
- 5 0.1 ml volumetric serology pipettes
- 6 Small glass beakers 20 ml capacity

*Reagents*1 *Preparation of the Stock Buffer*

A stock buffer, which will keep approximately 1 month in a glass stoppered bottle at room temperature and which contains 0.1 M sodium diethylbarbiturate (Barbital Sodium Merck) and 0.0167 M K HPO in distilled water is prepared as follows:

a 90.618 gm of barbital sodium and 2.9092 gm of K HPO are weighed accurately and placed in a clean one liter beaker. About 50 ml of distilled water are added. This solution will have a pH of about 9.9. Dilute acid (approximately 0.1 N HCl, 1 ml of concentrated HCl to 1.0 ml of water) is added slowly and with constant stirring to bring the pH of the buffer down to between 8.2 and 8.4. If strong acid is used, if addition of the acid is rapid or if stirring is inadequate, white crystals of barbital may appear. These may be redissolved by heating and they will remain in solution if the solution is cooled slowly. The buffer is then transferred with washing into a volumetric flask and brought to volume with distilled water.

b *Preparation of Working Buffer*

A working buffer must be made up fresh each day. It is made from the stock buffer with a salt solution containing 1.5 N NaCl and 0.30 N MgSO in distilled water (87.68 gm NaCl and 18.06 gm of MgSO dissolved in water up to one liter) in the proportions: 3 ml stock buffer, 10 ml salt solution and 87 ml distilled water. This gives 100 ml of working buffer. In the preparation of the working buffer, exactly 1 ml of stock buffer and 10 ml of salt solution are mixed with about 80 ml of distilled water. The pH is then adjusted to exactly 8.00 by addition of approximately 0.1 N HCl if its pH is over 8.00 or approximately 0.1 N NaOH (4 gm NaOH per liter) if its pH is under 8.00. The buffer is then transferred with washing into a volumetric flask and brought to 100 ml with distilled water.

3 *Preparation of Acetylcholine Solution*

A solution of acetylcholine bromide is used 3.73% in distilled water as obtained commercially is impure and must be purified. Commercially obtained acetylcholine is dissolved in a glass stoppered flask. This is cooled in ice water. Cold ether is then added until turbid. The mixture is then placed in a refrigerator for 48 hours. The mixture is then separated by filtration through a filter. The filtrate is dried over NaOH. The 3.73% solution is then prepared.

The material is placed in a 95% alcohol for 24 hours in a separated cold 95% alcohol and

Procedure

- 1 Pipette 10 ml of working buffer into a thin glass test tube and place in a water bath at 5 C for at least 10 minutes
- 2 Add 0.1 ml of unknown serum (or plasma) and 10 ml of acetylcholine solution to the buffer
- 3 The exact time of addition of acetylcholine solution is noted. Mixing with a glass stirring rod is performed on the addition of the acetylcholine solution.
- 4 The test tube is stoppered (rubber) and placed back in the 5 C water bath
- 5 Readings are conveniently taken at exactly 1 hour but if this is impracticable they may be taken at any time after an hour and the decrease in pH corrected to one hour. For sera with very low cholinesterase values incubation for longer periods than one hour (e.g. up to 3 hours) may be required to give reliable readings. The reading is noted and the corrected value for pH drop per hour determined from the accompanying table (Table 11) which makes correction for non enzymatic hydrolysis of acetylcholine and change in rate of pH drop with varying pH's
- 6 It should be noted that all glassware must be scrupulously clean as small changes in pH may be caused by dirt and this will affect readings. It is suggested that all readings be done in duplicate as a check and that with every set of unknown sera on which determinations are being run a serum whose cholinesterase activity is known be run simultaneously as a check on the method

Calculation

- 1 Two significant corrections have to be made in the computation of units Δ pH/hr
 - a. Non enzymatic hydrolysis of the substrate
 - b. The effect of pH on the specific activity of cholinesterase
- 2 The complete calculation is corrected Δ pH units/hour =

$$\frac{(8.00 - \text{final pH} + \text{blank} \pm \text{specific effect of pH})}{(\text{Total hours})}$$
- 3 Table 11 incorporates the two necessary corrections and in addition the subtraction from pH 8.00

TABLE 11

MICHEL'S METHOD FOR ESTIMATING CHOLINESTERASE ACTIVITY CORRECTED VALUES FOR pH DECREMENT PER HOUR FOR pH 6.0 TO pH 7.99

(This table incorporates into the observed Δ pH corrections for nonenzymatic hydrolysis of acetylcholine bromide and for effect of pH on specific activity and it subtracts the corrected pH from 8.00)

pH Units As Read	6.00	6.2	6.4	6.6	6.8
	Corrected Δ pH Units				
6	1.74	1.7	1.70	1.67	1.64
6.3	1.63	1.60	1.58	1.56	1.54
6.4	1.5	1.50	1.48	1.46	1.44
6.5	1.43	1.40	1.38	1.36	1.34
6.6	1.3	1.30	1.28	1.27	1.26
6.7	1.2	1.2	1.20	1.19	1.17
6.8	1.15	1.15	1.13	1.10	1.08
6.9	1.06	1.04	1.03	1.01	1.00
7.0	0.98	0.96	0.94	0.93	0.91
7.1	0.89	0.87	0.85	0.83	0.81
7.2	0.8	0.77	0.75	0.73	0.71
7.3	0.69	0.67	0.65	0.63	0.61
7.4	0.59	0.56	0.54	0.52	0.50
7.5	0.47	0.45	0.43	0.40	0.38
7.6	0.36	0.34	0.32	0.30	0.27
7.7	0.25	0.23	0.20	0.18	0.16
7.8	0.14	0.12	0.10	0.08	0.06
7.9	0.04	0.03	0.0	0.01	0.00

Chymotrypsin

Iselin M M, Huang H T, and Niemann C A Colorimetric Method for the Determination of Chymotrypsin Activity, *J Biol Chem* 183 403 408 (April) 1950

Cytochrome Oxidase

Smith F, and Stoltz, E A Colorimetric Method for the Determination of Cytochrome Oxidase, *J Biol Chem* 179 891 902 (June) 1949

Hyaluronidase

Kass E H, and Beastone C V Role of the Mucoid Polysaccharide (Hyaluronic Acid) in the Virulence of Group A Hemolytic Streptococci, *J Exper Med* 70 319 330 (March) 1944

Tolksdorf M, McCready M H, McCullagh, D R and Schwenk E The Turbidimetric Assay of Hyaluronidase *J Lab & Clin Med* 34 74 80 (Jan) 1949

Warren G H, Durso J G and Levin N R A Modified Turbidimetric Method for the Assay of Hyaluronidase *Endocrinology* 43 48 51 (July) 1948

Dorfman A and Ott M L A Turbidimetric Method for the Assay of Hyaluronidase *J Biol Chem* 172 367 370 (Feb) 1948

Lipase

Seligman A L and Nachlas M M The Colorimetric Determination of Lipase and Esterase in Human Serum *J Clin Investigation* 29 (1) 31 38 (Jan) 1950

Lipoxidase

Sumner J H and Smith G N The Estimation of Lipoxidase Activity *Arch Biochem* 14 87 92 (July) 1947

Peptic Activity

Fodor P J, Price V E and Greenstein J P Enzymatic Hydrolysis of Saturated and Unsaturated Tripeptides *J Biol Chem* 180 (1) 193 208 (Aug) 1949

Tomarelli, R M, Charney J and Harding M L The Use of Azoalbumin as a Substrate in the Colorimetric Determination of Peptic and Tryptic Activity, *J Lab & Clin Med* 34 478 483 (March) 1949

Wesselman, H J and Hilly W W The Turbidimetric Determination of Peptic Activity, *J Am Pharmaceut Assoc Sci Ed* 37 357 359 (Sept) 1948

Peroxidase

Eitner, J The Estimation of Peroxidase Activity *Biochem J* 44 30 38 (Jan) 1949

Phosphatase

Andersch M A and Szczypinski A J Use of p Nitrophenylphosphate as the Substrate in Determination of Serum Acid Phosphatase *Am J Clin Path* 17 (7) 571 574 (July) 1947

Hudson P B, Brendler H and Scott W W A Simple Method for the Determination of Serum Acid Phosphatase *J Urol* 58 (1) 89 92 (July) 1947

King E J and Armstrong A R A Convenient Method for Determining Serum and Bile Phosphatase Activity *Canad M A J* 31 (4) 376 381 (Oct) 1934

Sherlock M P V and Walshe V Hepatic Alkaline Phosphatase Histological and Micro Chemical Studies on Liver Tissue in Normal Subjects and in Liver and Bone Disease *J Path & Bact* 59 (4) 610 630 (Oct) 1947

Proteolytic Activity

Iselin B M and Niemann C A Procedure for the Determination of Proteolytic Activity *J Biol Chem* 182 821 8 9 (Feb) 1950

Schwartz T B and Engel F L A Photometric Ninhydrin Method for the Measurement of Proteolysis *J Biol Chem* 184 197 200 (May) 1950

Trypsin

Lineweaver H, Fraenkel Conrat H and Bean, R M Determination of Trypsin in the Presence of Egg White Trypsin Inhibitor and Demonstration of Absence of Trypsin From Egg White *J Biol Chem* 177 205 207 (Jan) 1949

Spencer W H. Gastrointestinal Studies. VIII A Method for the Quantitative Estimation of Trypsin in Gastric Contents *J Biol Chem* 21 163 167 (June) 1915

White F D and Bowman J M The Estimation of Trypsin *Canad J Research* 25 E 153 161 (Aug) 1947

SECTION IV

BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

H PIGMENTS

1 Hemoglobin (Sanford Sheard)

Reference

Sanford A H and Sheard C The Determination of Hemoglobin With the Photoelectrometer J Lab & Clin Med 15 483 489 (Feb) 1930

Principle

Blood is diluted with enough water to insure that all of the hemoglobin is converted to oxyhemoglobin. Complete solution is assisted by the addition of a small quantity of sodium carbonate.

Apparatus

- 1 A Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer
- Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 3 Micro pipettes 0.1 ml accurately calibrated
- 4 A quantity of 10 ml volumetric flasks

Reagents

- 1 Sodium carbonate a 5% solution in water

Procedure

- 1 Into a 50 ml volumetric flask containing approximately 5 ml of distilled water pipette exactly 0.1 ml of blood using the pipette out at least 6 times. Add 0.2 ml carbonate dilute to 50 ml and transfer to cuvette set water blank at 100% T at 550 mμ and read unknowns.

Calibration Curve

Determine the exact oxygen capacity of blood specimens equilibrated 0.30 minutes with room air using the Van Slyke technique for analysis. The values in volumes percent oxygen are first corrected for dissolved oxygen and then divided by a factor of 1.34 for conversion to grams of hemoglobin. Set up dilutions of the blood using the Sanford Sheard method in the range 5 to 10 gm hemoglobin/100 ml blood.

Calculation

$$\text{gm hemoglobin/100 ml blood} = \frac{(\text{mg Hb/ml in cuvette}) \times (\text{total dilution}) \times 100}{1000 \times \text{ml blood}}$$

Example

ml blood 0.1 Total dilution 50 ml
mg Hb/ml in cuvette 0.30

$$\text{gm hemoglobin/100 ml blood} = \frac{(0.30) \times 50 \times 100}{1000 \times 0.1} = 150 \text{ gm/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 The color is stable for at least 30 minutes at usual room temperatures, but is unstable in the heat
- 2 This method is good for clinical purposes. For more precision and for fractionating the heme pigment fractions the method of Evelyn and Malloy is recommended.

Normal Hemoglobin Standards

Various authors have proposed different values for 'normal' or 100% hemoglobin. For instance Haldane used 13.8 gm/100 ml and Hagen 15.6 gm/100 ml. The following distribution curve was derived from analyses of the oxygen capacity of 791 healthy males

OXYGEN CAPACITY (ml/100 ml BLOOD)	NUMBER OF SUBJECTS (% OF TOTAL)
From 15.0 to 17.0	1.2
From 17.1 to 18.0	3.9
From 18.1 to 19.0	15.4
From 19.1 to 20.0	5.3
From 20.1 to 21.0	30.6
From 21.1 to 22.0	16.2
From 22.1 to 23.0	4.6
From 23.1 to 23.6	0.8

The average of all analyses was 20.11 ml oxygen/100 ml or 15.0 gm Hb/100 ml

EXAMPLE OF HEMOGLOBIN CALIBRATION CHART

Direct conversion gm Hb/100 ml blood when 0.1 ml of blood is diluted to 50 ml

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
°C	gm Hb/100 ml BLOOD									
40	19.6	19.1	18.6	18.1	17.5	17.0	16.6	16.1	15.7	15.2
50	14.8	14.4	14.1	13.6	13.2	12.8	12.5	12.0	11.6	11.3
60	10.9	10.6	10.1	9.8	9.5	9.2	8.8	8.4	8.0	7.9
70	7.6	7.3	6.9	6.6	6.4	6.1	5.8	5.6	5.0	4.9
80	4.7	4.5	4.3	3.9	3.6	3.4	3.3	3.1	2.9	2.7

2 Total Hemoglobin (Evelyn Malloy)**Reference**

Evelyn, R. A. and Malloy H. T. (Modified). Microdetermination of Oxyhemoglobin, Methemoglobin and Sulfhemoglobin in a Single Sample of Blood, *J. Biol. Chem.* 126: 655-662 (Dec.) 1938

Principle

Total hemoglobin is determined by converting all the hemoglobin present to cyanmethemoglobin and measuring the light absorption at 440 mμ.

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 2 Micro pipettes 0.1 ml accurately calibrated
- 3 A variety of 50 ml volumetric flasks
- 4 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm

Reagents

- 1 Phosphate buffer (pH 6.6) 0.1 M (See section on buffers)
- 2 Potassium ferricyanide a 1.0% solution in water
- 3 Sodium cyanide or potassium cyanide a 5% solution in water **POISON!**
- 4 Concentrated ammonium hydroxide

Procedure

- 1 Introduce exactly 0.1 ml of whole blood into a 50 ml volumetric flask containing approximately 25 ml of distilled water. Rinse pipette at least 6 times.
- 2 Add 10 ml of 1/10 M phosphate buffer pH 6.6 and mix.
- 3 Add 3 drops of 20% potassium ferricyanide mix and let stand for 10 minutes.
- 4 Add 3 drops of 5% NaCN or KCN mix and let stand 2 minutes.
- 5 Add 1 or 2 drops of concentrated NH₄OH and mix.
- 6 Dilute to 50 ml with distilled water.
- 7 Prepare a blank tube in same manner as above being careful to add exactly the same quantity of potassium ferricyanide.
- 8 Set blank at 100% T at 540 mμ and read the unknowns.

Calibration Curve

- 1 Determine the oxygen capacity of samples of blood as described under the method of Sanford and Sheard.
Run appropriate dilutions through the Evelyn Malloy procedure in the range 5 to 25 g hemoglobin/100 ml blood.

Calculation

$$\text{gm hemoglobin/100 ml blood} = \frac{(\text{mg/ml in cuvette}) \times (\text{dilution}) \times (100)}{(1000) \times (\text{ml blood sample})}$$

Example

62.5% T was equivalent to 0.30 mg Hb/ml in cuvette
For analysis 0.1 ml blood was finally diluted to 50 ml

$$\text{gm hemoglobin/100 ml blood} = \frac{(0.30) \times (50) \times (100)}{(1000) \times (0.1)} = 15.0 \text{ gm/100 ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 Be sure to wash out the micro pipette at least 6 times in the water.
- 2 The color is stable for at least 30 minutes.

Oxyhemoglobin, Methemoglobin, Sulfhemoglobin

Reference

Evelyn K. A. and Malloy H. T. Microdetermination of Oxyhemoglobin, Methemoglobin and Sulfhemoglobin in a Single Sample of Blood. *J. Biol. Chem.* 126: 655-666 (Dec.) 1938.

Principle

The methemoglobin is measured photometrically after being converted to cyanmethemoglobin. The oxyhemoglobin is converted first to methemoglobin with ferricyanide and then to cyanmethemoglobin. Sulfhemoglobin is estimated by direct observation at 630 mμ with a correction for the absorption by oxyhemoglobin and cyanmethemoglobin at this wavelength.

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr. Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 3 Micro pipettes 0.1 ml accurately calibrated
- 4 Dropping bottles

Reagents

- 1 Phosphate buffer M/15 pH 6.6 (See Sørensen's tables in the section on buffers).
Phosphate buffer M/60 diluted from above when needed.
- 2 Potassium ferricyanide, 20% (w/v)
- 3 Potassium cyanide, 5% (w/v)

- 4 Sodium cyanide (NaCN), a 10% solution in water POISON!
- 5 Acetic acid (CH₃COOH) a 12% solution in water
- 6 Solution of 10% NaCN mixed within ONE HOUR of use with an equal volume of 12% acetic acid.
- 7 Ammonium hydroxide (NH₄OH) concentrated

Procedure for Methemoglobin

- 1 Pipette exactly 0.1 ml of fresh whole blood into 9.9 ml of M/60 phosphate buffer in cuvette. Wash out the pipette at least 6 times
- 2 Let stand for 2 minutes
- 3 Make up a blank with 10 ml of M/60 buffer and set at 0 density at a wave length of 635 mμ.
- 4 Read the unknown sample (Reading D)
- 5 Add 1 drop of neutralized NaCN to convert MHB to MHbCN
- 6 After 2 minutes read again at 635 mμ with the same blank. This is D₂. The difference (D - D₂) is proportional to the concentration of MHB

Procedure for Sulfhemoglobin

- 1 Clear the solution for SHb determination by addition of 1 drop of concentrated ammonium hydroxide
- 2 Read in colorimeter at 670 mμ with water blank at 0 density. This reading is D

Procedure for Total Hemoglobin

- 1 Pipette 2 ml of this solution into a second cuvette
- 2 Add 8 ml of M/15 phosphate buffer of pH 6.6 and 0.05 ml of 20% potassium ferricyanide
- 3 Let stand for 2 minutes to allow HbO₂ to be converted to MHB
- 4 Add 1 drop of NaCN reagent to convert MHB to MHbCN for total hemoglobin
- 5 Read D₂ after 2 minutes at 540 mμ, with a blank consisting of 10 ml water 1 drop cyanide reagent and 0.05 ml 20% potassium ferricyanide

Calibration Curves

- 1 Estimate the total hemoglobin of samples of blood by means of the oxygen capacity as described under the Sanford Sheard method for hemoglobin
- 2 Following the procedure described above run samples through the method for total hemoglobin and compute K_M, the calibration constant for total hemoglobin
- 3 At the same time convert HbO₂ to MHB as under total hemoglobin but run through as for methemoglobin and compute the calibration constant K_M M
- 4 The calibration constant for sulfhemoglobin K_{SH} is assumed to be 10 unless a sample of pure sulfhemoglobin can be prepared

Calculation

- 1 $T = \text{gm total hemoglobin/100 ml blood} = \frac{100 \times D}{K_{M}}$
- 2 $M = \text{gm methemoglobin/100 ml blood} = \frac{100 (D - D_2)}{K_{M M}}$
- 3 $S = \text{gm sulfhemoglobin/100 ml blood} = \frac{100 \times D - (8.5 \times M) - (4.4 \times T)}{10}$
- 4 Corrected value of T = T from equation 1 - 0.2 × S
- 5 HbO₂ = Corrected T - M - S

Precautions

- 1 The least accurate part of this method is that for sulfhemoglobin. Fortunately this compound is rarely present in amounts over 0.5 gm/100 ml blood.

4 Pigments Miscellaneous References

Carboxyhemoglobin

Klenshøj N C Feldstein M and Sprague A L The Spectrophotometric Determination of Carbon Monoxide *J Biol Chem* 183 303 (March) 1950

Chlorophyll

Goodwin R H Fluorometric Method of Estimating Small Amounts of Chlorophyll *Anal Chem* 19 789 (Oct) 1947

Petering H G Benne E J and Morgal P W Simplification of the Petering Wolman-Hibbard Method for Determination of Chlorophyll and Carotene *Ind Eng Chem (Anal Ed)* 13 236 (April) 1941

Chromoproteins

Drabkin D L The Distribution of the Chromoproteins Hb Myoglobin and Cytochrome in the Tissues of Different Species and the Relationship of the Total Content of Each Chromoprotein to Body Mass *J Biol Chem* 182 317 34 (Jan) 1950

Cytochrome

Prader A and Gonella A The Spectrophotometric Determination of Cytochrome C in Tissues *Experientia* 3 46-464 1947

Rosenthal O and Drabkin D L Spectrophotometric Studies. XI. The Direct Micro Spectrophotometric Determination of Cytochrome C *J Biol Chem* 149 437 450 (Aug) 1943

Hemoglobin

Holden H F On the Colorimetric Determination of Haemoglobin *Australian J Exper Biol & Med* 25 (1) 57 60 (March) 1947

Pennell R B Smith W E and Werkheiser W C Preparation of Hemoglobin Solutions Containing Hemoglobin Reducing Enzymes *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 65 (2) 95 98 (June) 1947

Peters J T A New Microiron Method for the Determination of Hemoglobin in Blood From One Drop of Fingertip Blood *South M J* 40 (11) 949 6 (Nov) 1947

Porphyrias

Grinstein M and Wintrobe M M Spectrophotometric Micromethod for the Quantitative Determination of the Free Erythrocyte Protoporphyrin *J Biol Chem* 172 (2) 459-467 (Feb) 1948

Nicholas H E H and Rimington C Qualitative Analysis of Porphyrins by Partition Chromatography *Scandinavian J Clin & Lab Investigation* 1 1 18 1949

Sveinsson S L Rimington C and Barnes H D Complete Porphyrin Analysis of Pathological Urines *Scandinavian J Clin & Lab Investigation* 1 11 1949

Watson C J Schwartz S and Hawkings V Studies of the Uroporphyrins. II Further Studies of the Porphyrins of the Urine Feces Bile and Liver in Cases of Porphyrin With Particular Reference to a Waldenström Type Porphyrin Behaving as an Entity on the Tawett Column *J Biol Chem* 157 345 361 (Jan) 1945

BIOCHEMICAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

SECTION IV

I HYDROGEN ION CONCENTRATION

1 Indicators

Indicators are weak organic acids or bases whose salts are different in color from the acid. They are buffers with buffer ranges characteristic for each indicator. As the ratio of acid to salt form of the indicator changes during a titration a gradual change in color ensues, and the range of pH over which this change occurs determines what indicator may be used for any particular titration.

When a strong mineral acid is titrated with a strong base almost any indicator may be used since the pH changes from acid to alkaline with a very small amount of alkali at the end point.

When a weak organic acid such as acetic is titrated with a strong base the indicator must be one that changes color at alkaline pH. This is because the weak organic acids are buffers and in order to titrate them completely, one must titrate well beyond their buffer range. Phenolphthalein is often used for this kind of titration, but cannot be used in the presence of ammonium salts or of carbonic acid.

When a weak base is titrated with a strong acid one must use an indicator whose color change is in the acid range. Bromphenol blue is useful for these titrations.

LaMotte, American Aniline Company, Eastman and Eimer and Amend supply either the dry indicator from which solutions can be prepared or standard solutions of indicators prepared according to Clark. (See Table 13.)

A useful universal indicator is prepared and used as follows:

5 mg thymol blue
25 mg methyl red
60 mg bromthymol blue
60 mg phenolphthalein

Dissolve and make up to 100 ml of 5% ethyl alcohol. Titrate with 0.01 N NaOH to a green color.

The range of this solution is from pH 4 to pH 10. The color changes are:

Red	pH 4	Green	pH 7
Orange	pH 5	Blue	pH 8
Yellow	pH 6	Indigo	pH 9
		Violet	pH 10

2 Buffer Solutions

Reference

Clark, W. Mansfield. *The Determination of Hydrogen Ions*, ed. 3. Baltimore 1928
Williams and Wilkins Company

TABLE III
INDICATORS SELECTED BY CLARK AND LUBS (1917)
SUPPLEMENTED BY COHEN (1917)

COMMON NAME	MOL WT	A	pK	RANGE	COLOR CHANGE		B C		ABSORPTION MAXIMUM	
					ACID	ALK.	pH	pH	ACID mμ	ALKALI mμ
Metacresol purple	38	0	1.1	12.28	red	yellow	conc HCl	6	533	
Thymol blue	466	21.5	1	1° 8	red	yellow	conc HCl	6	541	
Bromphenol blue	699	14.9	3.93	30.46	yellow	blue	0	7		50
Bromocresol green	638	14.3	4.67	38.54	yellow	blue	1	8		617
Chlorophenol	43	3.6	5.98	46.64	yellow	red		9		573
Bromphenol red	512	19.5	6.16	5.68	yellow	red	3	10		574
Bromocresol purple	540	18.5	6.3	5.63	yellow	purple	3	10		591
Bromthymol blue	64	16.0	7.0	5.70	yellow	blue	4	10		617
Phenol red	334	9.32	7.9	6.834	yellow	red	8	11		58
Cresol red	38	6.2	8.3	7.288	yellow	red	8	11		7
Metacresol purple	38	26°	8.3	7.490	yellow	purple	8	11		580
Thymol blue	466	21.5	8.9	80.96	yellow	blue	8	1		596
Cresol phthalein			9.4	82.98	colorless	red	6	1°		

A = ml of 0.01 N NaOH required per 0.10 gm indicator to form mono sodium salt
Dilute to 250 ml for 0.04% solution

B = approx. pH value of solution required for full acid color

C = approx. pH value of solution required for full alkaline color

Clark W M The Determination of Hydrogen Ions ed 3 Baltimore 1928 Williams & Wilkins Company

Definitions

- 1 A buffer is any substance or combination of substances which when dissolved in water produces a solution which resists a change in its hydrogen ion concentration upon the addition of an acid or an alkali
- 2 pH = $-\log$ hydrogen ion concentration expressed in moles/liter (the pH of 0.01 N HCl in 0.09 N KCl at 20°C is taken as 2.038)
- 3 pK = pH at which a buffer is half ionized and half unionized.

Buffer Solutions

The various portions of Tables 14A to 14E give the directions for preparing buffer solutions of known hydrogen ion concentration as recommended by different authors

3 Glass Electrodes

(Measurement of pH of Blood Plasma and Red Cell Under Anaerobic Conditions)

References

- Dill D M Daly C A and Forbes W H pK of Serum and Red Cells J Biol Chem, 117 569-579 (Feb.) 1937
Clark W M The Determination of Hydrogen Ions ed 3 Baltimore 1928 Williams and Wilkins Company p 10

Principle

Glass acts like a fluid in which hydrogen ions dissolve. It is therefore possible to measure the boundary potentials when fluids of different hydrogen ion concentrations are on either side of a thin glass membrane. In the present method fluids may be handled anaerobically within a thin glass tube which acts as the glass electrode.

Apparatus

- 1 Glass electrode with 0.10 N HCl AgCl half cell and water jacket for temperature control (See Fig 24) The electrode proper of Corning Glass No 015 is a

TABLE 14A

SØRENSEN'S PHOSPHATE MIXTURE FOR pH 5.8-8.2
(*Biochem. Z.* 21:131 1909 and 22:352 1909)

1 M/15 Primary phosphate 9.08 gm KH_2PO_4 /liter			
2 M/15 Secondary phosphate 9.41 gm Na_2HPO_4 (anhyd)/liter			
pH at 20 C	M/15 Na_2HPO_4 (ml)	M/15 KH_2PO_4 (ml)	Phosphate mEq/l
5.8	80	9.0	108.0
5.9	90	90.1	108.2
6.0	1.2	81.8	111
6.1	15.3	81.7	115.3
6.2	18.6	81.4	118.6
6.3	22.4	77.6	119.4
6.4	26.7	73.3	119.7
6.5	31.8	68.2	121.8
6.6	37.5	62.5	127.5
6.7	43.5	56.5	133.5
6.809	49.6	50.4	139.6
6.862	52.5	47.5	142.5
6.909	53.4	44.6	145.4
6.958	58.2	41.8	148.2
7.005	61.1	38.9	151.1
7.057	63.9	36.1	153.9
7.103	66.6	33.4	156.6
7.154	69.2	30.8	159.2
7.212	72.0	30	160
7.261	74.4	25.6	164.4
7.313	78	23.2	168
7.364	78.9	11.1	169
7.412	80.8	19.2	180.9
7.462	82.5	17.5	182.5
7.504	84.1	15.9	184.1
7.561	85.7	14.3	185.7
7.610	87.0	13.0	187.0
7.656	89.2	11.8	188.2
7.705	89.4	10.6	189.4
7.754	90.5	9.5	190.5
7.806	91.5	8.5	191.5
7.900	93.9	6.1	193.9
8.018	94.7	5.3	194.7
8.10	95.8	4.2	195.8
8.20	97.0	3.0	197.0

U-shaped tube with a wall less than 0.1 mm in thickness. With a length of 200 mm and inside diameter of 1.5 mm the volume is about 0.10 ml. The tube is bent by its own weight while a positive pressure is maintained within the tube and the mid portion heated gently with a small luminous flame. Then the wall of the tube is thinned by thoroughly cleaning and dipping in hydrofluoric acid. The process is controlled by frequently removing the electrode running in water and then observing the change in the amount of pressure required to bend the tube. A satisfactory electrode will give a potential of approximately 0.0615 volt per unit change in pH at 37 C. The electrode is held in position between the halves of a rubber stopper which is sealed and fastened together with thick rubber cement and a wire band. 0.1 N HCl surrounds the electrode in the inner chamber and fills the side tube F. An Ag-AgCl electrode connected to an amplifier at E, is placed within a paraffined tube at D and a large glass bead is placed above the constriction in order to minimize movements of solution around the Ag-AgCl electrode. Water from a constant temperature bath maintains the temperature by circulating in the outer chamber. We have used the electrode successfully at 0.5, 25, and 37 C. A small copper wire is grounded at G and passed

TABLE 14B

WALPOLE'S ACETATE BUFFER MIXTURES FOR pH 3.6 TO 5.8
(*J Chem Soc* 105 2,61 1914)

1 Sodium acetate 0.1 N 7 gm $\frac{1}{2}$ NaCH ₃ CO ₂ ·H ₂ O diluted to 1000 ml with water		
2 Acetic acid 0.1 N approximately 113 ml of 99% glacial acetic acid diluted to 1000 ml with water Standardize against 0.1 N sodium hydroxide with phenolphthalein as an indicator		
pH	0.1 N Sodium acetate (ml)	0.1 N Acetic Acid (ml)
3.6	75	92.5
3.8	100	88.0
4.0	130	82.0
4.2	165	75
4.4	210	69.0
4.6	270	63.0
4.8	340	56.0
5.0	420	50.0
5.2	500	44.0
5.4	590	38.0
5.6	690	32.0
5.8	800	26.0

TABLE 14C

CLARK & CO'S BORATE BUFFER MIXTURES FOR pH 7.8 TO 10
(The Determination of Hydrogen Ions 1938)

1 0.2 M boric acid 1.405 gm H_3BO_3 /l		
0.1 M potassium chloride 14.91 gm KCl/l		
0.1 M sodium hydroxide from conc. CO free alkali		
pH	0.1 M H_3BO_3 (ml)	0.1 M NaOH (ml)
7.8	50	6.5
8.0	50	4.00
8.2	50	5.90
8.4	50	8.55
8.6	50	12.00
8.8	50	16.40
9.0	50	21.40
9.2	50	26.70
9.4	50	32.00
9.6	50	38.85
9.8	50	46.80
10.0	50	55.90

Dilute to 200 ml with distilled water in each case

through the rubber tubing and connection into the outer chamber in order to remove stray electric currents which might result from the circulating water

- Calomel half cell with saturated FCl and KCl reservoir
- Apparatus for amplification and measurement of potentials Any circuit which will measure accurately to 0.1 mv will serve
- A constant temperature water bath set at 31°C
- A number of 2 ml syringes

Reagents

- Potassium chloride (KCl) a saturated solution in water
- Sodium chloride (NaCl) isotonic 0.9% solution in water
- Buffers on each side of the range of the unknowns
- For blood work use M/L phosphate buffers These should be kept in an ice box as two separate solutions (a) and (b) and mixed as needed in the proportions shown in the accompanying Table 15

TABLE 14D

Sørensen & Glycine Hydrochloric Acid Mixture for pH 1.135
(*Ergeb Physiol* 12 393, 1912)

1 Glycine sodium chloride solution 0.1 M Dissolve 7.505 gm of glycine and 5.85 gm of sodium chloride in 1000 ml of water		
2 Hydrochloric acid an 0.1 N solution		
Temperature = 18 C		
Glycine-NaCl (ml)	HCl (ml)	pH
0.0	10.0	1.038
1.0	9.0	1.146
2.0	8.0	1.251
3.0	7.0	1.419
4.0	6.0	1.645
5.0	5.0	1.932
6.0	4.0	2.279
7.0	3.0	2.607
8.0	2.0	2.9.2
9.0	1.0	3.341
9.5	0.5	3.679

TABLE 14E

Sørensen & Glycine Sodium Hydroxide Mixtures for pH 8.5 to 5
(*Ergeb Physiol* 12 393, 1912)

Reagents				
1 Dissolve 7.505 gm of glycine and 5.85 gm of sodium chloride in 1000 ml of water (0.1 M glycine plus 0.1 M NaCl)				
2 Sodium hydroxide an 0.1 N solution				
Glycine (ml)	Sodium Hydroxide (ml)	18 C pH	40 C pH	50 C pH
9.5	0.5	8.58	8.63	8.3
9.0	1.0	8.93	8.88	8.67
8.0	2.0	9.36	9.31	9.08
7.0	3.0	9.71	9.66	9.42
6.0	4.0	10.14	10.09	9.83
5.5	4.5	10.48	10.4.~	10.17
5.1	4.9	11.07	11.01	10.74
5.0	5.0	11.31	11.25	10.97
4.9	5.1	11.57	11.51	11.~
4.5	5.5	12.10	12.04	11.74
4.0	6.0	12.40	12.33	12.03
3.0	7.0	12.67	12.60	12.~
2.0	8.0	12.86	12.79	12.47
1.0	9.0	12.97	12.90	12.51

(a) Monobasic potassium phosphate (KH_2PO_4) 9.078 gm/1000 ml

(b) Dibasic sodium phosphate (Na_2HPO_4), 9.469 gm/1000 ml

The salts must be dried at 95-100 C. Pure salts may be obtained from La Motte and Co

5 (a) For buffer of pH 6.21 to 37 C 5 ml of Na_2HPO_4 are mixed with 0 ml of KH_2PO_4

(b) For buffer of pH 7.35 at 37 C, 20 ml of Na_2HPO_4 are mixed with 5 ml of KH_2PO_4

Procedure—Testing System

- 1 Rinse electrode twice with saline
- 2 Rinse twice with buffer
- 3 Put in sample of buffer

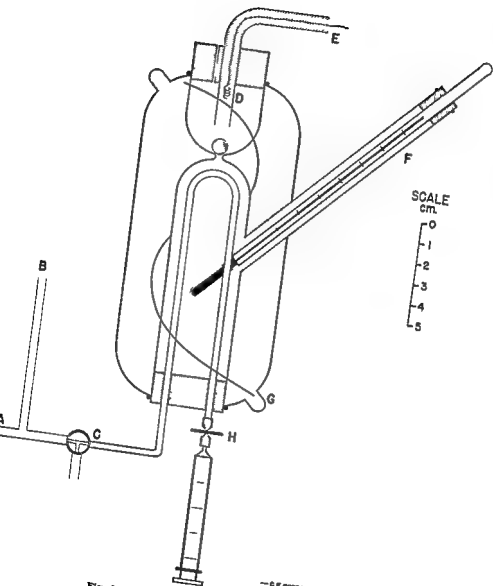


Fig 24—Glass electrode for electrochemical work.

TABLE 15

SØRENSEN'S PHOSPHATE BUFFER SOLUTIONS AT 20°C AND 37°C FOR pH RANGE 5.8 TO 8.2
 (M/15 acid phosphate 90.8 gm dry KH_2PO_4 /liter,
 M/15 basic phosphate 9.69 gm anhydrous Na_2HPO_4 /liter)

pH		M/15 Phosphate Solution	
At 20°C	At 37°C	Na_2HPO_4 (ml)	KH_2PO_4 (ml)
5.82	5.77	8.0	9.0
5.90	5.87	9.9	90.1
6.00	5.97	12.2	87.8
6.10	6.07	15.3	84.7
6.20	6.17	18.6	81.4
6.24	6.21	20.0	80.0
6.30	6.27	22.4	77.6
6.40	6.37	26.7	73.3
6.50	6.47	31.8	68.2
6.60	6.57	37.5	62.5
6.70	6.67	43.5	56.5
6.80	6.77	49.6	50.4
6.90	6.87	55.4	44.6
7.00	6.97	61.1	38.9
7.10	7.07	66.6	33.4
7.20	7.17	72.0	28.0
7.30	7.27	76.8	23.2
7.35	7.35	80.0	20.0
7.40	7.37	80.8	19.2
7.50	7.47	84.1	15.9
7.60	7.57	87.0	13.0
7.70	7.67	89.4	10.6
7.80	7.77	91.5	8.5
7.90	7.87	93.2	6.8
8.00	7.97	94.7	5.3
8.10	8.07	95.8	4.2
8.20	8.17	97.0	3.0

4. Flush stopcock with KCl.

5. Turn stopcock to connect KCl with buffer and read at once.

6. Read again in one minute.

- The two readings should be within 0.5 millivolts. Temperature is probably drifting if greater divergence is noted. This drift must be eliminated. When a stable reading is obtained repeat steps 1 to 6 with second buffer. Then repeat 3 & 6 with a second sample.
- These 4 readings on the second buffer should be within 1 mv of each other and should differ from the readings of the other buffer by 70 mv (i.e. 61.5 mv per pH unit at 37°C or 58.1 mv at 20°C). There is a linear relation between temperature and EMF.
- If the difference between these two buffers (pH 6.21 and 7.35) exceeds 70 mv the buffers are not correct. If it is less than 70 the buffers may be wrong but it is more probable that the trouble lies in the electrode. It is either too thick, too old, cracked, or perhaps there is an electrical leak around it. However if the difference is constant and not less than 60 mv the electrode is usable.

Procedure—Measuring Unknown

1. Wash electrode four times with warm isotonic salt solution.

- Put in blood sample by means of small syringe. Sample should be fresh and must be handled as anaerobically as possible, avoid getting oil into the electrode. Push at least a quarter of a ml slowly through the electrode so that the blood in contact with the membrane is not the first blood layer to come from the syringe.

- 3 Rinse stopcock with KCl
- 4 Turn stopcock to connect KCl with sample and read at once
- 5 Read again in 1 minute
- 6 Follow E M F for 5 minutes by occasional readings. There will probably be a greater change with the blood than with the buffers during the first minute but it should not be more than 1 mv. The change between 1 and 5 minutes should be less than 1 mv. Take the 1 minute reading.
- 7 Repeat 2, 3, 4 and 5 if there is enough of the sample.
- 8 Repeat steps 1 through 6 with the buffer which is nearest in pH to the unknown.
- 9 Repeat steps through 6 with the other buffer. If the temperature is constant and the electrode is working satisfactorily it is safe to use as many as 3 samples between rechecks against a buffer and the check against the two buffers may be left to the end.

Calculation

- 1 pH of unknown =

$$\text{pH acid buffer} + [\text{E M F unknown} - \text{E M F acid buffer}] +$$

$$\left[\frac{\text{E M F alkaline buffer} - \text{E M F acid buffer}}{\text{pH alkaline buffer} - \text{pH acid buffer}} \right]$$

Example

pH alkaline buffer	7.35
pH acid buffer	6.01
EMF alkaline buffer	301 mv
EMF acid buffer	251 mv
EMF unknown	314 mv

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pH of unknown} &= 6.01 + \left[(314 - 251) + \frac{(301 - 251)}{(7.35 - 6.01)} \right] \\ &= 6.01 + (59.3 + 59.6) \\ &= 7.0 \end{aligned}$$

Precautions

- 1 All solutions put into the electrode should be within 1 or 2 mm of the temperature of the solution to be tested. For blood this is 37°C. Electrode must be constant within 0.1°C and should be within 1°C of the temperature required. It is not necessary to have the calomel cell and KCl at the same temperature as the electrode but they must not change in temperature during the experiment.
- 2 Electrode should be left filled with water if in constant use and if not with 0.01 N HCl.
- 3 Saturated KCl should not come in contact with electrode.
- 4 The solutions are introduced with small syringes and should be at about the temperature of the electrode.
- 5 The main difficulties with the glass electrode arise from the fragility of the electrode and its very high electrical resistance. One is measuring a small potential in series with a resistance of several megohms and great care must be taken to avoid electrical leaks over moist surfaces. The NaOH, the KCl and the NaCl if spilt from a vial are likely to lead to leaks especially in damp weather and if the electrode is used at low temperatures condensation will do the same.
- 6 The temperature coefficient for drawn human blood under the conditions of measurement is approximately 0.01 pH units per 1°C. As the temperature rises

the pH falls. The same is true to a much smaller extent of the phosphate buffers. However the EMF of the whole system changes greatly with temperature and one should work as near as possible to the desired temperature and be particularly careful to avoid fluctuations.

4 Measurement of pH in Solutions

(Conditions Not Anaerobic Beckman pH Meter)

Principle

A glass electrode, when immersed in an unknown solution, develops a potential difference the magnitude depending on the hydrogen ion concentration of the solution. This potential difference is measured by combining the glass electrode with some standard half cell such as the saturated calomel electrode and measuring the voltage of the system.

Apparatus

- 1 A Beckman pH meter Model M

Reagents

- 1 Potassium chloride a saturated solution approximately 28 gm diluted up to 100 ml with water
- 2 Buffer solution pH 7.0 (see section on glass electrode under anaerobic conditions)

Procedure

- 1 Remove rubber cap from the end of the calomel electrode. Mount the electrodes in their holder so that the calomel electrode projects slightly lower than the glass electrode and be sure they cannot touch the bottom of the beaker when the holder is lowered against the stop. Remove the stopper from the calomel electrode during use.
- 2 With control now in off position the meter should read exactly pH 7.0. Adjust if necessary by turning the screw below the meter's dial.
- 3 With push button in lower right hand corner in up position, turn switch to on and leave in this position for a few seconds.
- 4 Turn switch to 7.14 range and adjust meter to pH 7 with amplifier control knob in lower left corner.
- 5 Turn switch to 0.7 range and adjust to pH 7 with standard knob. Check the amplifier adjustment occasionally during use.
- 6 Immerse electrodes in a buffer solution of pH 7.0.
- 7 Place switch at proper range, press button and adjust meter to buffer pH by means of the AP knob.
- 8 To determine pH of test solutions: clean electrodes, immerse in test solution and press button. The meter will indicate the pH automatically. If the needle goes off the scale, turn the switch to the other range.

Calculation

- 1 pH is read directly.

Precautions

- 1 The standard knob should require only infrequent adjustment.
- 2 The electrodes should be immersed a full inch in the solution to avoid slight residual effects.
- 3 When not in use the electrodes should be immersed in a beaker of water and the calomel electrode stopper replaced.
- 4 Keep the electrodes clean at all times and do not allow the test solution to dry on them.

- 5 Keep the solutions at approximately 25 °C as the apparatus has been calibrated at that temperature
- 6 When testing solutions of pH 9.0 or higher containing alkali metal ions readings should be corrected for alkali ion error. This correction may be determined experimentally

6 Hydrogen Ion Concentration, Miscellaneous References

Plasma pH

- Van Slyke D D Weisger J R and Van Slyke K K. Photometric Measurement of Plasma pH *J Biol Chem* 170 743 756 (June) 1949

Urine pH

- Van Slyke D D Weisger J R and Van Slyke K K. Photometric Measurement of Urine pH *J Biol Chem* 170 77 761 (June) 1949

SECTION V

MICROBIOLOGICAL PROCEDURES

1 Pteroylglutamic Acid (Folic Acid)

Reference

Modified Microbiological Method of Tepley, L J and Elvehjem C A The Titrimetric Determination of Lactobacillus Casei Factor and Folic Acid J Biol Chem 157 303 309 (Jan) 1945

Principle

The response (acid production) of Lactobacillus casei E to graded increments of the sample and of a standard solution of pteroylglutamic acid added to media furnishing all the nutrients required by this microorganism except the nutrient under assay is measured by titration with sodium hydroxide The acid produced is a direct function of the original concentration of pteroylglutamic acid

Apparatus

- 1 Autoclave horizontal type
- 2 Beakers assorted 25 1000 ml
- 3 Burette 50 ml
- 4 Centrifuge
- 5 Cotton nonabsorbent
- 6 Graduated cylinders glass stoppered assorted 25 1000 ml
- 7 Filter paper qualitative
- 8 Flasks Erlenmeyer 50 and 125 ml
- 9 Flasks volumetric glass stoppered assorted 25 2000 ml
- 10 Funnels 2 3 inch diameter
- 11 Incubator water jacketed electric ($\pm 0.1^{\circ}\text{C}$)
- 12 Inoculating needle platinum or nichrome steel
- 13 Automatic pipette (Fisher Volumat)
- 14 Graduated pipettes 0.5 1.0 2.0 5.0 10.0 and 25.0 ml
- 15 Volumetric transfer pipettes 0.5 1.0 2.0 5.0 10.0 25.0 and 50.0 ml
- 16 Refrigerator
- 17 Arnold sterilizer
- 18 Hot air sterilizer
- 19 Sterilizing cans
- 20 Hypodermic syringes 5 to 10 ml
- 21 Interval timers
- 22 Test tubes uniform lipless Pyrex
- 23 Test tube covers aluminum rectangular
- 24 Test tube supports metal
- 25 Water bath constant temperature

Reagents

- 1 Water, glass distilled.
- 2 0.02 N NaOH and 0.1 N NaOH
- 3 0.1% bromthymol blue
- 4 1 N NaOH (approx.)

- 5 0.1 N HCl (approx)
- 6 Chloroform USP
- 7 Toluene USP
- 8 Vitamin free acid hydrolyzed casein 10⁶
- 9 Adenine Guanine and Uracil These are dissolved in 75 ml distilled water and 5 ml or more conc HCl Heat and dilute to 1 m^o of each per ml of final solution
- 10 Asparagine Dissolve 10 gm asparagine in 1 liter of water Add a few drops of chloroform and toluene
- 11 Alanine Dissolve 5 gm D-alanine in 50 ml of water Add a few drops of chloroform and toluene
- 12 Cystine and L-Tryptophane Each of these is dissolved in a small amount of 10 N HCl and diluted to 4 mg per ml and 2 m^o per ml respectively
- 13 Salt Solution A Dissolve 2.5 gm KH₂PO₄ and 2.5 gm K₂HPO₄ in water to make 50 ml Keep under toluene and chloroform
- 14 Salt Solution B Dissolve 10 gm of MgSO₄ 7H₂O 0.5 gm NaCl 0.5 gm FeSO₄ 7H₂O and 0.4 gm MnSO₄ H₂O in water and dilute to 50 ml Add 10 drops of HCl to clear solution Add chloroform and toluene
- 15 Vitamin Solution 10 mg of thiamin hydrochloride 60 mg pyridoxine hydrochloride 30 mg nicotinic acid 20 mg calcium pantothenate 0.5 mg p-aminobenzoic acid and 1 ml salt solution A are added to 100 ml water Add chloroform and toluene and store in refrigerator
- 16 Pteroylglutamic Acid Standard Solution Weigh 10 mg pteroylglutamic acid and transfer to 1000 ml volumetric flask using 0.0 N NaOH to make up to volume Using 1 ml of this solution plus 1 ml of salt solution A dilute to 100 ml with 0.0 N NaOH for a standard stock solution of 100 mcg per ml Dilute to 0.1 milli micrograms per ml for the working standard
- 17 Biotin 25 mcg of crystalline (free acid) biotin are transferred to a 50 ml volumetric flask Add 7 ml of salt solution A and adjust to volume with water
- 18 Riboflavin Weigh 50 mg USP reference standard riboflavin (dried in vacuum desiccator) and transfer to 2 liter volumetric flask Add 1500 ml H₂O 24 ml glacial acetic acid and warm Cool and make to volume This solution contains 25 mcg riboflavin per ml of 0.6^o N acetic acid
- 19 Yeast Dextrose Agar 15 gm agar (Difco Bacto) are dissolved in about 150 ml of hot water After agar is in solution add 5 gm glucose 20 gm yeast extract and dilute to 1 liter Tube in 75 ml portions Plug tubes with nonabsorbent cotton and autoclave at 15 lbs pressure for 15 minutes Cool and store in refrigerator
- 20 Yeast Dextrose Broth Dissolve 5 gm Bacto yeast extract 10 gm NaC₂H₃O₂ 3H₂O 5 gm glucose 5 ml salt A and 5 ml salt B in water Adjust to pH 6.8-7.0 and dilute to 1 liter Tube in 10 ml portions plug with nonabsorbent cotton and autoclave at 15 lbs pressure for 15 minutes Cool and store in refrigerator Maximum amount of pteroylglutamic acid used in preparation of standard curve may be incorporated with each tube as a supplement to the broth
- 21 Isotonic Salt Solution Tube in 10 ml portions plug with cotton and sterilize in autoclave
- 22 Lactobacillus Stock Culture The test organism is a pure culture obtained originally from the American Type Culture Collections Georgetown University Medical School Washington D C as number 7469 The organism is carried as a stab culture in a yeast dextrose agar medium and transferred at weekly intervals
- 23 Takadiastase Dissolve 2 gm of commercial takadiastase in 100 ml of water

Procedure

- 1 Preparation of the Inoculum On the day prior to use transfer cells from the stock culture to a sterile tube of inoculum culture medium (Peagent 20) Inoculum

bate this culture for 16-24 hours at 37.5 C. After incubation, the cells are centrifuged out, resuspended in saline and 1 drop added to 10 ml of 0.9 per cent saline. For the inoculum one drop of this cell suspension is added per tube.

2. Preparation of Samples

a Food Weigh accurately about 1 gm food. Add 25 ml acetate buffer pH 4.5, 1 ml takadiastase enzyme (2%) solution. 2 ml of toluene plug with cotton and incubate 37.5 C for 24 hours. Adjust pH to 6.6-6.8 steam for 10 minutes in autoclave dilute 1:20 for normal diet and filter.

b Feces About 0.8 gm feces is treated by enzyme method above final dilution is 1:25,000.

c Urine Dilute 2 ml urine to 100 ml with water in a dilution of 1 to 50.

d Plasma and Blood Add 8 ml acetate buffer to 25 ml Erlenmeyer flask and add 0.1 ml blood or plasma. Wash pipette several times with acetate buffer. Add 0.1 ml 2% takadiastase solution. Gently mix and then add 1 drop of toluol to each Erlenmeyer flask. Always run blank consisting of all components except sample. Incubate at 37.5 C for 24 hours \pm 2 hours. Steam samples in autoclave for 15 minutes. Cool and adjust to pH 6.6-6.8. Dilute blood 1:500, plasma 1:50.

3. Preparation of Basal Medium Prepare the basal medium having the composition shown below. About 500 ml is required for 100 tubes.

20 gm anhydrous glucose

33.4 gm sodium acetate

1.25 gm K_2HPO_4

50 ml casein hydrolysate 10%

50 ml L-tryptophane solution (2 mg per ml)

50 ml L-cystine (4 mg per ml)

10 ml adenine guanine uracil (1 mg each per ml)

10 ml asparagine (10 mg per ml)

10 ml DL-alpha-alanine (20 mg per ml)

0.1 ml salt M

4 ml vitamin solution

50 mcg thiamin

300 mcg pyridoxine

150 mcg niacin

100 mcg pantothenic acid

2.5 mcg p-aminobenzoic acid

8 ml biotin 0.1 mcg per ml

8 ml riboflavin 0.5 mcg per ml

} Per ml

Adjust pH to 6.6-6.8 and dilute to 500 ml.

4. Preparation of Standard Tubes To duplicate tubes 13 x 100 mm, add 0.0, 0.15, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1.0, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75 and 2.0 ml of standard pteroylglutamic acid solution (0.1 milligram per ml). Add sufficient water to bring the volume in each tube to 2 ml. To each of these tubes add 1 ml of basal media. An automatic pipetting machine is a valuable asset in this step.

5. Preparation of Assay Tubes To duplicate tubes 13 x 100 mm add 0.5, 1.0, 1.5 and 2.0 ml of the specimen. Add sufficient water to bring the volume to 2.0 ml. To each of these tubes add 1 ml of basal medium.

6. Sterilization Place aluminum covers over the assay tubes in racks. Autoclave at 15 lbs pressure for 10 minutes.

7. Inoculation and Incubation Cool all the tubes to the incubation temperature. Aseptically inoculate each tube with one drop of inoculum. Incubate for 72 hours at 37.5 C.

8. Titration Transfer the contents of a tube to a 50 ml Erlenmeyer flask rinsing once with 10 ml of water. Titrate the contents of the flask with 0.02 N NaOH to a pH of 6.8 using bromthymol blue as an internal indicator.

Calculation

- 1 Draw a standard curve for the assay by plotting millimicrograms of pteroyl glutamic acid (abscissa) in the standard series against ml 0.0 N NaOH (ordinate)
- 2 Determine the pteroylglutamic acid content of the tubes in the unknown series by interpolation of the titer values on the standard curve. Use only values which do not differ from the average by more than 10%.

millimicrograms folic acid/ml specimen =

average/tube

$\frac{\text{average/tube}}{\text{aliquot volume}} \times \text{dilution factor}$

Example

The method of calculation is shown in the table below

ASSAY TUBE ml EXTRACT	TITRATION AFTER INCUBATION ml	PTEROYLGLUTAMIC ACID EVALUATED FROM STD. CURVE mμ	PTEROYLGLUTAMIC ACID PER ml of TEST EXTRACT mμ	
5	49	0.019	0.038	} Av 0.031
10	59	0.040	0.000	
15	65	0.041	0.007	
20	80	0.068	0.034	

Dilution was 1 to 40. Final answer is therefore $40 \times 0.031 = 1.24$

Precautions

- 1 In order to avoid erratic results only glass distilled water and suitably pure reagent products should be used.
- 2 Digestion with takad stage and papain does not give maximum values for the folic acid content of many natural materials. Each kind of material needs individual research to determine the best means for hydrolysis.

2 Nicotinic Acid**References**

- 1 Modified Microbiological Method of Snell E. E. and Wright L. D. A Microbiological Method for the Determination of Nicotinic Acid J. Biol. Chem. 149: 5685 (May) 1941
- 2 Krehl W. A. Strong F. M. and Flvehjem C. A. Determination of Nicotinic Acid Ind. Eng. Chem. Anal. Ed. 15: 471-475 (July) 1943

Principle

The microbiological determination of nicotinic acid is based upon the growth stimulation of *Lactobacillus arabinosus*. In a basal medium that is niacin free but otherwise complete growth responses of the organism are measured quantitatively in standard and unknown solutions by titration of the acid produced.

Apparatus

- 1 Same as in pteroylglutamic acid assay
- 2 Vitamin Solution Incorporate 5 mg. thiamin hydrochloride 5 mg. calcium pantothenate 5 mg. pyridoxine 10 mg. pyridoxine 1 ml. salt solution A and dilute to 100 ml. Add chloroform and toluene and store in refrigerator
- 3 Standard Nicotinic Acid Solution A solution of nicotinic acid 0.5 mg. per ml. (500 micrograms per ml) is made by dissolving 1.15 mg. of crystalline vitamin in the proper amount of distilled water. 1 ml. of this solution plus 1 ml. salt solution A

are made up to 100 ml in a volumetric flask to give a concentration of 100 μ g per ml. Dilute to 50 millimicrograms per ml for working standard for micro-assay

- 4 *Stock Culture*—Stock cultures are carried as stab cultures in a yeast dextrose agar medium. These cultures are transferred at weekly intervals incubated 24 hours at 37.5 C and then stored in the refrigerator until needed. The organism used is *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175 and may be secured from the American Type Culture Collection, where it is listed as No. 8014.

Procedure

- 1 *Preparation of the Inoculum*—On the day prior to use transfer cells from the stock culture to a sterile tube of yeast dextrose broth supplemented with the maximum quantity of nicotinic acid used for preparation of standard curve. For the inoculum the cells are centrifuged out, the supernatant liquid decanted and the cells re-suspended in 10 ml isotonic saline solution. One drop of this cell suspension is added to 10 ml of saline to provide a working cell suspension. Use 1 drop per tube for inoculation.
- 2 *Preparation of Samples*
 - a. Food—Weigh accurately about 1 gm food, add 20 ml 1 N HCl, autoclave 30 minutes at 15 lbs., neutralize to pH 6.6-6.8, dilute 1 to 100 in water and filter.
 - b. Blood—Dilute 0.5 ml to 50 ml with water.
 - c. Urine—To 10 ml urine add 10 ml 1 N HCl, autoclave 30 minutes at 15 lbs., cool and adjust pH to 6.6-6.8. For assay dilute this solution 1 to 4 with water.
 - d. Weigh accurately about 1 gm feces. Add 20 ml 1 N HCl, autoclave 30 minutes at 15 lbs., cool, adjust to pH 6.6-6.8, dilute to 100 ml with water and filter. For use dilute filtrate 1 to 10 with water (i.e. final dilution 1:1000).
- 3 *Preparation of Basal Medium*—Prepare a basal medium having the composition shown below.
 - a. Mix the following:
 - 20 gm anhydrous glucose
 - 33.4 gm Na acetate 3H₂O (20 gm anhydrous)
 - 50 ml casein hydrolysate 10%
 - 50 ml tryptophane (2 mg l tryptophane per ml)
 - 50 ml l cystine (4 mg per ml)
 - 10 ml adenine guanine uracil (1 mg of each per ml)
 - 2 ml vitamin solution (see reagents)
 - 5 ml salt mixture A
 - 5 ml salt mixture B
 - 4 ml riboflavin (25 mcg per ml)
 - 2 ml biotin (0.1 mcg per ml)
 - b. Adjust the pH to 6.6-6.8. Dilute to 500 ml with water.
- 4 *Preparation of Standard Tubes*—Same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay using standard nicotinic acid solution (50 millimicrograms per ml) for working standard.
- 5 *Preparation of Assay Tubes: Sterilization, Inoculation and Incubation, Titration*—These follow the same general microbiological techniques used in pteroylglutamic acid assay.

Calculation

Same as for pteroylglutamic acid

Precautions

- 1 *Lactobacillus arabinosus* responds equally to nicotin and its amide. Differential microbiological assays have to be used to distinguish between the several metabolites of this vitamin.

3 Biotin

References

- 1 Modified Microbiological Method of Shull H M Hutchings B L and Peterson V H A Microbiological Assay for Biotin J Biol Chem 142 813-90 (Feb) 1941
- 2 Tepley L J and Elvehjem H A The Titrimetric Determination of Lactobacillus Casei Factor and Folic Acid J Biol Chem 157 303-309 (Jan) 1945

Principle

Biotin may be determined microbiologically by measurement of its effect upon the growth of *Lactobacillus casei* E. The titratable acidity produced by *L. casei* E is a function of the biotin concentration of the medium.

Apparatus

- 1 Same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay

Reagents

Reagents are the same as for the assay of pteroylglutamic acid with a few additions.

- 1 Manganese dioxide (MnO USP)
- 2 Norite or activated charcoal
- 3 Superoxol (30% H₂O ACS)
- 4 Peptone (Difco Bacto)
- 5 Peptone Supplement Dissolve 5 gm of peptone in 100 ml of warm distilled water. Adjust to pH 3. Stir with .5 gm Norite for 1 hour. Filter. Dilute to 90 ml. Add 10 ml Superoxol (30% H₂O). Do not pipette! Allow to stand at room temperature 24 hours. Adjust to pH 7. Add about 15 gm MnO slowly with stirring. When evolution of oxygen ceases filter solution and dilute to 50 ml with water. Add chloroform and toluene and store in refrigerator.

Stock Culture

Same as for pteroylglutamic acid

Procedure

- 1 Preparation of the Inoculum Same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay except instead of pteroylglutamic acid the yeast dextrose broth should be supplemented with the minimum quantity of biotin used in preparation of the standard error.
- 2 Preparation of Samples
 - a Feces Weigh accurately about 0.7 gm feces into a 50 ml Erlenmeyer flask. Add 5 ml acetate buffer, 1 ml .5% papain (emulsify 0.5 gm papain in 0.5 ml glycerine and dilute with 4 ml water), 1 ml 2% taurocholate and 2 ml toluene. Plug with cotton, incubate 24 hours at 37°C, adjust to 6668 steam 10 minutes and cool. Dilute 1 to 100 with water, filter and dilute the filtrate to a final dilution of 1 to 10,000.
 - b Food Weigh accurately a sample of about 1 gm. Treat like feces through the stage of steaming. Dilute 1 to 50, filter and use directly. An alternative method is sometimes required: add 1 gm food to 1 ml 1 N HCl, autoclave 30 minutes at 15 lbs, adjust to pH 6.668, dilute 1 to 50, filter and use.
 - c Urine Dilute one ml to 50 with water.
 - d Blood and Plasma Mix 10 ml blood or plasma with 10 ml 1 N HCl, autoclave at 15 lbs for 30 minutes and cool. Adjust to pH 6.668, dilute 1 to 5, filter and use.

Preparation of Basal Medium Prepare the basal medium having the composition shown below.

- a Mix together

11 gm glucose

33.4 gm Na acetate 3H₂O (0 gm anhydrous)

1.25 gm K_2HPO_4

50 ml casein hydrolysate 10%

50 ml l-tryptophane (2 mg per ml)

50 ml l-cystine (4 mg per ml)

10 ml adenine guanine uracil solution (1 mg each per ml)

10 ml asparagine (10 mg per ml)

10 ml dl alpha alanine (20 mg per ml)

10 ml peptone supplement (norite and peroxide treated)

40 ml vitamin solution (same as for pteroylglutamic acid)

10 ml folic acid (1 mcg per ml)

80 ml riboflavin (25 mcg per ml)

50 ml salt mixture B

b Adjust to pH 6.6-6.8 and dilute to 500 ml with water

4 Preparation of Standard Tubes Same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay using standard biotin solution (0.2 millimicrogram per ml) for working standard.

5 Preparation of assay tube sterilization inoculation and incubation titration and calculation are all according to the same general microbiological technique as used for pteroylglutamic acid assay

4 Pantothenic Acid

References

1. Modified Microbiological Method of Cheldelin & H. Hoag, E. H. and Sarett H. P. The Pantothenic Acid Requirements of Lactic Acid Bacteria J. Bact. 49 41-45 (Jan.) 1945
2. Hoag E. H. Sarett H. P. and Cheldelin & H. Use of *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175 for Microassay of Pantothenic Acid Ind. and Eng. Chem. Anal. Ed. 17 60-62 (Jan.) 1945

Principle

Pantothenic acid is estimated from its growth stimulation of *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175. Lactic acid formation is estimated titrimetrically. The bound vitamin is first liberated by means of digestive enzymes.

Apparatus

- 1 Same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay

Reagents

Reagents are the same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay with a few additions.

- 1 **Alkali-Treated Peptone** To a solution of 50 gm peptone in 200 ml of distilled water is added 25 gm of NaOH also dissolved in 300 ml of distilled water. The solution is placed under ultraviolet light and allowed to stand 24 hours. The pH is adjusted to 6.6-6.8 with glacial acetic acid and 14 gm of sodium acetate are added and the volume made up to 1 liter. This solution contains 5% peptones and 6% sodium acetate. Store in a refrigerator. Toluene and chloroform are added.
- 2 **Vitamin Solution** Incorporate 5 mg thiamine hydrochloride 5 mg p-aminobenzoic acid 10 mg nicotinic acid 10 mg pyridoxine hydrochloride 1 ml of salt solution A and dilute to 100 ml. Add chloroform and toluene and store in refrigerator.
- 3 **Standard Solution of Pantothenic Acid** A solution of calcium pantothenate 1 mg per ml, is made up by dissolving 10-20 mg of the crystalline vitamin in the proper amount of water. Of this solution 5.4 ml plus 1 ml salt solution A are made up to 100 ml in a volumetric flask to give a concentration of 50 mcg per ml. Dilute to 10 millimicrograms per ml for the working standard.
- 4 **Stock Culture** The organism used is *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175 (American Type Culture Collection No. 8014). It is maintained on yeast agar slabs.

Procedure

- 1 *Preparation of the Inoculum* Prepare the inoculum for the assay tubes by transferring from the stock culture to a sterile tube of yeast dextrose broth supplemented with 10 millimicrograms of calcium pantothenate. Incubate for 24 hours at 37.5 C. Centrifuge and discard supernatant liquid. Resuspend the cells in 10 ml of physiological saline. One drop of this cell suspension is added to 10 ml saline and one drop of this resuspended cell suspension is added per assay tube.
- 2 *Preparation of Samples*
 - a. Food About 1 gm food is treated with 1 ml 2% sakadiastase solution, 25 ml acetate buffer pH 4.5 and 10 ml toluene. Plug with cotton in incubate at 37 C for 18-24 hours. Adjust pH to 6.6-8.0 steam 10 minutes in autoclave dilute and filter. For use dilute 1 to 100.
 - b. Feces About 0.8 gm feces are treated with enzyme as above final dilution is 1:2000.
 - c. Whole Blood, 10 ml blood is treated as above final dilution is 1:40.
 - d. Plasma 10 ml plasma enzyme is treated as above final dilution is 1:100.
 - e. Urine Dilute 1 ml to 100 with water.
- 3 *Preparation of Basal Medium* Prepare the basal medium having the composition below.
 - a. Mix together
 - 0 gm glucose
 - 100 gm sodium acetate
 - 100 gm L tryptophane (2 mg per ml)
 - 100 ml L cystine (4 mg per ml)
 - 100 ml peptone alkali treated (5% peptone 6% NaAc)
 - 10 ml adenine guanine uracil (1 mg each per ml)
 - 100 ml casein hydrolysate 10%
 - 5 ml salt solution A
 - 5 ml salt solution B
 - 3 ml vitamin solution (thiamin and PABA 50 mcg per ml niacin and pyridoxine 100 mcg per ml)
 - 3 ml biotin (0.1 mcg per ml)
 - 1 ml riboflavin (2 mcg per ml)
 - b. Adjust pH to 6.7 and dilute to 500 ml.
- 4 *Preparation of Standard Tubes* Same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay using standard calcium pantothenate solution (10 millimicrograms per ml) for the working standard.
- 5 *Preparation of assay tubes* sterilization inoculation and incubation treatment and calculations are by the same general microbiological techniques as were used in pteroylglutamic acid assay.

Precautions

- 1 *Lactobacillus arabinosus* does not respond to bound pantothenic acid and since the vitamin is labile to heat in acid or alkaline solution digestion of the sample must be accomplished at neutral pH by means of digestive enzymes.

II Pyridoxine (Vitamin B₆)

Reference

Modified Microbiological Method of Atkin L. Schultz A. B. Williams W. L. and Frey C. N. Yeast Microbiological Methods for Determination of Vitamins Ind and Eng Chem Anal Ed 15 141-144 (Feb) 1943

Principle

The growth stimulation of a strain of the yeast *Saccharomyces carlsbergensis* is used for assaying pyridoxine microbiologically. Growth is estimated turbidimetrically.

Apparatus

- 1 Same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay
- 2 Photoelectric spectrophotometer Coleman Jr
- 3 Mechanical shaker

Reagents

Same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay with some additions

- 1 *Sugar and Salt Solution* 900 gm CP dextrose 2.2 gm monopotassium phosphate 17 gm potassium chloride 0.5 gm calcium chloride 0.5 gm magnesium sulfate 0.01 gm ferric chloride and 0.01 gm manganese sulfate made up to 1 liter with water
- 2 *Potassium Citrate Buffer* 100 gm potassium citrate and 20 gm citric acid made up to one liter with water
- 3 *Casein Hydrolysate Solution* 10% Adjust the pH to 4.0
- 4 *Thiamine Solution* 10 micrograms per ml
- 5 *Inositol Solution* 1 mg per ml
- 6 *Biotin Solution* 0.1 microgram per ml
- 7 *Calcium Pantothenate* 100 micrograms per ml (0.2 gm per liter with 10 ml salt solution A per liter)
- 8 *Bacto Malt Extract* (Difco Bacto) and fresh moist baker's yeast
- 9 0.44 N and 0.55 N H₂SO₄
- 10 *Standard Pyridoxine Hydrochloride* A solution of pyridoxine hydrochloride 1 mg per ml is made up by dissolving 15.0 mg of crystalline vitamin in water. 1 ml of this solution plus 1 ml salt solution A are made up to 100 ml in a volumetric flask to give a concentration of 100 mg of pyridoxine per ml. Two working standards are used 0.01 mcg per ml and 0.005 mcg per ml
- 11 *Stock Culture*
Saccharomyces carlsbergensis American Type Culture Collection No 4008, is carried on Difco malt agar slants. Fresh slants are incubated for 24 hours at 30 C and stored in a refrigerator for no more than two weeks.

Procedure

- 1 *Preparation of the Yeast Inoculum* Prepare a fresh slant of *Saccharomyces carlsbergensis* on Difco malt agar and incubate 24 hours at 30 C. Remove a quantity of fresh growth with a sterile wire loop and suspend in 10 ml of sterile isotonic saline in a colorimeter tube. With the aid of a photoelectric colorimeter adjust the concentration of the yeast to an equivalent of 1 mg of moist baker's yeast per ml by adding sterile saline. Dilute 10 ml of the adjusted suspension with 90 ml of saline in a sterile Erlenmeyer flask providing a yeast suspension with final concentration of 0.1 mg per ml.
- 2 *Preparation of Samples*
 - a *Food*—Extract 1 gm of the specimen with 90 ml 0.44 N H₂SO₄ by autoclaving at 15 pounds pressure for one hour. Cool, neutralize to pH 5.5, dilute to 100 ml and filter.
 - b *Feces*—Extract 0.5 gm of specimen with 90 ml 0.44 N H₂SO₄ by autoclaving at 15 lbs pressure for one hour. Cool, neutralize to pH 5.5, dilute to 100 ml and filter.
 - c *Urine*—Extract 5 ml of specimen with 80 ml 0.05 N H₂SO₄ by autoclaving at 15 lbs pressure for 1 hour. Cool, neutralize at pH 5.5, dilute to 100 ml and filter.
- 3 *Preparation of Basal Medium* Prepare the basal medium having the composition below
 - a. Mix together

Sugar salt solution	250 ml
Potassium citrate buffer solution	50 ml

Casein hydrolysate	50 ml
Thiamine solution	5 ml
Inositol solution	5 ml
Biotin solution	8 ml
Calcium pantothenate solution	125 ml or 50 ml P. A. standard

b Dilute to 500 ml

- 4 *Preparation of Standard Tubes* Place 5 ml of basal medium in each of a series of 18 mm Pyrex test tubes. Into duplicate tubes pipette 0.0 0.5 1.0 1.5 2.0 3.0 3.5 and 4.0 ml of diluted standard. Adjust volume to 9.0 ml with water.
- 5 *Preparation of Assay Tubes* Pipette into successive tubes 0.5 1.0 2.0 3.0 and 4.0 ml of the extract of specimen. Adjust the volume to 4.0 ml and add 5.0 ml of the basal medium.
- 6 *Sterilization* The tubes are covered with aluminum covers, steamed for 10 minutes and cooled.
- 7 *Inoculation and Incubation* Under aseptic conditions introduce into each tube 1 ml of the yeast inoculum. Place the tubes in a mechanical shaker for 18-18 hours at 30° C (rate of about 100 strokes a minute).
- 8 *Estimation* Immediately after incubation estimate the yeast growth turbidimetrically in a photoelectric spectrophotometer. Set the wave length at 680 mμ and 100% T with distilled water. The yeast growth inoculum should read between 80 and 90% T.

Calculation

- 1 On ordinary graph paper plot the results of the reference series in per cent transmittance against concentration of pyridoxine hydrochloride. Estimate the values for the unknowns from the graph. Calculate the pyridoxine content of the specimen for each tube and average all values which agree within a 10% of their mean following the same general formula as for pteroylglutamic acid.

Precautions

- 1 The vitamin B group consists of pyridoxine, pyridoxal and one or more labile factors. All members of the complex show comparable activity for *Saccharomyces carlsbergensis*. Hence this procedure is not specific for pyridoxine.
- 2 Careful attention should be given to the hydrolytic procedures employed to liberate the bound forms of the vitamin. It is extracted from most plant and animal tissues with difficulty.
- 3 The chief disadvantage of this method is its low degree of precision. On the average values may be regarded as reproducible to within 10% but frequently much greater variations are encountered for unexplained reasons.

Riboflavin

References

- 1 Modified Microbiological Method of Snell E. E. and Strong F. M. A Microbiological Assay for Riboflavin. Ind. and Eng. Chem. Anal. Ed. 11: 346-350 (June) 1939.
- 2 Scott M. L., Randall F. E. and Hewitt H. H. A Modification of the Snell and Strong Microbiological Method for Determining Riboflavin. J. Biol. Chem. 141: 53-56 (Oct.) 1941.
- 3 Strong F. M. and Carpenter L. F. Preparation of Samples for Microbiological Determination of Riboflavin. Ind. and Eng. Chem. Anal. Ed. 14: 909-913 (Nov) 1942.

Principle

Riboflavin is determined by measurement of the growth stimulation of *Lactobacillus casei*. The acid produced by the microorganism is determined by titration with sodium hydroxide.

254 Microbiological Procedures

Apparatus

- 1 Same as pteroylglutamic acid assay

Reagents

Reagents are the same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay with a few additions

- 1 *Alkali Treated Peptone Solution* Dissolve 40 gm of peptone (Difco Bacto or Wilson's) in 250 ml of hot distilled water. Add 40 gm of NaOH in 250 ml of distilled water. Mix the two solutions. Allow to stand for 18-24 hours then neutralize with glacial acetic acid. Add 14 gm of dry $\text{Na}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2$ (or 3.5 gm $\text{Na}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$) and sufficient water to make up to 800 ml. Preserve under chloroform and toluene in a refrigerator.
- 2 *Yeast Supplement Solution* Dissolve 100 gm of yeast extract (Difco Bacto) in 500 ml of water and 150 gm of basic lead acetate in 500 ml of water. Mix the two solutions. Adjust the pH to 10 with concentrated NH_4OH and filter or centrifuge. Adjust the filtrate to pH 6.5 with glacial acetic acid precipitate the excess lead with H_2S and add distilled water to make 1000 ml. Preserve under toluene in the refrigerator.
- 3 *Cystine Solution* Dissolve 1 gm l-cystine in 20 ml of 10% hydrochloric acid and dilute to 1000 ml with water. Store under toluene in refrigerator not below 10°C.
- 4 *Reference Standard Solution* Dissolve 50 mg of USP riboflavin reference standard in 1500 ml of distilled water containing 4 ml of glacial acetic acid and warm to aid solution. After cooling to room temperature make to 2000 ml volume with water. Preserve in the dark under toluene in a refrigerator. Dilute to 0.1 mcg of riboflavin per ml immediately before use for reference working standard.

Stock Culture

- 1 Same as for pteroylglutamic acid assay

Procedures

- 1 *Preparation of the Inoculum* On the day prior to use transfer cells from the stock culture to a sterile tube of yeast dextrose broth supplemented with 0.5 mcg of riboflavin/ml and incubate 24 hours at 37.5°C. For the inoculum the cells are centrifuged out and the supernatant liquid decanted. Suspend the cells in 10 ml of sterile isotonic saline solution and use 1 drop of this cell suspension.
- 2 *Preparation of Samples*
 - a. *Foods* To sample (10 or more micrograms riboflavin) add 50 ml 0.1 N HCl and autoclave for 15 minutes at 15 lbs pressure. Add 2 ml of freshly prepared papain-takadiastase solution (20 mg/ml). Incubate at 37.5°C for 4 hours. Heat with flowing steam for 10 minutes. Adjust to pH 4.5 make to 100 ml volume and filter.
 - b. *Urine* Dilute with water so that the specimen contains between 0.05 and 0.5 mcg riboflavin per ml.
- 3 *Preparation of Basal Medium* Prepare a basal medium having the composition below
 - a. *Mix together*

Alkali treated peptone	50 ml
0.1% cystine solution	50 ml
Yeast supplement	5 ml
Salt solution A	5 ml
Salt solution B	25 ml
Dextrose anhydrous	10 gm
 - b. *Adjust to pH 6.6-6.8* Dilute to 50 ml

- 4 *Preparation of Standard Tubes* To duplicate tubes 16 by 150 mm in size add 0.05, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 3.0 and 5.0 ml of standard riboflavin solution (0.1 mcg per ml). Add sufficient water to bring the volume in each tube to 5.0 ml. To each of these tubes add 5 ml of basal medium.
- 5 *Preparation of Assay Tubes* To duplicate tubes add 0.5, 1.0, 1.5 and 2.0 ml of the extract of the test material. Add sufficient water to bring the volume in each tube to 5.0 ml and add 5.0 ml of basal medium.
- 6 *Sterilization, inoculation and incubation* are performed as in the pteroylglutamic acid assay.
- 7 *Titration* Transfer the contents of each tube to an Erlenmeyer flask using 10 ml of distilled water for rinsing. Titrate with 0.1 N NaOH using bromthymol blue as an indicator.

Calculation

- 1 The same type of calculation is used as for pteroylglutamic acid assay.

7 Tryptophane

References

- 1 Modified Microbiological Method of Snell E. E. and Wright L. D. A Microbiological Method for the Determination of Nicotinic Acid *J Biol Chem* 138: 675-685 (June) 1941.
- 2 Greene R. D. and Black A. The Microbiological Assay of Tryptophane in Protein and Foods *J Biol Chem* 155: 18 (Sept.) 1944.
- 3 Wooley J. G. and Sebrell W. H. Two Microbiological Methods for the Determination of Tryptophane in Proteins and Other Complex Substances *J Biol Chem* 157: 141-151 (Jan.) 1945.

Principle

The growth stimulation of *Lactobacillus arabinosus* is in relation to the tryptophane content of a basal medium is employed in the microbiological assay for this amino acid. The lactic acid produced is titrated.

Apparatus

Same as for pteroylglutamic acid.

Reagents

These are the same as for pteroylglutamic acid with some additions.

- 1 *Standard Tryptophane Solution* Dissolve 0.40 mg of L-tryptophane in the proper amount of hot water to provide a solution containing 2 mg tryptophane per ml. Incorporate 10 ml of the solution with 1 ml salt solution A and make up to 100 ml volume to give 0.02 mcg tryptophane per ml. Dilute to 1 mcg per ml for working standard.
- Vitamin Solution* Same as for pantothenic acid assay.
- 3 *Stock Culture*
Same as for nicotinic acid assay.

Procedure

- 1 *Preparation of Inoculum* Same as for nicotinic acid assay.
- 2 *Preparation of Samples* Either of two methods may be employed.
 - a. *Use of Enzymes* Place sample in 100 ml beaker (5 gm food, 0.5 ml blood, 0.5 ml plasma, 1 ml water). Add 5 ml 0.1 N H_2SO_4 , 0.5 ml 1% pepsin solution and incubate 4 hours at 37.5°C with occasional mixing. Add 0.6 gm K_2HPO_4 and adjust pH to 8.4. Add 2.5 ml 1% trypsin solution, 10 ml toluene and a few drops of chloroform. Incubate at 18°C 4 hours at 37°C in 15 ml Erlenmeyer flask with occasional mixing. Adjust pH to 8, transfer to a 50 ml Erlenmeyer flask and add 10 ml 1% crepsin solution, a few drops of chloroform and 10 ml toluene.

Incubate 72 hours at 37 C with occasional mixing. Replace toluene as necessary. Adjust pH to 6.0-6.5, including blank, dilute to 200 ml and filter until clear using same filter paper for repeated filtrations. Make final dilution as follows: blood 1 to 3000, plasma 1 to 1000, diet 1 to 400, enzyme blank, 1 to 1000 on basis of pepsin; urine 1 to 20.

II Use of Barium Hydroxide Place sample containing about 250 mcg tryptophane in a 250 ml Erlenmeyer flask (diet 1 to 2 gm, blood 0.1 ml, plasma 0.1 ml, urine 0.2 ml). Add 6.5 gm barium hydroxide $\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2 \cdot 8\text{H}_2\text{O}$ and 10 ml water mix thoroughly and autoclave 16 hours at 15 lbs. Autoclaved samples are transferred quantitatively while hot to 250 ml beakers. After cooling the pH is made acid to 5 with 2 N H_2SO_4 . Samples are neutralized to pH 6.0-6.5 with NaOH and diluted to volume plus 1 ml to allow for BaSO_4 formed. Final dilutions are as follows: food 1 to 50 or 1 to 150 depending on tryptophane content; blood 1 to 1000; plasma 1 to 500; urine 1 to 100. Heat to 60-70 C, filter and assay. *Note:* Because of racemization when barium hydroxide is used multiply all assay values by 2.

3 Preparation of Basal Medium The basal medium recommended here differs from that of Snell and Wright's for niacin only in the omission of tryptophane and the inclusion of niacin.

a Mix together

20 gm glucose

33.4 gm sodium acetate ($\text{NaC}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$)

50 ml casein hydrolysate 10%

50 ml L-cystine (4 mg per ml)

10 ml adenine, guanine, uracil (1 mg each per ml)

50 ml salt solution A

50 ml salt solution B

30 ml vitamin solution (thiamin and PABA 50 mcg per ml, niacin and pyridoxine 100 mcg per ml)

30 ml biotin (0.1 mcg per ml)

80 ml riboflavin (25 mcg per ml)

30 ml pantothenic acid solution (50 mcg P₄ per ml)

b Adjust to pH 6.6-6.8 and dilute to 500 ml

4 Preparation of Standard Tubes Same as for riboflavin as above except for using standard tryptophane (1 mcg per ml) for the working standard.

5 Preparation of assay tubes sterilization, inoculation and incubation, titration and calculation are by the same general procedures used in riboflavin assay.

Precautions

1. *Lactobacillus arabinosus* does not respond to L-tryptophane and complete racemization of hydrolysates prepared with base is assumed. Therefore direct analytical results are obtained with a DL standard. If L-tryptophane is used as a standard the analytical results should be multiplied by 2. However recent investigations indicate that there is a good reason to believe that there is destruction of tryptophane after treatment with alkali. Cystine added as a stabilizing agent affords good results.

III Agar Plate Assay for Biotin

References

1. Genghof, D. S., Partridge, C. W. H. and Carpenter, F. H. An Agar Plate Assay for Biotin. *Arch. Biochem.* 17: 413-420 (June) 1948.
2. Snell, E. E. and Wright, L. D. A Microbiological Method for the Determination of Nicotinic Acid. *J. Biol. Chem.* 139: 615-636 (June) 1941.

Principle

Biotin solutions of increasing concentrations are added to filter paper discs on a biotin free but otherwise complete medium seeded with *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175. Graded zones of growth are produced. A linear relationship exists between the diameter of the zone of growth and the logarithm of the dose of biotin.

Apparatus

- 1 Pen cillin reader (Fisher)
- 2 Petri dishes (100 mm diameter) with unglazed porcelain tops (Coors)
- 3 Filter paper discs (Schleicher and Schuell No 740 E)
- 4 Incubator set at 30 C
- 5 Autoclave
- 6 Refrigerator
- 7 Constant temperature bath set at 45 C
- 8 Pipettes (0.1 ml graduated in hundredths)
- 9 Centrifuge
- 10 Brewer automatic pipette to deliver 16 ml amounts. (Manual delivery of 16 ml is time consuming)
- 11 Graph paper semi log

Reagents

- 1 Water glass distilled
- 2 Biotin ampoules or crystalline
- 3 Casein hydrolysate 10%
- 4 L (-) Cystine
- 5 Tryptophane
- 6 Sodium acetate
- 7 Glucose
- 8 Potassium monohydrogen phosphate
- 9 Potassium dihydrogen phosphate
- 10 Sodium chloride
- 11 Manganese sulfate (tetrahydrate)
- 12 Magnesium sulfate (heptahydrate)
- 13 Ferrous sulfate (heptahydrate)
- 14 Guanine hydrochloride
- 15 Adenine sulfate
- 16 Uracil
- 17 Riboflavin
- 18 Nicotinic acid
- 19 Thiamine
- 20 Pantothenic acid
- 21 Pyridoxine
- 22 Para amino benzoic acid (PABA)
- 23 Agar
- 24 Stock Culture

} AGU (1 mg each per ml)

The organism used is *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175 (American Type Culture Collection Number 8014). It is maintained on yeast agar slabs.

Procedure

- 1 Sterilize Petri dishes at 165 C for at least 90 minutes in oven.
- Inoculate a culture of *L. arabinosus* 175 into 10 ml of sterile basal medium plus 0.0002 gamma biotin per tube. After incubation at 30 C for 18-20 hours the organisms are centrifuged and washed twice with 10 ml of sterile saline and resuspended in 5 ml of saline.

Incubate 72 hours at 37 C with occasional mixing. Replace toluene as necessary. Adjust pH to 6.0-6.5, including blank dilute to 200 ml, and filter until clear using same filter paper for repeated filtrations. Make final dilution as follows: blood 1 to 3000, plasma 1 to 2000, diet 1 to 400, enzyme blank 1 to 1000 on basis of pepsin, urine 1 to 20.

- b *Use of Barium Hydroxide*. Place sample containing about .50 mcg tryptophane in a .50 ml Erlenmeyer flask (diet 1 to 2 gm, blood 0.1 ml, plasma 0.1 ml, urine, .2 ml). Add 6.5 gm barium hydroxide $\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2 \cdot 8\text{H}_2\text{O}$ and 20 ml water, mix thoroughly and autoclave 16 hours at 15 lbs. Autoclaved samples are transferred quantitatively while hot to 250 ml beakers. After cooling the pH is made acid to 2.5 with 2 N H_2SO_4 . Samples are neutralized to pH 6.0-6.5 with NaOH and diluted to volume plus 1 ml to allow for BaSO_4 formed. Final dilutions are as follows: food 1 to 50 or 1 to 150 depending on tryptophane content, blood 1 to 1000, plasma 1 to 500, urine 1 to 100. Heat to 60-70 C after and assay. *Note*: Because of racemization when barium hydroxide is used multiply all assay values by 2.

- 3 *Preparation of Pabal Medium*. The basal medium recommended here differs from that of Snell and Wright's for niacin only in the omission of tryptophane and the inclusion of niacin.

a *Mix together*

80 gm glucose

33.4 gm sodium acetate ($\text{NaC}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$)

50 ml casein hydrolysate 10%

50 ml L-cystine (4 mg per ml)

10 ml adenine, guanine, uracil (1 mg each per ml)

50 ml salt solution A

50 ml salt solution B

30 ml vitamin solution (thiamin and PABA 50 mcg per ml, niacin and pyridoxine 100 mcg per ml)

30 ml biotin (0.1 mcg per ml)

80 ml riboflavin (25 mcg per ml)

30 ml pantothenic acid solution (50 mcg PA per ml)

b *Adjust to pH 6.6-6.8 and dilute to 1000 ml*

- 4 *Preparation of Standard Tubes*. Same as for riboflavin assay except for using standard tryptophane (1 mg per ml) for the working standard.

- 5 *Preparation of assay tubes*. Sterilization, inoculation and incubation, titration and calculation are by the same general procedures used in riboflavin assay.

Precautions

- 1 *Lactobacillus arabinosus* does not respond to D-tryptophane and complete racemization of hydrolysates prepared with base is assumed. Therefore direct analytical results are obtained with a DL standard. If L-tryptophane is used as a standard the analytical results should be multiplied by 2. However, recent investigations indicate that there is a good reason to believe that there is destruction of tryptophane after treatment with alkali. Cystine added as a stabilizing agent affords good results.

8 Agar Plate Assay for Biotin

References

- 1 Genghof D S, Partridge C W H and Carpenter F H. An Agar Plate Assay for Biotin. *Arch Biochem* 17: 413-410 (June) 1948.
- 2 Snell E E and Wright L M. A Microbiological Method for the Determination of Nicotinic Acid. *J Biol Chem* 139: 675-686 (June) 1941.

Principle

Biotin solutions of increasing concentrations are added to filter paper discs on a biotin free but otherwise complete medium seeded with *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175. Graded zones of growth are produced. A linear relationship exists between the diameter of the zone of growth and the logarithm of the dose of biotin.

Apparatus

- 1 Petri dish reader (Fisher)
- 2 Petri dishes (100 mm diameter) with unglazed porcelain tops (Coors)
- 3 Filter paper discs (Schleicher and Schuell No 740 E)
- 4 Incubator set at 30 C
- 5 Autoclave
- 6 Refrigerator
- 7 Constant temperature bath set at 45 C
- 8 Pipettes (0.1 ml graduated in hundredths)
- 9 Centrifuge
- 10 Brewer automatic pipette to deliver 16 ml amounts (Manual delivery of 16 ml is time consuming)
- 11 Graph paper semi log

Reagents

- 1 Water glass distilled
- 2 Biotin ampoules or crystalline
- 3 Casein hydrolysate 10%
- 4 1 (-) Cystine
- 5 Tryptophane
- 6 Sodium acetate
- 7 Glucose
- 8 Potassium monohydrogen phosphate
- 9 Potassium dihydrogen phosphate
- 10 Sodium chloride
- 11 Manganese sulfate (tetrahydrate)
- 12 Magnesium sulfate (heptahydrate)
- 13 Ferrous sulfate (heptahydrate)
- 14 Guanine hydrochloride
- 15 Adenine sulfate
- 16 Uracil
- 17 Riboflavin
- 18 Nicotin
- 19 Thiamine
- 20 Pantothenic acid
- 21 Pyridoxine
- 22 Para amino benzoic acid (PABA)
- 23 Agar
- 24 Stock Culture

} AGU (1 mg each per ml)

The organism used is *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175 (American Type Culture Collection Number 3014). It is maintained on yeast agar slabs.

Procedure

- 1 Sterilize Petri dishes at 165 C for at least 90 minutes in oven.
- Inoculate a culture of *L. arabinosus* 175 into 10 ml of sterile basal medium plus 0.000 gamma biotin per tube. After incubation at 30 C for 13.0 hours the organisms are centrifuged and washed twice with 10 ml of sterile saline and resuspended in 5 ml of saline.

Incubate 72 hours at 37 C with occasional mixing. Replace toluene as necessary. Adjust pH to 6.0-6.5 including blank, dilute to 200 ml and filter until clear, using same filter paper for repeated filtrations. Make final dilution as follows: blood, 1 to 3000; plasma, 1 to 2000; diet, 1 to 400; enzyme blank, 1 to 1000 on basis of pepsin; urine, 1 to 20.

- b. Use of Barium Hydroxide: Place sample containing about 250 mcg tryptophane in a 250 ml Erlenmeyer flask (diet, 1 to 2 gm; blood, 0.1 ml; plasma, 0.2 ml; urine, 0.2 ml). Add 6.5 gm barium hydroxide $\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2 \cdot 8\text{H}_2\text{O}$ and 40 ml water, mix thoroughly and autoclave 16 hours at 15 lbs. Autoclaved samples are transferred quantitatively while hot to 250 ml beakers. After cooling the pH is made acid to 2.5 with 2 N H_2SO_4 . Samples are neutralized to pH 6.0-6.5 with NaOH and diluted to volume plus 1 ml to allow for BaSO_4 formed. Final dilutions are as follows: food, 1 to 50 or 1 to 100 depending on tryptophane content; blood, 1 to 1000; plasma, 1 to 500; urine, 1 to 100. Heat to 60-70 C, filter and assay. *Note:* Because of racemization when barium hydroxide is used, multiply all assay values by 2.

3. *Preparation of Basal Medium:* The basal medium recommended here differs from that of Snell and Wright's for niacin only in the omission of tryptophane and the inclusion of niacin.

a. Mix together

- 20 gm glucose
- 33.4 gm sodium acetate ($\text{NaC}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$)
- 50 ml casein hydrolysate 10%
- 50 ml L-cystine (4 mg per ml)
- 10 ml adenine, guanine, uracil (1 mg each per ml)
- 50 ml salt solution A
- 50 ml salt solution B
- 30 ml vitamin solution (thiamin and PABA 50 mcg per ml; niacin and pyridoxine 100 mcg per ml)
- 30 ml biotin (0.1 mcg per ml)
- 80 ml riboflavin (25 mcg per ml)
- 30 ml pantothenic acid solution (50 mcg PA per ml)

- b. Adjust to pH 6.6 and dilute to 500 ml

4. *Preparation of Standard Tubes:* Same as for riboflavin as above except for using standard tryptophane (1 mcg per ml) for the working standard.
5. *Preparation of assay tubes:* sterilization, inoculation and incubation, titration and calculation are by the same general procedures used in riboflavin assay.

Precautions

1. *Lactobacillus arabinosus* does not respond to α -tryptophane and complete racemization of hydrolyzates prepared with base is assumed. Therefore direct analytical results are obtained with a DL standard. If L-tryptophane is used as a standard the analytical results should be multiplied by 2. However recent investigations indicate that there is a good reason to believe that there is destruction of tryptophane after treatment with alkali. Cystine added as a stabilizing agent affords good results.

8. Agar Plate Assay for Biotin

References

1. Genghof, D. S., Partridge, C. W. H. and Carpenter, F. H.: An Agar Plate Assay for Biotin. *Arch. Biochem.* 17: 413-420 (June) 1948.
2. Snell, E. E. and Wright, L. D.: A Microbiological Method for the Determination of Nicotinic Acid. *J. Biol. Chem.* 139: 675-686 (June) 1941.

Principle

Biotin solutions of increasing concentrations are added to filter paper discs on a biotin free but otherwise complete medium seeded with *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175. Graded zones of growth are produced. A linear relationship exists between the diameter of the zone of growth and the logarithm of the dose of biotin.

Apparatus

- 1 Petri dish reader (Fisher)
- 2 Petri dishes (100 mm diameter) with unglazed porcelain tops (Coors)
- 3 Filter paper discs (Schleicher and Schuell No 740 E)
- 4 Incubator set at 30 C
- 5 Autoclave
- 6 Refrigerator
- 7 Constant temperature bath set at 45 C
- 8 Pipettes (0.1 ml graduated in hundredths)
- 9 Centrifuge
- 10 Brewer automatic pipette to deliver 16 ml amounts (Manual delivery of 16 ml is time consuming)
- 11 Graph paper semi-log

Reagents

- 1 Water glass distilled.
- 2 Biotin ampoules or crystalline
- 3 Casein hydrolysate 10%
- 4 L (-) Cystine
- 5 Tryptophane
- 6 Sodium acetate
- 7 Glucose
- 8 Potassium monohydrogen phosphate
- 9 Potassium dihydrogen phosphate
- 10 Sodium chloride
- 11 Manganese sulfate (tetrahydrate)
- 12 Magnesium sulfate (heptahydrate)
- 13 Ferrous sulfate (heptahydrate)
- 14 Guanine hydrochloride
- 15 Adenine sulfate
- 16 Uracil
- 17 Riboflavin
- 18 Nicotin
- 19 Thiamine
- 20 Pantothenic acid
- 21 Pyridoxine
- 22 Para amino benzoic acid (PABA)
- 23 Agar
- 24 Stock Culture

} AGU (1 mg each per ml)

The organism used is *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175 (American Type Culture Collection Number 5014). It is maintained on yeast agar slabs.

Procedure

- 1 Sterilize Petri dishes at 163 C for at least 30 minutes in oven.
- Inoculate a culture of *L. arabinosus* 175 into 10 ml of sterile basal medium plus 0.0006 gamma biotin per tube. After incubation at 30 C for 18-20 hours the organisms are centrifuged and washed twice with 10 ml of sterile saline and resuspended in 5 ml of saline.

Incubate 72 hours at 37 C with occasional mixing. Replace toluene as necessary. Adjust pH to 6.0-6.5 including blank dilute to 200 ml and filter until clear using same filter paper for repeated filtrations. Make final dilution as follows: blood 1 to 3000, plasma, 1 to 2000, diet, 1 to 400, enzyme blank 1 to 1000 on basis of pepsin: urine 1 to 20.

- b. Use of Barium Hydroxide: Place sample containing about 250 mcg tryptophan in a 250 ml Erlenmeyer flask (diet 1 to 2 gm, blood 0.1 ml, plasma 0.2 ml, urine 0.2 ml). Add 65 gm barium hydroxide, $\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2 \cdot 8\text{H}_2\text{O}$ and 70 ml water mix thoroughly and autoclave 16 hours at 15 lbs. Autoclaved samples are transferred quantitatively while hot to 250 ml beakers. After cooling the pH is made acid to 2.5 with 2 N H_2SO_4 . Samples are neutralized to pH 6.0-6.5 with NaOH and diluted to volume plus 1 ml to allow for BaSO_4 formed. Final dilutions are as follows: food 1 to 50 or 1 to 150 depending on tryptophan content, blood 1 to 1000, plasma 1 to 500, urine 1 to 100. Heat to 60-70 C filter and assay. *Note:* Because of racemization when barium hydroxide is used multiply all assay values by 2.

3. *Preparation of Basal Medium* The basal medium recommended here differs from that of Snell and Wright's for niacin only in the omission of tryptophan and the inclusion of niacin.

a. Mix together

20 gm glucose

33.4 gm sodium acetate ($\text{NaCH}_3\text{CO}_2 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$)

50 ml casein hydrolysate 10%

50 ml L-cystine (4 mg per ml)

10 ml adenine-guanine-uracil (1 mg each per ml)

50 ml salt solution A

50 ml salt solution B

30 ml vitamin solution (thiamin and PABA 50 mcg per ml, niacin and pyridoxine 100 mcg per ml)

30 ml biotin (0.1 mcg per ml)

80 ml riboflavin (0.5 mcg per ml)

30 ml pantothenic acid solution (50 mcg PA per ml)

- b. Adjust to pH 6.6-6.8 and dilute to 500 ml

4. *Preparation of Standard Tubes* Same as for riboflavin assay except for using standard tryptophan (1 mcg per ml) for the working standard.

5. *Preparation of assay tubes* sterilization, inoculation and incubation, titration and calculation are by the same general procedures used in riboflavin assay.

Precautions

1. *Lactobacillus arabinosus* does not respond to D-tryptophan and complete racemization of hydrolysates prepared with base is assumed. Therefore D-tryptophan analytical results are obtained with a DL standard. If L-tryptophan is used as a standard the analytical results should be multiplied by 2. However, recent investigations indicate that there is a good reason to believe that there is destruction of tryptophan after treatment with alkali. Cystine added as a stabilizing agent affords good results.

8. Agar Plate Assay for Biotin

References

1. Genghof, D. M., Partridge, C. W. H. and Carpenter, F. H. An Agar Plate Assay for Biotin. *Arch. Biochem.* 17: 413-40 (June) 1948.
2. Snell, E. E. and Wright, L. D. A Microbiological Method for the Determination of Nicotinic Acid. *J. Biol. Chem.* 139: 675-686 (June) 1941.

Principle

Biotin solutions of increasing concentrations are added to filter paper discs on a biotin free but otherwise complete medium seeded with *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175. Graded zones of growth are produced. A linear relationship exists between the diameter of the zone of growth and the logarithm of the dose of biotin.

Apparatus

- 1 Petri dish reader (Fisher)
- 2 Petri dishes (100 mm diameter) with unglazed porcelain tops (Coors)
- 3 Filter paper discs (Schleicher and Schuell No. 740 E)
- 4 Incubator set at 30 C
- 5 Autoclave
- 6 Refrigerator
- 7 Constant temperature bath set at 45 C
- 8 Pipettes (0.1 ml graduated in hundredths)
- 9 Centrifuge
- 10 Bower automatic pipette to deliver 16 ml amounts (Manual delivery of 16 ml is time consuming)
- 11 Graph paper semi log

Reagents

- 1 Water glass distilled
- 2 Biotin ampoules or crystalline
- 3 Casein hydrolysate 10%
- 4 L (-) Cystine
- 5 Tryptophane
- 6 Sodium acetate
- 7 Glucose
- 8 Potassium monohydrogen phosphate
- 9 Potassium dihydrogen phosphate
- 10 Sodium chloride
- 11 Manganese sulfate (tetrahydrate)
- 12 Magnesium sulfate (heptahydrate)
- 13 Ferrous sulfate (heptahydrate)
- 14 Guanine hydrochloride
- 15 Adenine sulfate
- 16 Uracil
- 17 Riboflavin
- 18 Inositol
- 19 Thiamine
- 20 Pantothenic acid
- 21 Pyridoxine
- 22 Para amino benzoic acid (PABA)
- 23 Agar
- 24 Stock Culture

} AGU (1 mg each per ml)

The organism used is *Lactobacillus arabinosus* 175 (American Type Culture Collection Number 3014). It is maintained on yeast agar slabs.

Procedure

- 1 Sterilize Petri dishes at 160 C for at least 30 minutes in oven
- Inoculate a culture of *L. arabinosus* 175 into 10 ml of sterile basal medium plus 0.0001 gamma biotin per tube. After incubation at 30 C for 18-20 hours the organisms are centrifuged and washed twice with 10 ml of sterile saline and resuspended in 5 ml of saline.

Incubate 72 hours at 37 C with occasional mixing. Replace toluene as necessary. Adjust pH to 6.0-6.5, including blank, dilute to 200 ml and filter until clear, using same filter paper for repeated filtrations. Make final dilution as follows: blood, 1 to 3000; plasma, 1 to 2000; diet, 1 to 400; enzyme blank, 1 to 1000 on basis of pepsin; urine, 1 to 20.

- b. **Use of Barium Hydroxide** Place sample containing about 250 mcg tryptophane in a 250 ml Erlenmeyer flask (diet 1 to 2 gm, blood, 0.1 ml, plasma 0.05 ml, urine 0.2 ml). Add 6.5 gm barium hydroxide $\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2 \cdot 8\text{H}_2\text{O}$ and 20 ml water, mix thoroughly and autoclave 16 hours at 15 lbs. Autoclaved samples are transferred quantitatively while hot to 250 ml beakers. After cooling the pH is made acid to 2.5 with 2 N H_2SO_4 . Samples are neutralized to pH 6.0-6.5 with NaOH and diluted to volume plus 1 ml to allow for BaSO_4 formed. Final dilutions are as follows: food, 1 to 20 or 1 to 150 depending on tryptophane content; blood, 1 to 1000; plasma, 1 to 500; urine, 1 to 100. Heat to 60-70 C, filter and assay. *Note:* Because of racemization when barium hydroxide is used, multiply all assay values by 2.

3. **Preparation of Basal Medium** The basal medium recommended here differs from that of Snell and Wright's for niacin only in the omission of tryptophane and the inclusion of niacin.

a. **Mix together**

- 20 gm glucose
- 33.4 gm sodium acetate ($\text{NaC}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$)
- 50 ml casein hydrolysate 10%
- 50 ml L-cystine (4 mg per ml)
- 10 ml adenine, guanine, uracil (1 mg each per ml)
- 50 ml salt solution A
- 50 ml salt solution B
- 30 ml vitamin solution (thiamin and PABA 50 mcg per ml, niacin and pyridoxine 100 mcg per ml)
- 30 ml biotin (0.1 mcg per ml)
- 80 ml riboflavin (25 mcg per ml)
- 30 ml pantothenic acid solution (50 mcg PA per ml)

- b. **Adjust to pH 6.6-6.8 and dilute to 500 ml**

4. **Preparation of Standard Tubes** Same as for riboflavin assay except for using standard tryptophane (1 mcg per ml) for the working standard.

5. **Preparation of assay tubes** sterilization, inoculation and incubation, titration and calculation are by the same general procedures used in riboflavin assay.

Precautions

1. *Lactobacillus arabinosus* does not respond to *dl*-tryptophane and complete racemization of hydrolysates prepared with base is assumed. Therefore direct analytical results are obtained with a *dl* standard. If *l*-tryptophane is used as a standard the analytical results should be multiplied by 2. However recent investigations indicate that there is a good reason to believe that there is destruction of tryptophane after treatment with alkali. Cystine added as a stabilizing agent affords good results.

8. Agar Plate Assay for Biotin

References

1. Genghof, D. S., Partridge, C. W. H. and Carpenter, F. H. An Agar Plate Assay for Biotin. *Arch. Biochem.* 17: 413-420 (June) 1948.
2. Snell, E. E. and Wright, L. D. A Microbiological Method for the Determination of Nicotinic Acid. *J. Biol. Chem.* 139: 675-686 (June) 1941.

3 Prepare the following medium

Casein hydrolysate 10%	50 ml
1 (-) Tryptophane	100 mg
1 (-) Cystine	100 mg
Glucose	10 gm
NaC ₂ H ₃ O	6 gm
AGU	10 mg
Salt A	5 ml
Salt B	5 ml
Niacin	500 gamma
PABA	100 gamma
Calcium pantothenate	100 gamma
Pyridoxine hydrochloride	150 gamma
Thiamine	100 gamma
Riboflavin	100 gamma
Bacto agar	15 gm
Adjust to pH 6.6-6.8 and dilute up to 1 liter	

4 Autoclave the medium for 15 minutes at 120 C cool to 45 C and inoculate with resuspended cells (20 ml of the *Lactobacillus arabinosus* suspension per liter of medium)

5 To each sterile Petri dish add 16 ml of the above inoculated medium. Place plates in refrigerator as soon as the agar is hardened. These plates can be stored at 5 C for at least one week before use.

6 Standard Curve. Range 1 milligram to 1000 milligram of biotin. Biotin solutions of the following concentration are made

10 milligram per ml
25 milligram per ml
50 milligram per ml
100 milligram per ml
250 milligram per ml
500 milligram per ml
1000 milligram per ml
2500 milligram per ml
5000 milligram per ml
10000 milligram per ml

7 Filter paper discs are placed on the agar and 0.03 ml of the biotin solutions delivered upon them. Run all dilutions in duplicate with 2 filter pads per plate through 10 milligram for other dilutions only 1 pad per plate.

8 Invert plates and incubate for 18-20 hours at 30 C.

9 After incubation the diameters of growth about the filter pads are measured to the closest 0.5 mm with the pencil reader.

10 A standard curve is plotted on semi log graph paper. The mean diameter of the circle of growth = the abscissa the log of the concentration of biotin is the ordinate. A linear relationship exists between the diameter of the growth zone in mm and the log of the dose.

11 After urine samples are adjusted to pH 6.6-6.8 with 2 N HCl or 4 N NaOH and the volume change noted if any the samples are carried through the same procedure as the standard solutions of biotin.

Calculation

- 1 From the standard curve read directly the concentration of biotin in milligrams per ml. It is preferable to have no dilution of urine samples. If there is a volume change due to adjustment of pH multiply the direct reading by the dilution factor.

Example

- 1 On the standard curve 25 milligramma of biotin per ml gave a reading of 77 mm on the Penicillin reader. A specimen of urine, undiluted produced a growth zone of .7 mm. Thus the sample had .50 milligramma biotin per ml. If the sample had been diluted 9 ml of urine plus 1 ml of acid or base when adjusting pH and the zone of growth read 27 mm the sample tested would contain

$$250 \times \frac{10}{9} = .75 \text{ milligramma/ml}$$

Precautions

- 1 Since the filter pads rapidly absorb water from the moist agar the solutions must be added to the pads as soon as possible after they have been placed upon the agar
- 2 The same volume of fluid must be delivered to each pad. Care is required at this step in the procedure
- 3 After inoculation of agar with organisms do not flame the flask each time before or after adding the 16 ml amounts to Petri dishes
- 4 Agar for inoculation must not be over 45 C nor cool enough that the agar starts to harden

9 Microbiology Miscellaneous References**Microbiology—General**

Snell E E *Microbiological Methods in Vitamin Research* Look Vitamin Methods by Paul Gyorgy Academic Press Inc New York pages 3 503 1950

Amino Acids

Dunn M S Determination of Amino Acids by Microbiological Assay *Physiol. Rev.* 29 219 250 (July) 1949

Guillard B M Snell E E, and Williams B J Microbiological Determination of Amino Acids IV Lysine, Histidine Arginine and Valine *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med.* 61 (2) 153 161 (Feb.) 1946

Schwartz B S and Snell E E Microbiological Methods for the Estimation of Amino Acids *Nutrition Abstr & Rev* 16 (3) 437 510 (Jan.) 1946

Woodson H W Hiler S W, Solomon J D and Bergsm, O Urinary Excretion of Amino Acids by Human Subjects on Normal Diets *J Biol Chem.* 172 (2) 613 618 (Feb) 1948

Arginine

Horn M J Jones D B and Blum A E Microbiological Determination of Arginine in Proteins and Foods *J Biol Chem.* 178 59 63 (Oct.) 1948

Choline

Dandelin F J The Microbiological Determination of Choline *J Am Pharm. A. (Scient. Ed.)* 38 (6) 304 307 (June) 1949

Horowitz N H, and Beadle G W A Microbiological Method for the Determination of Choline by Use of a Mutant of *Neurospora* *J Biol Chem.* 150 (2) 3 5-333 (Oct) 1943

Luecke R W and Pearson P B The Microbiological Determination of Free Choline in Plasma and Urine *J Biol Chem.* 153 (1) 53 63 (April) 1944

Glutamic Acid

Dunn M S Camlen M N, Shankman S and Block H The Determination of d (-) and l (+)-Glutamic Acid in Protein Hydrolysates, *J Biol Chem.* 153 (1) 43-49 (April) 1947

Histamine

Chen, O, Ansar, C R and Clarke I H The Biological Assay of Histamine and Diphenhydramine Hydrochloride (Benadryl Hydrochloride) *J Pharmacol. and Exp. Therapeutics* 97 903 (Jan.) 1948

Isoleucine

Horn M J, Jones, D B. and Blum, A. E. Microbiological Determination of Isoleucine in Proteins and Food *J Biol Chem.* 180 69, 91 (Sept.) 1949

260 Microbiological Procedures

Lysine

Horn M. J. Jones D. B., and Blum A. E. Microbiological Determination of Lysine in Proteins and Foods, *J Biol Chem* 169 (1) 71-76 (June) 1947

Manganese

Bentley O. G., Snell E. E. and Phillips P. H. A Microbiological Method for the Determination of Manganese *J Biol Chem* 170 (1) 343-360 (Sept) 1947

Pantothenic Acid

Bushirk H. H. Bergdahl, A. M., and Delor P. A. Enzymatic Digestion of Samples for Microbiological Assay of Pantothenic Acid *J Biol Chem* 172 (2) 871-875 (Feb) 1948

Para-Amino Benzoic Acid

Landy M. and Dicken D. M. A Microbiological Method for the Determination of p-Amino Benzoic Acid, *J Biol Chem* 146 109-114 (Nov) 1942

Lewis J. C. A Lactobacillus Assay Method for p-Amino Benzoic Acid, *J Biol Chem* 146 441-460 (Dec) 1940

Thompson H. C. Isbell I. F. and Mitchell H. K. A Microbiological Assay Method for p-Amino Benzoic Acid *J Biol Chem* 148 231-237 (May) 1943

Phenylalanine

Prescott B. A. Borek, E. Brecher A. and Waelisch H. Studies on Oligophrenic Phenylpyruvic L. Microbiological Determination of L- and D-Phenylalanine and of Phenyllactic Acid *J Biol Chem* 181 273-280 (Nov) 1949

Progesterone

Hooker, C. W. and Forbes T. R. A Bio Assay for Minute Amounts of Progesterone, *Endocrinol* 41 158-169 (Aug) 1947

Pteric Acid

Franklin, A. L. Stokstad E. L. R. and Jukes T. H. Urinary Excretion Studies Following the Administration of Pteric Acid *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 68 (3) 516-518 (Dec) 1947

Riboflavin

Roberts E. C. and Snell E. E. An Improved Medium for Microbiological Assays With Lactobacillus Casei *J Bio Chem* 163 (2) 499-509 (May) 1946

Sterols

Kráml A. and Horvath, J. Microbiological Oxidation of Sterols, *Nature* 163 19 (Feb) 1949

Tryptophane

Dunn M. S., Schoff H. F., Frankl W. and Rockland L. B. Investigation of Amino Acids, Peptides and Proteins. XX The Determination of Apparatus for Tryptophane in Blood by a Microbiological Method *J Biol Chem* 157 37-394 (Jan) 1945

Vitamin B₁₂

Capps B. F. Hobbs N. L., and Fox M. H. A Method for the Microbiological Assay of Vitamin B₁₂ *J Biol Chem* 178 517-518 (March) 1949

Caswell M. C. Koditschek L. K. and Hendlin D. The Microbiological Estimation of Lactobacillus Lactis Dörner Activity With Vitamin B₁₂ as a Standard *J Biol Chem* 180 120-123 (Aug) 1949

Hoffmann, C. E., Stokstad E. L. R. Hutchings B. L., Doranbush, A. C. and Jukes T. H. The Microbiological Assay of Vitamin B₁₂ With Lactobacillus Leichmann *J Biol Chem* 181 635-641 (Dec) 1940

Rickes, E. L., Brink N. G., Koniusy F. R., Wood T. R. Folkers, K. Vitamin B₁₂ A Cobalt Complex *Science* 108 134 (Aug) 1949

Shorb M. M. Activity of Vitamin B₁₂ for the Growth of Lactobacillus Lactis *Science* 107 397-398 (April) 1943

SECTION VI

PHYSIOLOGICAL MEASUREMENTS

A BLOOD GASES

1 Calculation of Gas Volumes

For many physiological purposes it becomes necessary to compute gas volumes dry at 0°C and 760 mm Hg barometric pressure from observations made on gas saturated with water vapor at any temperature and barometric pressure

The general equation for this calculation is

$$\text{ml gas dry at 0°C and 760 mm Hg} = \text{ml observed} \times \frac{(273)}{T + 273} \times \frac{(B - V)}{(760)}$$

Where T is ambient temperature in °C B is ambient pressure in mm Hg and V is water vapor tension at the ambient temperature a value which must be obtained from empirical tables in standard handbooks and 273.2 is the absolute temperature for 0°C

The line chart (Fig 2c) was prepared by Dr Robert C Darling it gives at once the factor by which observed gas volume is multiplied to reduce it to volumes dry at 0°C and 760 mm Hg

2 Techniques for Obtaining Arterial Blood and for Handling Blood Anaerobically

Usual Method for Obtaining Arterial Blood

Arterial blood is obtained by a procedure quite similar to that for venous blood. A # 0 gauge needle 1½ inches long with a short concave bevel is preferable. Particular attention is given to oiling the syringe. Care should be taken that the oil is free from air bubbles and air bubbles should not be introduced during the aspiration of blood into the syringe. Under no circumstances is a tourniquet to be applied. The brachial artery just proximal to the antecubital fossa is usually selected for puncture. It may be helpful to hyperextend the arm slightly during an arterial puncture by inserting a small pad under the elbow. The position of the artery is palpated with the left index finger. Arterial punctures are performed mainly by palpation rather than by observation of the vessel. Attention should be given to avoid penetrating a superficial vein before entering the artery. The skin is cleansed with alcohol. The syringe is held in the right hand at an angle of 45° and the skin and subcutaneous tissue entered. The needle and syringe are continued along a plane parallel to the artery. As soon as the artery is entered blood should flow into the syringe so that little or no decompression of the plunger is needed. Once the needle is in the artery its position should not be altered until the desired quantity of blood is removed. A large sponge is then applied forcefully over the assumed site of entrance into the artery and the syringe is removed. A firm bandage is immediately applied over the sponge with the pressure on and above the puncture never below.

LINE CHART FOR DETERMINING FACTORS TO REDUCE SATURATED GAS VOLUMES TO
 DRY VOLUMES AT 0°C AND 760 MM HG

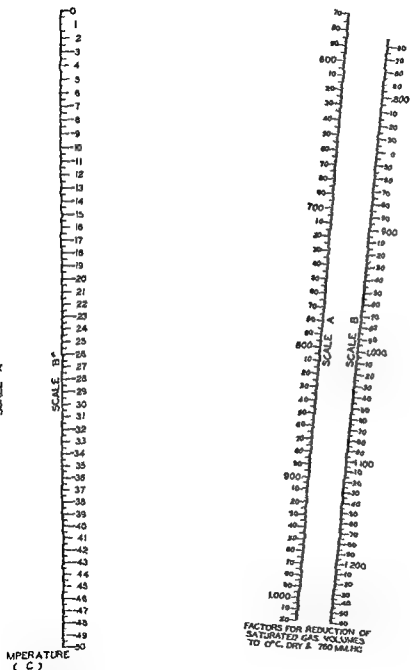


Fig. 25—Line chart for converting wet gas volumes to STP and dry (This chart was prepared by Dr Robert C Darling)

The blood is next transferred to a blood tube which contains an anticoagulant and $\frac{1}{4}$ inch layer of mineral oil. During the initial stages of the transfer the syringe is held in a horizontal position and the plunger is not touched. The needle is removed and replaced by a rubber connection to a 6 inch capillary glass tube. The capillary tube is filled with blood by gentle compression of the plunger. The tip of the tube is next placed at the bottom of the blood tube below the oil and the remainder of the blood is gently delivered into the bottom of the tube. The blood may be mixed with the anticoagulant by repeated exchange of blood between syringe and tube meanwhile avoiding all air bubbles. An alternate procedure is gently stirring the blood in the tube with a glass stirring rod taking care to avoid emulsifying the blood with the oil.

Technique of Goldschmidt and Light for Arterializing Venous Blood (*J Biol Chem* 64 103) 1919

The hand is immersed in hot water at 45 C for 20 minutes. Blood is drawn anaerobically from any convenient vein on the back of the hand.

Technique of Lillenthal and Riley for Arterializing Venous Blood (*J Clin. Investigation* 23 904 1944)

The ear is heated by radiant heat for 10 minutes at an air temperature of 45 C measured next to the pinna. The lobe is pricked and drops of blood are caught in oxalate or heparin in a specially constructed funnel from which samples may be drawn with a micropipette.

Mook's Technique for Handling Blood Anaerobically (*Biochem Z* 242 39 1931)

One uses small glass tubes of length about 35 mm internal diameter about 3 mm and total content about .50 cmm. Each tube has a slight flare to the bottom.

The warmed finger is pricked and a tube is firmly applied to the hole. The diffusion of CO_2 out of the blood and O_2 into it under these conditions is such that when the tube is filled samples may be drawn with micropipettes from the center of the tube and the results are essentially the same as if the samples were drawn under oil.

Scholander's Technique for Handling Blood Anaerobically (*J Biol Chem* 148 541 1943)
See Figs. 6 and 7)

The plunger of an all glass 1 or 5 ml syringe is lubricated with 1 or 2 drops of heavy oil. A little heparin solution is drawn into the syringe and the walls of the barrel moistened with the solution by drawing the plunger all the way down and pushing it up again the dead space at the top and the nozzle being left full of heparin. The solution is freed from air bubbles by rapid twisting of the syringe in the vertical position the syringe being held by the nozzle or needle the plunger being arrested by a clip. This procedure centrifuges the bubbles to the center so that they can be easily expelled. The nozzle is attached to a needle and the blood vessel punctured. The air bubble from the needle is cautiously expelled the needle removed and the nozzle dipped into a dish containing mercury a little of which is drawn into the syringe. The air bubble from the needle can be avoided by inserting the needle into the blood vessel with another syringe drawing the needle full of blood and then exchanging the first syringe for the syringe containing heparin. A $\frac{1}{4}$ inch length of rubber tube is joined to the nozzle filled with blood and closed with a glass plug without trapping an air bubble. The mercury is used for mixing the blood in the syringe which is immersed in a beaker of ice and water. For high accuracy it may be necessary to correct for the slight dilution with the heparin solution.

For transfer to the pipette the syringe is removed from the beaker dried the blood well mixed and the fluid in the rubber tube pumped a few times into the main bulk of the blood by working the glass plug up and down. The plug and rubber tube are then removed and the pipette with the tip protruding about an inch over the edge of the beaker is held with its conical tip pressed against the opening of the syringe nozzle. If difficulty

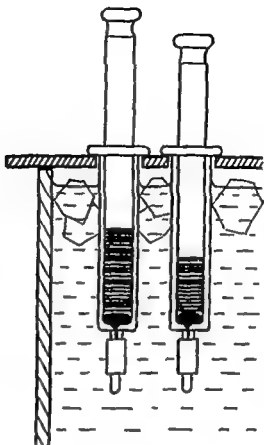


Fig 26—Anaerobic storage of blood by Scholander's technique

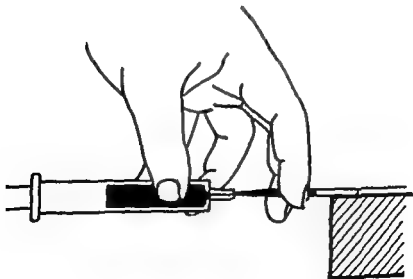


Fig 27—Transfer of blood from storage syringe into pipette.

is experienced in this step the pipette tip may be covered with a rubber plug with a capillary bore. The pipette is then loaded by screwing in the plunger. The syringe is stoppered without trapping air and returned to the ice bath.

3 The Van Slyke-Neill Manometric Apparatus

Reference

Van Slyke D D and Neill J M: The Determination of Gases in Blood and Other Solutions by Vacuum Extraction and Manometric Measurements *J Biol Chem* 81 : 3 538 (Sept) 19 4

Principle

In the Van Slyke apparatus advantage is taken of a vacuum. The gas is liberated chemically extracted by vacuum and its partial pressure measured in a partial vacuum on a mercury manometer calibrated in centimeters. All reagents employed must be free from physically dissolved gases in significant amounts.

Apparatus

(See Fig 28)

Preparation of Air Free Solutions

Dissolved gases are removed from the solution by adding a suitable volume of reagent to the chamber sealing the stopcock to the chamber with mercury and shaking the evacuated chamber. This is done by lowering the leveling bulb and opening the leveling stopcock. The liquid is allowed to fall to the point where the mercury is approximately at the 50 ml mark in the chamber. Shaking is allowed to proceed for three minutes then the machine is stopped and the mercury stopcock is opened allowing the solution to come to atmospheric pressure. The leveling bulb is now raised to the higher bracket on the machine and the stopcock to the chamber is opened allowing only the gas to escape. Repeat the procedure again.

About one ml of mercury is now added to the cup and a storing device usually some form of separatory funnel containing mineral oil or a burette seated in the chamber cup. The mercury acts as a gasket. The stopcock to the storage apparatus is opened and this is followed by opening the chamber stopcock forcing the fluid up into the storage tower where it is stored under oil.

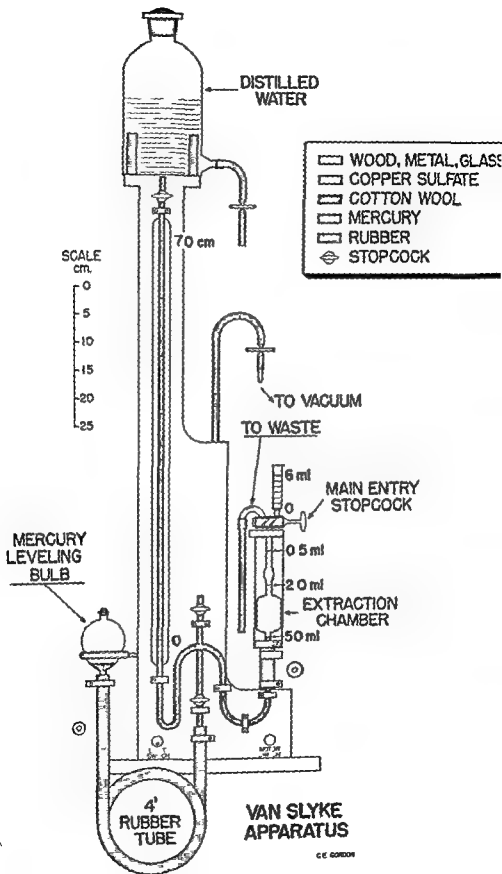
Most reagents are evacuated and stored in this manner. Under the heading *Reagents* in each method the reagents that need evacuating and storage in this manner will be mentioned.

Machine Correction (C Corrections)

In all gasometric determinations a machine correction must be established (C). This is done by using the same procedure as for blood except that where blood is used a substituted volume of air free water is used or in the case of the determination of oxygen 1 ml extra oxygen reagent is substituted for blood. The C correction is really a correction that compensates for the pressure change due to the addition of the absorption reagents. For oxygen the C correction is about 10 mm for carbon dioxide about 15 0 mm of mercury.

Moisture in the Manometer

Small amounts of moisture find their way into the manometer as the mercury flows back and forth from the analysis chamber. Some error from variation of the vapor pressure might occur if it were left in the manometer tube. To absorb the water vapor a few drops of ethylene glycol (E. K. Co.) are admitted through the stopcock at the top of the manometer and permitted to flow down the tube for 10 cm. Allow the fluid to run up and down the manometer by raising and lowering the mercury leveling bulb. Finally the fluid is forced through the top stopcock and fluid is left behind but not enough to interfere with the readings of the mercury meniscus. Renew occasionally in the same manner.



Precautions

- 1 Always remember two things
 - a. Whenever taking in samples or solutions the leveling bulb must always be on the lower support
 - b. Whenever expelling any mixture from the chamber always place the leveling bulb in the upper support
- 2 When the chamber has been evacuated never open the main stopcock as the vacuum will send the mixture in the chamber back into the manometer

1 Oxygen in Whole Blood (Van Slyke)**Reference**

Van Slyke D. M. and Neil J. M. The Determination of Gases in Blood and Other Solutions by Vacuum Extraction and Manometric Measurements. VII. The Determination of Oxygen in Blood *J Biol Chem* 61: 53-554 (Sept.) 1914

Principle

Oxygen in blood is released from oxyhemoglobin by shaking in a vacuum with potassium ferric oxide. The liberated oxygen is measured manometrically by absorbing the oxygen with sodium hydrosulfite.

Apparatus

- 1 A Van Slyke manometric apparatus with an electric motor
- Van Slyke Neill stopcock pipettes calibrated between marks capacities of 0.5 ml, 1.0 ml and 0 ml
- 3 Two 50 ml burettes for storing air free sodium hydroxide (NaOH) and sodium hydrosulfite ($\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$) solutions. Keep two to three inches of oil in the burettes to prevent the solution from coming into contact with the outside air
- 4 Rubber tips for delivering sample into evacuating chamber

Reagents

- 1 Oxygen reagent: 3 gm of pure white saponin, 6 gm of potassium ferricyanide and 8 ml caprylic alcohol. Dissolve and dilute to 1000 ml with water. Shake well before using.
- 2 Sodium hydroxide: Approximately 1 N. Dissolve 40 gm NaOH in water and dilute to 1000 ml. Make about 5-30 ml air free by shaking in a vacuum two to three times and expel gas between shakings. Store in 50 ml burette under oil. Make up air free NaOH each day.
- 3 Sodium hydrosulfite ($\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$, Lycopon): Mix 5 gm quickly in 0.5 ml of 1 N NaOH and make air free as soon as possible. Store in the other 50 ml burette under paraffin oil. Do not try to dissolve any more than will go into solution by merely rotating flask for a few seconds. Make fresh daily.
- 4 Fieser's modified reagent (may be used for absorbing the oxygen). Dissolve in the following order in 100 ml of distilled water: 14 gm of potassium hydroxide, 16 gm of sodium hydrosulfite, 3 gm sodium anthraquinone beta sulfonate and add 3 drops of 10% ferric chloride solution. Store in a rubber topped flask in the cold. Make fresh every week.
- 5 Mercury: Although a cleaning tower may be used a simpler device is to use an airating bottle. By bubbling air through the mercury in the latter case the mercury is brought into contact with the diluted HNO_3 . Bubble air through the Hg for several hours. Remove HNO_3 and repeat with several washes using distilled water. Repeat once with glass-distilled water. Drain off mercury and absorb visible water with filter paper.
- 6 Stopcock grease (Lubrisal A. H. Thomas Co.)

- 7 Lactic acid solution approximately 1 N Use C P lactic acid solution and dilute 100 ml to 1000 ml with distilled water
- 8 Caprylic alcohol (Eastman Kodak Co)
- 9 Oil (heavy paraffin)

Procedure

- 1 Rinse out apparatus by shaking 2 ml of 1 N lactic acid solution plus 10 ml of distilled water in a vacuum Expel into waste jar
- 2 The waste bore of the chamber stopcock is sealed with mercury Vacuum chamber and main bore of main cock are also filled with mercury Main cock is closed Leveling cock is open Mercury bulb is at atmospheric level (lower level)
- 3 Pour 10 ml oxygen reagent and 2 drops of caprylic alcohol into entry cup Open main cock and take in reagent to top of capillary between cup and chamber Close cock
- 4 Seal chamber and cock Pour a few drops of mercury into cup Open and close cock so that main bore fills with mercury from end to end Suck off excess from cup
- 5 Evacuate solution Drop mercury level to 50 ml mark in chamber (Open leveling cock and lower bulb until sufficient mercury has left chamber Then close cock.) Shake gently for 3 minutes
- 6 Expel air from chamber Raise bulb to high level Open leveling cock slowly (so that mercury will not strike top of manometer tube suddenly) Open main cock slowly and release air Let out reagent to 55 ml mark in cup Close main cock and support bulb at atmospheric level
- 7 Admit blood Using main cock take in exactly 1 ml blood from a Van Slyke pipette and take oxygen reagent into cup to the 35 ml mark Close cock and seal Suck off excess fluid and mercury
- 8 Evacuate Drop mercury level to 50 ml mark as above Shake for 3 minutes
- 9 Absorb carbon dioxide Reduce gas phase to about 5 ml by opening and closing leveling cock Add 1 ml NaOH (air free) to cup Take in 0.5 ml drop by drop by manipulation of main cock Seal and suck off mercury and remains of the reagent Let reagent drain for a minute
- 10 Read P Adjust gas phase to 2 ml mark at a constant rate using leveling cock P is the pressure of gaseous oxygen and nitrogen Read manometer to the nearest 1/10 mm.
- 11 Absorb oxygen Add 1 ml hydrosulfite solution to cup and take in 0.5 ml drop by drop over a period of 2 minutes When half has been added open leveling cock part way and allow contents to rise in chamber while remainder is added Seal and suck off excess fluid cup There should be only a tiny bubble of nitrogen at top of vacuum chamber when oxygen is completely absorbed.
- 12 Read P Adjust gas phase to 2 ml mark using leveling cock and read manometer to nearest 1/10 mm
- 13 Record the temperature of the chamber to the nearest 1/10 C
- 14 Release pressure and expel the mixture into the waste jar
- 15 Rinse out with lactic acid and water again and expel

Calculation

- 1 mm partial pressure total O at T of water jacket = $P_t - P - C$
- 2 ml total O/100 ml blood =
(mm partial pressure O) \times (temperature factor from Table 16)
- 3 ml O, bound by hemoglobin/100 ml blood =
(ml total O - ml dissolved O at T and pO observed)
- a For venous blood dissolved O is 0.10 ml/100 ml
- b For arterial blood dissolved O is 0.25 ml/100 ml.

TABLE 16

OXYGEN FACTORS (VAN SLYKE)

To obtain ml O₂/100 ml blood mult ply pO at jacket temperature by factor in table (One ml samples analyzed)

JACKET TEMP °C	O ₂ FACTOR	JACKET TEMP °C	O ₂ FACTOR	JACKET TEMP °C	O ₂ FACTOR	JACKET TEMP °C	O ₂ FACTOR
10.0	493	0.0	450	5.0	406	30.0	360
1	9	1	49	1	0	1	65
2	91	2	49	2	01	2	64
3	91	3	47	3	03	3	64
4	90	4	46	4	03	4	63
5	89	5	45	5	0	5	6
6	88	6	45	6	01	6	61
7	87	7	44	7	100	7	60
8	87	8	43	8	100	8	60
9	86	9	4	9	399	9	9
10.0	485	10	441	6.0	399	31.0	359
1	84	1	40	1	97	1	57
2	84	2	39	2	96	2	56
3	83	3	39	3	96	3	56
4	8	4	37	4	9	4	55
5	81	5	36	5	94	5	54
6	81	6	36	6	93	6	53
7	80	7	3	7	9	7	
8	79	8	34	8	9	8	
9	78	9	33	9	91	9	51
11.0	48	0	4	0	390	4.0	350
1	77	1	31	1	80	1	40
2	76	2	0	2	88	2	48
3	7	3	9	3	89	3	48
4	4	4	99	4	8	4	47
5	73	5	7	5	86	5	46
6	7	6	7	6	85	6	4
7	71	7	96	7	84	7	44
8	70	8	5	8	81	8	44
9	69	9	94	9	81	9	43
12.0	464	10	411	7.0	393	32.0	354
1	67	1	91	1	91	1	41
2	66	2	91	2	80	2	40
3	66	3	0	3	9	3	39
4	65	4	10	4	9	4	38
5	64	5	19	5	9	5	3
6	63	6	19	6	7	6	3
7	6	7	1	7	0	7	36
8	61	8	16	8	6	8	35
9	60	9	15	9	5	9	34
13.0	455	10	414	8.0	384	34.0	351
1	59	1	17	1	77		
2	57	2	17	2	-		
3	56	3	17	3	-		
4	55	4	11	4	1		
5	54	5	10	5	0		
6	51	6	09	6	69		
7	51	7	09	7	69		
8	5	8	09	8	69		
9	51	9	0	9	6		

c For blood equilibrated with air at 760 mm and 25 C dissolved O is 0.6 ml/100 ml

$$4 \text{ gm hemoglobin/100 ml blood} = \frac{(\text{ml bound oxygen})}{1.34}$$

Example

P = 153.2 mm P = 72.5 mm C = 17 mm T = 25 C

1 ml total O_2 /100 ml = $(153.2 - 72.5 - 0.7) \times (0.2406) = 19.25$

2 ml dissolved O/100 ml = 0.62

3 ml bound O = 18.63/100 ml blood

4 gm Hb/100 ml blood = $18.63/1.34 = 13.9$

Precautions

See section on apparatus

5 Carbon Dioxide in Whole Blood and Serum (Van Slyke)

Reference

Van Slyke D D and Neill J M The Determination of Gases in Blood by Vacuum Extraction and Manometric Measurements V Determination of Carbon Dioxide
J Biol Chem 61 543-553 (Sept) 1924

Principle

Both bound carbonate and free carbon dioxide are liberated from the blood or serum with lactic acid and the liberated carbon dioxide is measured manometrically by absorption with sodium hydroxide

Apparatus

The same as for Oxygen.

Reagents

- 1 Caprylic alcohol (Eastman Kodak Co)
- 2 Distilled water Make air free and store under oil as for oxygen reagents.
- 3 Sodium hydroxide approximately 1 N 40 gm dissolved in 1000 ml distilled water Make air free
- 4 Lactic acid approximately 1 N 92 ml USP lactic acid diluted to 1000 ml with water
- 5 Very clean mercury (See oxygen method)
- 6 Paraffin oil heavy

Procedure

- 1 Clean out apparatus by shaking in a vacuum with 2 ml lactic acid solution and approximately 10 ml of distilled water Shake approximately one minute and expel into waste jar
- 2 Seal off the main stopcock at both ends with mercury by raising the leveling bulb to the upper position
- 3 Place leveling bulb at lower position and admit one to 2 drops of caprylic alcohol into the capillary of the main stopcock
- 4 Place 2.5 ml of air free water into the entry cup
- 5 Pipette exactly 1 ml of serum or blood (when using blood make certain that the blood specimen has been stirred well as too much of either the red cells or plasma will cause very erroneous results) and introduce into the chamber through a rubber tip
- 6 Then wash in the sample with the remainder of the water
- 7 Add 6 drops (0.3 ml) of lactic acid solution and admit into the chamber
- 8 Seal the main stopcock with mercury and draw off the excess mercury in the cup by means of a vacuum

TABLE 17

CO FACTORS FOR VAN SLYKE APPARATUS

(For 1 ml samples of blood or serum. To obtain ml total CO per 100 ml sample multiply pCO by factor for jacket temperature.)

JACKET TEMP °C	CO FACTOR	JACKET TEMP °C	CO FACTOR	JACKET TEMP °C	CO ₂ FACTOR	JACKET TEMP °C	CO FACTOR
15.0	.35	0.0	.66	5.0	.94	30.0	.53
1	3	1	.61	1	.93	1	.5
	.80		.60	"	.91	2	.31
3	8	3	.59	3	.90	3	.30
4	8	4	.57	4	.89	4	.29
5	8	5	.55	5	.88	5	
6	.81	6	.54	6	.86	6	.6
7	2	7	.53	7	.85	7	.5
8	.21	8	.52	8	.84	8	.4
9	.20	9	.50	9	.83	9	.3
16.0	.719	21.0	.648	6.0	.881	31.0	.5
1	.17	1	.47	1	.80	1	.1
	.16		.46	"	.79	"	.0
3	.15	3	.45	3	.77	3	.19
4	.13	4	.44	4	.76	4	.18
5	.11	5	.43	5	.75	5	.16
6	.10	6	.41	6	.74	6	.15
7	.8	7	.39	7	.73	7	.14
8	.7	8	.37	8	.71	8	.13
9	.5	9	.36	9	.70	9	.12
17.0	.04	0	.634	7.0	.869	32.0	.511
1	.03	1	.33	1	.68	1	.10
	.0		.3	"	.67	"	.09
3	.00	3	.31	3	.65	3	.08
4	.099	4	.30	4	.64	4	.07
	.08	5	.29	5	.63	5	.05
6	.06	6	.26	6	.6	6	.04
	.04	7	.24	7	.61	7	.03
8	.03	8	.22	8	.59	8	.02
9	.01	9	.2	9	.58	9	.01
18.0	.090	30	.60	30	.55	33.0	.500
1	.88	1	.19	1	.56	1	.499
	.87	"	.18	2	.55	2	.49
3	.86	3	.16	3	.53	3	.47
4	.84	4	.14	4	.5	4	.46
	.81	5	.14	5	.51	5	.44
6	.81	6	.12	6	.50	6	.43
	.79	7	.11	7	.49	7	.4
9	.78	8	.10	8	.47	8	.39
10	.76	9	.09	9	.46	9	.38
19.0	.075	40	.60	40	.54	34.0	.459
1	.74	1	.06	1	.44		
	.73	"	.04	2	.43		
3	.7	3	.03	3	.41		
4	.71	4	.02	4	.40		
5	.69	5	.01	5	.39		
6	.68	6	.009	6	.38		
7	.67	7	.008	7	.37		
8	.66	8	.007	8	.36		
9	.64	9	.005	9	.34		

- Take leveling bulb from lower support and create a vacuum in the mixing chamber by lowering the bulb below the lower support. When the blood mixture reaches the 50 ml mark close the vacuum controlling stopcock. Place leveling bulb on lower support and shake for three minutes
- 10 Raise the contents of the chamber by opening the vacuum controlling stopcock at a fairly rapid rate to prevent the reabsorption of the carbon dioxide. Stop when the gas phase reaches the 2 ml mark and read immediately (P). If you overshoot the 2 ml mark draw back to the 50 ml mark and shake again for three minutes. Read again on the 2 ml mark
- 11 Drop gas phase to approximately 5 ml region of the chamber by creating a vacuum again
- 12 Add approx 15 ml of air free NaOH to the cup. By opening the main stopcock admit drop by drop one ml of NaOH
- 13 Seal the main stopcock again with mercury and draw off the excess NaOH in the cup by means of a vacuum
- 14 Allow to stand one minute for complete absorption of the carbon dioxide and adjust the gas phase to the 2 ml mark. This is done by opening the vacuum controlling stopcock slowly. If the mark is overshoot just lower the gas phase below the 2 ml mark allow to drain again and read (P). Release pressure and place leveling bulb on upper support. Expel the blood mixture into the waste jar. Place the leveling bulb at the lower support and clean the apparatus again with lactic acid and water
- 15 Record temperature of water jacket

Calculation

ml total CO_2 /100 ml blood =

$(P_1 - P - C) \times \text{temperature factor for CO from Table 17}$

Example

P 2713 mm P 100 mm C 13 mm

Water jacket temperature 25 C

ml total CO_2 /100 ml blood =

$(2713 - 700 - 13) \times 0.0594 = 51.9 \text{ ml}/100 \text{ ml}$

Precautions

See section on apparatus

6 Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide in Single Samples of Blood (Van Slyke)

Reference

Van Slyke D D and Neill J M The Determination of Gases in Blood and Other Solutions by Vacuum Extraction and Manometric Measurements VIII. Combined Determination of Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide in Blood J Biol Chem. 61:561-562 (Sept.) 1924

Principle

By combining the technique for oxygen alone and carbon dioxide alone a single sample suffices for both substances. In our experience the most consistent results are obtained when the size of samples is 0.5 ml

Apparatus

The Van Slyke manometric apparatus

Reagents

1 Caprylic alcohol (Eastman Kodak Co.)

2 Combined reagent Mix equal volumes of the following

a Lactic acid 12% in water

- b. Ferricyanide solution containing in 1000 ml water 33 gm potassium ferricyanide $[K_3Fe(CN)_6]$ 11 gm pure sodium and 3 ml caprylic alcohol. Shake before mixing with lactic acid solution.
- 3 Sodium hydroxide 1 N. Dissolve 40 gm in 1000 ml of water.
- 4 Sodium hydrosulfite. See the Oxygen method.

Procedure

1. Rinse out apparatus with lactic acid and water before proceeding with the analysis. Admit drops of caprylic alcohol into capillary of main (entry) cock.
2. Admit 6 ml combined reagent to vacuum chamber. Seal with mercury. Evacuate. Shake for 3 minutes.
3. Expel air and let out reagent to 5 ml mark in cup.
4. Take in exactly 0.5 ml blood and lower reagent in cup to 3.0 ml mark. If using 1.0 ml blood lower reagent to 3.5 ml mark.
5. Seal chamber and suck off excess fluid from cup. Evacuate to 50 ml mark and shake for three minutes.
6. Adjust gas phase to 2 ml mark in chamber.
7. Read P value on mercury manometer. If mark is overshot evacuate and shake for three minutes more.
8. Lower contents to 5 ml region. Add 1.0 ml NaOH to cup and admit 0.5 ml drop by drop into chamber.
9. Seal with mercury. Wait a few seconds while CO is absorbed.
10. Adjust gas phase to 2 ml mark and read P value. Recheck P by lowering to approx. 5 ml and adjusting to the 2 ml mark again. The reading should be constant before continuing with the next step.
11. From here on proceed as in oxygen method. The final reading P = pressure of gaseous N.
12. Record the temperature in the water jacket.

Calculation (0.5 ml samples)

- 1 ml CO_2 /100 ml blood = $(P - P - C_{CO_2}) \times (\text{temp factor for } CO_2 \text{ Table 17}) \times 2$
- ml total O_2 /100 ml blood = $(P - P - C_{CO_2}) \times (\text{temp factor for } O_2 \text{ Table 16}) \times 2$

Example

Size of blood sample 0.5 ml
 P 198.0 mm P 108 mm. P_a 0.0 mm
 Water Jacket 5 C C for CO_2 1.3 C for O_2 0.7
 ml CO_2 /100 ml blood = $(198.0 - 108 - 1.3) \times 0.594 \times 2 = 45.9$
 ml O_2 /100 ml blood = $(198.2 - 0.0 - 0.7) \times 0.2406 \times 2 = 120.0$

Precautions

See section on apparatus. We have obtained more reproducible results using 0.5 ml samples than when using 1 ml samples.

Oxygen Capacity (Van Slyke)

Reference

Roughton F J W, Darling R C and Root W E. Factors Affecting the Determination of Oxygen Capacity Content and Pressure in Human Arterial Blood. *Am J Physiol* 142: 63-6 (Dec) 1954.

- 9 Take leveling bulb from lower support and create a vacuum in the mixing chamber by lowering the bulb below the lower support. When the blood mixture reaches the 100 ml mark close the vacuum controlling stopcock. Place leveling bulb on lower support and shake for three minutes.
- 10 Raise the contents of the chamber by opening the vacuum controlling stopcock at a fairly rapid rate to prevent the reabsorption of the carbon dioxide. Stop when the gas phase reaches the 2 ml mark and read immediately (P). If you overshoot the 2 ml mark draw back to the 50 ml mark and shake again for three minutes. Read again on the 2 ml mark.
- 11 Drop gas phase to approximately 5 ml region of the chamber by creating a vacuum again.
- 12 Add approx 15 ml of air free NaOH to the cup. By opening the main stopcock admit drop by drop one ml of NaOH.
- 13 Seal the main stopcock again with mercury and draw off the excess NaOH in the cup by means of a vacuum.
- 14 Allow to stand one minute for complete absorption of the carbon dioxide and adjust the gas phase to the 2 ml mark. This is done by opening the vacuum controlling stopcock slowly. If the mark is overshoot just lower the gas phase below the 2 ml mark allow to drain again and read (P). Release pressure and place leveling bulb on upper support. Expel the blood mixture into the waste jar. Place the leveling bulb at the lower support and clean the apparatus again with lactic acid and water.
- 15 Record temperature of water jacket.

Calculation

ml total CO_2 /100 ml blood =

$(P_1 - P - C) \times \text{temperature factor for CO}_2 \text{ from Table 17}$

Example

B 2713 mm P 700 mm C 13 mm

Water jacket temperature 25 C

ml total CO_2 /100 ml blood =

$(2713 - 700 - 13) \times 0.2594 = 51.9 \text{ ml}/100 \text{ ml}$

Precautions

See section on apparatus

6 Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide in Single Samples of Blood (Van Slyke)

Reference

Van Slyke D D and Neill J M. The Determination of Gases in Blood and Other Solutions by Vacuum Extraction and Manometric Measurements. VIII. Combined Determination of Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide in Blood. *J Biol Chem* 83: 561-562 (Sept) 1924

Principle

By combining the technique for oxygen alone and carbon dioxide alone a single sample suffices for both substances. In our experience the most consistent results are obtained when the size of samples is 0.5 ml.

Apparatus

The Van Slyke manometric apparatus

Reagents

1 Caprylic alcohol (Eastman Kodak Co.)

2 Combined reagent. Mix equal volumes of the following

a. Lactic acid 12% in water

■ Ferricyanide solution containing in 1000 ml water 3 gm potassium ferricyanide $[K_3Fe(CN)_6]$ 6 gm pure saponin and 3 ml caprylic alcohol. Shake before mixing with lactic acid solution.

3 Sodium hydroxide 1 N Dissolve 40 gm in 1000 ml of water

4 Sodium hydrosulfite See the Oxygen method.

Procedure

1. Rinse out apparatus with lactic acid and water before proceeding with the analysis. Admit 2 drops of caprylic alcohol into capillary of main (entry) cock.
2. Admit 6 ml combined reagent to vacuum chamber. Seal with mercury. Evacuate. Shake for 3 minutes.
3. Expel air and let out reagent to 5 ml mark in cup.
4. Take in exactly 0.5 ml blood and lower reagent in cup to 3.0 ml mark.
- ✓ If using 1.0 ml blood lower reagent to 3.5 ml mark.
5. Seal chamber and suck off excess fluid from cup. Evacuate to 50 ml mark and shake for three minutes.
7. Adjust gas phase to 1 ml mark in chamber.
8. Read P value on mercury manometer. If mark is overshoot evacuate and shake for three minutes more.
9. Lower contents to 5 ml reg on. Add 1.0 ml $NaOH$ to cup and admit 0.5 ml drop by drop into chamber.
10. Seal with mercury. Wait a few seconds while CO is absorbed.
11. Adjust gas phase to 2 ml mark and read P value. Recheck P by lowering to approx 5 ml and adjusting to the 1 ml mark again. The reading should be constant before continuing with the next step.
12. From here on proceed as in oxygen method. The final reading P_2 = pressure of gaseous H_2 .
13. Record the temperature in the water jacket.

Calculation (0.5 ml samples)

1 ml $CO_2/100$ ml blood =

$$(P - P - C_{CO}) \times (\text{temp factor for } CO \text{ Table 17}) \times 2$$

2 ml total $O_2/100$ ml blood =

$$(P - P - C_O) \times (\text{temp factor for } O \text{ Table 16}) \times 2$$

Example

Size of blood sample 0.5 ml.

P_1 198.0 mm P 108.2 mm. P_2 50 mm

Water Jacket $^{\circ}C$ C for CO 13 C for O 0

1 ml $CO_2/100$ ml blood =

$$(198.0 - 108.2 - 13) \times 0.934 \times 2 = 43.9$$

1 ml $O_2/100$ ml blood =

$$(108.2 - 50 - 0.7) \times 0.406 \times 2 = 18.05$$

Precautions

See section on apparatus. We have obtained more reproducible results using 0.5 ml samples than when using 1 ml samples.

7 Oxygen Capacity (Van Slyke)

Reference

Poughton ■ J. W. Darling, L. C. and Poot, W. S. Factors Affecting the Determination of Oxygen Capacity Content and Pressure in Human Arterial Blood. *Am J Physiol* 22: 59-60 (Dec) 1944

- Take leveling bulb from lower support and create a vacuum in the mixing chamber by lowering the bulb below the lower support. When the blood mixture reaches the 50 ml mark close the vacuum controlling stopcock. Place leveling bulb on lower support and shake for three minutes.
- 10 Raise the contents of the chamber by opening the vacuum controlling stopcock ■ a fairly rapid rate to prevent the reabsorption of the carbon dioxide. Stop when the gas phase reaches the 2 ml mark and read immediately (P). If you overshoot the 2 ml mark draw back to the 50 ml mark and shake again for three minutes. Read again on the 2 ml mark.
- 11 Drop gas phase to approximately 5 ml region of the chamber by creating a vacuum again.
- 12 Add approx 15 ml of air free NaOH to the cup. By opening the main stopcock admit drop by drop one ml of NaOH.
- 13 Seal the main stopcock again with mercury and draw off the excess NaOH in the cup by means of a vacuum.
- 14 Allow to stand one minute for complete absorption of the carbon dioxide and adjust the gas phase to the 2 ml mark. This is done by opening the vacuum controlling stopcock slowly. If the mark is overshoot just lower the gas phase below the 2 ml mark allow to drain again and read (P). Release pressure and place leveling bulb on upper support. Expel the blood mixture into the waste jar. Place the leveling bulb at the lower support and clean the apparatus again with lactic acid and water.
- 15 Record temperature of water jacket.

Calculation

ml total CO_2 /100 ml blood =

$(P - P - C) \times \text{temperature factor for CO from Table 17}$

Example

P 2713 mm P 700 mm C 13 mm

Water jacket temperature $^{\circ}\text{C}$

ml total CO_2 /100 ml blood =

$(2713 - 700 - 13) \times 0.2594 = 51.9 \text{ ml}/100 \text{ ml}$

Precautions

See section on apparatus

6 Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide in Single Samples of Blood (Van Slyke)

Reference

Van Slyke D. D. and Neill, J. M. The Determination of Gases in Blood and Other Solutions by Vacuum Extraction and Manometric Measurements. *III. Combined Determination of Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide in Blood* *J Biol Chem.* 61: 561-567 (Sept.) 1944

Principle

By combining the technique for oxygen alone and carbon dioxide alone a single sample suffices for both substances. In our experience the most consistent results are obtained when the size of samples is 0.5 ml.

Apparatus

The Van Slyke manometric apparatus

Reagents

- 1 Caprylic alcohol (Eastman Kodak Co.)
- 2 Combined reagent. Mix equal volumes of the following
 - a. Lactic acid 12% in water

- b. Ferricyanide solution containing in 1000 ml water 11 gm potassium ferricyanide $[K_3Fe(CN)_6]$ 8 gm pure saponin and 3 ml caprylic alcohol. Shake before mixing with lactic acid solution.
3. Sodium hydroxide 1 N - Dissolve 40 gm in 1000 ml of water
4. Sodium hydrosulfite - See the Oxygen method

Procedure

1. Rinse out apparatus with lactic acid and water before proceeding with the analysis. Admit 11 drops of caprylic alcohol into capillary of main (entry) cock.
2. Admit 6 ml combined reagent to vacuum chamber. Seal with mercury. Evacuate. Shake for 3 minutes.
3. Expel air and let out reagent to 5 ml mark in cup.
4. Take in exactly 0.5 ml blood and lower reagent in cup to 3.0 ml mark.
✓ If using 1.0 ml blood lower reagent to 3.5 ml mark.
5. Seal chamber and suck off excess fluid from cup. Evacuate to 50 ml mark and shake for three minutes.
6. Adjust gas phase to 2 ml mark in chamber.
7. Read P value on mercury manometer. If mark is overshot, evacuate and shake for three minutes more.
8. Lower contents to 5 ml region. Add 1.0 ml NaOH to cup and admit 0.5 ml drop by drop into chamber.
9. Seal with mercury. Wait a few seconds while CO is absorbed.
10. Adjust gas phase to 2 ml mark and read P value. Recheck P by lowering to approx 5 ml and adjusting to the 2 ml mark again. The reading should be constant before continuing with the next step.
11. From here on proceed as in oxygen method. The final reading P = pressure of gaseous N_2 .
12. Record the temperature in the water jacket.

Calculation (0.5 ml samples)

- 1 ml $CO_2/100$ ml blood =
 $(P - P - C_{CO_2}) \times (\text{temp factor for } CO_2 \text{ Table 17}) \times 2$
 " ml total $O_2/100$ ml blood =
 $(P - P - C_O) \times (\text{temp factor for } O_2 \text{ Table 18}) \times 2$

Example

Size of blood sample 0.5 ml.
 P_a 108.0 mm 1 108.2 mm P_a 0.0 mm
 Water Jacket 5 C. C for CO_2 13 C for O_2 0
 ml $CO_2/100$ ml blood =
 $(108.0 - 108.2 - 13) \times 0.394 \times 2 = 43.9$
 ml $O_2/100$ ml blood =
 $(108.2 - 0.0 - 0.7) \times 0.406 \times 2 = 88.0$

Precautions

See section on apparatus. We have obtained more reproducible results using 0.5 ml samples than when using 1 ml samples.

7 Oxygen Capacity (Van Slyke)

References

- Foughton F J W, Darling R C and Root W S. Factors Affecting the Determination of Oxygen Capacity Content and Pressure in Human Arterial Blood. *Am J Physiol* 142: 93-100 (Dec) 1944

Principle

The reference cited discusses significant errors in the common technique for determining oxygen capacity, i.e. equilibrating blood with air in a tonometer. The authors recommend equilibration directly in the Van Slyke extraction chamber.

Apparatus

- 1 Van Slyke manometric apparatus
- 2 Roughton Scholander syringe pipette

Reagents

- 1 Sodium chloride solution, 0.9%, equilibrated in a tonometer with 100 per cent oxygen
- 2 A solution of 3 % potassium ferricyanide and 8% of saponin deaerated in a tonometer and transferred to a burette (no oil) with no foam
- 3 Sodium hydroxide 0.1 N Deaerate and store under oil
- 4 Pyrogalllic acid 15% in sodium hydroxide solution (20%)
- 5 Caprylic alcohol
- 6 Clean mercury

Procedure

- 1 Clean chamber as in previous analyses
- 2 Admit two drops of caprylic alcohol and 1 ml of oxygenated saline into the chamber
- 3 Add exactly 1 ml blood into the cup and wash into the chamber with 5 ml of oxygenated saline
- 4 Mix contents of chamber and let in room air until mercury level is at the 100 ml mark.
- 5 Shake for two minutes and expel all the air quantitatively. Note that this is the time at which the blood is saturated with oxygen.
- 6 Add 0.25 ml of ferricyanide saponin solution and seal the chamber with mercury
- 7 Lower the mercury level to the 50 ml mark and shake the chamber for three minutes
- 8 Release the pressure of the gas phase to approximately 5 to 10 ml
- 9 Add 15 ml of 0.1 N NaOH in the cup and admit 1 ml into the chamber slowly. Seal with mercury and read at the 2 ml mark (P). When reading is constant proceed with the analyses
- 10 Add 15 ml of pyrogalllic acid solution to the cup and admit 1 ml very slowly keeping liquid level near the 2 ml mark. Allow two to three minutes for the absorption
- 11 Before sealing mix contents in the chamber open lower stopcock allowing gas to contract to a small bubble seal slowly so that last oxygen is absorbed by the last few drops of pyrogallol
- 12 Lower just below the two ml mark allow to drain and read (P) at the 0 ml mark

Calculation

See Oxygen in blood (Van Slyke)

Example

See Oxygen in blood (Van Slyke)

Precautions

- 1 The oxygen capacity of arterial blood as obtained by 15 minutes saturation with air in a tonometer followed by analysis in the Van Slyke Neill manometric apparatus is considered to be about 2 per cent higher than the value in the blood at the moment of withdrawal from the blood vessel. Three factors contribute to this discrepancy

- a Drainage errors in the saturator These cause the blood sample removed for analysis to be unduly rich in red cells (average effect equals about 0.7 per cent)
- b Gradual reversion of some of the inactive pigment to the active gas combining form. This effect is very variable but on the average equals 10 to 1.5 per cent of the total capacity. Owing to the smallness of the effect the nature of the inactive reverting pigment has not been established. It may be in part methemoglobin
- c Presence of traces of COHb in the blood.
- * Correction for these factors raises the average percent O Hb of normal man at sea level from 95 to 97 the arterial pO₂ as calculated from these figures and the blood dissociation curves comes out to 100 mm in agreement with alveolar pO₂ rather than to the average figure of 80 mm given in recent papers. The latter figure is believed to be false

8 Carbon Monoxide in Blood (Total Heme Pigments)

Reference

Horvath S M and Houghton F J W Improvements in the Gasometric Estimation of Carbon Monoxide in Blood *J Biol. Chem* 144 747 755 (June) 194

Principle

Dissolved carbon monoxide dissolved nitrogen and dissolved carbon dioxide are liberated into the gas phase of the Van Slyke manometric apparatus. Bound carbon monoxide and carbon dioxide are released at pH 6 by shaking with a hydro sulfite ferri cyanide solution. Carbon dioxide is absorbed with sodium hydroxide and the residual gas is solely carbon monoxide

Apparatus

- 1 Van Slyke Neill manometric apparatus
- * Roughton Scholander syringe pipette

Reagents

- 1 Caprylic alcohol (Eastman Kodak Co)
- 2 Saponin a 1% solution of pure white saponin
- 3 Sodium hydrosulfite ($\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$) a 1% solution in saturated sodium borate. A stock of 3% sodium borate ($\text{Na}_2\text{B}_4\text{O}_7 \cdot 10\text{H}_2\text{O}$) is prepared. At the beginning of the day 50 ml are placed in a 50 ml Erlenmeyer flask 1 gm of solid $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$ is dropped in the flask is quickly corked and shaken with only a minute bubble of air therein. The solution is at once transferred to a 50 ml burette
- 4. Potassium ferri cyanide [$\text{K}_3\text{Fe}(\text{CN})_6$] Prepare a 30% air free solution by shaking in an evacuated tonometer and transferring to a burette with rubber outlet and pinchcock. If it darkens a fresh supply must be made.
- 5 Acetate buffer 70 gm of sodium acetate plus 100 ml water and 15 ml of glacial acetic acid.
- 6 Mixed acetate buffer and $\text{K}_3\text{Fe}(\text{CN})_6$ reagent (air free) 50 ml of $\text{K}_3\text{Fe}(\text{CN})_6$ solution plus 1.5 ml of the acetate buffer
- 7 Sodium hydroxide (NaOH) a 10% solution (air free)
- 8 Water saturated with carbon monoxide at one atmosphere. Keep under paraffin oil in a 50 ml burette
- 9 Clean mercury (See oxygen method)

Procedure

- 1. Admit 5 ml of water into a clean chamber seal with mercury evacuate and shake for 2 minutes.

- 2 Expel all the water into the waste jar and seal off both ends of the main stop cock with mercury
- 3 8 drops of caprylic alcohol are drawn into the extracting chamber
- 4 Place 15 ml of 1% saponin solution into the cup
- 5 Exactly 1 or 2 ml of blood (according to whether the per cent COHb is greater or less than 50) are pipetted directly into the chamber followed by the remainder of the saponin solution that is in the cup
- 6 Mix in chamber by raising and lowering the leveling bulb, and allow one minute for complete laking
- 7 Place 2 ml of the hydrosulfite borate solution into the cup and draw 15 ml into the chamber
- 8 Mix again and allow to stand for one minute
- 9 Draw off and discard the excess hydrosulfite borate from the cup and add 18 ml of the carbon monoxide water into the chamber
- 10 Seal off with mercury and lower the mercury level in the chamber to the 80 ml mark
- 11 Cover the chamber with black paper and shake the solution for two minutes.
- 12 The evolved gases are quantitatively ejected. Seal again with mercury and shake again for two minutes more. Expel gases again (O_2 and N_2) and remove paper from chamber
- 13 Place 30 ml of air free ferricyanide buffer solution into the cup and take 10 ml into the chamber
- 14 Seal with mercury and discard remaining buffer & $Fe(CN)_6^{3-}$ solution
- 15 Lower the mercury level to approximately 1 cm below the 50 ml mark and shake the mixture for a total of 5 minutes
- 16 Once during the shaking the motor is temporarily stopped and the mercury raised to the 10 ml mark, so as to mix the solution in the stem of the chamber with the main body of the solution. In this way destruction of the ferricyanide by the mercury is minimized
- 17 At the end of 5 minutes the gas is then compressed nearly to atmospheric pressure and 2.5 ml of the air free NaOH placed in the cup
- 18 Take 15 ml of the NaOH into the chamber and allow about one minute for complete carbon dioxide absorption. Try not to let the solution get above the 8 ml mark
- 19 Adjust the solution meniscus to the 2 ml mark and read the pressure (P_1)
- 20 Using a Roughton-Scholander syringe pipette quantitatively eject the gas sample into it for CO analysis by the technique described in the sections on Roughton-Scholander methods
- 21 Lower the solution below the 10 ml mark allow to drain and read again at the 1 ml mark (P_2)
- 22 Record temperature of the water jacket

Calculation

- 1 ml total CO/100 ml blood =
 $(P_1 - P_2 - C) \times \text{temp factor for } O_2 \text{ Table 16}$
- 2 The correction for CO is calculated from the analysis of the sample in the syringe pipette

Example

One ml of blood was analyzed from a tonometer in which the blood was saturated with CO. P_1 was 134.2, P_2 was 47.8, C was 0.5. Water jacket was at 31.6°C.

ml total CO/100 ml blood =
 $(134.2 - 47.8 - 0.5) \times 0.2445 = 20.84 \text{ ml CO/100 ml blood}$

Precautions

- 1 Be sure to cover the chamber with black paper as light will destroy carbon monoxide heme complexes

Oxygen in Blood (Roughton Scholander)

Reference

Roughton F J W and Scholander, P F Micro Gasometric Estimation of the Blood Gases I Oxygen *J Biol Chem.* 148 541 550 (June) 1943

Principle

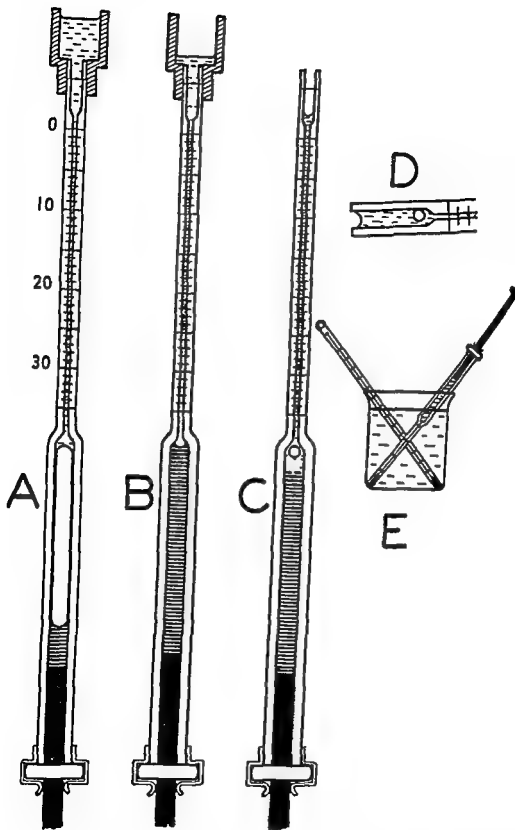
By mixing of blood in a special syringe with ferricyanide containing potassium bicarbonate and saponin and adding an acetate buffer a gas phase is provided for the extraction of the blood gases in the same way the vacuum acts in the Van Slyke method. The CO thus produced is then absorbed with 10 percent NaOH. The residual gas bubble is driven into the syringe's capillary and its volume measured before and after absorption of O with alkaline pyrogallol. The difference in these two volumes represents the O content of the blood and reagents. Then a blank is run for the O content of the reagents alone this figure is subtracted from the former and the remainder when multiplied by the usual correction factor for temperature and pressure gives the O content of the blood.

Apparatus

- 1 A one ml Pyrex tuberculin syringe with arresting clip and with standard bore precision 0.5 mm Pyrex capillary fused to its nozzle. The top of the capillary is expanded to a cylindrical cup of about 2.5 mm bore and 1.5 mm length. The capillary (7 to 8 cm length) is graduated into 30 divisions each of 1 mm length (Fig. 9).
- 2 Blood pipette made of thin walled glass tubing (1 to 1.5 mm bore) with a tip to fit into the bottom of the glass cup. The volume delivered from the mark to the tip is equal to 100 divisions of the capillary and is actually 39.3 mm.
- 3 A detachable rubber cup of about 1 ml capacity is fitted to the top of the glass cup when required.
- 4 Several 10 ml and 5 ml syringes with fine tipped rubber connected glass nozzle to store the reagents.
- 5 Metal or glass beakers one of them containing water at room temperature to place the syringe for equilibration between readings.
- 6 Suction line and fine tipped glass point.
- 7 When suction system is not available a regular syringe or dropper can be used.
- 8 Lens paper or a piece of cloth to wipe the capillary between readings.
- 9 A piece of fine wire to remove air bubbles from the cup.
- 10 Thermometer for water bath.

Reagents

- 1 Distilled water.
- 2 Caprylic alcohol.
- 3 Ferricyanide solution. 1.5 gm of $K_3Fe(CN)_6$, 3 gm of $KHCO_3$ and 15 gm of saponin are dissolved in water and made up to 50 ml. It is not advisable to make larger amounts as the solution should be renewed every 3 days.
- 4 Acetate buffer. 70 gm of sodium acetate $NaC_2H_3O_2 \cdot 3H_2O$ are dissolved in 100 ml of water and 15 ml of glacial acetic acid are added.
- 5 Urea 45 percent. This is used as a cleaning solution because of its protein dissolving property.
- 6 Sodium hydroxide 10 per cent.
- 7 Pyrogallol solution. 15 gm of powdered pyrogallol are added to 100 ml of 10 percent NaOH in a rubber stoppered bottle and covered with a layer of oil 1 cm thick. The pyrogallol is dissolved under the oil by stirring with a glass rod.
- 8 The distilled water is placed in a bottle above the apparatus and is delivered through rubber tubing with a glass nozzle. It can also be delivered by a 10 ml syringe with a needle or a glass nozzle.



Figs 29 31

Fig 29 (A B C) —Technique for absorption of excess of CO_2

Fig 30 (D) —Technique for absorption of CO (or other absorbable gas) in glass cup.

Fig 31 (E) —Temperature equilibration of gas bubble in capillary

- 9 Reagents 2 3 4 5 and 7 are conveniently stored in 1 or 5 ml syringes and Reagent 6 in a 10 or 20 ml syringe. These syringes have fine tipped glass nozzles attached.

Procedure

- 1 The syringe is held vertically and any liquid in the cup of the syringe is withdrawn by suction. The plunger is pushed up and the cup filled with ferricyanide solution. The solution is drawn down to the bottom of the syringe and expelled through the cup and removed. This procedure is repeated twice with fresh lots of ferricyanide without trapping air bubbles. No grease or oil is used in the syringe.
- 2 The glass cup is filled to the mark with ferricyanide and the latter drawn down to the bottom of the cup.
- 3 A drop of caprylic alcohol is deposited on the bottom of the cup.
- 4 The pipette is filled with blood to the mark, wiped and cautiously introduced into the glass cup and its tip pressed snugly but not too vigorously against the bottom of the cup. The pipette should be held at a slight angle to the horizontal so that the blood does not run out when both ends of the pipette are open to the air (see Figs 30 31 32 and 33).
- 5 By pulling out the plunger gradually the blood is slowly and evenly drawn down into the capillary followed by a bubble of air of about 1 mm length. No appreciable amount of caprylic alcohol should be drawn in during this step. The bubble of air prevents any blood being sucked back when the pipette is removed. (See Fig 32 B).
- 6 The pipette is quickly removed and the bubble of air is then expelled through the caprylic alcohol with the aid of the wire.
- 7 A trace of caprylic alcohol is about two divisions length of the capillary is drawn down onto the top of the blood and the rest of the caprylic alcohol is sucked out from the cup.
- 8 The cup is filled to the mark with acetate buffer and the latter drawn down to the bottom of the cup.
- 9 The cup is then immediately filled to the top with 45 percent urea solution and then closed firmly with the finger.
- 10 The arresting clip is then removed and the closed apparatus vigorously shaken in the horizontal position. The plunger will be gradually drawn out by itself as the CO and other gases are evolved the gas pressure in the syringe being kept roughly atmospheric. The total volume evolved is usually about 0.5 ml. Shaking is continued for a total of two minutes (see Figs 33 and 34).
- 11 The arresting clip is put back in place.
- 12 The finger is cautiously released the gas meniscus being kept in the capillary by manipulating the plunger.
- 13 A small amount of urea is allowed to run down into the capillary and left there until the walls are perfectly clean.
- 14 Three quarters of the urea solution in the glass cup is removed by gentle suction.
- 15 The rubber cup is adjusted to the cup and filled with 20 per cent NaOH without trapping air bubble. Use the fine wire if necessary.
- 16 A little NaOH is drawn into the syringe. This absorbs some CO causing a partial vacuum which quickly sucks in more NaOH until only a small bubble consisting of O₂, N₂ and CO (if any was originally present in the blood) is left at the top of the syringe. The absorption takes a few seconds and just before it is complete the residual bubble is screwed slowly and carefully up into the capillary by manipulation of the plunger.
- 17 The rubber cup is removed. As it still contains some NaOH it is advisable to remove the cup under a stream of running water. The glass cup is then emptied by suction.

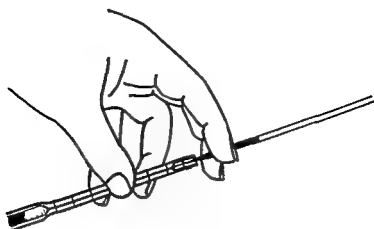


Fig 3 —Transfer of blood direct into capillary

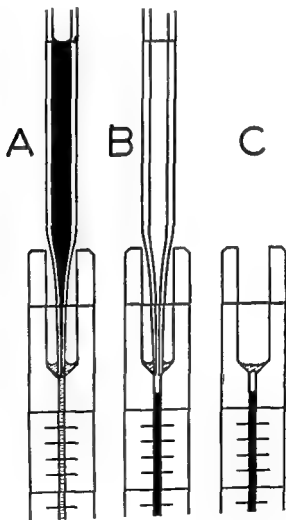


Fig 33 (A B C)—Further details of transfer of blood into capillary

- 18 The capillary is placed for half a minute in a beaker of water at room temperature and the temperature read (Fig 31)
- 19 It is then removed dried by light wiping care being taken that the capillary is not handled and the volume of the bubble read = V_1 divisions.
- 20 The glass cup is then filled with pyrogallol solution and the O_2 of the bubble is absorbed by pulling the gas bubble down to the bottom of the capillary and back again a few times. Finally the bubble is moved very slowly up into the top part of the capillary and after a further temperature equilibration its volume is read again V_2 division. If V_1 is only a few divisions the second temperature equilibration can be omitted.
- 21 A blank is obtained by following exactly the same steps except the adding of the blood sample.

Calculations

The oxygen content of the blood equals

$$(V_1 - V_2 - c) \times f \quad \text{where}$$

- V_1 First reading after absorption of the CO_2 with $NaOH$
- V_2 Second reading after absorption of the O_2 with pyrogallol
- c Blank correction for O_2 content of reagents
- f Correction factor for temperature aqueous vapor pressure and barometric pressure as derived from the line chart at the beginning of the section on blood gases (Fig. 5)

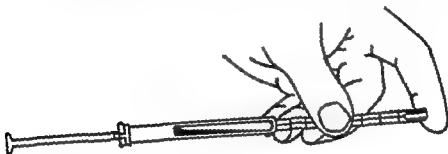


Fig 34—Shaking of syringe and extraction of gas.

Example

First reading	27.8	(V_1)
Second reading	5.5	(V_2)
Blank figure	1.1	(c)
Correction factor	0.900	(f) for $T = 2^\circ C$ and bar. pres. = 60 mm

$27.8 - 5.5 - 1.1$ multiplied by $0.900 = 21.2 \times 0.9 = 19.1$ ml of O_2 per 100 ml blood

Precautions

- 1 When blood is drawn from the pipette into the syringe care should be taken that the pipette be pressed snugly but not too vigorously against the bottom of the cup in order to prevent breakage of the tip.
- 2 The arresting clip taken off at the beginning of the shaking should be put back in place before releasing finger.
- 3 Speedy adjustment of the bubble into the capillary at the end of the CO_2 absorption helps to eliminate reabsorption of O_2 at the critical moment at which the partial pressure of the O_2 becomes high (i.e. nearly 1 atmosphere).
- 4 While there is gas in the syringe or bubbles in the capillary the hands should not touch either one so as to prevent any effect of the hands' warmth on the volume of the gases.

- 5 Slipping back of the plunger is prevented by a proper adjustment of the arresting clip
- 6 Temperature equilibration of the bubble before the measurement of V has proved necessary for with long bubbles a contraction of nearly a division may be observed as a result of immersion of the capillary in the water bath
- 7 To wash the instrument the plunger is pulled out under a stream of running water and the blood mixture poured out. The syringe is filled and emptied several times with water before the plunger is restored. The plunger should never be forced inwards if there is a resistance due to precipitates inside it. Occasionally the whole syringe should be rinsed with dichromate cleaning solution.

10 Dissolved Nitrogen in Blood (Edwards Scholander Roughton)

Reference

Edwards G A Scholander P F and Roughton F J W. *Micro Gasometric Estimation of the Blood Gases. III Nitrogen* J Biol Chem 148 565 571 (June) 1943

Principle

A CO_2 phase is evolved by mixing the blood sample with bicarbonate and acid phosphate and thus the whole of the dissolved nitrogen of the blood and reagents is extracted as well as some oxygen. No CO is extracted. The CO and O are then absorbed with alkaline hydrosulphite and the bubble of N_2 which is left is measured in the syringe capillary. The reading less a small blank from the reagents is multiplied by the usual correction factor for temperature and pressure and the figure so obtained gives the N_2 content of the blood in volumes percent.

Apparatus

- 1 One ml Pyrex tuberculin syringe with arresting clip and with a standard bore precision 0.5 mm Pyrex capillary fused to its nozzle. The top of the capillary is expanded to a cylindrical cup of about 2.5 mm bore and 1.5 cm length. The capillary (7 to 8 cm length) is graduated into 30 divisions each of 0.5 mm length.
- 2 Blood pipette made of thin walled glass tubing (1 to 1.5 mm bore) with a tip to fit into the bottom of the glass cup. The pipette has two marks one near the tip where it is calibrated to deliver an amount equal to 100 divisions of the capillary and which actually is 39.3 cmm. The other mark is calibrated to contain thrice as much as the former amount. (See Figs 29 34)
- 3 A detachable rubber cup of about 1 ml capacity is fitted to the top of the glass cup when required.
- 4 Several 2 ml and 5 ml syringes with fine-tipped rubber connected glass nozzles to store the reagents.
- 5 Metal or glass beakers one of them containing water at room temperature to place the syringe for equilibration between readings.
- 6 Suction line and fine tipped glass point.
- 7 A regular syringe or a dropper when suction system is not available.
- 8 Lens paper or a piece of cloth to wipe the capillary before readings.
- 9 A piece of fine wire to remove air bubbles from the cup.
- 10 Thermometer for water bath.

Reagents

- 1 Aerated distilled water
- 2 Caprylic alcohol
- 3 Bicarbonate solution 11 gm of KHCO_3 are dissolved in 100 gm of water
- 4 Acid phosphate buffer 95 gm of $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ are dissolved in 100 gm of warm water. The resultant volume is about 142 ml at 0°C and the strength about 5 M
- 5 Urea 45 percent in water

- 5 Hydrosulfite solution: 15 gm of a mixture of sodium hydrosulfite 10 parts and sodium anthraquinone beta sulfonate 1 part are added to 50 ml of 20 percent KOH. This solution should be made with the least possible contamination from air and stored in a rubber stoppered bottle.
- 7 Reagents ^a to 4 are stored in well greased 1 ml syringes provided with glass tips. Reagents 5 and 6 may be stored in 10 ml syringes provided with glass tips. The distilled water may best be stored in a bottle with rubber tubing and glass nozzle hanging down over the apparatus. A syringe may serve for this purpose as well.

Procedure

- 1 The syringe is held vertically and any liquid in the cup of the syringe is withdrawn. The plunger is pushed up and the syringe cup filled with bicarbonate solution. The solution is then drawn down into the syringe barrel the plunger being pulled practically the whole way out. The plunger is then pushed up without any bubbles being trapped and the bicarbonate withdrawn from the syringe cup. The step is repeated once more. The dead space in the syringe normally contains enough bicarbonate to give 0.5 ml of CO₂ on subsequent treatment with the acid buffer.
- ^a The walls of the syringe cup are dried with a roll of cotton or cleaning paper and a drop of caprylic alcohol placed in the bottom of the cup without trapping any air bubbles.
- 3 The blood is measured from the second mark of the pipette into the capillary under the caprylic alcohol. With the syringe at the same angle the pipette is cautiously introduced into the glass cup and its tip pressed snugly but not too vigorously against the bottom of the cup.
- 4 The blood is drawn down into the syringe until the upper end of the column of blood is 2 mm below the top of the syringe capillary with a small bubble of air above it. Care must be taken that no caprylic alcohol is drawn down with the blood. The pipette is then removed the air bubble is expelled through the alcohol by gently screwing up the plunger and 2 divisions of caprylic alcohol are left on top of the blood in the capillary.
- 5 The cup is filled to the mark with the acid buffer and the latter drawn down to the bottom of the cup.
- 6 The cup is filled to the top with urea solution and is closed firmly with the finger.
- 7 The arresting clip is taken off the syringe barrel.
- 8 The syringe is shaken vigorously for 2 minutes in the horizontal position the plunger being withdrawn as the CO₂ is evolved. The gas pressure in the syringe must be kept at atmospheric pressure. The volume of the gas finally evolved must be between 0.6 and 0.5 ml.
- 9 The arresting clip is put back in place and then the finger tip is cautiously released the plunger being manipulated so as to keep the gas meniscus in the capillary.
- 10 The urea solution is drawn down to the bottom of the capillary without being allowed to enter the syringe barrel. This prevents subsequent contamination of the capillary wall with precipitates from the blood.
- 11 The syringe is held in the vertical position the rubber cup attached and about 1 ml of the hydrosulfite solution added without trapping air bubbles in the syringe cup.
- 12 A little of the hydrosulfite is gently drawn down into the syringe creating a vacuum which sucks in the rest of the solution needed for absorption of the CO₂ and such traces of O₂ as are present.
- 13 The bubble is pushed up into the lower part of the capillary. The hydrosulfite is sucked out of the rubber cup and the latter detached under a stream of running

water The syringe cup is then filled with water three fourths of which is drawn down over the bubble layering itself on top of the blood mixture

- 14 The bubble is pushed up into the clean capillary very gently and the capillary is placed in a beaker of water at room temperature to bring about temperature equilibrium The temperature is read.
- 15 The syringe is removed from the beaker, dried by light wiping care being taken that the capillary is not handled and the volume of N read V divisions
- 16 A blank is run to get the blank correction figure It is exactly the same procedure but no blood sample is used. Some difficulty may be encountered in first determining the blank since in the blank analysis the blood has a damping effect upon the reaction between the bicarbonate and the acid so that the CO₂ is not evolved for 10 or more seconds after the acid is drawn down into the syringe In the blank analysis on the other hand the reaction begins immediately when the acid comes in contact with the bicarbonate and hence some bubbles of gas belonging in the syringe may be lost to the outside To avoid this difficulty one must
 - a Make sure that the 2 divisions of caprylic alcohol are not washed out when the acid is put in the cup
 - b Draw the acid down into the syringe barrel quickly
 - c Fill the cup with urea solution immediately after the acid is drawn down and then clamp the finger over the glass cup at once
 The blank figure has been found to be constant and of the order of 1.3 to 1.5 units on the capillary depending upon the instrument used

Calculations

The nitrogen content of the blood equals

$$\frac{(V - c) \times f}{3}$$

V = Uncorrected N₂ reading

c = Blank figure

f = Correction factor for temperature and barometric pressure (See STP chart at beginning of section on blood gases)

The Factor 3 is inserted because a volume of blood equal to 300 scale divisions is delivered in Step 3

Example

N reading = 52

Blank = 14

Corr factor 0.900 (for T = 20°C, bar press = 760 mm)

That is ml N₂/100 ml blood = $\frac{(52 - 14) \times 0.900}{3} = 11.4$

Precautions

- 1 When blood is drawn from the pipette into the syringe care should be taken that the pipette be pressed snugly but not too vigorously against the bottom of the cup in order to prevent the breakage of the tip
- 2 The arresting clip taken off at the beginning of the shaking should be put back in place before releasing finger
- 3 Slipping back of the plunger is prevented by a proper adjustment of the arresting clip
- 4 Temperature equilibration of the bubble before the measurement has proved necessary for with long bubbles a contraction of nearly a division may be observed as a result of the immersion of the capillary in the water bath
- 5 Great caution must be exercised in handling blood of low N content as contamination with atmospheric nitrogen occurs rapidly due to the high gradient of nearly 4/5 of an atmosphere

6 To wash the instrument the plunger is pulled out under a stream of running water and the blood mixture is poured out. The syringe is filled and emptied several times with water before the plunger is restored. The plunger should never be forced inward if there is a resistance due to precipitate inside it. Occasionally the whole syringe should be rinsed with dichromate cleaning solution.

11 Carbon Monoxide in Blood (Scholander Roughton)

Reference

Scholander P F and Poulton I J W. Micro Gasometry Estimation of the Blood Gas *et al*. Carbon Monoxide *J Biol Chem* 148 5:1 563 (June) 1943

(This paper describes how for the microdetermination of carbon monoxide in the blood the syringe can be used in three different ways i.e.

- A General method for saturation ranging from 0 to 100 per cent COHb
- B Method for combined determination of O and CO on one sample of blood
- C Special method precise enough for blood volume determination in which the CO content is kept below 0.5 volume per cent

A. GENERAL METHOD FOR ESTIMATION OF CO IN BLOOD

Principle

The O₂, CO and H₂ of the blood and reagents are extracted by excess of CO evolved by the mixing of ferricnitrile solution containing potassium bicarbonate and sodium acetate buffer. The CO and O₂ are subsequently absorbed together by alkaline pyrogallol. The volume of the residual gas is measured in the capillary of the instrument before and after the absorption of CO by Winkler's solution. The difference in volume multiplied by the correction factor for temperature and pressure gives the CO content of the blood in volumes percent. Since the blood itself is the only source of CO and the reagents contain none a blank correction is not necessary.

Apparatus

- 1 One ml Pyrex tuberculin syringe with arresting clip and with a standard bore precision 0.5 mm Pyrex capillary fused to its nozzle. The top of the capillary is expanded to a cylindrical cup of about 0.5 mm bore and 1.5 cm length. The capillary (1 to 2 cm length) is graduated into 30 divisions each of 0.5 mm length.
- 2 Blood pipette made of thin walled glass tubing (1 to 1.5 mm bore) with a tip to fit into the bottom of the glass cup. The volume delivered from the mark to the tip is equal to 100 divisions of the capillary and is actually 39.3 cmm. (See Figs. 29-34)
- 3 A detachable rubber cup of about 1 ml capacity is fitted to the top of the glass cup when required.
- 4 Several 0.5 ml and 1 ml syringes with fine tipped rubber connected glass nozzles to store the reagents.
- 5 Metal or glass test-tubes one of them containing water at room temperature to cover the syringes for equilibrations between readings.
- 6 Suction line and fine tipped glass point.
A rubber syringe or a dropper when suction system is not available.
- 7 Cleaning paper or a piece of cloth to wipe the capillary before readings.
- 8 A piece of fine wire to remove air bubbles from the cup.
- 9 A thermometer for the water bath.

Reagents

- 1 Aerated distilled water
- 2 Caprylic alcohol.

- 3 Ferrieyanide solution : 12.5 gm of $K_3Fe(CN)_6$ 3 gm of $KHCO_3$ and 1.5 gm of saponin are ground in a mortar and dissolved in water and made up to 100 ml. The solution should be renewed every three days
- 4 Acetate buffer 70 gm of sodium acetate ($NaC_2H_3O_2 \cdot 3H_2O$) are dissolved in 100 gm of water and 15 ml glacial acetic acid added
- 5 45 per cent urea.
- 6 Winkler's solution 20 gm of cuprous chloride 25 gm of ammonium chloride and 75 gm of water are placed in a bottle just large enough to contain them. The bottle is corked, shaken with as little air as possible and the precipitate then allowed to settle. A coil of copper wire is placed in the solution which is then covered with a layer of heavy oil. After some time the reagent becomes almost colorless.
- 7 Pyrogallol solution 15 gm of powdered pyrogallol are added to 100 ml of 0 per cent NaOH in a rubber stoppered bottle and covered with a layer of oil. The pyrogallol is dissolved under the oil by stirring with a glass rod. The pyrogallol solution is stored in a 10 ml syringe with the rear of the plunger well greased and a fine tipped glass nozzle attached to the syringe. The other reagents are similarly stored in smaller syringes. The water is placed in a bottle above the apparatus and is delivered through rubber tubing with a glass nozzle attached. A 20 ml syringe with a needle or glass nozzle attached can be used for the delivery of the water.

Procedure

- 1 The syringe is held vertically and any liquid in the cup of the syringe is with drawn by suction. The plunger is pushed up and the cup filled with ferrieyanide solution. The solution is drawn down to the bottom of the syringe and expelled through the cup and removed. This procedure is repeated twice with fresh lots of ferrieyanide the dead space finally being left full of ferrieyanide without trapping any air bubbles. No grease or oil is used in the syringe.
- 2 The glass cup is filled to the mark with ferrieyanide and the latter drawn down to the bottom of the cup.
- 3 A drop of caprylic alcohol is deposited on the bottom of the cup.
- 4 The pipette is filled with blood to the mark wiped and cautiously introduced into the glass cup and its tip pressed snugly but not too vigorously against the bottom of the cup. The pipette should be held at a slight angle to the horizontal so that the blood does not run out when both ends of the pipette are open to the air.
- 5 By pulling out the plunger gradually the blood is slowly and evenly drawn into the capillary followed by a bubble of air of about 1 mm length. If the tip is properly ground and the right amount of pressure applied no appreciable caprylic alcohol is drawn in during this step. The bubble of air prevents any blood from being sucked back into the tip when the pipette is removed.
- 6 The pipette is quickly removed and the bubble of air is then expelled through the caprylic alcohol with the aid of the wire.
- 7 A trace of caprylic alcohol is about 2 divisions length of the capillary is drawn down onto the top of the blood and the rest of the caprylic alcohol is removed from the cup.
- 8 The cup is filled to the mark with acetate buffer and the latter drawn down to the bottom of the cup.
- 9 The cup is then immediately filled to the top with 45 per cent urea solution and then closed firmly with the finger.
- 10 The arresting clip is then removed and the closed apparatus vigorously shaken in the horizontal position. The plunger will be gradually drawn out by itself as the CO_2 and other gases are evolved the gas pressure in the syringe being kept roughly atmospheric. The total volume evolved is usually about 0.5 ml. Shaking is continued for a total of 2 minutes.

- 11 The arresting clip is put back in place
- 12 The finger is cautiously released the gas meniscus being kept in the capillary by manipulating the plunger
- 13 A small amount of urea solution is allowed to run down into the capillary and left there until the walls are perfectly clean. Then the rest of the urea solution (three quarters) is removed.
- 14 The rubber cup is adusted and filled with pyrogallol solution. Use the fine wire to avoid trapping of air bubble
- 15 A little of the pyrogallol solution is drawn into the syringe. This absorbs some CO and O causing a partial vacuum which quickly sucks in more pyrogallol until only a small bubble consisting of N and CO (if any was originally present in the blood) is left at the top of the syringe. The absorption takes a few seconds and just before it is complete the residual bubble is screwed slowly and carefully up into the capillary by manipulation of the plunger
- 16 The rubber cup is removed. As it still contains a fair amount of pyrogallol it is advisable to remove cup under a stream of running water. The glass cup is then emptied and filled again with water
- 17 The capillary is placed for half a minute in a beaker of water at room temperature and the temperature is read.
- 18 It is then removed dried by light wiping care being taken that the capillary is not handled and the volume of the bubble read $\frac{1}{2}$ divisions
- III The glass cup is flushed clean with water and left filled. About three-fourths of this water is pulled quickly down into the syringe forming a layer on top of the heavier blood mixture. The bubble with clean water below it is then at once run up to the top of the capillary
- 0 The glass cup is emptied of water and filled with Winkler's solution.
- 1 The syringe is then pointed with the cup downward the capillary making a slight angle with the horizontal
- 2 By cautiously screwing in the plunger the gas bubble is driven out into the glass cup where it rests near the junction of the capillary and the cup. As soon as the bubble is free in the cup Winkler's solution is sucked behind it so as to half fill the capillary. Gentle rotation for a few seconds completes the absorption of the CO
- 3 The syringe is then turned to the vertical position with the cup downward the gas bubble is sucked back into the capillary and its volume $\frac{1}{2}$ measured.

Calculations

The carbon monoxide content of the blood in volumes per cent is

$$(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}) \times f \text{ where}$$

$\frac{1}{2}$ = First reading after absorption of the CO, and O₂

$\frac{1}{2}$ = Second reading after absorption of the CO

f = Correction factor for temperature aqueous vapor pressure and barometric pressure as derived from Fig. 23 at the beginning of the section on blood gases

Example

First reading $\frac{1}{2}$ = 55

Second reading $\frac{1}{2}$ = 42

Correction factor f = 0.900 at $T = 22^\circ \text{C}$, bar. pres. = 760 mm.

ml CO/100 ml blood = $(55 - 42) \times 0.900 = 11.7$

Precautions

1. When the blood is drawn from the pipette into the syringe care should be taken that the pipette is pressed snugly but not too vigorously against the bottom of the cup in order to prevent breakage of the tip.

- 3 Ferricyanide solution 125 gm of $K_3Fe(CN)_6$ 3 gm of $KHCO_3$ and 1.5 gm of saponin are ground in a mortar and dissolved in water and made up to 50 ml. The solution should be renewed every three days
- 4 Acetate buffer 70 gm of sodium acetate ($NaC_2H_3O_2 \cdot 3H_2O$) are dissolved in 100 gm of water and 15 ml glacial acetic acid added
- 5 45 per cent urea.
- 6 Winkler's solution 20 gm of cuprous chloride 25 gm of ammonium chloride and 75 gm of water are placed in a bottle just large enough to contain them. The bottle is corked shaken with as little air as possible and the precipitate then allowed to settle. A coil of copper wire is placed in the solution which is then covered with a layer of heavy oil. After some time the reagent becomes almost colorless
- 7 Pyrogallol solution 15 gm of powdered pyrogallol are added to 100 ml of 0 per cent NaOH in a rubber stoppered bottle and covered with a layer of oil. The pyrogallol is dissolved under the oil by stirring with a glass rod. The pyrogallol solution is stored in a 10 ml syringe with the rear of the plunger well greased and a fine tipped glass nozzle attached to the syringe. The other reagents are similarly stored in smaller syringes. The water is placed in a bottle above the apparatus and is delivered through rubber tubing with a glass nozzle attached. A 100 ml syringe with a needle or glass nozzle attached can be used for the delivery of the water

Procedure

- 1 The syringe is held vertically and any liquid in the cup of the syringe is withdrawn by suction. The plunger is pushed up and the cup filled with ferricyanide solution. The solution is drawn down to the bottom of the syringe and expelled through the cup and removed. This procedure is repeated twice with fresh lots of ferricyanide, the dead space finally being left full of ferricyanide without trapping any air bubbles. No grease or oil is used in the syringe
- 2 The glass cup is filled to the mark with ferricyanide and the latter drawn down to the bottom of the cup
- 3 A drop of caprylic alcohol is deposited on the bottom of the cup
- 4 The pipette is filled with blood to the mark, wiped and cautiously introduced into the glass cup and its tip pressed snugly but not too vigorously against the bottom of the cup. The pipette should be held at a slight angle to the horizontal so that the blood does not run out when both ends of the pipette are open to the air
- 5 By pulling out the plunger gradually the blood is slowly and evenly drawn into the capillary followed by a bubble of air of about 1 mm length. If the tip is properly ground and the right amount of pressure applied no appreciable caprylic alcohol is drawn in during this step. The bubble of air prevents any blood from being sucked back into the tip when the pipette is removed.
- 6 The pipette is quickly removed and the bubble of air is then expelled through the caprylic alcohol with the aid of the wire
- 7 A trace of caprylic alcohol is about 10 divisions length of the capillary is drawn down onto the top of the blood and the rest of the caprylic alcohol is removed from the cup
- 8 The cup is filled to the mark with acetate buffer and the latter drawn down to the bottom of the cup
- 9 The cup is then immediately filled to the top with 45 per cent urea solution and then closed firmly with the finger
- 10 The arresting clip is then removed and the closed apparatus vigorously shaken in the horizontal position. The plunger will be gradually drawn out by itself as the CO_2 and other gases are evolved the gas pressure in the syringe being kept roughly atmospheric. The total volume evolved is usually about 0.75 ml. Shaking is continued for a total of 2 minutes

- 11 The arresting clip is put back in place.
- 12 The finger is cautiously released the gas meniscus being kept in the capillary by manipulating the plunger
- 13 A small amount of urea solution is allowed to run down into the capillary and left there until the walls are perfectly clean. Then the rest of the urea solution (three quarters) is removed.
- 14 The rubber cup is adjusted and filled with pyrogallol solution. Use the fine wire to avoid trapping of air bubbles.
- 15 A little of the pyrogallol solution is drawn into the syringe. This absorbs some CO and O₂ causing a partial vacuum which quickly sucks in more pyrogallol until only a small bubble consisting of N₂ and CO (if any was originally present in the blood) is left at the top of the syringe. The absorption takes a few seconds and just before it is complete the residual bubble is screwed slowly and carefully up into the capillary by manipulation of the plunger.
- 16 The rubber cup is removed. As it still contains a fair amount of pyrogallol it is advisable to remove cup under a stream of running water. The glass cup is then emptied and filled again with water.
- 17 The capillary is placed for half a minute in a beaker of water at room temperature and the temperature is read.
- 18 It is then removed dried by light wiping care being taken that the capillary is not handled and the volume of the bubble read in divisions.
- 19 The glass cup is flushed clean with water and left filled. About three fourths of this water is pulled quickly down into the syringe forming a layer on top of the heavier blood mixture. The bubble with clean water below it is then at once run up to the top of the capillary.
- 20 The glass cup is emptied of water and filled with Winkler's solution.
- 21 The syringe is then pointed with the cup downward, the capillary making a slight angle with the horizontal.
- 22 By cautiously screwing in the plunger the gas bubble is driven out into the glass cup where it rests near the junction of the capillary and the cup. As soon as the bubble is free in the cup Winkler's solution is sucked behind it so as to half fill the capillary. Gentle rotation for a few seconds completes the absorption of the CO.
- 23 The syringe is then turned to the vertical position with the cup downward the gas bubble is sucked back into the capillary and its volume is measured.

Calculations

The carbon monoxide content of the blood in volumes per cent is

$$(\bar{V} - \bar{V}') \times f \text{ where}$$

\bar{V} = First reading after absorption of the CO and O₂.

\bar{V}' = Second reading after absorption of the CO

f = Correction factor for temperature aqueous vapor pressure and barometric pressure as derived from Fig. 45 at the beginning of the section on blood gases.

Example

First reading $\bar{V} = 5.5$

Second reading $\bar{V}' = 4.$

Correction factor $f = 0.900$ at $T = 37^\circ\text{C}$ bar press = 760 mm

ml CO/100 ml blood = $(5.5 - 4.2) \times 0.900 = 1.2$

Precautions

- 1 When the blood is drawn from the pipette into the syringe care should be taken that the pipette is pressed snugly but not too vigorously against the bottom of the cup in order to prevent breakage of the tip.

- 2 The arresting clip taken off at the beginning of the shaking should be put back in place before the releasing of the finger
- 3 Speedy adjustment of the bubble into the capillary at the end of the CO and O absorption with the pyrogallol helps to eliminate reabsorption of CO at the critical moment at which the partial pressure of the CO becomes high (i.e. nearly 1 atmosphere)
- 4 While there is gas in the syringe or bubbles in the capillary the hands should not touch either one so as to prevent the effect of the hands' warmth on the volume of the gases
- 5 Slipping back of the plunger is prevented by a proper adjustment of the arresting clip
- 6 Temperature equilibration of the bubble before the measurement of V has proved necessary for with long bubbles a contraction of nearly a division may be observed as a result of immersion of the capillary in the water bath
- 7 To wash the instrument the plunger is pulled out under a stream of running water and the blood mixture poured out. The syringe is filled and emptied several times with water before the plunger is restored. The plunger should never be forced inward if there is a resistance due to precipitates inside it. Occasionally the whole syringe should be rinsed with dichromate cleaning solution.

B SPECIAL METHOD FOR COMBINED ESTIMATION OF CO AND O IN SINGLE SAMPLES OF BLOOD

Principle

When it is desired to measure both oxygen and carbon monoxide a single sample of blood can be used.

Procedure

- 1 Follow Steps 1 through 10 in the procedure for oxygen and when V_1 and V_2 are obtained
- 2 The glass cup and capillary are thoroughly washed with water no traces of the pyrogallol solution in the capillary in the cup being left
- 3 About three fourths of the clean water left in the cup is quickly pulled down into the syringe forming a layer on top of the heavier blood mixture. The bubble with clean water below it is then at once run up to the top of the capillary
- 4 The glass cup is emptied of water and filled with Winkler's solution
- 5 The syringe is then held with the cup downward, the capillary making a slight angle with the horizontal
- 6 By cautiously screwing in the plunger the gas bubble is driven out into the glass cup where it rests near the junction of the capillary and the cup. As soon as the bubble is free in the cup Winkler's solution is sucked behind it so as to half fill the capillary. Gentle rotation for a few seconds completes the absorption of the CO
- 7 The syringe is then turned to the vertical position with the cup downward and the gas bubble is sucked back into the capillary and its volume V is measured.

Calculations

$$(V_1 - V_2 - c) \times f = \text{O content}$$

$$(V - V_2) \times f = \text{CO content}$$

Where

V = First reading after absorption of the CO with NaOH

V_1 = Second reading after absorption of the O with pyrogallol

V_2 = Third reading after absorption of the CO with Winkler's

f = Correction factor for temperature aqueous vapor pressure and barometric pressure as derived from Fig. 25

c = Blank correction which in this case can be taken as 1.1

Example

First reading = 68 (V)
 Second reading = 55 (V)
 Third reading = 40 (V)
 Blank figure = 11 (c)
 Corr factor = 0.900 (f) for Temp °C bar press 760 mm
 $\text{ml O}_2 \text{ per } 100 \text{ ml blood} = (68 - 55 - 11) (0.900) = 18$
 $\text{ml CO per } 100 \text{ ml blood} = (55 - 40) (0.900) = 14$

Precautions

All precautions given for the general method are applied here

C. SPECIAL METHOD FOR BLOOD CONTAINING SMALL AMOUNTS OF CARBON MONOXIDE

When the CO content of the blood is suspected to be small i.e. that it does not exceed 0.05 volumes percent this special method is used which requires three times (1.0 cmm) the amount of the blood sample used in the general method. Thus an accuracy of 0.03 to 0.05 volume percent is obtained.

Principle

The gases of the blood are extracted by means of the CO gas phase produced by adding an acetate buffer to a ferricyanide solution containing sodium bicarbonate and saponin in the usual way described in the General Method. A special method is necessary because three times more blood is used than in the regular method and the relatively large amount of O₂ liberated may cause an appreciable formation of CO during the pyrogallol absorption whereas when only 40 cmm are used as in the regular method no such CO formation has been detected. To avoid this extra formation of CO a weakly alkaline hydrosulfite is employed which will absorb the O₂ in the blood.

Apparatus

The same apparatus described in the general method is used here. However the pipette should have a mark where it has been calibrated to deliver thrice the usual blood volume.

Reagents

Those reagents described under the general method for estimation of CO in blood are used together with the following

- 1 Hydrosulfite borate solution. A stock solution of 3 per cent borax ($\text{Na}_2\text{B}_4\text{O}_{10} \cdot 10\text{H}_2\text{O}$) is prepared. 1 gm of sodium hydrosulfite ($\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$) is dissolved in 100 ml of the borax solution and stored in a glass tipped syringe. The final solution should not be kept more than 3 days.

Procedure

- 1 The glass cup of the syringe is filled with hydrosulfite borate solution which is drawn down to the bottom of the syringe and then expelled leaving the dead space and the capillary filled with the solution.
- 2 The blood is drawn down the capillary directly on top of the borate solution from a pipette calibrated to deliver 3 times the usual quantity of blood. No caprylic alcohol is needed at this stage.
- 3 The blood is drawn down to the bottom of the capillary and the syringe rotated horizontally round its axis so as to mix the hydrosulfite with the blood.
- 4 The syringe is then restored to the vertical position and the blood solution brought to the top of the capillary.
- 5 The cup is filled to the top with ferricyanide solution and the whole of this drawn down.

- 6 Two or more divisions of caprylic alcohol are placed on top of the ferricyanide solution in the capillary so as to protect it from contact with the acetate buffer used in the next step
- 7 The glass cup is raised with water and filled to the mark with acetate buffer
- 8 The acetate buffer is then drawn down a few divisions below the bottom of the cup. The cup is then filled with water and closed at the top with the tip of the finger as soon as the few divisions of air have been expelled from the top of the capillary
- 9 The arresting clip is taken off and the gases are extracted in the usual way by 3 minutes shaking
- 10 The arresting clip is put back in place
- 11 The syringe is then turned to the vertical position with the cup downward and the plunger pushed in so as to give a slight positive pressure
- 12 With the syringe held over a dish the finger tip is removed gradually from the top of the cup and fluid is expelled until the meniscus is halfway down the capillary. The gas containing part of the syringe chamber must not be touched with the warm hand
- 13 The glass cup is filled to the top with water and then slanted downward and the gas bubble pushed to the end of the capillary. The blood mixture passes into the cup and settles through the water
- 14 With the instrument still slanting water is sucked into the capillary
- 15 The instrument is then restored to the usual position (vertical) with the cup upward and the latter filled with urea solution
- 16 The capillary is filled with urea solution and is left until the walls are perfectly clean
- 17 Three quarters of the urea in the glass cup is removed and the rubber cup adjusted and filled with pyrogallol solution without trapping air bubbles
- 18 A little pyrogallol is drawn down into the syringe. This absorbs some CO and O causing a partial vacuum which quickly sucks in more pyrogallol until only a small bubble consisting of N and CO is left at the top of the syringe. The absorption takes a few seconds and just before it is complete the residual bubble is screwed slowly and carefully up into the capillary by manipulation of the plunger
- 19 The rubber cup is removed. As it still contains a fair amount of pyrogallol it is advisable to remove the cup under a stream of running water. The glass cup is then emptied and refilled with water
- 20 The capillary is placed for half a minute in a beaker containing water at room temperature and the temperature is read
- 21 It is then removed dried by light wiping care being taken that the capillary is not handled and the volume of the bubble read V divisions
- 22 The glass cup is flushed clean with water and left filled. About three quarters of this water is pulled quickly down into the syringe forming a layer on top of the heavier blood mixture. The bubble with clean water below it is then at once run up to the top of the capillary
- 23 The glass cup is emptied of water and filled with Winkler's solution
- 24 The syringe is then held with the cup downward the capillary making a slight angle with the horizontal
- 25 By cautiously screwing in the plunger the bubble is drawn into the glass cup where it rests near the junction of the capillary and the cup. As soon as the bubble is free in the cup Winkler's solution is sucked behind it so as to fill the capillary. Gentle rotation for a few seconds completes the absorption of the CO
- 6 The syringe is then turned to the vertical position with the cup downward and the gas bubble is sucked back into the capillary and its volume V measured.

Calculations

$$\frac{(V - v) \times f}{3} = \text{CO content of blood}$$

Where

V = First reading after absorption of the CO and O

v = Second reading after absorption of the CO

f = Correction factor for temperature aqueous vapor pressure and barometric pressure as derived from Fig 25 at the beginning of the section on blood gases

(As thrice the usual amount of blood has been the usual result has to be divided by 3)

Example

First reading 65 (V)

Second reading 50 (v)

Corr factor 0.900 (f) When Temp = C bar press 760 mm

$$\frac{(65 - 50) \times 0.900}{3} = 0.45 \text{ ml CO per 100 ml blood}$$

Precautions

All those given for the general CO method are observed here

12 Carbon Dioxide in Blood (Scholander Roughton)

Reference

Scholander P F and Roughton F J W Micro Gasometric Estimation of the Blood Gases IV Carbon Dioxide J Biol. Chem. 148 573 580 (June) 1943

Principle

While carbon dioxide is by comparison ideal as an extractant for the microestimation of the other gases and there is no practicable method using a gas other than CO for blood a modification of the technique was necessary in order to use the convenient syringe method for the estimation of CO. This has been accomplished by the introduction of the vacuum extraction to the general method.

The blood sample and an acid buffer are vacuum extracted in the syringe by closing the capillary with the specially constructed rubber tipped plug and drawing the plunger out to the position fixed by a spacer (see Apparatus) and then shaking for 2 minutes. The vacuum is released by letting in the plunger and the volume of gas is measured before and after absorption with alkali. The reabsorption of CO during the compression is one of the special difficulties but it is possible to check it by (a) using an acid buffer reagent of minimal CO solubility and (b) clearing the capillary of liquid before the shaking begins. When the plunger moves up the whole of the gas therefore goes directly into the well drained capillary so that during the final stages of the contraction when the pressure of CO is approaching atmospheric the gas is only in close contact with the minute amount of liquid contained in the drainage films on the walls of the capillary.

Apparatus

1 One ml Pyrex tuberculin syringe with arresting clip and with a standard bore precision 0.1 mm Pyrex capillary fused to its nozzle. The top of the capillary is expanded to a cylindrical cup of about 5 mm bore and 1.5 cm length. The capillary (7 to 8 cm length) is graduated into 30 divisions each of 0.1 mm length. An additional mark scratched at 33.3 has proved convenient when in an alternative procedure is desired to use exactly one third of the normal petto load.

- 2 Blood pipette made of thin walled glass tubing (1 to 1.5 mm bore) with a ground tip to fit into the bottom of the glass cup. The volume delivered from the mark to the tip is equal to 100 divisions of the capillary and is actually 39.3 mm.
- 3 Rubber tipped wooden plug to seal the capillary during the vacuum extraction. The end of a round toothpick is dipped in rubber latex and a small drop left on the tip. It is dried tip downward at a moderate temperature in a drying oven. About 1 inch of the coated plug is used as in Fig 35, A.
- 4 A spacer for holding out the syringe plunger in a fixed position during the vacuum extraction. A piece of light sheet metal about 1.5 cm wide and 5.5 cm long is folded into a U-shaped channel. To apply the vacuum one end of the spacer is pressed against the expanded lower end (button) of the plunger and the latter is then drawn out until the other end of the spacer presses against the butt end of the syringe barrel. The length of the spacer is so adjusted as to give a gas phase of about 0.75 ml in the barrel. (See Figs 35A and B).
- 5 Several 2 ml and 5 ml syringes with fine tipped rubber connected glass nozzles to store the reagents.
- 6 Metal or glass beakers one of them containing water at room temperature to hold the syringe for equilibration between readings.
- 7 Suction line with a very fine tipped glass point.
- 8 Thermometer for water bath.

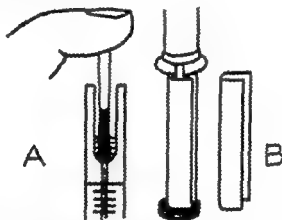


Fig 35—Carbon dioxide in blood

A Rubberized wooden plug for vacuum sealing glass cup

B Spacer for keeping plunger extended in fixed position during vacuum extraction.

Reagents

- 1 CO free distilled water (Ordinary water can be freed of CO by boiling with a drop of sulfuric acid.)
- 2 Caprylic alcohol.
- 3 Acid buffer. 95 gm of acid sodium phosphate $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ are dissolved in 100 gm of warm water to make an almost saturated solution. The strength is about 2 M and the solubility of CO therein is only about one twelfth that in water.
- 4 10 percent NaOH
- 5 Glycerol

Reagents 3, 3 and 4 may best be stored in 2 or 5 ml syringes with glass tips attached. The glycerol is best kept in a 5 ml syringe having a No 20 needle the point of which has been ground off. The distilled water may be stored in a bottle with rubber tubing and glass tip attached hanging above the bench.

Procedure

- 1 The clean syringe is taken apart and the water shaken out of the barrel and the plunger dried. The rear part of the plunger is lubricated with a few streaks of glycerol and returned to the moist barrel.
- 2 The cup is filled with distilled water and the latter is drawn one fourth down the barrel and expelled through the cup leaving the dead space of the syringe full of water without trapping any air bubbles.
- 3 The plunger is pulled out very slightly so that the water meniscus at the bottom of the cup is lowered 1 or 2 mm down into the capillary.
- 4 The blood pipette is held against the opening of the capillary trapping a small air bubble. The blood is drawn down very slowly into the capillary the air bubble separating it from the water.
- 5 If the blood supply is ample the quickest procedure is to dry the cup with a little cotton on a toothpick and then half fill it with blood trapping the small air bubble in the capillary. The blood is then drawn down into the capillary the top layer being used as a protective against CO loss. If the blood is stored in a syringe it is convenient to attach a capillary glass tip to the nozzle and then after good mixing and discarding of a few drops through the tip the cup is filled to the mark directly from the syringe tip.
- 6 With the blood meniscus at the 30 to 35 mark the pipette is detached and the blood in the cup sucked off. The upper blood meniscus is slowly moved to the zero mark and the amount of blood read in divisions.
- 7 (As an alternative procedure the blood is moved down to a special mark scratched at 33.3 divisions. With a fine suction tip the upper meniscus is adjusted exactly to the zero mark the lower meniscus of the blood being simultaneously kept at the 33.3 mark. In this way exactly one third of the normal pipette load is used and the volume of CO found has after the usual correction for temperature etc simply to be multiplied by 3 to give the CO content in volumes percent.)
- 8 A drop of caprylic alcohol is deposited on the bottom of the cup and the bubble of air above the blood ejected through the capillary with the aid if necessary of a piece of fine wire. Two divisions of caprylic alcohol are drawn down onto the top of the blood in the capillary. The remainder of the caprylic alcohol in the cup is removed.
- 9 The cup is filled to the mark with acid phosphate which is then pulled down very slowly into the syringe until the upper meniscus is 1 mm below the bottom of the cup.
- 10 The rubber end of the wooden plug is moistened with the phosphate buffer and with a few drops adhering to it is inserted in the bottom of the cup trapping a small air bubble.
- 11 With the plug resting loosely against the bottom of the cup the air bubble is gently screwed up until it touches the rubber tip. The plug is then pressed against the bottom of the cup leaving the air bubble in direct contact with the rubber. The free lower end of the plug is covered by the drop of phosphate. The capillary is kept closed in this way during steps (12) to (18) with the left hand.
- 12 Fresh glycerol is introduced into the plunger bearing with the right hand.
- 13 One end of the metal spacer is put in place around the plunger under the plunger held the right hand being used and is held there with the other end sticking out at an angle. The top end of the syringe is pointed almost upward and kept upward during steps (14) to (17).
- 14 With the spacer and the plunger button held the plunger is slowly moved out in such a way that the fluid meniscus under the stopper moves down the capillary very slowly and evenly just as for a reading. When the capillary and its barrel

opening are cleared and drained of the fluid, the plunger is drawn slowly out the free end of the spacer being simultaneously moved in until it rests against the butt of the syringe barrel

- 15 Glycerol is added to the plunger bearing
- 16 The syringe is shaken with the cup end upward so as to prevent any fluid from blocking the entrance to the capillary. If nevertheless the capillary should become bridged over it can be cleared by warming up the capillary with the hand. Shaking is continued for 2 minutes. In case of foaming the plunger is released so that the fluid and extracted gas are compressed into the top part of the syringe barrel where there are normally residual traces of caprylic alcohol. When the plunger is drawn out again the foam generally disappears.
- 17 With the entire capillary free from fluid the plunger is pulled out slightly so as to allow the spacer to fall out. The plunger is then allowed to rise up within the barrel at a controlled but rather rapid speed until the lower end of the meniscus is inside the capillary and the pressure of the gas is at atmospheric pressure. If the entrance to the capillary should get bridged by fluid while the plunger is being let in the speed of the plunger must be so adjusted that the bridge moves very slowly up the capillary thus enabling proper drainage to take place.
- 18 When the gas bubble is at atmospheric pressure the plug is removed and the upper meniscus moved slowly and evenly to the zero mark.
- 19 The capillary is placed for $\frac{1}{4}$ minute in a beaker of water at room temperature and the temperature is read. It is then removed and dried by light wiping care being taken that the capillary is not handled.
- 20 The volume of the bubble is read $\frac{1}{4}$ divisions without any unnecessary adjustments as this may lead to appreciable reabsorption (the capillary should have been properly drained during step [14]).
- 21 The cup is filled to the top with water and three fourths of the latter is pulled down into the syringe forming a layer on top of the blood mixture. The bubble is returned to the capillary with water beneath it. Owing to absorption of CO by this washing the bubble is much shorter.
- 22 The cup is filled with 10 percent NaOH the cup pointed downward and the bubble expelled into the alkali some of which is drawn into the capillary as soon as the bubble is free.
- 23 The cup is pointed slightly down and rotated a few times so as to complete the absorption of CO. The syringe is then returned to the vertical position with the cup downward and then a gas bubble is sucked back into the capillary.
- 24 The temperature of the capillary is again adjusted and the bubble volume read $\frac{1}{4}$.

Calculations

The original formula to obtain the CO content of the blood by this method was as follows

$$\text{CO content} = (V - v) \times f \times \frac{100}{b}$$

Where

V = First reading

v = Second reading after absorption of the CO

f = Correction factor for temperature aqueous vapor pressure and barometric pressure as derived from Fig. 25 at the beginning of the section on blood gases

b = Volume of blood expressed as the number of capillary divisions

No allowance was made however for the incomplete extraction of CO during shaking and for reabsorption during compression. It was necessary therefore to run a series of determinations of CO by the syringe method and compare them with the results obtained by more precise a method like the Van Slyke. By dividing the

opening are cleared and drained of the fluid the plunger is drawn slowly out, the free end of the spacer being simultaneously moved in until it rests against the butt of the syringe barrel

- 15 Glycerol is added to the plunger bearing
- 16 The syringe is shaken with the cup end upward so as to prevent any fluid from blocking the entrance to the capillary. If nevertheless the capillary should become bridged over it can be cleared by warming up the capillary with the hand. Shaking is continued for 3 minutes. In case of foaming the plunger is released so that the fluid and extracted gas are compressed into the top part of the syringe barrel where there are normally residual traces of caprylic alcohol. When the plunger is drawn out again the foam generally disappears.
- 17 With the entire capillary free from fluid the plunger is pulled out slightly so as to allow the spacer to fall out. The plunger is then allowed to rise up within the barrel at a controlled but rather rapid speed until the lower end of the meniscus is inside the capillary and the pressure of the gas is at atmospheric pressure. If the entrance to the capillary should get bridged by fluid while the plunger is being let in the speed of the plunger must be so adjusted that the bridge moves very slowly up the capillary thus enabling proper drainage to take place.
- 18 When the gas bubble is at atmospheric pressure the plug is removed and the upper meniscus moved slowly and evenly to the zero mark.
- 19 The capillary is placed for $\frac{1}{2}$ minute in a beaker of water at room temperature and the temperature is read. It is then removed and dried by light wiping care being taken that the capillary is not handled.
- 20 The volume of the bubble is read $\frac{1}{2}$ divisions without any unnecessary adjustments as this may lead to appreciable reabsorption (the capillary should have been properly drained during step [14]).
- 21 The cup is filled to the top with water and three fourths of the latter is pulled down into the syringe forming a layer on top of the blood mixture. The bubble is returned to the capillary with water beneath it. Owing to absorption of CO by this washing the bubble is much shorter.
- 22 The cup is filled with 10 percent NaOH, the cup pointed downward, and the bubble expelled into the alkali some of which is drawn into the capillary as soon as the bubble is free.
- 23 The cup is pointed slightly down and rotated a few times so as to complete the absorption of CO. The syringe is then returned to the vertical position with the cup downward and then a gas bubble is sucked back into the capillary.
- 24 The temperature of the capillary is again adjusted and the bubble volume read $\frac{1}{2}$.

Calculations

The original formula to obtain the CO₂ content of the blood by this method was as follows

$$\text{CO content} = (V_1 - V_2) \times f \times \frac{100}{b}$$

Where

V_1 = First reading

V_2 = Second reading after absorption of the CO

f = Correction factor for temperature aqueous vapor pressure and barometric pressure as derived from Fig. 25 at the beginning of the section on blood gases

b = Volume of blood expressed as the number of capillary divisions

No allowance was made however for the incomplete extraction of CO during shaking and for reabsorption during compression. It was necessary therefore to run a series of determinations of CO by the syringe method and compare them with the results obtained by more precise method like the Van Slyke. By dividing the

Reagents

- 1 Glycerol aquaresein mixture This mixture is made by mixing equal parts of the two reagents and storing it in a two ml syringe with a # 0 needle the tip of which has been ground off square (Aquaresein is obtainable from the Glyco Products Co Inc New York.)
 - 2 Ferricyanide solution Dissolve 1 gm of potassium ferricyanide and 0.5 gm of saponin in 10 ml of distilled water Then add 0.1 ml of the acetate buffer to the solution.
 - 3 Caprylic alcohol Reagent grade
 - 4 Acid phosphate buffer Dissolve 93 gm of acid sodium phosphate ($\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$) in 100 ml of distilled water This is almost a saturated solution
 - 5 Sodium hydroxide a 10% solution in water
 - 6 Distilled water
 - 7 Pyrogallol solution Add 15 gm of powdered pyrogallol to 100 ml of 20% sodium hydroxide solution in a rubber stoppered bottle and cover the solution with a layer of oil 2 cm thick. The pyrogallol is dissolved by stirring it with a glass rod passing it through the oil
- Reagents 6 and 7 are kept for current use in 4 or 5 ml syringes with glass tips attached through the rubber tubing

Procedure

- 1 Remove the plunger from the syringe rinse it well with hot water and dry it by suck on This is easily done by attaching a small glass tube to the vacuum line and inserting the tube to the bottom of the barrel so that air is pulled through the warm capillary and barrel
- 2 Add a drop of glycerol aquaresein mixture into the barrel opening Lubricate the dry plunger with a few streaks of the glycerol solution and return it to the barrel adding enough of the solution so that no air is carried in with the plunger Unless the plunger is moved gently in the barrel the latter may break because of the viscosity of the glycerol solution When the plunger strikes the bottom the glycerol solution should rise only a few mm in the capillary
- 3 Fill the cup with the ferricyanide solution draw it down into the barrel and expel it without trapping any air bubbles Remove the excess ferricyanide leaving only the dead space filled with the ferricyanide solution
- 4 Place a drop of caprylic alcohol on top of the ferricyanide solution draw down a scale divisions of the alcohol and suck out the remainder Draw out the plunger until the fluid meniscus is lowered 1 to 2 mm into the capillary
- 5 Seat the plastic tipped wire plug in the cup trapping a small air bubble on top of the caprylic alcohol The rubber band must be strong enough to keep the capillary firmly closed by the plastic tip Add a little of the ferricyanide solution into the cup to complete the seal
- 6 Pull the plunger out slowly until the spring clip engages the notch in the plunger Then add glycerol aquaresein solution around the plunger bearing If the caprylic alcohol stays in the capillary it may be moved down the barrel by warming the capillary behind it in the hand Allow a few seconds for extraction and release the vacuum by letting the plunger in Expel the bubble and repeat the extraction.
- 7 Lower the meniscus of the extracted fluid 1 to 2 mm into the capillary Place the tip of the blood pipette firmly against the bottom of the cup trapping a small (0.5 to 1 division) air bubble between the blood and the extracted fluid Draw the blood slowly in until the length (A) of the air bubble can be measured Continue to draw the blood in very slowly and evenly until 13 to 29 divisions have entered Remove the blood pipette suck off the excess blood adjust the up

Oxygen is released from chemical combination by ferrieyanide and carbon dioxide is evolved by the addition of acid phosphate buffer. The gases are vacuum extracted in the syringe selectively absorbed and measured in the capillary.

Apparatus

- 1 The same syringe analyzer as used for the Scholander Roughton Blood Gas analysis method with modifications shown in Fig 36
- 2 The syringe analyzer described by Scholander and Roughton has been modified to make it easy to hold the plunger out during the vacuum extraction by providing a notch in the plunger which engages a spring steel clip. To cut the notch draw the plunger out 0.8 ml and mark it 3 to 4 mm past the syringe barrel. Cut the notch in the plunger with a triangular medium or fine India oil stone straight below the number of the plunger slanting the stone so that the spring clip will not disengage the notch during the vacuum extraction.

PILLARY SYRINGE AND SLING FOR THE COMBINED CARBON DIOXIDE AND OXYGEN ME

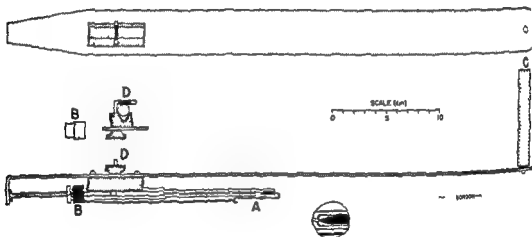


Fig 36

- 3 A plastic tipped wire plug to seal the capillary during the vacuum extraction. The tip is fashioned from a piece of 1.5 to 3 mm plastic cord by rotating and gently heating it in front of a micro flame and pulling it apart when the plastic becomes soft. The pointed tip so formed is cut off to a length of 0.5 to 3 mm pierced straight with a fine wire which is bent. A rubber band attaches the wire plug to the syringe barrel.
- 4 A wire clip to give the plunger a suitable friction and to hold the plunger out during vacuum extraction. A 6 to 7 mm wide ring is cut off from a piece of thick walled rubber tubing and is slipped firmly onto the syringe. A straight angle bow of 0.4 to 0.5 mm of music wire wide enough to slip over the syringe collar is stuck straight through the rubber tubing. With the clip engaged in the plunger notch the end of the plunger should read 80 (0.8 ml).
- 5 A hand sling for the syringe for whirling down liquid bridges in the capillary and for breaking up bubbles in the syringe. The sling is 4 cm wide by 50 cm long made from 1.5 mm sheet aluminum. It can be whirled around a handle. The other end is bent out at a straight angle. It is furnished with a plastic cradle which carries a screw hook padded with rubber tubing for fastening the syringe.

Reagents

- 1 Glycerol aquarexin mixture : This mixture is made by mixing equal parts of the two reagents and storing it in a two ml syringe with a $\frac{1}{16}$ 0 needle the tip of which has been ground off square (Aquarexin is obtainable from the Glyco Products Co Inc. New York)
 - 2 Ferricyanide solution Dissolve 1 gm of potassium ferricyanide and 0.5 gm of saponin in 10 ml of distilled water. Then add 0.1 ml of the acetate buffer to the solution
 - 3 Caprylic alcohol Reagent grade
 - 4 Acid phosphate buffer Dissolve 95 gm of acid sodium phosphate ($\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$) in 100 ml of distilled water. This is almost a saturated solution
 - 5 Sodium hydroxide a 20% solution in water
 - 6 Distilled water
Pyrogallol solution Add 15 gm of powdered pyrogallol to 100 ml of 20% sodium hydroxide solution in a rubber stoppered bottle and cover the solution with a layer of oil 1 cm thick. The pyrogallol is dissolved by stirring it with a glass rod passing it through the oil.
- Reagents 2 and 5 are kept for current use in 2 or 3 ml syringes with glass tips attached through the rubber tubing

Procedure

- 1 Remove the plunger from the syringe wash it well with hot water and dry it by suction. This is easily done by attaching a small glass tube to the vacuum line and inserting the tube to the bottom of the barrel so that air is pulled through the warm capillary and barrel.
- 2 Add a drop of glycerol aquarexin mixture into the barrel opening. Lubricate the dry plunger with a few streaks of the glycerol solution and return it to the barrel adding enough of the solution so that no air is carried in with the plunger. Unless the plunger is moved gently in the barrel the latter may break because of the viscosity of the glycerol solution. When the plunger strikes the bottom the glycerol solution should rise only a few mm in the capillary.
- 3 Fill the cup with the ferricyanide solution draw it down into the barrel and expel it without trapping any air bubbles. Remove the excess ferricyanide leaving only the dead space filled with the ferricyanide solution.
- 4 Place a drop of caprylic alcohol on top of the ferricyanide solution draw down a scale division of the alcohol and suck out the remainder. Draw out the plunger until the fluid meniscus is lowered 1 to 2 mm into the capillary.
- 5 Seat the plastic tipped wire plug in the cup trapping a small air bubble on top of the caprylic alcohol. The rubber band must be strong enough to keep the capillary firmly closed by the plastic tip. Add a little of the ferricyanide solution into the cup to complete the seal.
- 6 Pull the plunger out slowly until the spring clip engages the notch in the plunger. Then add glycerol aquarexin solution around the plunger bearing. If the caprylic alcohol stays in the capillary it may be moved down the barrel by warming the capillary behind it in the hand. Allow a few seconds for extraction and release the vacuum by letting the plunger in. Expel the bubble and repeat the extraction.
- 7 Lower the meniscus of the extracted fluid 1 to 2 mm into the capillary. Place the tip of the blood pipette firmly against the bottom of the cup trapping a small (0.5 to 1 division) air bubble between the blood and the extracted fluid. Draw the blood slowly in until the length (A) of the air bubble can be measured. Continue to draw the blood in very slowly and evenly until 18 to 20 divisions have entered. Remove the blood pipette suck off the excess blood adjust the up-

- per blood meniscus to the zero mark, and read the volume of the blood sample in divisions (With practice the blood volume can be made very close to 30 divisions)
- 8 Fill the cup to the mark with the acid phosphate solution, leaving a small (0.5 to 1 division) air bubble between the buffer and the blood. Draw it slowly in until the length (A_2) of the air bubble can be measured. Turn the syringe cup down and continue to draw in the phosphate buffer slowly and evenly until the bubble reaches the junction of the capillary with the syringe barrel, preventing the acid from entering the syringe barrel
 - 9 Rotate the syringe on an oblique axis with the cup down until the blood is completely laked to a uniform dark brown color by the ferricyanide-ascorbic acid solution. If more than a trace of acid buffer enters the blood will not lake properly and the oxygen will not be completely released from the hemoglobin.
 - 10 Hold the syringe cup up. Draw in the remainder of the acid phosphate solution and close the capillary with the plastic tipped wire plug trapping a small air bubble (0.5 division or less) underneath. Estimate the length of this bubble (A_3). Then add a drop of acid buffer to the cup to complete the vacuum seal.
 - 11 Pull the plunger out slowly so that the capillary drains properly when the small bubble underneath the plug expands. Continue until the plunger notch engages the clip. Again add the glycerol solution around the plunger bearing.
 - 12 Attach the syringe to the sling. It is necessary that the plunger head should rest against the bent end of the sling. Whirl the blood solution down to the bottom of the syringe and tilt back and forth several times to have the liquids well mixed. Whirl the sling again for about 30 seconds. The capillary should be clear of bridges and the blood solution free of bubbles.
 - 13 Remove the syringe from the sling without touching the capillary, and hold the cup up. Release the plunger stop and move the fluid quickly up into the capillary until the atmospheric pressure is almost reached.
 - 14 Without delay remove the plug and adjust the upper gas meniscus to the zero mark and read the volume (V_1) of the gas bubble. Since the capillary has not been handled at any time there is no necessity for temperature equilibration in a water bath. (Delay and fumbling in Steps 13 and 14 result in some reabsorption of CO_2 .)
 - 15 Fill the cup with water and with the syringe held cup up, pull most of the water down into the syringe where it will form a layer on top of the heavy blood solution. Immediately return the bubble to the capillary leaving water behind it on both sides of the gas in the capillary. Owing to the absorption of CO by this washing the bubble is now much shorter.
 - 16 Remove the excess water and fill the cup with NaOH solution. Invert the syringe run the gas bubble out into the alkali, and rotate a few times to facilitate absorption. Draw some alkali into the capillary and then the gas bubble. Measure its volume (V).
 - 17 Remove the NaOH solution from the cup and fill it with pyrogallol solution. Run the bubble out into the cup and absorb as in the previous step. Return the bubble to the capillary and read the volume record and designate it V_2 in calculations.
 - 18 Remove the plunger gently from the barrel under the water faucet. Shake out the contents of the barrel and wash with running tap water several times before the plunger is again inserted. It is recommended that dichromate cleaning solution be used after each analysis to insure that no protein remains sticking to the capillary. While the syringe is still hot dry it by suction as described in Step 1.

Calculations

Carbon dioxide

Volumes percent of CO in blood = $(V - V - c) \times f \times 100/b \times l$.

1 c is the blank correction for the CO content of the reagents (It is determined by running an analysis with all the reagents but no blood. It is usually about 0.1 capillary divisions)

2 f is the factor from Fig 11 for adjusting gas volumes from the observed temperature barometric pressure and water vapor to their dry volumes at 0 and 760 mm

3 l is the blood volume in terms of division of the capillary

4 b is the combined correction factor for the incomplete extraction of CO and for the CO reabsorbed by the solutions. It was found to average 1.015 which is the same figure as that determined in the syringe method for CO in blood

Oxygen

Volumes percent of O in blood = $(V - V - c - a) \times f \times 100/b \times l$.

1 c is the blank correction for the O contents of the reagents used. (Usually about 1 capillary division)

2 a is the O content of the air bubbles introduced during analysis in order to separate reagents $a = \% \text{ per cent } (A + A + A)$

3 f is the factor for the adjustment of moist gas at observed temperature and barometric pressure to the dry condition at 0 and 760 mm (see Fig 5)

4 b is the combined correction factor for the incomplete extraction of O and for the reabsorption of O by the solutions. It was found to average 1.011 (The factor was obtained as the average of the factors by which the results with the syringe [in other respects corrected] must be multiplied to equal the results of the Van Slyke analysis)

14 Manometric Methods Miscellaneous References

Amino Nitrogen

Chinard F P and Van Slyke D D Comparison of a Modified Folin Photometric Procedure and the Ninydrin Manometric Method for the Determination of Amino Acid Nitrogen in Plasma *J Biol Chem* 169 (3) 515-521 (Aug) 1944

Van Slyke D D Improved Methods in the Gasometric Determination of Free and Conjugated Amino Acid Nitrogen in the Urine *J Biol Chem* 161 134 (1913)

Van Slyke D D Manometric Determination of Primary Amino Nitrogen and Its Application to Blood Analysis *J Biol Chem* 83 454-457 (May) 1924

Van Slyke D D MacFadyen D A and Hamilton P B The Gasometric Determination of Amino Acids in Urine by the Ninydrin Carbon Dioxide Method *J Biol Chem* 150 51-55 (Sept) 1943

Bicarbonate

Van Slyke D D and Cullen G F Studies of Acids I The Bicarbonate Concentration of the Blood Plasma Its Significance and Its Determination as a Measure of Acidosis *J Biol Chem* 30 99-106 (May) 1917

Carbon Dioxide

Van Slyke D D Scudroy J Jr and Lax G R Manometric Analysis of Gas Mixtures III Manometric Determination of CO Tension and pH of Blood *J Biol Chem* 95 45-58 (March) 1932

Carbon Monoxide

Van Slyke D D and Robchest Robbins F S The Gasometric Determination of Small Amounts of Carbon Monoxide in Blood and Its Application to Blood Volume Studies *J Biol Chem* 72 39-50 (March) 1927

Hemoglobin

Van Slyke D D and Hiller A Gasometric Determination of Hemoglobin by the Carbon Monoxide Capacity Method *J Biol Chem* 78 807-810 (Aug) 1923

Hydrogen

- Van Slyke D D, and Hanke M E *Manometric Analyses of Gas Mixtures II* Manometric Determination of Hydrogen and Oxygen by Combustion, *J Biol Chem* 85 569 586 (March) 1930
- Van Slyke D D and Hanke M E *Manometric Analysis of Gas Mixtures V* Manometric Analysis of Gas Mixtures Hydrogen Absorption With Paul's Picrate Palladium Solution *J Biol Chem* 96 587 598 (March) 1930

Iodate

- Van Slyke D D, Hiller A and Berthelsen K C *A Gasometric Micromethod for Determination of Iodates and Sulphates and Its Application to the Estimation of Total Base in Blood Serum* *J Biol Chem* 74 659 676 (Sept) 1907

Lactic Acid

- Avery D F and Hastings A B *A Gasometric Method for the Determination of Lactic Acid in Blood* *J Biol Chem* 94 273 280 (Nov) 1931

Methemoglobin

- Van Slyke D D and Hiller A *Gasometric Determination of Methemoglobin* *J Biol Chem* 81 205 216 (Oct) 1909

Nonprotein Nitrogen

- Stehle, R L *Gasometric Determination of Nitrogen and Its Application to the Estimation of the Nonprotein Nitrogen in the Blood* *J Biol Chem* 45 993 998 (Dec) 1900

Oxalic Acid

- Van Slyke D D and Sendroy J Jr *Gasometric Determination of Oxalic Acid and Calcium and Its Application to Serum Analyses* *J Biol Chem* 81 217 3 (Oct) 1909

Potassium

- Kramer B and Gittleman I *The Gasometric Determination of Potassium* *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med.* 24 241 243 (Oct June) 1926 1927

Sugar

- Van Slyke D D and Hawkins J A *A Gasometric Method for the Determination of Reducing Sugars and Its Application to the Analysis of Blood and Urine* *J Biol Chem* 79 739 768 (Jan) 1927
- Van Slyke D D and Hawkins J A *Gasometric Determination of Fermentable Sugar in Blood and Urine* *J Biol Chem* 83 51 70 (May) 1909

Total Nitrogen

- Van Slyke D D *Gasometric Micro Kjeldahl Determination of Nitrogen* *J Biol Chem* 71 235 248 (Dec) 1906
- Van Slyke D D and Kugel V H *Improvements in Manometric Micro Kjeldahl and Blood Urea Methods* *J Biol Chem* 102 489 498 (Oct) 1933

Urea

- Mirkin A *A Gasometric Method for the Determination of Urea Nitrogen in the Blood* *J Lab & Clin Med.* 8 (1) 50 50 (Oct) 1900
- Van Slyke D D *Determination of Urea by Gasometric Measurement of the Carbon Dioxide Formed by the Action of Urease* *J Biol Chem* 78 695 704 (June) 1900

SECTION VI

PHYSIOLOGICAL MEASUREMENTS (Continued)

B PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY OF BLOOD GASES

1 Technique for Equilibrating Arterial and Venous Blood Against Gas Mixtures of Known Composition

Reference

Henderson, L. J. Blood New Haven Conn 1933, Yale University Press Appendix page 338 by Dall D B

Principle

Blood is equilibrated at known tensions of carbon dioxide and oxygen in a constant temperature bath for a known period of time. The blood is then analyzed in the Van Slyke apparatus and the gas phase is analyzed in the Haldane gas analysis apparatus. This technique was used extensively by Henderson Bock Dill Edwards Talbott and associates in their studies of blood as a physicochemical system.

Apparatus

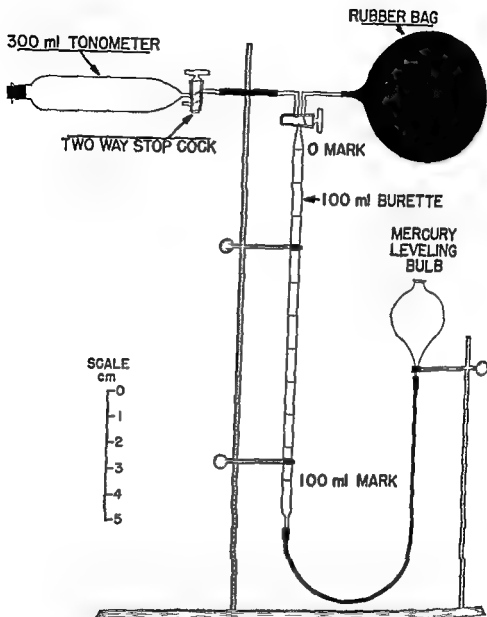
1. Tonometer Barcroft type (see Fig 37)
2. A number of syringes 5 and 10 ml
3. A burette 100 ml (see Fig 37)
4. A number of 50 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes
5. A number of \pm 0 gauge needles (sterilized)
6. A water bath constant temperature set at 37 C. This bath contains a device for rotating blood tonometers.
7. A number of blood sampling tubes for the storage of the blood
8. A Haldane gas analysis apparatus as in Fig 41
9. A Van Slyke manometric apparatus as in Fig 38
10. A rubber bag for the storage of gases
11. A number of glass tubes with capillary bore of 2 mm

Reagents

1. A tank of oxygen
2. A tank of carbon dioxide
3. A tank of nitrogen
4. Clean mercury
5. Stopcock grease (Lubricoil A H Thomas Co)
6. Heparin solution. One drop should inhibit coagulation of 10 ml blood for 24 hours.

Procedure—Preparation of Gas Mixture

1. The tonometer in which the blood is to be equilibrated is ordinarily prepared in advance of the blood drawing. These tonometers are of the Barcroft type (see Fig 37) and have a capacity between 2.80 to 3.0 ml. The capacity is etched on each and serves as an identifying mark. The dry tonometer with the stopcock well lubricated and held in by rubber bands, is fitted with a rubber stopper



PREPARATION OF GAS MIXTURES

Fig 37—Apparatus used by Henderson and associates for equilibrating blood with gas mixtures of known composition

Since in the calculation of arterial pH we are primarily interested in a partial pressure of 40 mm CO₂ we shall describe specifically the preparation of a mixture with pCO₂ 40 mm Hg and pO₂ 180 to 200 mm Hg. The same general technique is used for preparing tonometers for any other partial pressures.

- The general formula for computing the amount of gas to be added is

ml gas to be added to tonometer =

$$\frac{(p \text{ Gas}) \times (\text{Volume of tonometer})}{(\text{barometric pressure})} \quad (\text{Equation 1})$$

For example pCO₂ wanted is 40 mm pO₂ wanted is 200 mm capacity of tonometer is 300 ml and barometric pressure is 760 mm Hg

$$\text{Therefore ml CO}_2 = \frac{40 \times 300}{760} = 15.8 \text{ ml and}$$

$$\text{ml O}_2 = \frac{200 \times 300}{760} = 79 \text{ and}$$

$$\text{Sum of CO}_2 \text{ O}_2 = (15.8 + 79) = 94.8$$

3 Filling the tonometer is done as follows

- The tonometer is first flushed out with nitrogen and then connected to the 100 ml burette
- With the tonometer stopcock open to the outside air and with stopcock of the burette open to the tonometer stopcock the gas burette is filled with mercury by raising the mercury leveling bulb
- The tonometer stopcock is turned and 94.8 ml of gas is removed from the tonometer
- The tonometer stopcock is again turned and the gas is discharged through the side outlet
- The burette stopcock is turned to the rubber bag containing oxygen and the burette connections are flushed out with the oxygen twice
- Then measure out accurately 79.0 ml of oxygen in the burette and deliver it into the tonometer
- The bag of oxygen is replaced with a bag of carbon dioxide and after flushing out the burette and connections through the side outlet 15.8 ml of carbon dioxide are measured into the burette and then introduced into the tonometer
- When more than 15 ml of gas is removed from the tonometer account should be taken of the lowered pressure. This may be done approximately by suitable lowering of the leveling bulb or the volume of gas withdrawn may be measured by closing the burette stopcock.

Procedure Drawing Preparation and Analysis of Arterial Blood

- For the collection of arterial blood round bottomed centrifuge tubes of 50 ml capacity are used. In the bottom are placed 4 drops of heparin solution and paraffin oil up to a height of 10 cm
- After establishment of local anesthesia with one per cent Novocain blood is withdrawn from the radial or brachial artery
- Particular care is taken in the case of arterial blood to avoid contact with the air. The syringe is turned up the needle replaced with a glass capillary tube 2 x 100 mm and blood is pushed through to the tip of the tube. The syringe is inverted and with the tube leading into the oil in the 50 ml centrifuge tube the blood is rapidly transferred. It is then stirred carefully until the heparin is in solution with the blood. (Any specimen of arterial blood normally represents the blood leaving the lungs in respect to its oxygen and carbon dioxide contents whereas arm vein blood may differ greatly from vena cava blood. Consequently it is of great interest to know the exact carbon dioxide and oxygen content of

arterial blood and of but little interest to secure such information with regard to a sample of venous blood) At this point one man proceeds promptly to the determination of oxygen and carbon dioxide contents of the arterial blood by the Van Slyke techniques

Procedure—Equilibration of Arterial Blood

- 1 With a 5 ml syringe 5 ml of arterial blood is introduced into the tonometer through its stopcock
- 2 With another syringe mercury is forced through the stopcock until the capillary bores are exactly filled
- 3 The time is noted and the tonometer is placed in a constant temperature bath set at 37 C where it is held in a mechanical rotator
- 4 Twenty minutes equilibration insures practically complete equilibrium under the above defined conditions
- 5 At the end of 20 minutes, the tonometer is clamped in an upright position in the water bath and a blood sampling tube is attached with a short piece of small bore tubing The sampling tube is like the gas sampling tube except that the capacity is only 6 ml
- 6 The tonometer stopcock is turned to the side arm the sampling tube stopcock is opened and by raising the leveling bulb some mercury is forced through the connection
- 7 The tonometer stopcock is then turned and by lowering of the leveling bulb the blood is drawn into the sampling tube
- 8 After closing of both stopcocks the rubber connection is removed and sampling tube and tonometer are taken from the bath
- 9 The sampling tube is placed in a rack and sealed off with mercury
- 10 The sample is kept at 5 C until it is analyzed for oxygen and carbon dioxide This is done after mixing the blood in the sampling tube thoroughly by inversion. The stopcock is carefully opened until all the mercury is expelled from the capillary bore A number 0 rubber stopper with a small bore makes a satisfactory connection with a Van Slyke Neil pipette The leveling bulb is supported in the rack slightly above the level of the sampling tube stopcock so that there is a positive pressure to fill the pipette when the stopcock is opened After the blood sample has been introduced into the Van Slyke apparatus the sampling tube is again sealed off with mercury

Procedure—Analysis of the Gas Phase

- 1 In general the partial pressure of gas in the tonometer at 37 C is calculated from the gas pressure and the temperature of the tonometer at the time of analysis, according to the following equation

pGas at 37 C =

$$\frac{\% \text{ Gas}}{100} \times (B - p\text{H}_2\text{O} + p) \times \frac{(310)}{(-73 + T)} \times \frac{(V + H - 1)}{(V - b)} \quad (\text{Equation })$$

Where % Gas is percentage as analyzed B is barometric pressure mm Hg p_{H₂O} is partial pressure of water at temperature of analysis H is the difference in pressure (tonometer minus barometer) at time of analysis V is volume of tonometer H is the volume of gas drawn into the Haldane apparatus for analysis and b is the volume of blood during equilibration One ml of blood always stays on the walls of the tonometer

- 2 In analyzing the gas phase the steps are as follows
 - a Dry the tonometer and allow it to come to room temperature Expel blood from the exterior ends of the tonometer cock
 - b Connect to the Haldane apparatus
 - c Expel residual gas from the Haldane apparatus

- d. Connect to tonometer and use Haldane leveling bulb to draw gently the residual drop of blood from the interior bore of the tonometer cock and to expel it into the side bore of the exterior cock
- e. Draw 7 ml of gas into the Haldane
- f. Read difference in mercury levels to the nearest mm; this figure p is used in the calculation
- g. Continue to flush out the dead space and analyze for CO and O₂. Note that for fully oxygenated blood the pO_2 is always very high and the value can be assumed without serious error

Example of Calculation

1. CO was 5.00 Hg was 760 mm. T at analysis was 3°C which is tonometer minus barometer was minus 6 mm. Volume of gas drawn into Haldane was 7 ml. Tonometer 300 ml blood + 7 ml pH_2O at 3°C is 4 mm Hg

Therefore pCO mm Hg =

$$\frac{5}{100} \times (760 - 4 - 6) \times \frac{310}{.73 + 3} \times \frac{(300 + 7 - 1)}{(300 - 7)} = 40.0$$

2. The values at different temperatures for pH_2O and the factor $310/(.73 + T)$ are consolidated into Table 18

TABLE 18

PARTIAL PRESSURE OF WATER AND TEMPERATURE FACTOR FOR EQUILIBRATED BLOOD AT DIFFERENT ROOM TEMPERATURES

ROOM TEMPERATURE °C	pH_2O mm Hg	FACTOR $310/(.73 + T)$
0	17	1.058
21	18	1.054
	19	1.051
23	21	1.047
24	22	1.044
25	23	1.040
26	25	1.037
27	27	1.033
28	28	1.030

2. Dissociation Curves of Blood

References

1. Henderson L. J. Blood New Haven Conn. 1938 Yale University Press
2. Dill, D. B. Graybiel A. Hurtado A. and Taquini A. C. Der Gasaustausch in den Lungen im Alter. Sonderausgabe Zeits. Alters II (1) 033 1916

Calculations Involving Oxygen and Hemoglobin

1. Total Oxygen of Blood. Total oxygen of blood (total O₂) is calculated from results of analysis according to the method of Van Slyke and Neill (1934) as described previously
2. Physically Dissolved Oxygen of Blood (O₂) According to the solubility studies of Seidory Dillon and Van Slyke (1934) one liter of normal blood will dissolve 0.00138 millimole (mM) of O₂ at 37°C and at 1/760 atmosphere. Hence

$$(O_2)_d \text{ in mM/l} = (0.00138) \times (pO_2) \quad \text{or} \quad \text{(Equation 1)}$$

$$(O_2) \text{ in ml O}_2/100 \text{ ml} = (0.0031 \times (pO_2)) \quad \text{(Equation 2)}$$

3. Oxygen Bound by Hemoglobin. This is calculated as follows

$$(\text{HbO}) = (\text{total O}_2)_d - (O_2) \quad \text{(Equation 3)}$$

4 **Oxygen Capacity** This figure (HbO_2 capacity), is $(\text{HbO}_2)_s$ of blood saturated with oxygen at $p\text{O}_2$ 180 to 200 mm Hg at 37 C

5 **Percentage Oxygen Saturation**

$$\% \text{ Saturation} = \frac{100 \times (\text{HbO}_2)_a}{(\text{HbO}_2 \text{ capacity})_s} \quad (\text{Equation 4})$$

6 **Hemoglobin in Blood.** The hemoglobin is calculated from the oxygen capacity as follows

$$\text{gm Hb/100 ml blood} = \frac{\text{Oxygen capacity ml O}_2/100 \text{ ml blood}}{1.34} \quad (\text{Equation 5})$$

Calculations Involving Carbon Dioxide

1 **Total CO of Blood** This value $(\text{total CO})_s$ is calculated after Van Slyke and Sendroy (1927)

2 **Glycolysis During Equilibration** Bock and associates (1929) calculated that $(\text{total CO}_2)_s$ is reduced about 0.4 vols % in 15 mins at 37 C. This quantity is added to $(\text{total CO}_2)_s$ of equilibrated blood

3 **Carbon Dioxide Content of Blood Equilibrated at 37 C and $p\text{CO}_2$ 40** Corrected for Glycolysis This value T_m may be found from the curve of Henderson (1930) in Fig 67 at the back of this book. The data required are $(\text{HbO}_2 \text{ capacity})_s$ and $(\text{total CO}_2)_s$ at known $p\text{CO}_2$. From these data $(\text{total CO}_2)_s$ at any other $p\text{CO}_2$ may be derived. Corrected for glycolysis this value at $p\text{CO}_2$ 40 is called T_m .

4 **Total Carbon Dioxide in Plasma** If the equilibrated blood is handled under anaerobic conditions direct analysis of the plasma by the technique of Van Slyke and Neill gives the total carbon dioxide $(\text{total CO}_2)_p$. As an alternative, Henderson (1928) developed Fig 38 for computing $\Delta(\text{CO}_2)$ difference between $(\text{total CO}_2)_s$ and $(\text{total CO}_2)_p$ when T_m and $(\text{HbO}_2 \text{ capacity})_s$ are known

$$(\text{Total CO}_2)_p = (\text{total CO}_2)_s + \Delta(\text{CO}_2) \quad (\text{Equation 6})$$

5 **Free Carbonic Acid of Serum (H^+CO_3)** From solubility coefficients of Van Slyke (1928) one liter of normal serum will dissolve 0.0313 mM of CO_2 at 37 C and at 1/760 atmosphere. Hence

$$(\text{H}^+\text{CO}_3) \text{ in mM/l} = (0.0313) \times (p\text{CO}_2) \quad (\text{Equation 7}) \text{ or}$$

$$(\text{H}^+\text{CO}_3) \text{ in ml CO}_2/100 \text{ ml} = (0.0696) \times (p\text{CO}_2) \quad (\text{Equation 8})$$

6 **Bicarbonate in Serum (BHCO_3)** This value is computed from the equation

$$(\text{BHCO}_3) \text{ in mM/l} = (\text{total CO}_2)_p - (\text{H}^+\text{CO}_3) \quad (\text{Equation 9})$$

7 **Serum pH** This value, pH, is calculated from the Henderson Hasselbalch equation

$$\text{pH} = \text{pK} + \log (\text{BHCO}_3) - \log (\text{H}^+\text{CO}_3) \quad (\text{Equation 10})$$

Dill, Daly and Forbes (1937) determined that the pK of normal human serum at 37 C is 6.11

Calculation of Arterial $p\text{CO}_2$

1 **Knowing CO_2 combining capacity (T_m) and the CO_2 content of arterial blood as drawn and the oxygen combining capacity one calculates $p\text{CO}_2$ of the blood as drawn from Fig 67 at the back of the book as follows**

a Place string at T_m on the left and 40 mm on H scale at right

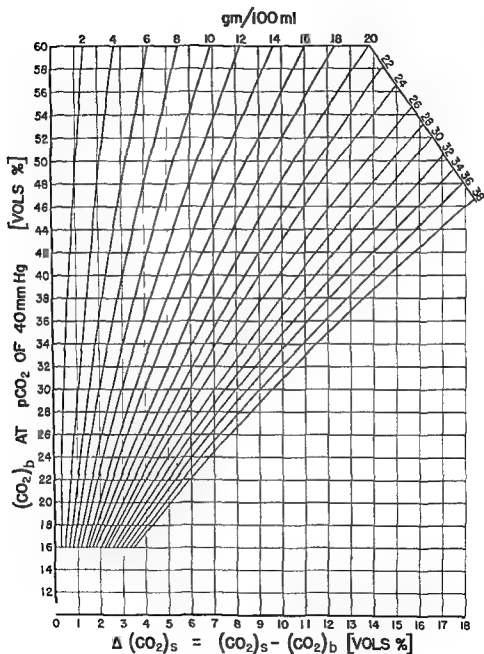
b Fix a pin on A scale corresponding to the oxygen capacity in ml/100 ml blood

c Now swing the string about the pin setting the the left hand figure on the T scale at the CO_2 content as analyzed.

d Keeping string straight read $p\text{CO}_2$ on right hand scale

2 **Under ordinary conditions the CO_2 combining capacity of arterial blood may be taken as 0.1 mM greater than that of oxygenated blood. Under unusual conditions the correction must be arrived at more precisely. After correction**

HEMOGLOBIN



—C. BOGGS—

Fig 38—Handy nomogram chart for computing whole blood and serum carbon dioxide for blood with different concentration of hemoglobin.

is made for dissolved oxygen the proportion of reduced Hb is calculated. The CO_2 combining capacity of arterial blood then is

$\text{CO combining capacity} \approx$

$$T_{\text{a}} + \frac{\Delta (\text{CO})_{\text{a}} \times (\text{Hb})_{\text{a}}}{(\text{HbO}_2 \text{ capacity})_{\text{a}}} \quad (\text{Equation 11})$$

Where T_{a} , $(\text{Hb})_{\text{a}}$ and $(\text{HbO}_2 \text{ capacity})_{\text{a}}$ are as defined above and $\Delta (\text{CO})_{\text{a}}$ is the reduction of CO_2 combining capacity for increasing concentrations of oxyhemoglobin. To determine the value of $\Delta (\text{CO}_2)_{\text{a}}$ from the T_{a} of oxygenated blood and $(\text{HbO}_2 \text{ capacity})_{\text{a}}$ use Fig. 39

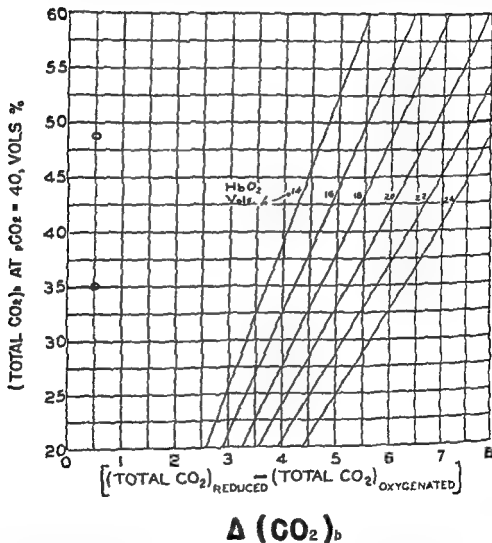
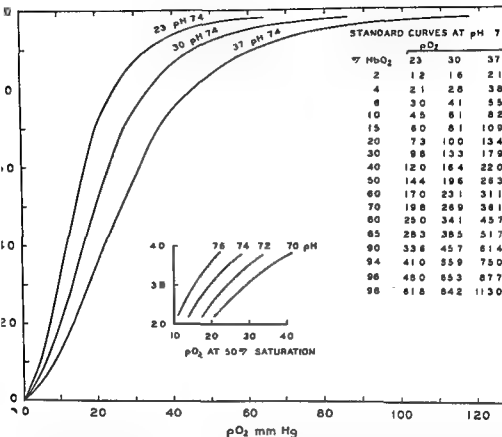


Fig. 39—Henderson's chart for determining the effect of oxygenation on the T_{a} of whole blood.

Dissociation Curves

- 1 For both oxygen and carbon dioxide, dissociation curves are plotted with some function of gas content as ordinate against some function of gas pressure as abscissa.



OXYGEN DISSOCIATION CURVES, HUMAN BLOOD, AT DIFFERENT TEMPERATURES

Fig. 40—Effects of temperature and pH on oxygen dissociation curves (according to Dill and associates)

- 2 Points on the oxygen dissociation curves are obtained by preparing gas mixtures of suitable composition followed by precise determination of both $p\text{CO}_2$ and $p\text{O}_2$ in the gas phase. The oxygen dissociation curve is usually plotted to show % HbO_2 as a function of $p\text{O}_2$, the $p\text{CO}_2$ being constant. An example of this kind of curve is shown in Fig. 40.
- 3 The logarithmic oxygen dissociation curve plots $\log \frac{100(\text{Hb})_s}{(\text{HbO})_s}$ against $\log p\text{O}_2$, where $(\text{Hb})_s/(\text{HbO})_s$ is the ratio of reduced to oxygenated hemoglobin. This curve has two advantages over the usual oxygen curve. It is nearly straight and the effect of a given change in pH (or in temperature) on the $\log p\text{O}_2$ is the same for all values of $100(\text{Hb})/(\text{HbO})$.

3 Miscellaneous Calculations of the Physicochemical Properties of Blood

Calculation of the Donnan Ratio

Reference

Henderson L. J. *Blood* New Haven Conn. 1928 Yale University Press

Calculation

- I As applied to blood the Donnan ratio is the ratio of the concentration of an ion in the cells divided by its concentration in the plasma, concentration being best expressed as mEq. of electrolyte per liter of water in the cells or serum.
- II The direct determination of the Donnan ratio is accomplished in the following steps:
 - a. Separate cells and plasma by centrifuging
 - b. Determine the concentration of the ion in the cells and plasma
 - c. Determine the water concentration in the cells and plasma by drying weighed volumes at 110°C (see estimations of water and solids)
 - d. Calculate the Donnan ratio according to the equation

$$r \text{ the Donnan ratio} = \frac{\text{mEq./l. cells}}{\text{mEq./l. plasma}} \times \frac{\text{ml water/1000 ml plasma}}{\text{ml water/1000 ml cells}}$$

- 3 The indirect determination of the Donnan ratio is accomplished with measurements on whole blood and plasma:
 - a. Determine the hematocrit i.e. ml packed red cells/100 ml blood.
 - II Determine the concentration of the ion in whole blood and in plasma
 - c. Determine the water content of whole blood and plasma by drying weighed known volumes at 110°C (see estimation of water and solids)
 - d. Estimate the concentration of ion in plasma mEq/l
 - e. Estimate the concentration in whole blood mEq/l
 - f. Compute the concentration in cells according to the equation

$$\text{mEq./l. cells} =$$

$$\frac{\text{mEq./l. whole blood}}{\text{Hematocrit/100}} - \frac{\text{mEq./l. plasma} \times (100 - \text{Hematocrit})}{\text{Hematocrit}}$$

- III Compute the Donnan ratio

$$r \text{ the Donnan ratio} = \frac{\text{mEq./l. cells}}{\text{mEq./l. plasma}} \times \frac{\text{ml water/1000 ml plasma}}{\text{ml water/1000 ml cells}}$$

Composition of Normal Arterial Human Blood

For some purposes a table of some of the properties of normal human arterial blood is useful. Table I9 has been compiled from data accumulated at the Harvard Fatigue Laboratory

Temperature Effects on Base Bound by Plasma Protein

Reference

- 1 Stadie W C Austin J H and Robinson H W The Effect of Temperature on the Acid Base Protein Equilibrium and Its Influence on the CO Absorption Curve of Whole Blood True and Separated Serum *J Biol Chem* 68 901 0 0 (Dec) 19 5
- 2 Van Slyke D D Hastings A B Hiller A and Sendroy J Jr Studies of Gas and Electrolyte Equilibria in Blood XIV The Amounts of Alkali Bound by Serum Albumin and Globulin *J Biol Chem* 79 69 80 (Oct) 1928

Calculation

The base bound by plasma protein, expressed as BP in mEq/l is a function of

a Concentration of plasma protein P expressed in gm/l

b pH

c pI the pH of minimal base binding

d. Buffer value expressed by a constant 0.104 in the case of normal man

The equation at 33 C according to Van Slyke Hastings Hiller and Sendroy is

$$BP = (0.104) \times (P) \times (pH - 5.08)$$

At this temperature pI has the value of 4.03

The effect of temperature on pI according to Stadie Austin and Robinson is about -0.0 per 1 C that is

$$\Delta pI = -0.0 \times (\text{Observed } T - 33 \text{ C})$$

Hence the general equation for evaluating BP taking temperature into account is

$$BP = (0.104) \times (P) \times pH - (5.08 - \Delta pI)$$

By substitution this becomes

$$BP = [(0.104) \times (P)] - [0.08 - 0.0^\circ (t - 33 \text{ C})]$$

where t = observed temperature

TABLE 19

COMPOSITION OF NORMAL ARTERIAL HUMAN BLOOD

Averages based on over 100 analyses at the Harvard Fatigue Laboratory with healthy young men as subjects)

MEASUREMENT	CELLS	PLASMA	WHOLE BLOOD
pH	7.38	7.40	
Volume ml/l	448	55	1000
Sp Gravity	1.100	1.017	1.060
Water ml/l	720	938	840
Total Solids gm/l	390	89	20
Protein gm/l	356	70	130
Glucose gm/l	0.9	1.1	1.0
Sodium mEq/l	119	140	83.7
Potassium mEq/l	93.7	5.3	44.9
Calcium mEq/l	0.0	5.0	2.6
Magnesium mEq/l	0	0.0	0.0
Total cations mEq/l	110.6	15.3	133.2
Chloride mEq/l	54	104.6	82.0
Bicarbonate mEq/l	15.3	5.1	0.7
Lactate mEq/l	0.7	1.4	1.1
Inorganic Phosphorus mEq/l	1.1	0	1.7
Inorganic Sulfate mEq/l	0.6	0.6	0.6
Protein mEq/l	41.7	17.4	78.2
Total anions mEq/l	113.3	151.3	133.9

SECTION VI

PHYSIOLOGICAL MEASUREMENTS (Continued)

C ESTIMATION OF RESPIRATORY GASES

1 The Haldane Apparatus for Measuring Carbon Dioxide and Oxygen

Reference

Haldane, J H and Priestley, J H *Respiration*, Oxford 1935, Clarendon Press

Principle

The CO_2 in a known volume of air is absorbed with KOH , and the O_2 with a strong reducing solution. The remainder of gas is considered to be all N_2 .

Apparatus

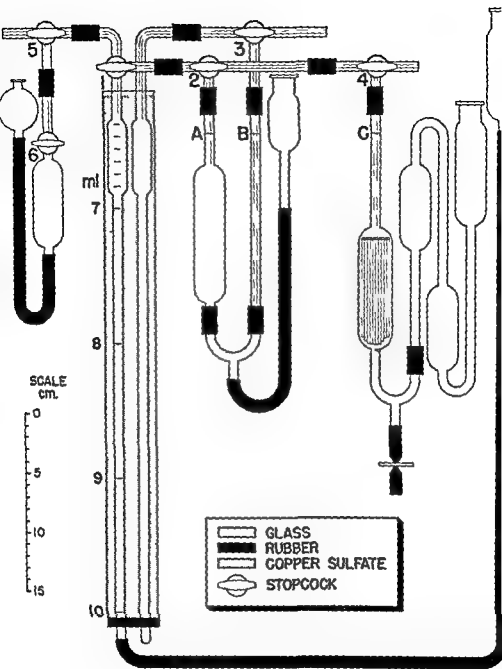
- 1 Haldane gas analyzer (See Fig 41)
- 2 Gas sampling tubes. Oiled syringes may be used if storage time is only a few hours
- 3 Pipe cleaners for cleaning apparatus
- 4 50 ml syringes for handling reagents and cleaning apparatus
- 5 Dropping bottle for dilute H_2SO_4
- 6 Small lengths of pressure tubing for cleaning apparatus

Reagents

- 1 Dilute H_2SO_4 approximately 1 ml conc H_2SO_4 diluted to 100 ml with water
- 2 KOH approximately 14 gm dissolved in 100 ml water
- 3 Litmus paper for detecting acid or alkali in the wrong places
- 4 Oxygen absorbent. In a screw topped bottle place about 8 gm of sodium hydro sulfite ($\text{Lycopon Na}_2\text{SO}_3$) 15 gm sodium anthraquinone beta sulfonate and a small crystal of ferric chloride. Just before the apparatus is to be made ready for use add approximately 50 ml of 14% KOH which has been warmed to about 50 $^\circ\text{C}$. Solution is complete in a few minutes. Throughout all manipulation of the absorbent unnecessary exposure to air must be avoided. It is wise to weigh out about 6 bottles of dry reagents at a time since 50 ml of absorbent will be enough for about 50 analyses.
- 5 Stopcock grease mercury and copper sulfate crystals

Procedure—Calibrating Burette

- 1 This is necessary before a new burette is used since the bore is not necessarily uniform. It need not be repeated unless structural alterations are made in the burette.
- 2 Fuse a one way stopcock with a fine tip on the lower end of the burette. (Most companies ship burettes with stopcock attached.)
- 3 Clean the burette with sulfuric acid dichromate mixture



HALDANE APPARATUS

G. E. GORDON

Fig. 41.—Haldane's apparatus for measuring oxygen, carbon dioxide, and nitrogen in samples of air.

- 4 Rinse thoroughly with water and finally with dilute sulfuric acid and allow to drain for 10 minutes
- 5 With the short limb of Stopcock 1 to the left and the long limb open to air fill the burette with mercury exactly to the top of the stopcock bore Hang a thermometer right next to the burette
- 6 Into a weighed 25 ml Erlenmeyer flask deliver mercury through the fused bottom stopcock until the mark 7 00 is exactly reached by the upper part of the mercury meniscus Measure the temperature
- 7 Reweigh the flask
- 8 Now deliver mercury from the bottom stopcock into the flask until exactly 7 100 is reached measure the temperature and weigh again
- 9 Repeat this for 7 200 7 300 7 400 and so on to 10 000
- 10 The calibration is now calculated by the following steps
 - a List the burette readings (Column 1)
 - b List the corresponding temperatures and weights of Hg (Columns 2 and 3)
 - c From 7 0 on calculate the increment in weight for each 0 1 ml division on the burette (Column 4)
 - d List the density of mercury i e, gm of Hg per ml at given temperatures (Column 5) from table 20
 - e Calculate the increment in volume for every 0 1 increase in burette reading by dividing every number in Column 4 by the corresponding number in Column 5
 - f Calculate the actual volume of the burette at every 0 1 division by determining the actual volume at 7 0 (i e weight of Hg at 7 0 divided by density of Hg at the temperature of the burette when 7 0 was weighed) and adding to it successively each number in Column 6
 - g The final answer in a Haldane analysis is expressed as ml of gas per 100 ml of initial sample Hence it is now necessary to calculate all burette readings on the basis that burette reading 10 0 represents exactly 10 00 ml. This is done by multiplying all readings in Column 7 by the factor

10 000

Column 7 reading for 10 000

- h. The correction factor for each burette reading is now calculated (Column 9) This correction represents the number which has to be added to any given burette reading in order to give its value correctly on the basis of 10 000 = exactly 10 ml
- i The table of correction factors is placed on a card which is mounted for use on the Haldane apparatus which has been calibrated
- j Steps 10a through 10h are illustrated in Table 21 which presents the actual calibration of a new burette

TABLE 20
DENSITY OF MERCURY AT VARIOUS TEMPERATURES

C	00	02	04	06	08
	gm Hg PER ml AT DIFFERENT TEMPERATURES				
20	13 5462	13 5457	13 5452	13 5448	13 5443
21	5438	5433	5428	5423	5418
22	5413	5408	5403	5399	5394
23	5389	5384	5379	5374	5369
24	5364	5359	5354	5350	5345
25	13 5340	13 5335	13 5330	13 53 5	13 53 0
26	5315	5310	5305	5301	5296
27	5 91	5 86	5 81	5 78	5 71
28	5 66	5 61	5 56	5 52	5 47
29	5 42	5 37	5 33	5 27	5 2

TABLE 21
SAMPLE CALIBRATION OF A HALDANE BURETTE

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
BURETTE READING UNITS	TEMP OF BURETTE °	WEIGHT OF Hg gm	INCRE- MENT IN WEIGHT gm	DENSITY OF Hg gm/ml	INCRE- MENT IN VOLUME ml	ACTUAL VOLUME ml	VOLUME ON BASIS 10.0 = 10 ml	CORREC- TION FACTOR UNITS
70	45	99.0339		13.535		7.43	7.004	+4
71	3.5	99.4474	1.4135	13.5376	0.1044	7.347	7.105	+5
80	46	111.9599	1.3815	13.5350	0.100	8.7	8.000	0
81	24.6	112.364	1.4035	13.5350	0.1037	8.375	8.099	-1
89	47	124.5315	1.3935	13.5347	0.109	9.00	8.897	-3
90	74.8	1.59389	1.4074	13.5345	0.1040	9.304	8.998	-2
99	25.1	138.5453	1.3808	13.5337	0.100	10.236	9.900	0
100	5.1	139.9562	1.4112	13.5337	0.1043	10.340	10.000	0

The correction factor is the number to be added in the third decimal place to the actual burette reading in order to make it represent the actual volume on the basis that the burette reading 100 is exactly 10 ml. Example: Burette reading 8.957 Correction Factor from Column 9 = 2 Corrected reading 8.955

Procedure—Setting Up and Preparing Apparatus for Use

- 1 Install the burette and dummy burette in the water jacket put a few crystals of CuSO_4 in the bottom and fill with water to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch of the top. The tube of an air bubble either hand driven or from a pressure pump should be installed at the bottom of the jacket. The dummy burette should contain 1% H_2SO_4 up to about 8 ml.
Remove all stopcocks and clean out their tubes and cores.
- 3 With stopcocks still out fill the mercury reservoir with mercury so that the hand bulb is about $\frac{1}{3}$ full when the levels of mercury in the bulb and burette are the same and the mercury in the burette is almost up to the Stopcock 1. Suck 3 drops of 1% H_2O in on top of the mercury column. Now hang the hand bulb on the right hand rack and pump low down so that the mercury is at about 10 ml in the burette.
- 4 Grease and insert Stopcock 1 leaving it in the full off position (not connected with any part of the machine or outside air).
- 5 With Stopcocks 2, 3 and 4 taken out and the KOH bulb in the position shown add 14% KOH to the bulb until the KOH level is at A and B and the bulb is about $\frac{1}{4}$ full.
- 6 Grease and insert Stopcocks 2 and 3 leaving them in the full off position.
- 7 With Stopcock 4 taken out add 14% KOH to the far right hand glass tube until its left hand bulb is full and the KOH is almost to the bottom of its right hand bulb. This is necessary to protect oxygen absorbent from atmospheric oxygen.
- 8 Fill a 50 ml syringe with oxygen absorbent up to about the 40 ml mark. Unscrew the pinch clamp on the rubber nipple at the bottom of the middle U tube and insert the nozzle of the syringe. Force oxygen absorbent slowly up into the U tube until it is about 2 cm above C. Air will now be trapped in the right hand bulb of this U tube and oxygen will be absorbed. During this period lasting about 1 minute keep the level of absorbent at about 2 cm above C by slowly pushing it in as necessary from the syringe. When the rapid absorption of oxygen has ceased clamp off the rubber nipple at the bottom and remove the syringe. The absorbent should now be approximately 2 cm above level C. Oxygen absorption is not complete for $\frac{1}{4}$ hour.
- 9 Grease and insert Stopcock 4 leaving it in the full off position.
- 10 Before an analysis can be performed the whole apparatus from Stopcock 1 to levels A and C must be full of nitrogen. This is accomplished by carrying out one analysis as described below but without any measurements.

Procedure—Taking a Sample of Gas

- 1 The gas sampling tube is fixed near the upper left hand corner of the machine and is connected as shown to the burette by means of rubber tubing through a 3 way stopcock of small bore. For field use, syringes are best and the following description applies only to them.
- 2 Stopcocks 2 and 5 are opened so as to connect the burette with outside air but not with the rest of the apparatus or the gas sampling syringe.
- 3 With the right hand mercury leveling bulb is detached from the rack and is carefully raised until the mercury in the burette almost reaches Stopcock 1. It must never enter Stopcock 1.
- 4 Stopcock 5 is turned with the left hand so as to connect the sampling tube with the burette but not outside air and the mercury bulb is lowered 5 or 10 cm so as to exert a negative pressure on the sampling tube and prevent contamination of the sample in Step 5.
- 5 The pinch clamp on the nozzle of the syringe is loosened with the left hand and with the right the mercury bulb is lowered until the burette reads about 10. Stopcock 5 is turned so as to connect the burette with outside air but not the sampling tube. (Keep the left hand on Stopcock 5 for smooth and accurate sampling. No pressure is required on the barrel of the syringe unless the sampling tube has been poorly oiled.)
- 6 Smoothly raise the mercury bulb. When the column is approaching Stopcock 1 turn Stopcock 5 to connect the burette with the sampling tube but not with outside air and simultaneously lower the mercury bulb until the column stands at about 10. Repeat Step 6 once more and hang the mercury bulb on the rack and pinion so that the mercury level is 10.0 or slightly less.
- 8 Turn Stopcock 1 to the full off position and close the pinch clamp on the sampling tube.

Procedure—Analysis of Sample

- 1 For analysis the machine must have nitrogen in it from Stopcock 1 to A and C and the fluid levels should be at A, B and C. Both of these requirements will have been fulfilled by a previous analysis.
- 2 Turn Stopcock 3 to be open to dummy burette, KOH and outside air.
- 3 Turn Stopcock 2 to be open to burette and KOH but not outside air.
- 4 Turn Stopcock 1 to be open to burette and KOH but not outside air.
- 5 Rapidly adjust the KOH bulb up and down until the fluid level is at B and turn Stopcock 3 to connect with dummy burette and KOH but not outside air.
- 6 Adjust fluid level to be exactly at A by moving the rack and pinion. Bubble air through the water jacket. (The purpose of the dummy burette is to compensate for possible changes in temperature or barometric pressure during the course of an analysis. This can be seen from Fig. 41. If the fluid levels are at A and B and the samples of gas in the burette and the dummy burette are at external barometric pressure as they will be if all the steps above are followed carefully any change of temperature in the apparatus or any change of pressure will affect burette and dummy burette equally. The gas in the burette is thus put in a condition which makes any change in its volume due solely to the removal of CO_2 or O.)
- 7 Read the total volume, V , at the top of the mercury meniscus. Check reading after readjusting levels A and B. Correct V from the correction chart.
- 8 In order to absorb CO_2 raise the mercury bulb until the mercury is in the enlarged portions of the burette. Raise and lower the bulb 6-8 times keeping the mercury oscillating between about 2 and 6 ml.

- 9 Carefully hold the mercury bulb next to the rack and pinion with the level at about 11 ml and slowly lower it until the KOH is about 1 cm below level A. Hang the bulb on the rack and pin on.
- 10 Adjust levels A and B, bubble air through the water jacket and read the burette V at the top of the mercury meniscus.
- 11 Repeat Steps 8 and 9 with 4 flushes into KOH.
- 12 Repeat Step 10.
- 13 If the second reading of V is not within 0.001 of the first, repeat Steps 8, 9 and 10 until checks are obtained. (If V becomes progressively smaller, there is probably a leak in Stopcock 1 or 2. Correct V from the correction chart.)
- 14 To absorb O₂, turn Stopcock 2 to connect the burette with absorber but not with KOH.
- 15 Using the same technique as in Step 8, rinse the gas into the absorbent about 3 times.
- 16 With the right hand holding the mercury bulb, bring the absorber carefully up to approximately C and hold it there while with the left hand Stopcock 3 is turned to connect the burette with KOH but not absorbent.
- 17 In order to remove O₂ from the gas between Stopcock 3 and A, rinse gas into KOH 3 times.
- 18 Bring fluid level to approximately A and turn Stopcock 2 to connect burette with absorbent but not KOH.
- 19 Repeat Steps 15, 16 and 17 once.
- 20 Rinse into absorbent finally about 3 times, hang the bulb on the rack and pin on and bring the level exactly to C.
 1. Turn Stopcock 2 to connect burette with KOH but not absorbent and adjust KOH levels exactly to A and B and bubble air through the water jacket. Read the burette V at the top of the mercury meniscus.
2. Repeat Steps 14, 15, 16, 17, 18 and 20. V must check to at least 0.001 ml. (If it drops progressively, there are probably leaks in the stopcocks or else the absorbent is inefficient.) Correct V from the correction chart.
- 23 Prepare for the next analysis by opening Stopcock 3 to dummy burette and KOH but not outside air, readjusting KOH levels to exactly A and B, closing Stopcock 3 to connect with dummy burette and KOH but not outside air, readjusting levels A and B and opening Stopcock 1 to connect with outside air but not to the machine.
4. When leaving the apparatus after a series of analyses, turn Stopcocks 1, 2 and 4 to full off position and turn Stopcock 3 so that it connects dummy burette outside air and KOH. The above precautions are necessary to prevent changes in temperature or barometric pressure sucking over the solutions into the wrong parts of the apparatus.

Procedure—Cleaning the Apparatus

1. When KOH or oxygen absorbent has been sucked into Stopcocks 4, 2, 1 or some times even further, cleaning with water and finally dilute sulfuric acid is necessary. If there is a suspicion of such a misfortune, remove the stopcock and insert a piece of red litmus paper. If it turns blue, cleaning is necessary because alkali is present. Open taps 1 and 4 to outside air but not to burette KOH or absorbent and disconnect Stopcock 5.
3. Attach a piece of rubber tubing to the glass tubing to the right of Stopcock 4.
4. Using a large syringe, force 100 ml of water through the whole line of glass tubing into a beaker held under the outside air connection of Stopcock 1.
5. Follow this with 50 ml of dilute sulfuric acid and remove excess fluid by pumping air through with the empty syringe.

- 6 If it is suspected that alkali has reached the burette remove Stopcock 1, run the mercury right up to the stopcock seat and test with litmus paper. If there is alkali, replace Stopcock 1 turn it to connect burette with outside air but not machine and rinse twice by sucking dilute sulfuric acid all the way beyond 10 and discarding it through the stopcock. Leave 2-3 drops of dilute sulfuric acid in the burette.
- 7 Remove all stopcocks wash them in hot water clean them with a pipe cleaner dry them, grease them and put them back in the apparatus.
- 8 Run an analysis without measurements in order to fill the apparatus with nitrogen.

Calculations

$$\text{ml CO}_2 \text{ per 100 ml sample} = \frac{V_{\text{corrected}} - V_1 \text{ corrected}}{V_{\text{corrected}}} \times 100$$

$$\text{ml O}_2 \text{ per 100 ml sample} = \frac{V_2 \text{ corrected} - V_{\text{corrected}}}{V_{\text{corrected}}} \times 100$$

$$\text{ml N}_2 \text{ per 100 ml sample} = \frac{V_{\text{corrected}}}{V_{\text{corrected}}} \times 100$$

Example

	READING	BURETTE CORRECTION	CORRECTED READING
V	9.897 9.897	0	9.897
V	9.643 9.640	+2	9.644
V	7.901 7.900	+5	7.905

$$\text{ml CO}_2 \text{ per 100 ml sample} = \frac{9.897 - 9.644}{9.897} \times 100 = \frac{.253}{9.897} = 2.56$$

$$\text{ml O}_2 \text{ per 100 ml sample} = \frac{9.644 - 7.905}{9.897} \times 100 = \frac{1.739}{9.897} = 17.4$$

$$\text{ml N}_2 \text{ per 100 ml sample} = \frac{7.905}{9.897} \times 100 = 79.87$$

$$\text{CO}_2 + \text{O}_2 + \text{N}_2 \text{ should} = 100$$

Precautions—Reagents

1. One filling of oxygen absorbent suffices for about 50 estimations. When it is becoming weak scum forms at level C and V checks are hard to obtain. It is then time to change the reagent.
2. One filling of KOH will last for about 1000 estimations.

Precautions—Calibrating Burette

1. There are no short cuts in accurate calibration. Each burette should be calibrated twice or until good agreement is obtained.

Precautions—Setting up Apparatus

1. A chief source of systematic errors is improper lubrication of stopcocks. When properly seated they show no air bubbles in the grease layer between the core and the shell of the stopcock and the capillaries are free of grease.

Precautions—Taking Gas Samples

1. It is essential to have the gas in the burette at external barometric pressure before connecting burette with KOH through Stopcocks 1 and 2. Otherwise KOH will inevitably be sucked over or else will be pushed far enough down to absorb

CO before V can be read. A properly oiled syringe will avoid this but if there is any binding during the taking of samples set the mercury at about 10 for the final step leave Stopcock 1 as it is and open Stopcock 2 to burette and out side air before closing Stopcock 1.

Precautions—Analysis of Sample

- 1 The commonest error is sucking KOH oxygen absorbent or both through Stopcocks 3 and 4. This can be avoided by
 - a Avoiding jerky abrupt movements
 - b Slowing down whenever mercury KOH or absorbent approach or leave constrictions in the apparatus
 - c Never moving the mercury bulb unless one is sure that the stopcocks are turned in the correct manner
 - d During absorption of CO or O making sure that the mercury in the burette does not fall below 70
 All readings must check to within 0.001 ml. When successive readings fall progressively
 - a In the case of V_0 there is either a leak in one or more stopcocks or else CO is being absorbed from the sample by KOH somewhere in the system
 - b In the case of V there is either a leak in one or more stopcocks or else oxygen absorbent has reached to or beyond Stopcock 2
 - c In the case of V there is either a leak in one or more stopcocks or else the oxygen absorbent has become inefficient
- 2 Erratic readings usually come (a) from errors in technique (b) if the burette does not contain acidulated water (c) if grease or mercury act as a ball valve somewhere in the apparatus
4. Be sure to follow Steps 23 and 24 carefully in order to avoid trouble in subsequent analyses

Precautions—Cleaning the Apparatus

- 1 Avoid using alcohol ether or other organic solvents. They are hard to remove completely from the system are in part dissolved in the reagents have high vapor pressure and give very erratic results

Precautions—Calculations

- 1 If the volume of dilute sulfuric acid in the burette amounts to more than 0.005 ml it must be taken into account in the calculations since it takes up volume that would otherwise be occupied by gas. It is wise to adopt the following routine
 - a After the apparatus has stood undisturbed for at least an hour read the top of the mercury meniscus and the bottom of the dilute sulfuric acid meniscus
 - b V_0 , V and V are read as usual
 - c In all calculations the differences between V_0 , V and V are calculated as usual. However instead of dividing by V one divides by $(V - \text{amount of dilute sulfuric acid})$. If dilute sulfuric acid is less than 0.005 it is neglected.
- 2 Before proceeding to a series of analyses it is wise to analyze a sample of pure outdoor air. The percentage of CO should be 0.03 ± 0.01 and the percentage of O_2 should be 20.93 ± 0.0 . If one cannot achieve this accuracy there is no use proceeding to analysis of unknown samples. More practice or else cleaning of the apparatus will be necessary.
- 3 In satisfactory duplicate samples of expired air analysis for CO must agree to within 0.03 percent and analyses for O_2 must agree to within 0.04 percent. Until the operator can achieve these limits he is unreliable.

2 The Scholander Micrometer Gas Analyzer

Reference

Scholander, P. F. Analyzer for Accurate Estimation of Respiratory Gases in One Half Cubic Centimeter Samples *J Biol Chem.* 167 235-250 (Jan.) 1947

Principle

The present analyzer permits the determination of carbon dioxide oxygen and nitrogen in 0.5 ml samples with an accuracy of ± 0.015 volume percent. It will handle directly samples containing from zero to over 99 percent absorbable gases. The analysis requires 6 to 8 minutes. A gas sample is introduced into a reaction chamber, connected to a micrometer burette and is balanced by means of an indicator drop in a capillary against a compensating chamber. Absorbing fluids for carbon dioxide and oxygen can be tilted into the reaction chamber without causing any change in the total liquid content of the system. During absorption of gas mercury is delivered into the reaction chamber from the micrometer burette so as to maintain the balance of the gas against the compensating chamber. Volumes are read in terms of micrometer divisions. The rinsing fluid and absorbents are accurately adjusted to have the same vapor tension.

Apparatus (See Fig. 43)

1. **Reaction Chamber Unit:** This part of the apparatus consists of a compensating chamber (A), a reaction chamber (B) and two side chambers (C and D) for storing absorbents for carbon dioxide and oxygen respectively.

The compensating chamber or thermobarometer (A) can be closed with a stop cock (S1), the lower end of which is ground to fit into the neck of A. Between analyses S1 is kept in a ground glass receptacle (G). A 1 mm bore capillary, with the upper end ground to a wide angled funnel, intrudes into the bottom of the compensating chamber. The capillary is ring marked in the middle. The lower end of the capillary bore is coarsely surface ground for 2 mm and is covered with a Clarite coating. The upper part of the compensating chamber is also made hydrophobic with a Clarite coating. The somewhat unconventional scheme of running the indicator drop vertically is correct as long as the weight of the drop remains constant during the analysis. The intruded capillary insures that no acid can trickle down and add to the weight of the drop. The lower end of the reaction chamber unit is ground to fit the micrometer burette unit. The side arms C and D of the reaction chamber are furnished with capillaries for filling. The ends are stoppered with tight fitting solid vaccine bottle rubber stoppers (E and F).

2. **Micrometer Burette Unit:** A micrometer burette H is attached to a 3 way stop cock (S2) the upper limb of which is ground to fit the lower end of the reaction chamber unit. The side limb is connected with a mercury leveling bulb (I) through rubber or plastic tubing. A 3 mm thick round wooden dowel 10 cm long is fitted to the knurled ratchet on the handle of the micrometer by means of a 5 cm length of rubber tubing.

3. **Water Bath:** The reaction chamber unit is immersed in a water bath which can be made of a glass bottle with the bottom cut off. A one hole rubber stopper is inserted in the neck of the bottle and the upper limb of the micrometer burette is inserted through the hole. The rubber stopper should be short enough to permit rocking the apparatus by tapping the micrometer burette unit. The water bath rests on a ring which can be tilted on a friction bushing. The position of the ring is controlled by means of an attached handle (J). The water level reaches to the neck of (A) so that the gas in the thermobarometer is totally immersed. The water bath is continuously stirred by bubbling air from the bottom. A 50 ml centrifuge tube (K) is suspended from the edge into the water bath.

SCHOLANDER GAS ANALYZER

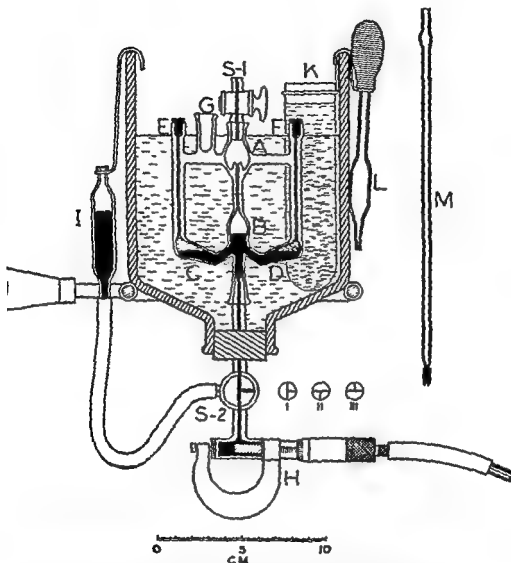


Fig 4.—Analyze for accurate estimation of respiratory gases 1.05 ml sample. A C m pe rating chamber (in mm-hg cm tr) B reaction chamber C side arm for carbon dioxide all rber D side arm for oxygen absorber E and F solid vacuum bottle stoppers G re ceptacles to top-cock S 1 H micrometer bulb J leveling bulb K handle for tilting of pparatus L tub to stoping a id ing solution L pipette for rinsing acid M transfer pipett The heavily drawn lower end of the capillary at B indicates where the capillary is surf ce gr und and coated with Clarite.

and holds the acid rinsing solution described below. A 1 ml pipette (L) furnished with a rubber bulb is suspended on the outside of the water bath. A suction line with a 15 cm long fine tipped capillary glass tube is used for sucking off waste fluids. It is desirable to furnish the apparatus with a device to shake or vibrate it during the absorption of oxygen. A small motor with a crankshaft imparts motion to the micrometer burette through a rubber band attached by means of a metal ring to the crank shaft. The rate should be about 10 rps and the amplitude about 1 cm at the crank shaft.

Reagents

- 1 **Acid Rinsing Solution** In 400 gm distilled water dissolve 7 gm anhydrous sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4) 1 ml conc H_2SO_4 (delivered from a calibrated tuberculin syringe) and 21 ml glycerina (delivered from a calibrated syringe). Before use dissolve 50 mg potassium dichromate ($\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$) in 100 ml of the mixture and store in water bath of apparatus.
- 2 **Carbon Dioxide Absorbent** In 100 gm of water dissolve 11 gm potassium hydroxide (KOH) and 40 mg potassium dichromate ($\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$). Store in a syringe fitted with a No. 24 needle.
- 3 **Oxygen Absorbent** Prepare (a) a solution of 100 gm water and 8 gm potassium hydroxide and (b) a powder mixture of 10 gm sodium hydrosulfite ($\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$ Lycopon) and 0.1 gm sodium anthraquinone beta sulfonate. For use place 0.6 gm of powder (b) in an 8 ml vial add 5 ml of solution (a) close with finger dissolve anaerobically and transfer immediately to a 5 ml syringe fitted with a No. 24 needle.
- 4 **Clarite Coating Solutions** Clarite X is a thermoplastic resin commonly used for mounting histologic sections. Two strengths of solution are required (a) dissolve 3 gm Clarite X in 2 ml of toluol (b) dissolve 1 gm Clarite X in 4 ml of toluol.
- 5 **Petrolatum** White commercial petrolatum is used.

Procedure—Assembling Apparatus

- 1 First insert the rubber stoppers and indicator band (115 mm binding tape) on the analysis capillary.
- 2 Then with the lower joint dried and the female part very lightly greased with petrolatum fix the upper part of apparatus back in place and jam it on.
- 3 Put water (room temperature) into the jar up to the neck of the compensating vessel. Connect to the leveling bulb and let the mercury up into the analysis capillary.
- 4 Leaving the apparatus connected with the leveling bulb insert an empty CO_2 absorbing syringe via the needle through the middle of the rubber cork and remove the air. Hg will follow up into the syringe.
- 5 Remove the needle from the stopper at the same time pressing down the whole apparatus so that it does not disconnect at the ground point.
- 6 Repeat on the other side.

Then charge the respective sides with the corresponding absorbents (all bubbles must be excluded).

- 8 If the lower joint traps any air bubble remove the same by working the rinsing acid through it.

Procedure—Disassembling and Coating of Capillary

- 1 Suck out all the water from the water bath and remove any rinsing acid from the apparatus. Lower the mercury below the ground point by lowering the reservoir. Lift off the upper part of the apparatus from the ground point.

2. Holding it over a beaker remove the plugs so that the Hg and absorbent empty into a beaker. Wash thoroughly under a water tap and remove most of the water by suction.
3. Pour toluol into the compensating chamber holding the finger in the lower end and rinse through the middle with toluol. Repeat wash thoroughly with acetone and dry by suction. Coating solution is 10 to 0% Clarite in toluol.
4. Draw out a glass tube into a fine capillary which will reach the ground ends inside of the capillary of the analysis apparatus both from above and below. Attach a rubber tube to the glass tube and fold the rubber tube then squeeze it together.
5. Place the end of the glass capillary in Clarite and relax the squeezing so that the Clarite fills the capillary. Then let go the fold of the rubber tube to prevent air from being sucked in when capillary is taken out of Clarite.
6. Wipe outside of the capillary. Fold rubber tube over and insert glass capillary into upper ground end of analysis capillary. Squeeze out drop (about 2 mm) of Clarite and withdraw capillary.
7. Move the drop of Clarite down the analysis capillary until it reaches the end of the ground part (i.e. about 1 cm) by placing finger on the opening of the compensating chamber and pressing. Similarly move the drop back and withdraw it by suction through its own capillary pipette rinsed with toluol to remove Clarite still there. Dry with vacuum.
8. The other end of the capillary is coated in the same way from the other end. The middle third of the capillary must be untouched by the coating solution.
9. A slight suction is applied to the apparatus overnight.
10. The upper half of the compensating chamber is also coated with Clarite so as to protect the joint above from being wetted by water. Clarite must be removed from this joint by toluol swabbing if it accidentally gets on it. The Clarite is swabbed on to the upper half by a plug of cotton on the end of a match.

Procedure—Washing Out Apparatus

1. Fill the thermobarometer up to the neck with acid rinsing solution.
2. With Stopcock in position III draw the rinsing solution up and down past the side arms by moving the leveling bulb (not the micrometer).
3. Suck out the rinsing solution and repeat the process until the solution remains yellow. This takes two to four times.
4. Connect the micrometer with II (position II) and adjust mercury to the top of the capillary.
5. Leave the meter half full of acid rinsing solution.

Procedure—Analysis of Samples

1. Gas is contained in the usual sampling tube (Bacoff type) with tap and Hg reservoir. From a syringe squirt a small drop of Hg into the bottom of the tube just above the tap. Hold a dry transfer pipette (M) vertically and press the rubber tip firmly against the top of the tube. Open the tap cautiously so that the Hg drop is gently blown up into the pipette bulb and allow the gas to bubble past it for a few seconds. Withdraw the pipette. The Hg drop starts to fall slowly down the tube. Before it has had time to get far fit the rubber tip on to the top of the capillary in the compensating vessel (A) there being a layer of rinsing solution on a few mm thick to protect it from the outside air.
- Screw the micrometer (H) out until the gas meniscus reaches the lower mark. Turn the stopcock (position II) to connect the micrometer and bulb and adjust the micrometer to zero. This is the reading M.

- Turn the stopcock to connect the micrometer with the analysis chamber (position I) and screw the micrometer out to about 15 to III on the scale. Screw micrometer back a few mm so that the Hg drop moves up thereby indicating slight positive pressure in chamber. In this way no acid will leak in when the transfer pipette is removed.
- 4 Screw in about 2 mm of the rinsing fluid into the capillary and suck away all the rest of the rinsing fluid from the compensating chamber. (A) Screw the acid drop down until the lower meniscus of the drop coincides with the lower mark on the capillary.
- 5 Insert the tap of the compensating chamber and close the tap (B 1).
- 6 Readjust the drop meniscus accurately and repeat until the micrometer reading is constant (M).
- 7 Tilt the apparatus downward to the carbon dioxide absorbent side (C) admitting a small amount of the latter into the analysis chamber at the same time screwing in the micrometer to compensate for the downward movement of the acid drop in the capillary occasioned by the carbon dioxide absorption (tap with finger to absorb carbon dioxide). When the acid drop is stationary readjust to mark and read micrometer again (M).
- 8 Again tilt downwards on the oxygen absorbent side (D) drawing in similarly rather more of the latter again screwing in the micrometer to take care of the oxygen absorption.
- 9 Then switch on the motor shaker until the absorption is finished the acid drop being kept in a safe part of the capillary by the continuous screwing in of the micrometer.
- 10 Allow about 2 minutes more for the temperature rise (due to the oxygen + $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$ reaction) to disappear.
- 11 Then readjust the drop to the mark and read micrometer (M).
- 12 Open the compensating chamber to the air by turning the key of the tap (B 1) and after doing that transfer the tap to its socket (G).
- 13 Screw micrometer in until the top of the absorbing solution in the chamber coincides with the bottom mark in the capillary. Read micrometer again (M_1). It should be zero.
- 14 Turn the 3 way tap to connect the leveling bulb with the absorption chamber (position III with S 2) and eject the absorbing solution into a vacuum junction tip not allowing the absorbing solution to spill into the compensating chamber.
- 15 Rinse twice with the acid solution as described at the beginning of the procedure.
- 16 To recharge the side arms (E and F) with respective absorbents puncture the rubber stoppers through their central hole taking great care not to introduce any gas bubbles. The side arms should not be filled more than $\frac{1}{2}$ full with the absorbents.

Calculation

- 1 Carbon dioxide ml per 100 ml original sample dry =

$$\frac{M - M_1}{M_1} \times 100$$

- 2 Oxygen ml per 100 ml original sample dry =

$$\frac{M - M_2}{M_2} \times 100$$

- 3 Nitrogen ml per 100 ml original sample dry =

$$\frac{M_2}{M_1} \times 100$$

Example

M_1 was 9.888 M_2 was 9.55 M_3 was 8.000

M_1 and M_2 were 0.00 which showed a satisfactory analysis

Carbon dioxide ml/100 ml dry =

$$\frac{9.888 - 9.55}{9.888} \times 100 = 3.671$$

Oxygen ml/100 ml dry =

$$\frac{9.55 - 8.000}{9.888} \times 100 = 15.423$$

Nitrogen ml/100 ml dry =

$$\frac{8.000}{9.888} \times 100 = 80.906$$

Precautions

- 1 Apparatus** The micrometer must be all steel the plunger uniform from one end to the other as measured by another standard micrometer the screw without any play and the lap fit at the plunger bearing perfect as determined by visual inspection with the plunger screwed level. The glass portion of the glass-metal junction in the micrometer burette unit has to be ground perfectly flat in order to make a mercury tight junction.
- 2 Transfer Pipette** The tip of this is critical and must conform to the directions given. If the tip becomes plugged clear it with a fine wire or hold the rubber tip of the pipette against the nozzle of a 5 ml syringe and press air through the tip. Between samples the mercury drop and the drop of the acid rinsing solution are sucked out of the pipette by application of the suction tip to the rubber tip on the pipette.
- 3 Analysis** The most critical part of the analysis is correct delivery of the gas sample avoiding suction on the micrometer burette. A proper line up between the bore of the transfer pipette and the bore of the reaction chamber capillary is easily accomplished by means of the funnel ground capillary and conical rubber tip to match a most valuable improvement of the original model contributed by Mr. Warner Love of the Department of Zoology Swarthmore. The transfer pipette must be kept clean. The easiest way to avoid clogging is to make use of a long and relatively wide bore for the air resistance in the tip instead of a short and very fine one.
 - a.** The reason for not setting the micrometer at zero exactly at the beginning of the analysis is as follows. The rubber stoppers E and F are elastic and a trace of elasticity likewise derived from unavoidably trapped minute air bubbles. Hence gross changes in mercury levels between the reaction chamber and the side arms will slightly affect the total volume of the apparatus. When the mercury level is lowered from the mark on the capillary to half way down the reaction chamber during introduction of the gas sample there is consequently a minute decrease in the total liquid capacity of the apparatus. The magnitude of this shrinkage is easily determined by reading the gas meniscus at the mark with the mercury almost to the mark then letting in all absorbing fluids from both side arms drawing down the mercury from the capillary and readjusting the gas meniscus to the mark. The reading will then be close to 0.5 division higher than before. Setting the micrometer at minus 0.5 instead of zero corrects empirically for this minute elasticity error.
 - b.** If the concentration of absorbable gas in the sample is high larger than usual amounts of absorbent must be used. The CO absorbent will absorb 10 times its volume of CO without significantly altering vapor tension and the H₂ absorbent will absorb 5 to 6 times its own volume of O₂ before turning brown and giving poor results.

- Carefully avoid sucking the rinsing solution down through S₄. The rinsing solution will gradually remove the grease coating allowing the trapped traces of acid to move in the stopcock. This is usually first detected by the fact that the micrometer misses the zero after the end of the analysis. To check the tightness of S₂, fill B with the acid solution and adjust the gas meniscus to the mark. With S₂ in Position I hang the leveling bulb low on the ring or handle J. If S₂ leaks the meniscus will move slowly down. If the bulb is hung high the meniscus will rise. Unless the meniscus stays at the mark, dry and regrease S₂ and tie the leveling bulb to the ring with a piece of string so that it cannot be lowered below the glass joint.

SECTION VI

PHYSIOLOGICAL MEASUREMENTS (Continued)

D RESPIRATORY METABOLISM

1 Collection of Expired Air—The Tissot Gasometer

Reference

- Bock A. V. Dill D. B. and Talbott J. H. Studies in Muscular Activity I Determination of the Rate of Circulation of Blood in Man at Work J Physiol 61 121 18 (Oct) 19 3

Principle

The subject's nose is clamped and through a mouthpiece he passes all his expired air into a calibrated counterpoised metal cylinder which is seated by means of a water seal in a second cylinder and which is free to move with respiration. From the calibration constant and the time the pulmonary ventilation may be calculated.

Apparatus

- 1 Tissot gasometer of 100 or 250 liter capacity (see Fig. 43) of use during walking. The inner bell must be counterpoised accurately so as not to impede respiration. The gasometer should be calibrated against a standardized wet gasometer.
- 2 One mouthpiece-nose clip assembly. Depending on whether the subject is to exercise voluntarily or not the valves should be flutter valves or butterfly valves. For all exercise flutter valves are required. From the expiratory valve corrugated 1 to 2 inch gas mask tubing leads to the intake of the Tissot gasometer. One comfortable screw type nose clip is needed.
- 3 One barometer either mercury or aneroid sensitive to 0.5 mm Hg.
- 4 One watch with a second hand preferably a stopwatch.
- 5 Gas sampling tubes Barcroft design in racks of four filled with mercury.
- 6 A three way large bore aluminum stopcock inserted between the exit valve of the mouthpiece assembly and the gasometer. Two positions are required: (a) subject to gasometer (b) subject to outside.

Reagents

- 1 Alcohol 80% for sterilizing the mouthpiece after use.

Procedure

- 1 Check the gasometer for counterpoise and for water level which should be 1 inch below the rim of the outer cylinder. If more water is needed be sure that its temperature is close to room temperature. Check that the hanging scale is not scraping against the sides of the guides.
- 2 Before giving the mouthpiece to the subject wash it in 80% alcohol and dry it.
- 3 Check leakage of valves by blowing through them and check the tightness of fit by blowing backward through them. There should be no leakage.
- 4 Place the nose clip firmly on the subject's nose and have him test for leaks past the clip by trying to blow air through his nose.
- 5 Be sure that the three way tap connects subject to outside air.
- 6 Start the subject performing the task whose energy requirements are to be measured.
- 7 Turn three way tap to connect the subject with the Tissot gasometer.



Fig. 43—Use of Tissot gasometer for collecting specimens of expired air. (Reproduced by courtesy of Dr. H. S. Belding.)

- 8 Allow bell to fill about one third full with air and turn the tap to connect the subject with air
- 9 Remove rubber stopper from thermometer hole and by manual pressure expel all air from the gasometer
- 10 Repeat steps 7, 8 and 9 twice more. This insures that there will be no mixing error from dead space air already in the gasometer
- 11 Now read the gasometer scale (Reading 1) to the nearest mm
- 12 Start stopwatch and turn tap to connect subject with gasometer
- 13 At exactly 1 minute and every minute desired thereafter read the scale. This is a check on the consistency of the subject and apparatus
- 14 At a desired time usually 5 minutes for low rates of pulmonary ventilation the tap is turned to connect subject with outside air and the final scale reading is made (Reading 2)
- 15 Turn on mixing fan and read the temperature in the bell to the nearest 0.1 C
- 16 Read the barometer to the nearest 0.5 mm
- 17 Take specimens of the contents of the bell from the thermometer hole into Barger's gas sampling tubes making sure that
 - a The contents of the bell have been mixed and
 - b The Barger's gas sampling tube is flushed three times in the following order: contents of sampling tube to outside air; contents of bell into sampling tube; contents of sampling tube to outside air.

Calculation

Pulmonary Ventilation =

$$\frac{(\text{Reading 2} - \text{Reading 1})}{(\text{minutes})} \times \text{Tissot factor} \times \text{STP factor}$$

Where

Pulmonary ventilation is expressed in liters of gas expired per minute reduced to 0 C and 60 mm Hg. Readings 1 and 2 are the last and first readings expressed in cm to the nearest mm. Tissot factor is the liters of gas equivalent to a rise of 1 cm in the Tissot bell and STP factor is the factor for reducing any volume of wet gas at any temperature and pressure to 0 C and 60 mm Hg dry (see Fig. 45 in section on metabolic calculations).

Example

A subject was lying quietly

Reading 1 was 5.1 cm. Reading 2 was 60.5 cm. T was 4 C. barometer was 750 mm and the time was 5 minutes. The Tissot factor for this particular gasometer was 1.8 l/cm. (Note that every Tissot has its own calibration figure to be determined at purchase.)

Pulmonary ventilation l/min dry STP =

$$\frac{(60.5 - 5.1)}{5} \times 1.8 \times 0.89 = 12.1 \text{ l/min}$$

Precautions

- 1 The chief sources of error in this method are
 - a Leakage around nose clip or in valves
 - b Inaccurate reading of Tissot scale
 - c Dilution of contents of bell with outside air which will not vitiate calculation of pulmonary ventilation but which will destroy the validity of all metabolic calculations
 - d Inaccurate use of Barger's gas sampling tubes
- 2 If room air is significantly different in composition from outdoor air it may be necessary to pipe outdoor air into the intake valve of the subject's valve assembly. All metabolic calculations assume outdoor air composition of the inspired air.

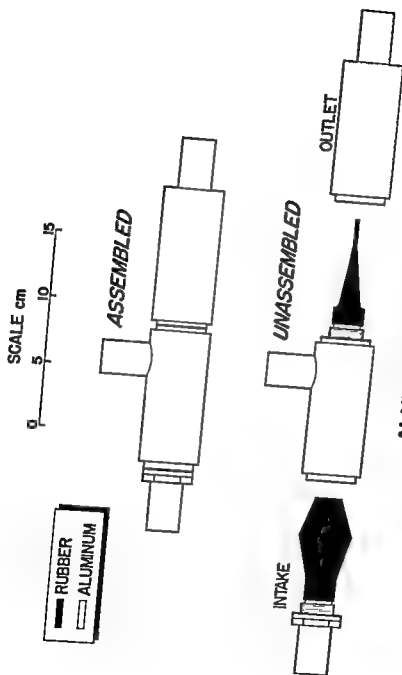


Fig 44 —Valve assembly for collection of expired air with rate of pulmonary ventilation at moderate

—C.E. GORDON

2 Collection of Expired Air—The Douglas Bag Technique

Reference

Haldane J S and Priestley J G Respiration Oxford 1935 Clarendon Press

Principle

The subject's nose is clamped and through a mouthpiece he passes all of his expired air into an air tight bag. Two one way valves allow him to breathe in only outside air and to expire only into the bag. The total pulmonary ventilation in a given time is measured by passing the contents of the bag through a gas meter and samples are taken for analysis.

Apparatus

- 1 One barometer either mercury or aneroid sensitive to 0.5 mm Hg
- 2 One watch with a second hand preferably a stopwatch
- 3 One mouthpiece assembly (Fig 44). This should be usable even when the subject is exercising violently. A rubber mouthpiece is mounted in the expiratory hole of a gas mask of which the goggles are removed and the nose is cut out. The inspiratory cannula is removed and the head straps left intact. The rubber mouthpiece is attached to a pair of aluminum 1 inch tubes containing rubber flutter valves one inspiratory the other expiratory which lie snugly along the outside of the face of the mask. From the expiratory valve a piece of corrugated 1 inch gas mask tubing leads to the head of the subject to the bag as assembly described below.
- 4 One comfortable nose clip screw type
- 5 One Douglas bag assembly. This consists of one 1.5 l Douglas bag (Daval Rubber Company Providence Rhode Island) and a light pack board for the subject to wear on his back. The bag consists of two layers of canvas with rubber sheeting cemented between and must be absolutely leak proof when the exit tube is clamped off. The upper corners of the bag can be hooked to the upper corners of the pack board. The exit tube of the bag should then reach the level of the subject's neck. A strong flat brass clamp should be placed on the exit tube of the bag which is then attached to a 1 inch way aluminum tap. One limb of the tap is attached to the bag and one to the gas mask tubing from the subject's expiratory valve. The third limb is to outside air. The third way tap should allow either of two circuits for the subject's expired air: (a) mouth—valve—gas mask tubing—way tap—and thence either (a) outside air or (b) into Douglas bag.
- 6 One dry gas meter of at least 0.5 cu. ft. per minute capacity (Tufts Meter Company Albany N.Y.). The meter should be mounted in the intake side of the gasmeter.
- 7 Rack of gas sampling tubes. Orthodox mercury filled tubes must be avoided in the field when temperatures are extreme. A satisfactory sampling tube consists of a 50 ml syringe oiled with heavy oil and fitted with a 1 inch length of pressure tubing over the nozzle. The tubing is clamped off with a screw clamp. The 3 way aluminum tap must have a side arm for taking gas samples. This is closed with a rubber nipple all the time except when samples are taken.

Reagents

- 1 Heavy oil for the sampling syringes
- 80% alcohol to sterilize the mouthpiece after use

Procedures

- 1 Check the Douglas bag for leaks the night before using it. This is done by hooking the bag to the outlet of the gas meter running in a measured volume of air clamping off the neck of the bag placing 10 lbs or more on the bag for an

332 *Physiological Measurements*

- hour and running the contents back through the gasmeter. The readings should be nearly the same. If there are leaks they can be patched temporarily with ordinary tire patching.
- 2 Before asking the subject to take the mouthpiece wash it with 80% alcohol and dry it.
 - 3 Place the nose clip firmly on the subject's nose. Have him test for leaks past the clip by trying to blow air through his nose. This step should never be omitted.
 - 4 Place the mouthpiece assembly on the subject's head. Fit the mouthpiece so that it is comfortable and tie the headstraps snugly.
 - 5 Empty the Douglas bag completely of air by laying it flat on the ground with the exit open, rolling it up snugly and clamping off the exit tube with the brass clamp.
 - 6 Hang the Douglas bag on the pack board, connect the exit tube to the 3 way tap and finally connect the corrugated tube from the mouthpiece to the 3 way tap.
 - 7 Be sure that the 3 way tap is adjusted so that the subject's expired air is going to the outside.
 - 8 Start the subject performing the task whose energy requirement is to be measured. Let him continue this long enough to 'warm up' before Step 9.
 - 9 Take off the brass clamp. Simultaneously start the watch at 0 and turn the 3 way tap so that all of the expired air goes into the bag.
 - 10 Allow the subject to breathe into the bag while continuing his task until the bag seems about $\frac{3}{4}$ full. During rest this takes 10 minutes; during light activity about 5 and during moderate activity about 3 minutes. Vigorous activity is difficult to control or measure. The bag may fill up in about a minute.
 - 11 Simultaneously note the time to the nearest second and turn the 3 way tap so that the subject is breathing to the outside. He may now stop work.
 - 12 Clamp off the neck of the bag, disconnect it along with the 3 way tap and remove it from the pack board to the neighborhood of the gas meter.
 - 13 Mix the bag's contents by laying it on the floor and kneading it a few times.
 - 14 Connect the 3 way tap with bag attached to one limb to the inlet of the gas meter.
 - 15 Unscrew the clamp from a sampling syringe and connect the pressure tubing to the sampling nipple on the 3 way tap.
 - 16 Take a reading on the dial of the gas meter.
 - 17 Open the 3 way tap so that the contents of the bag flow into the gas meter not to the outside air.
 - 18 Put steady pressure on the bag and when it is about $\frac{1}{4}$ empty take a sample by drawing the syringe full and empty 3 times while the gas is flowing steady through the 3 way tap. Finally fill the syringe, clamp off the rubber tube and after taking a duplicate sample close the sampling nipple of the 3 way tap.
 - 19 Express all of the bag's contents through the gas meter. Toward the end lay the bag flat on the ground and roll it up tightly from the bottom.
 - 20 Clamp off the neck of the bag and take the final reading on the gas meter.
 - 21 Read the temperature in the intake of the gas meter to the nearest $\frac{1}{2}$ C and read the barometer to the nearest $\frac{1}{2}$ mm Hg.

Calculations

$$\text{Pulmonary ventilation} = \frac{(V - V_1)}{(\text{time})} \times \text{STP factor}$$

Where Pulmonary ventilation is expressed in liters of gas expired per minute reduced to 0 C and 760 mm Hg dry.

V is the first reading of the gas meter in liters.

V_1 is the second reading of the gas meter in liters.

STP factor is the factor for reducing gas at any temperature and pressure wet to 0 C and 760 mm Hg dry as shown in Fig. 45.

If the gas meter reads cubic feet the conversion factor by which readings are multiplied to give liters is 28.3. Time is expressed in minutes and decimal fractions.

Example

V 91.5 V 185.3 Temp C Barometer 760 mm

Time of collection 4 minutes % seconds = 4 and %6/60 = 4.43 mins

$$\text{Pulmonary ventilation} = \frac{(185.3 - 91.5)}{(4.43)} (0.90) = 19.0 \text{ l per min STP}$$

Precautions

- 1 Test the bag for leaks every few days
Be sure to have the subject test for leaks through the nose or around the mouth piece
- 3 Timing must coincide with turning the taps.
- 4 Every time a tap is turned be sure that the gas flow will be in the direction desired
- 5 Do not forget to read the temperature and barometric pressure every time samples are measured
- 6 In vigorous activity when a significant oxygen debt is accumulated it is necessary to have the subject exercise for a minute or so then stop and collect expired air while he is resting after work for about 5 minutes. If this is not done the estimate of calor expenditure during work will be erroneously low

3 Respiratory Metabolic Calculations**Reference**

Haldane J S and Priestley J G. Respiration Oxford 1935 Clarendon Press

Principle

From the pulmonary ventilation and the carbon dioxide oxygen and nitrogen content of the expired air compared with the inspired air the consumption of oxygen and production of carbon dioxide are calculated. From these data energy expenditure may be computed.

Pulmonary Ventilation

This is expressed as litres of air expired per minute the volume of gas being reduced to the standard temperature and pressure 0°C and 760 mm Hg dry. The formula is

$$\frac{B - W}{0.0 (1 + 0.00367 t)}$$

Where B is ambient barometric pressure W is the vapor tension of water mm Hg at the temperature of the gasometer and t is the temperature of the gasometer in °C. To save computation one uses the line chart which was devised by Dr R C Darling (Fig 43)

Respiratory Quotient (R.Q.)

This is the ratio of CO₂ expired divided by O₂ consumed i.e.

$$\frac{\text{CO}_2 \text{ production}}{\text{O}_2 \text{ consumption}} \text{ and is used in the calculations which follow}$$

True Oxygen, True Carbon Dioxide and R.Q.

True Oxygen represents the number of ml of oxygen consumed for every 100 ml of air expired. It is based on several considerations as follows. One desires to know how much oxygen is removed from the air breathed in but the only measurements made are the volume of air expired and its oxygen carbon dioxide and nitrogen contents. The volume of inspired air is usually not the same as that of expired air. This is because the R.Q. has to be exactly 1.00 for inspired to equal expired air. If the R.Q. is less than one as is usually the case in rest or moderate

LINE CHART FOR DETERMINING FACTORS TO REDUCE SATURATED GAS VOLUMES TO DRY VOLUMES AT 0°C AND 760 MM HG

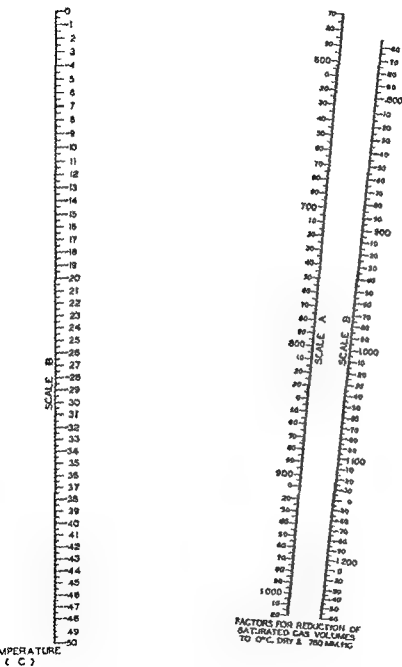


Fig. 45—Line chart for converting wet gas volumes to STP and dry as drawn by Dr. H. C. Darling

exercise then the oxygen removed from inspired air is only partly replaced by carbon dioxide and if one l has been inspired less than one l will be expired. The nitrogen concentration in this case will be higher in expired than in inspired air. One knows the nitrogen concentration in outdoor air to be 79.04% and the concentration in expired air is determined by Haldane analysis. The volume of inspired air may be calculated from the expired air by the formula

$$\text{Vol inspired} = \text{Vol expired} \times \frac{\%N \text{ in expired air}}{79.04} \quad (\text{Equation 1})$$

The total volume of oxygen breathed in (not all consumed) is then

$$\text{Vol O inspired} = \text{Vol air inspired} \times \frac{\%O \text{ of inspired air}}{100} \quad (\text{Equation 2})$$

The percentage of oxygen in practically all outdoor air is 0.21. Hence

$$\text{Vol O inspired} = \text{Vol air inspired} \times \frac{0.21}{100} \quad (\text{Equation 3})$$

The volume of oxygen expired (amount not consumed) is

$$\text{Vol O expired} = \frac{\%O \text{ in expired air}}{100} \times \text{vol air expired} \quad (\text{Equation 4})$$

The amount of oxygen consumed is

$$O \text{ consumed} = \text{Vol O inspired} - \text{Vol O expired} \quad (\text{Equation 5})$$

Substituting values from equations (3) and (4)

$$O \text{ consumed} = \text{Vol air inspired} \times \frac{0.21}{100} - \text{Vol air expired} \times \frac{\%O \text{ in expired air}}{100}$$

Substituting values from equation (1)

$$O \text{ consumed} = \text{Vol air expired} \times \frac{\%N \text{ in expired air}}{79.04} \times \frac{0.21}{100} - \text{Vol air expired} \times \frac{\%O \text{ in expired air}}{100}$$

Simplifying

$$\text{Vol O consumed} = \frac{\text{Vol air expired}}{100} (\%N \text{ in expired air} \times 0.0021 - \%O \text{ in expired air}) \quad (\text{Equation 6})$$

The factor $(\%N \text{ in expired air} \times 0.0021 - \%O \text{ in expired air})$ is the True Oxygen the number by which the volume of expired air (divided by 100) is multiplied to give the oxygen consumption.

By steps similar to the derivation of oxygen consumption the carbon dioxide expired becomes

$$\text{Vol CO expired} = \frac{\text{Vol air expired}}{100} (\%CO \text{ in expired air} - \frac{\%N \text{ in expired air}}{79.04} \times \%CO \text{ in inspired air})$$

In the case of ordinary outdoor air this becomes

$$\text{Vol CO expired} = \frac{\text{Vol air expired}}{100} (\%CO \text{ in expired air} - 0.03) \quad (\text{Equation 7})$$

The factor $(\%CO \text{ in expired air} - 0.03)$ is the True Carbon Dioxide the number by which the volume of expired air (divided by 100) is multiplied to give the carbon dioxide production.

The respiratory quotient RQ is obtained by dividing equation (7) by equation (6) and is

$$RQ = \frac{(\%CO \text{ in expired air} - 0.03)}{(\%N \text{ in expired air} \times 0.0021 - \%O \text{ in expired air})} \quad (\text{Equation 8})$$

To facilitate the computation of True O and RQ a line chart has been constructed. A string stretched between the %O₂ and %CO₂ in expired air passes across lines giving RQ and True O' directly. (See Fig 55 at end of this book)

Oxygen Consumption and CO Production

The oxygen consumption in liters per minute is

$$O_2 \text{ l/min} = \frac{\text{Pulmonary ventilation l/min}}{100} \times \text{True O} \quad (\text{Equation 9})$$

The carbon dioxide production in liters per minute is

$$CO_2 \text{ l/min} = \frac{\text{Pulmonary ventilation l/min}}{100} \times \text{True CO} \quad (\text{Equation 10})$$

Energy Expenditure

It is conventional to express the metabolic cost of a given task in terms of Calories per hour. The Calorie is the amount of heat necessary to raise the temperature of 1 kilogram of water 1 C and is the basic unit of all nutritional energy calculations. To compute the cost of a given task the formula is used

$$\text{Cals/Hr} = (O_2 \text{ consumption l/min}) \times 60 \times 5.0 = O_2 \text{ l/min} \times 300$$

The factor 5.0 is an average figure representing the Caloric equivalent of 1 liter of oxygen consumed during moderate activity.

Since most of the common forms of work require an energy expenditure which is directly proportional to the body weight, most tables of metabolic costs of activity are expressed on the basis of a standard man weighing 150 lbs or 70 kg. To compensate for variations in weight, energy expenditure in work may be expressed in terms of Cals/hour and kg body weight or converted to a standard body weight as follows:

$$\text{Cals/Hr (standard man)} = O_2 \text{ l/min} \times 300 \times \frac{150}{\text{body weight lbs}}$$

For some special purposes energy expenditure is computed on the basis of body area, not body weight. This will be discussed in the section on basal metabolism.

Example of Metabolic Calculations for a Walking Man

Company marched 3.5 miles in 50 mins on the level

Weight of subject stripped 145 lbs

Weight of clothes helmet pack rifle canteen 29 lbs

Weight of metabolic apparatus 13 lbs

A. Douglas Bag Calculations

Collection started 7 hr 30.0 ended 7 hr 34.0 = 4.00 mins

Gas meter readings—Start 448.0 L. End 669.1 = 221.1

Temperature 21.9 C Barometer 757 mm

STP factor (from Fig 45) = 0.880

$$\text{Pulmonary ventilation l/min STP dry} = \frac{(221.1)}{(4.00)} \times 0.880 = 7.0$$

B. Haldane Analysis

$$\%CO_2 = 3.81 \quad \%O_2 = 16.80$$

C. Calculation of O₂ consumption

From line chart for True O₂ (See Fig 56 in back)

$$RQ = 0.89 \quad \text{True O}_2 = 4.23$$

$$O_2 \text{ consumption l/min} = \frac{\text{Pulmonary Vent}}{100} \times \text{True O}_2 = \frac{270}{100} \times 4.23 = 1.14$$

$$CO_2 \text{ production l/min} = \frac{\text{Pulmonary Vent}}{100} \times \text{True CO}_2 = \frac{270}{100} \times (3.81 - 0.03) = 1.0$$

E Calculation of energy expenditure

$$\text{Cals/min} = 0.17 \text{ l/min.} \times 5$$

$$= 1.14 \times 5 = 5.7$$

$$\text{Cals/50 min} = 5.7 \times 50 = 285$$

Cals for 10 min rest assumed to be 0

Energy expended in one hour that consists of 3 miles marching in 50 minutes and 10 minutes rest $= 285 + 0 = 305$ Cals

Protein Metabolism During Work

The above calculations and examples neglect two factors which are not important in field measurements but are theoretically important. Some of the Calories are derived from protein and one liter of oxygen consumed represents different amounts of heat depending on the ratio of fat, carbohydrate and protein being consumed by the body at the time of measurement. Nitrogen metabolism is determined from the urinary nitrogen excretion and the non-protein RQ is determined from the over-all RQ (obtained as described above) and the protein metabolism. For details of this type of calculation see Peters and Van Slyke, *Quantitative Clinical Chemistry*, pp. 65-115 Vol. II Baltimore 1933 Williams and Wilkins.

4 Basal Metabolic Rate**Reference**

Du Bois E. F. *Basal Metabolism in Health and Disease*, ed. 3 Philadelphia 1937
Lea and Febiger

Principle

The basal metabolic rate (BMR) is the energy expenditure of a subject resting quietly after at least 8 hours sleep and at least 12 hours after the last meal. When expressed on the basis of Calorie production per square meter of body area, it is remarkably constant for healthy people of the same age and sex.

Apparatus and Reagents

Same as under measurement of expired air. In addition, an oral clinical thermometer, a clinical weighing scale and a measuring stick are needed.

Procedure

- 1 For an accurate test the subject must have had at least 8 hours sleep and no food for at least 12 hours. This also includes alcoholic beverages, coffee, tea and tobacco. He lies down comfortably for at least 1/2 hour in a quiet place before the test.
- 2 Metabolism is determined while he is still resting as described in the section on expired air. Count the respirations for 1 minute during the process. If he is too excited the test will be invalid.
- 3 Before he gets up and immediately after the mask and mouthpiece are removed, measure and record the pulse and oral temperature. This is necessary to insure that one is not dealing with an infection. Fever invalidates the test.
- 4 Measure the subject's height in stocking feet and weight with a minimum of clothing.
- 5 Record his age to the nearest year.

Calculation

- 1 Calculate oxygen consumption and RQ as described previously. If the RQ is outside the range 0.80-0.90 the test is invalid. From his height and weight determine the subject's surface area from the line chart (Fig. 46). This nomogram was computed from the DuBois-Meeh formula for surface area.

SURFACE AREA FROM HEIGHT AND WEIGHT

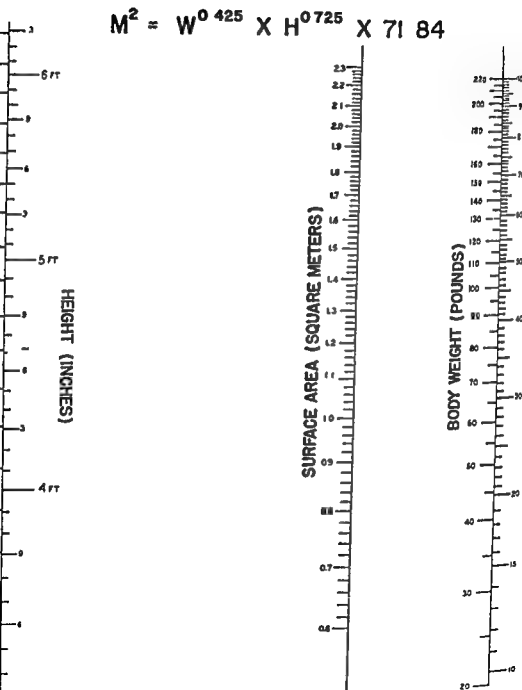
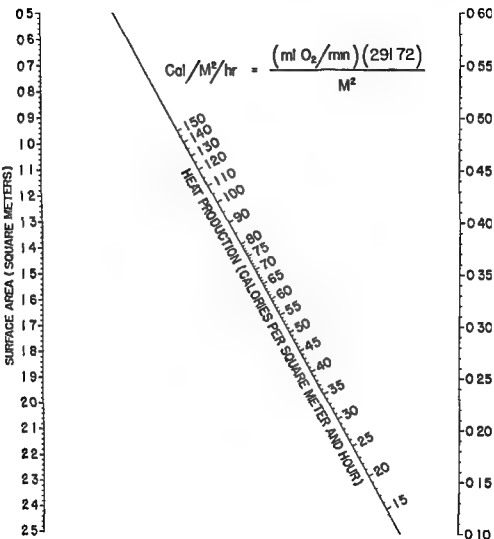


Fig 46 —Nomogram constructed from the Du Bois Meek formula for surface area.

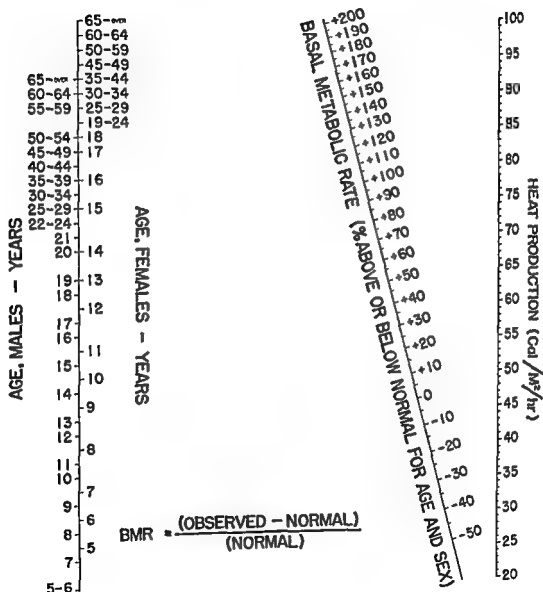
HEAT PRODUCTION (Cal/M²/hr) FROM SURFACE AREA AND OXYGEN CONSUMPTION (R Q 0.85)



C. E. GORDON—

Fig. 47—Nomogram for computing heat production

BASAL METABOLIC RATE FROM HEAT PRODUCTION, AGE AND SEX



BY C.E. GORDON -

Fig. 11 — Nomogram for computing BMR from heat production, age, and sex. The Boothby Sandiford standards were employed.

- 3 From oxygen consumption and surface area compute heat production (Cals per square meter per hour) The line chart in Fig 47 was drawn to facilitate this computation.
- 4 Complete the subject's basal metabolic rate (i.e. ° above or below normal) by the formula

$$\text{BMR} = 100 \times \frac{(\text{Observed Cals/m}^2/\text{hr} - \text{Average normal})}{\text{Average normal}}$$

(Where average normal refers to the Boothby Sandiford values)

- 5 The BMR line chart in Fig 48 facilitates the above calculation. It was computed from the Boothby Sandiford normal values

Example

Subject R D Sex Male
 Age 20 years
 Ht 5 ft 7½ inches
 Wt 150 lbs
 Pulse rate 69
 Temp 98.4 F
 Pulmonary Ventilation l/min at STP 823
 Expired air %CO 35, %O 17.08
 RQ 0.89 True O 3.95
 Oxygen Consumption l/min 03.5
 Surface Area 1.11 sqm. (Fig 46)
 Heat production 445 Cals/m²/hr (Fig 47)
 BMR +12 (Fig 48)

Precautions

- 1 The commonest source of error are
 - a The subject is not truly basal
 - b The subject is not comfortable and at ease
- 2 The above calculations and examples neglect the two factors protein metabolism and the varying heat equivalent of one liter of oxygen depending upon the ratio of protein fat and carbohydrate being consumed by the body. These factors are not important for field use but are theoretically important. The matter is discussed at the end of Metabolic Calculations.
- 3 If the pulse rate is above 80 or the respirations above 25 the subject is either not basal or else has some pathological condition. If the temperature is elevated he is either not basal or else has some disease. (Exercise of moderate severity elevates the body temperature.)

5 Metabolism During Work—The Treadmill

Reference

Robinson ■ Experimental Studies of Physical Fitness in Relation to Age. *Arbeitsphysiologie* 10: 51-3 (No 3) 1938

Principle

The motor driven treadmill is the best apparatus yet devised for general studies of the response of man to exercise. A typical protocol is described for studying respiratory and cardiovascular responses during moderate exercise (walking) and exhausting exercise (running).

Apparatus

- 1 The treadmill (see photograph Fig 49) The treadmill has a motor driven and less leather belt that can be operated at any speed up to 20 miles per hour. The front end can be raised up to make a grade of 20°. It is possible to make the

work so easy that an ordinary individual can walk for hours and so severe that the best runners can be exhausted in a very short time (seconds) (Purchased at A R Young Co, Indianapolis Indiana)

- 2 The stationary sides of the treadmill carry a superstructure on which are suspended the rubber hose connection (1 inch inside diameter), and a two way foot valve system. The hose connection brings fresh air from the outside to the valve and empties the expired air into the gasometer
- 3 The gasometer is a 500 liter copper bell type that is immersed in water. Each side of the bell is weighed down so that it balances perfectly when all the outlets are open. The measuring scale is in centimeters. Installed at the top of the bell is an electric stirrer for mixing the gas before sampling. At the inlet of the gasometer is a baffle mixer of 10 liter capacity from which samples of gas may be drawn while the subject is working, without interfering with the total collection in the gasometer

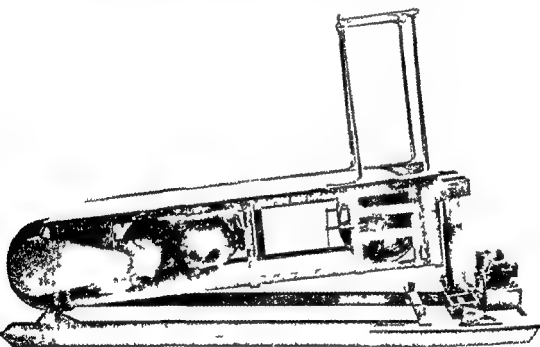


Fig 49—Electrically driven treadmill manufactured by A. R. Young Indianapolis Indiana. (Photograph by courtesy of A R Young Company Indianapolis Ind.)

- 4 An accurate sweep second clock and a stopwatch
- 5 Spare Douglas bags that have a capacity of 700 liters
- 6 Rack of gas sampling tubes (Barcroft type) with an approximate capacity of 30 ml each
- 7 A cardiometer for recording pulse rates with electrodes and electrode paste. The electrodes are able to pick up electrical currents that are generated at each contraction of the heart. The current is then amplified to operate a relay and a pen on a moving tape thus yielding a record of the heart rate as work is going on. The three electrodes are fastened on two lengths of elastic tape. The first electrode is placed just to the left of the sternum at the level of the second rib

The second electrode is placed over the apex of the heart and the third or ground which is on the same elastic tape as the second is on the right side

- 8 Micro pipettes for lactic acid and blood sugar of 0.5 ml and 0.1 ml capacity
- 9 Watch glasses for collecting the blood during exercise
- 10 A lancet for pricking finger to get blood.
- 11 Centrifuge tubes 15 ml and 50 ml round bottom with rubber stoppers
- 12 Barometer
- 13 A Haldane gas analysis apparatus

Reagents

- 1 Clean mercury for gas sampling tubes
Heparin solution (1 drop dried on a watch glass)
- 2 Dilute acid tungstate for blood sugar 20 ml of 10% sodium tungstate solution
0 ml of 2% N sulfuric acid (H₂SO₄) Dilute to 1000 ml with water
- 3 Distilled water for lactic acid tubes

Procedure—Moderate Exercise

- 1 The subject dressed in gymnasium clothes is connected to the cardiograph with the three electrodes fastened around his chest
- 2 The subject sits quietly at the side of the treadmill while his resting pulse is recorded and his blood pressure is determined
Subject straddles the treadmill while the treadmill is started (3.5 m.p.h. on 8.6% grade)
- 3 Subject starts walking on signal from experimenter. Notation on heart rate tape is made
- 4 After approximately five minutes walking the subject applies mouthpiece and nose clip and the valve is turned so that expired air enters the gasometer
- 5 In the course of the next four minutes the gasometer is washed out with three portions of expired air and finally a gasometer reading is taken after expulsion of the last wash portion
- 6 At the ninth minute of the walk collection of expired air is started and continued for five minutes the gasometer readings being noted every minute
- 7 At approximately ten minutes of the walk finger blood is taken for sugar and lactate
- 8 After a total of 15 minutes walk the subject steps off the treadmill sits down and rests for ten minutes during which time the following procedures are carried out:
 - a Duplicate gas samples taken from gasometer and temperature noted. Change gas circuit to mixing chamber
 - b Subject's pulse rate and blood pressure recorded at frequent intervals

Procedure—Exhausting Exercise

- 1 The usual grade for exhausting work is the same as for the walk (8.6%) but with the speed of the treadmill increased to 7.0 m.p.h. Ordinarily the subject is not required to run longer than five minutes. To obtain exhaustion with a five minutes in well trained subjects the grade may need to be increased. If the grade is to be changed it is changed during the half minute before the run starts but not until the expired air and blood have been sampled as above
- 2 In the gasometer readings taken again
- 3 Subject prepares for run straddles treadmill holding the sides and is instructed to signal with his hand if he desires to stop before five minutes
- 4 The treadmill is started at 7.0 m.p.h. and on signal the following procedures occur simultaneously:
 - a The subject starts running
 - b Valve is turned into gasometer
 - c Cardiograph is marked

- 5 Gasometer readings are taken every half minute during run
- 6 Expired air samples are taken over an entire minute for the second, third fourth and fifth minutes (the first minute is not of sufficient value), or for as long as the subject runs. Samples of less than 20 seconds are of doubtful value

Procedure—Recovery After Exhausting Exercise

- 1 When subject stops running by jumping to a straddling position (keeping the mouthpiece in and the nose clip on) the following must be done precisely at the time he stops running
 - a Valve at treadmill superstructure is turned to collect expired air in Douglas bags for three minutes
 - b Cardioteachometer tape is marked
 - c Time is noted
 - d Treadmill is stopped. Subject sits on tall stool in place on treadmill still breathing through mouthpiece
 - 2 As soon as possible the following additional steps should be taken
 - a Final gasometer reading is taken
 - b Temperature of expired air in gasometer is noted
 - c Gasometer is emptied. Connection removed from mixing chamber and placed on direct connection to gasometer. Valve turned for collection and reading noted
 - 3 Blood pressure is taken as soon as possible preferably during the first minute after subject stops running
 - 4 At the end of three minutes valve at treadmill superstructure is turned to gasometer
 - 5 Gasometer readings are taken every minute during the remainder of the 15 minutes
 - 6 Finger blood samples for blood sugar and lactate are taken at 5, 10 and 15 minutes during recovery
 - 7 Cardioteachometer is left running at least for the first five minutes of recovery and may be turned off then and used only to take heart rate during 10th and 15th minutes of recovery
 - 8 At 15 minutes gasometer valve is closed temperature is recorded and final reading is noted
 - 9 Two expired air samples are taken from gasometer (3, 15 minutes of recovery)
 - 10 After gasometer is emptied valves are turned connecting Douglas bag to gasometer and initial reading is noted. Two samples of contents of bag are drawn from small side tube on bag as gas is forced to large gasometer for measurement of volume. Bag is finally rolled to expel all air, connection clamped and gasometer volume and temperature are noted. (Three minutes of recovery)
 - 11 Barometric pressure is recorded
- (The work experiment as carried out above required at least three and preferably four men to guarantee smooth operation.)

Calculations and Data Obtained from Work Experiments

- 1 Blood pressure at rest (sitting) and immediately following exhausting run
- 2 Continuous heart rate record counted to obtain following
 - a Rest (sitting)
 - b Maximum during walk (sixth minute)
 - c Maximum during run (usually last minute)
 - d First five minutes of recovery. May be counted by six second intervals for first minute of recovery and longer intervals up to five minutes
 - e At 10 minutes during recovery
 - f At 15 minutes during recovery

3 Blood sugar and blood lactate in mg per 100 ml.

a. During walk

b. At 5, 10 and 15 minutes during recovery

4 Metabolism during walk, run and recovery are calculated as described in previous sections

5 Oxygen debt. This measurement is the difference in oxygen consumption for fifteen minutes following the run and the basal requirement for that period. To be complete the period should be 60 minutes

Example of a Protocol of a Typical Experiment

SUBJECT B G ade 86 ^{cc}	DATE 8/3/49	BAR. PRESSURE /61 mm Hg GASOMETER TEMP 34 C			TISSOT FACTOR 5 × CO ₂ STP FACTOR 0.898 COMBINED FACTOR 4.68			
		DIFF CM	PULMONARY CAPILL 1 MIN	CO CC	O CC	RQ	TRLE O CC	O ₂ L/20 L/MIN
WALK 3.5 mph	SPIROMETER READINGS CM							
4 mins	46							
5	181	85	39	459	16.8	0.97	4.0	18
6	10	9	16.9	4.1	15.9	0.91	5.1	191
Run 7.0 mph								
0 mins	45							
1	169							
1½	56							
	310	1.1	80.0	4.0	16.48	1.06	4.40	25
2½	440							
3	534	19.4	90.8	4.9	16.64	1.14	4.16	378
3½	631							
4	31	10	9	4.89	16.6	1.17	4.17	384
4½	830							
5	8.5	19.4	90.8	4.97	16.61	1.19	4.17	379
Recovery								
Bag								
0 min	4							
8	44.5	39.4	6.0	4.01	18.09	1.56	9.00	158
Gasometer								
3 mins	48							
5	165							
7	247							
9	3.5							
11	388							
13	458							
15	516	46.8	19.3	3.53	1.9	1.06	3.30	0.60
Pulse O ₂ consumption = 0.80								

Net O₂ debt in 15 minutes

$$8 \times (1.58 - 0.80) + 1 \times (0.60 - 0.80) = 7.48 \text{ liters}$$

Precautions

- 1 The whole method depends on good sampling so be very careful. Rinse out at least 3 times before drawing the final sample. Accurate timing is almost as important as accurate sampling.
- 2 It will be noted that the two values for the walk should and do check quite closely and similarly for the last three minutes of the run. Generally a man must run at least two minutes at the same grade of work before the maximum is obtained.
- 3 We have found that the oxygen debt for 15 minutes is only roughly proportional to the total oxygen debt. For precise measurement the period should be 60 minutes or until the O₂ consumption approaches the basal level.

- 5 Gasometer readings are taken every half minute during run
- 6 Expired air samples are taken over an entire minute for the second third fourth and fifth minutes (the first minute is not of sufficient value), or for as long as the subject runs. Samples of less than 20 seconds are of doubtful value

Procedure—Recovery After Exhausting Exercise

- 1 When subject stops running by jumping to a straddling position (keeping the mouthpiece in and the nose clip on) the following must be done precisely at the time he stops running
 - a Valve at treadmill superstructure is turned to collect expired air in Douglas bags for three minutes
 - b Cardi tachometer tape is marked.
 - c Time is noted.
 - d Treadmill is stopped. Subject sits on tall stool in place on treadmill still breathing through mouthpiece
- 2 As soon as possible the following additional steps should be taken
 - a. Final gasometer reading is taken.
 - b Temperature of expired air in gasometer is noted
 - c Gasometer is emptied. Connection removed from mixing chamber and placed on direct connection to gasometer Valve turned for collection, and reading noted
- 3 Blood pressure is taken as soon as possible preferably during the first minute after subject stops running
- 4 At the end of three minutes, valve at treadmill superstructure is turned to gasometer
- 5 Gasometer readings are taken every minute during the remainder of the 15 minutes.
- 6 Finger blood samples for blood sugar and lactate are taken at 5 10 and 15 minutes during recovery
- 7 Cardi tachometer is left running at least for the first five minutes of recovery and may be turned off then and used only to take heart rate during 10th and 15th minutes of recovery
- 8 At 15 minutes gasometer valve is closed temperature is recorded and final reading is noted.
- 9 Two expired air samples are taken from gasometer (3 15 minutes of recovery)
- 10 After gasometer is emptied valves are turned connecting Douglas bag to gasometer and initial reading is noted. Two samples of contents of bag are drawn from small side tube on bag as gas is forced to large gasometer for measurement of volume Bag is finally rolled to expel all air connection clamped and gasometer volume and temperature are noted. (Three minutes of recovery)
- 11 Barometric pressure is recorded.
(The work experiment as carried out above required at least three and preferably four men to guarantee smooth operation.)

Calculations and Data Obtained from Work Experiments

- 1 Blood pressure at rest (sitting) and immediately following exhausting run.
- 2 Continuous heart rate record counted to obtain following
 - a. Rest (sitting)
 - b Maximum during walk (sixth minute)
 - c Maximum during run (usually last minute)
 - d. First five minutes of recovery May be counted by six second intervals for first minute of recovery and longer intervals up to five minutes
 - e At 10 minutes during recovery
 - f At 15 minutes during recovery

3 Blood sugar and blood lactate in mg per 100 ml

a During walk.

b At 5, 10 and 15 minutes during recovery

4 Metabolism during walk, run and recovery are calculated as described in previous sections

■ Oxygen debt. This measurement is the difference in oxygen consumption for fifteen minutes following the run and the basal requirement for that period. To be complete the period should be 60 minutes.

Example of a Protocol of a Typical Experiment

SUBJECT Grade 860	DATE 8-3-49	RAPID FLOW RESPIROMETER TEMP 34°C			THERMISTOR FACTOR × CORRECTION FACTOR 0.896 LOAD FACTOR 1.05			
		DIFF CO ₂	PLUMMER VOLUME L MIN	CO %	O	RQ	TRLE O %	O ₂ L/100 1/100
WALK 3.5 mph	SP. P. METER READINGS cm							
4 min	40							
5	13.1	8.0	3.0	4.59	16.6	0.97	4.0	1.87
6	10	9	3.9	4.1	15.87	0.91	5.17	1.91
Run 7.0 mph								
0 min	4.0							
1	16.9							
1½	25.6							
	34.0	17.1	80.0	4.0	16.49	1.06	4.40	3.5
2½	44.0							
3	5.4	19.4	83.8	4.9	16.63	1.14	4.10	3.78
3½	63.1							
4	3.1	19	9	4.89	16.6	1.17	4.17	3.84
4½	87.0							
5	8.5	19.4	90.8	4.9	16.61	1.10	4.17	3.9
Recovery								
0 min	4.7							
3	44.5	30.8	8.0	4.04	18.09	1.0	5.0	1.58
Respirometer								
3 min	4.8							
	16.5							
7	24.7							
9	5							
11	39.8							
12	45.9							
1	51.6	46.8	19.3	3.3	1.9	1.08	7.10	0.60
Total O ₂ consumption								0.30

Net O₂ debt in 15 minutes

$$3 \times (1.6 - 0.30) + 12 (0.60 - 0.30) = 4.8 \text{ l.}$$

Precautions

- 1 The whole method depends on good sampling so be very careful. Pre-heat at least 3 times before drawing the final sample. Accurate timing is almost as important as accurate sampling.
- 2 It will be noted that the two values for the walk should and do check quite closely and similarly for the last three minutes of the run. Generally a man must run at least two minutes at the same grade of work before the maximum is obtained.
- 3 We have found that the oxygen debt for 15 minutes is only roughly proportional to the total oxygen debt. For precise measurement the period should be 60 minutes or until the O₂ consumption approaches the basal level.

- Gasometer readings are taken every half minute during run
- 6 Expired air samples are taken over an entire minute for the second, third, fourth and fifth minutes (the first minute is not of sufficient value) or for as long as the subject runs. Samples of less than 20 seconds are of doubtful value.

Procedure—Recovery After Exhausting Exercise

- 1 When subject stops running by jumping to a straddling position (keeping the mouthpiece in and the nose clip on) the following must be done precisely at the time he stops running.
 - a Valve at treadmill superstructure is turned to collect expired air in Douglas bags for three minutes
 - b Cardiotachometer tape is marked
 - c Time is noted
 - d Treadmill is stopped. Subject sits on tall stool in place on treadmill still breathing through mouthpiece
 - 2 As soon as possible the following additional steps should be taken.
 - a Final gasometer reading is taken
 - b Temperature of expired air in gasometer is noted
 - c Gasometer is emptied. Connection removed from mixing chamber and placed on direct connection to gasometer. Valve turned for collection and reading noted
 - 3 Blood pressure is taken as soon as possible preferably during the first minute after subject stops running
 - 4 At the end of three minutes valve at treadmill superstructure is turned to gasometer
 - 5 Gasometer readings are taken every minute during the remainder of the 15 minutes
 - 6 Finger blood samples for blood sugar and lactate are taken at 5, 10 and 15 minutes during recovery
 - 7 Cardiotachometer is left running at least for the first five minutes of recovery and may be turned off then and used only to take heart rate during 10th and 15th minutes of recovery
 - 8 At 15 minutes gasometer valve is closed temperature is recorded and final reading is noted
 - 9 Two expired air samples are taken from gasometer (3, 15 minutes of recovery)
 - 10 After gasometer is emptied valves are turned connecting Douglas bag to gasometer and initial reading is noted. Two samples of contents of bag are drawn from small side tube on bag as gas is forced to large gasometer for measurement of volume. Bag is finally rolled to expel all air connection clamped and gasometer volume and temperature are noted. (Three minutes of recovery)
 - 11 Barometric pressure is recorded
- (The work experiment as carried out above required at least three and preferably four men to guarantee smooth operation.)

Calculations and Data Obtained from Work Experiments

1. Blood pressure at rest (sitting) and immediately following exhausting run
2. Continuous heart rate record counted to obtain following.
 - a. Rest (sitting)
 - b. Maximum during walk (sixth minute)
 - c. Maximum during run (usually last minute)
 - d. First five minutes of recovery. May be counted by six second intervals for first minute of recovery and longer intervals up to five minutes
 - e. At 10 minutes during recovery
 - f. At 15 minutes during recovery

- 3 Blood sugar and blood lactate in mg per 100 ml.
 - a. During walk
 - b. At 5, 10 and 15 minutes during recovery
- 4 Metabolism during walk, run and recovery are calculated as described in previous sections
- 5 Oxygen debt. This measurement is the difference in oxygen consumption for fifteen minutes following the run and the basal requirement for that period. To be complete the period should be 60 minutes

Example of a Protocol of a Typical Experiment

SUBJECT B Grade 86 ^{er}	DATE 8/3/42	BAR. PRESSURE 610 mm Hg GASOMETER TEMP 34°C			TISSOT FACTOR 5 ⁷ × CM STP FACTOR 0.926 COMBINED FACTOR 4.63			
		1st F CM	1st L ¹ VENTIL L/MIN	AVG CO %	O ₂ √	RQ	TEMP °C	O USED L/MIN
WALK 3.5 m.p.h.	SPINOMETER READINGS ml							
4 mins	46							
5	131	85	91	4.0	16.6	0.91	4.0	1.97
10	210	9	36.9	4.1	15.97	0.91	5.1	1.91
Run 7.0 m.p.h.								
0 min.	45							
1	16.9							
1½	56							
2	34.0	1.1	80.0	4.0	16.43	1.06	4.40	3.4
2½	41.0							
3	3.6	19.4	90.6	4.9	16.6	1.14	4.16	3.78
3½	63.1							
4	73.1	19	9	4.80	16.6	1.17	4.1	3.84
4½	83.0							
5	8.5	19.4	90.8	4.97	16.61	1.19	4.1	3.9
Recovery								
Bag								
0 min	47							
3	44.5	19.8	9.0	4.01	18.09	1.2	3.5	1.3
Gasometric								
3 mins	4.8							
7	16.5							
7	47							
9	4.5							
11	39.8							
1	4.8							
15	51.6	46.8	19.1	3.33	1.59	1.06	3.0	0.60
								Basal O ₂ consumption = 0.30

Net O₂ debt in 15 minutes

$$3 \times (1.58 - 0.9) + 1^2 \times (0.60 - 0.30) = 7.45 \text{ liters}$$

Precautions

- 1 The whole method depends on good sampling so be very careful. Mix & cut at least 3 times before drawing the final sample.
- 2 Accurate timing is almost as important as accurate sampling.
- 3 It will be noted that the two values for the walk should and do check quite closely and similarly for the last three minutes of the run. Generally a man must run at least two minutes at this grade of work before the maximum is obtained.
- 4 We have found that the oxygen debt for 15 minutes is only roughly proportional to the total oxygen debt. For precise measurement the period should be 60 minutes or until the O₂ consumption approaches the basal level.

5 Gasometer readings are taken every half minute during run

■ Expired air samples are taken over an entire minute for the second, third fourth and fifth minutes (the first minute is not of sufficient value) or for as long as the subject runs. Samples of less than 20 seconds are of doubtful value

Procedure—Recovery After Exhausting Exercise

1 When subject stops running by jumping to a straddling position (keeping the mouthpiece in and the nose clip on), the following must be done precisely at the time he stops running

a Valve at treadmill superstructure is turned to collect expired air in Douglas bags for three minutes

b Cardiometer tape is marked

c Time is noted

d Treadmill is stopped. Subject sits on tall stool in place on treadmill still breathing through mouthpiece

2 As soon as possible the following additional steps should be taken

a Final gasometer reading is taken

b Temperature of expired air in gasometer is noted

c Gasometer is emptied. Connection removed from mixing chamber and placed on direct connection to gasometer. Valve turned for collection, and reading noted

3 Blood pressure is taken as soon as possible preferably during the first minute after subject stops running

4 At the end of three minutes valve at treadmill superstructure is turned to gasometer

5 Gasometer readings are taken every minute during the remainder of the 15 minutes

6 Finger blood samples for blood sugar and lactate are taken at 5, 10 and 15 minutes during recovery

7 Cardiometer is left running at least for the first five minutes of recovery and may be turned off then and used only to take heart rate during 10th and 15th minutes of recovery

8 At 15 minutes gasometer valve is closed temperature is recorded and final reading is noted

■ Two expired air samples are taken from gasometer (3 15 minutes of recovery)

10 After gasometer is emptied valves are turned connecting Douglas bag to gasometer and initial reading is noted. Two samples of contents of bag are drawn from small side tube on bag as gas is forced to large gasometer for measurement of volume. Bag is finally rolled to expel all air connection clamped and gasometer volume and temperature are noted. (Three minutes of recovery)

11 Barometric pressure is recorded

(The work experiment as carried out above required at least three and preferably four men to guarantee smooth operation)

Calculations and Data Obtained from Work Experiments

1 Blood pressure at rest (sitting) and immediately following exhausting run

2 Continuous heart rate record counted to obtain following

a Rest (sitting)

b Maximum during walk (sixth minute)

c Maximum during run (usually last minute)

d First five minutes of recovery. May be counted by six second intervals for first minute of recovery and longer intervals up to five minutes

e At 10 minutes during recovery

f At 15 minutes during recovery

- 3 Blood sugar and blood lactate in mg per 100 ml
 - a During walk
 - b At 5, 10 and 15 minutes during recovery
- 4 Metabolism during walk, run and recovery are calculated as described in previous sections
- 5 Oxygen debt. This measurement is the difference in oxygen consumption for fifteen minutes following the run and the basal requirement for that period. To be complete, the period should be 60 minutes.

Example of a Protocol of a Typical Experiment

SUBJECT: M Gr 16 86%	DATE 8/3/49	BAR PRESSURE 101 mm Hg GASMETER TEMP 34 C		TISSOT FACTOR 5.2 × cm STP FACTOR 0.896 COMBINED FACTOR 4.68				
		DIFF cm	PI LUNG VOLUME L MIN	CO ₂ %	O ₂	F Q	TRCE "	O ₂ L/MIN
WALK 3.5 mph	SPIRO METER READING cm							
4 mins	46							
5	131	8	39.7	4.59	16.6	0.97	4.0	1.97
6	210	19	36.9	4.1	15.97	0.91	5.17	1.91
Run 7.0 mph.								
0 min.	40							
1	169							
1½	340	11	40.0	4.0	16.48	1.06	4.40	3.5
2	440							
3	534	19.4	37.8	4.3	16.6	1.16	4.16	3.8
3½	631							
4	31	19	3	4.89	16.67	1.17	4.1	3.84
4½	830							
5	805	19.4	40.9	4.07	16.61	1.19	4.1	3.79
Recovery								
Basal								
0 min	47							
2	445	9.8	6.0	4.04	16.09	1.26	4.5	1.59
6 some								
3 mins	48							
5	165							
7	47							
9	375							
11	88							
13	458							
15	216	46.8	19.1	3.53	1.9	1.06	0	0.60
								Net O ₂ consumption = 0.30

Net O₂ debt in 15 minutes

$$3 \times (1.58 - 0.0) + 1 \times (0.60 - 0.30) = 7.48 \text{ lters}$$

Precautions

- 1 The whole method depends on good sampling, so be very careful. Breathe out at least 3 times before drawing the final sample.
Accurate timing is almost as important as accurate sampling.
- 2 It will be noted that the two values for the walk should and do check quite closely and similar for the last three minutes of the run. Generally a man must run at least at two minutes at this grade of work before the maximum is obtained.
- 3 We have found that the oxygen debt for 15 minutes is only roughly proportional to the total oxygen debt. For precise measurement the period should be 60 minutes or until the O₂ consumption approaches the basal level.

- 5 Gasometer readings are taken every half minute during run
- 6 Expired air samples are taken over an entire minute for the second, third fourth and fifth minutes (the first minute is not of sufficient value) or for as long as the subject runs. Samples of less than 20 seconds are of doubtful value

Procedure—Recovery After Exhausting Exercise

- 1 When subject stops running by jumping to a straddling position (keeping the mouthpiece in and the nose clip on), the following must be done precisely at the time he stops running
 - a Valve at treadmill superstructure is turned to collect expired air in Douglas bag for three minutes
 - b Cardiotachometer tape is marked.
 - c Time is noted
 - d Treadmill is stopped. Subject sits on tall stool in place on treadmill still breathing through mouthpiece
- 2 As soon as possible the following additional steps should be taken
 - a Final gasometer reading is taken
 - b Temperature of expired air in gasometer is noted.
 - c Gasometer is emptied. Connection removed from mixing chamber and placed on direct connection to gasometer. Valve turned for collection and reading noted
- 3 Blood pressure is taken as soon as possible, preferably during the first minute after subject stops running
- 4 At the end of three minutes valve at treadmill superstructure is turned to gasometer
- 5 Gasometer readings are taken every minute during the remainder of the 15 minutes
- 6 Finger blood samples for blood sugar and lactate are taken at 5, 10 and 15 minutes during recovery
- 7 Cardiotachometer is left running, at least for the first five minutes of recovery and may be turned off then and used only to take heart rate during 10th and 15th minutes of recovery
- 8 At 15 minutes, gasometer valve is closed, temperature is recorded and final reading is noted
- 9 Two expired air samples are taken from gasometer (3, 15 minutes of recovery)
- 10 After gasometer is emptied, valves are turned connecting Douglas bag to gasometer and initial reading is noted. Two samples of contents of bag are drawn from small side tube on bag as gas is forced to large gasometer for measurement of volume. Bag is finally rolled to expel all air, connection clamped and gasometer volume and temperature are noted. (Three minutes of recovery)
- 11 Barometric pressure is recorded
(The work experiment as carried out above required at least three and preferably four men to guarantee smooth operation.)

Calculations and Data Obtained from Work Experiments

- 1 Blood pressure at rest (sitting) and immediately following exhausting run
- 2 Continuous heart rate record counted to obtain following
 - a Rest (sitting)
 - b Maximum during walk (sixth minute)
 - c Maximum during run (usually last minute)
 - d First five minutes of recovery. May be counted by six second intervals for first minute of recovery and longer intervals up to five minutes
 - e At 10 minutes during recovery
 - f At 15 minutes during recovery

3 Blood sugar and blood lactate in mg per 100 ml

- a During walk
b At 5, 10 and 15 minutes during recovery

4 Metabolism during walk, run and recovery are calculated as described in previous sections

- Oxygen debt This measurement is the difference in oxygen consumption for fifteen minutes following the run and the basal requirement for that period. To be complete the period should be 60 minutes.

Example of a Protocol of a Typical Experiment

SUBJECT B Grade 86 ⁰	DATE 8/3/49	BAR PRESSURE 761 mm Hg GASOMETER TEMP 34 C			TISSUE FACTOR 0 × cm STP FACTOR 0.508 CORRECTION FACTOR 4.64				
WALK 3.5 mph	SPIROMETER READINGS cm	DIFF cm	PULMONARY VENTIL l/min	CO O	O ₂	RQ	TRUP O "	O ₂ USED l/min	
4 mins	46								
5	131	85	79	4.59	16.6	0.97	4.70	1.8	
6	10	9	76.9	4.1	13.87	0.91	5.17	1.91	
Run, 10 mph.									
0 mins	45								
1	169								
1½	56								
2	340	11	80.0	4.0	14.48	1.06	4.40	3.5	
2½	440								
3	534	10.4	90.8	4.9	16.65	1.14	4.10	3.78	
3½	631								
4	731	19	9	4.89	16.6	1.17	4.17	3.84	
4½	830								
5	855	18.4	90.9	4.4	16.61	1.19	4.17	3.9	
Recovery									
Bag									
0 min	47								
3	445	19.9	6.0	4.04	16.09	1.06	2.5	1.58	
Gasometer									
3 mins	49								
5	185								
7	447								
9	325								
11	388								
13	458								
15	516	46.8	18.1	3.3	1.39	1.06	3.30	0.60	
Basal O ₂ consumption =								0.30	

Net O debt in 15 minutes

$$3 \times (1.58 - 0.30) + 1 \times (0.60 - 0.30) = 4.5 \text{ litres}$$

Precautions

- 1 The whole method depends on good sampling so be very careful! Put the out at least 8 times before drawing the final sample.
- 2 Accurate timing is almost as important as accurate sampling.
- 3 It will be noted that the two values for the walk should and do check quite closely and similarly for the last three minutes of the run. Generally a man must run at least two minutes at the grade of work before the maximum is obtained.
- 4 We have found that the oxygen debt for 15 minutes is only roughly proportional to the total oxygen debt. For precise measurement the period should be 60 minutes or until the O₂ consumption approaches the basal level.

SECTION VI

PHYSIOLOGICAL MEASUREMENTS (Continued)

E PULMONARY MEASUREMENTS

1 Alveolar Air in Rest and Work

A. IN REST

Reference

Dill D B Hursthal L M, Van Cauhaert, C Folling A, and Bock, A. V The Carbon Dioxide Equilibrium in Alveolar Air and Arterial Blood. J Biol Chem 74 303 313 (Aug) 1927

Principle

Alveolar air is that portion of the air in the lungs that is in contact with the alveolar walls. According to the concept of Haldane, the last portion of expired air at the end of a forced expiration may be taken as representative of the alveolar air of the whole lung.

Apparatus

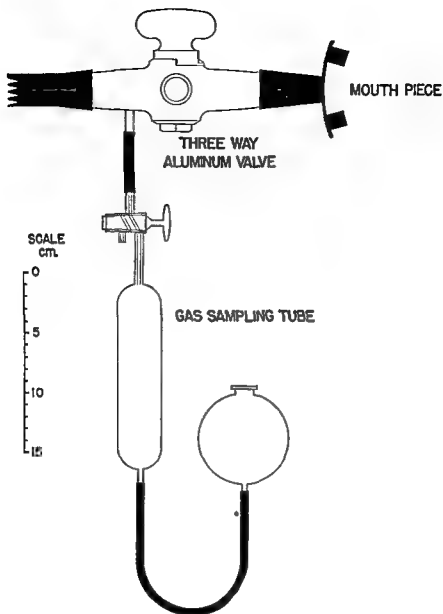
- 1 Alveolar air sampler (see line drawing Fig 50) : This is a modification of the Haldane Priestley tube with a three way stopcock between the rubber tube and the mouthpiece. The smaller the dead space in the valve the better. The rubber tube must be at least 3 feet long.
- 2 A number of gas sampling tubes (Barcroft type). The tube completely filled with mercury including the bore above the stopcock is attached to a sampling outlet on the part of the cock carrying the tube.
- 3 A nose clip
- 4 A clean mouthpiece
- 5 A Haldane gas analysis apparatus

Reagents

- 1 Clean mercury
- 2 Reagents for the Haldane gas analyzer

Procedure

- 1 The mouthpiece and the nose clip are adjusted on the subject after he has rested for at least one half hour.
- 2 The cock has been turned so that the subject is breathing directly into the room.
- 3 Towards the end of a normal expiration the valve is turned into the rubber tube and the signal 'Blow' is given.
- 4 The subject expires forcibly and completely without inspiring after the signal. Blow is given. The tap is immediately turned back so that the subject may breathe normally. This maneuver leaves a sample of alveolar air in the tube.
- 5 A sample is withdrawn from the tube into a gas sampling tube.
- 6 The sample is then analyzed in the Haldane apparatus for carbon dioxide alone.

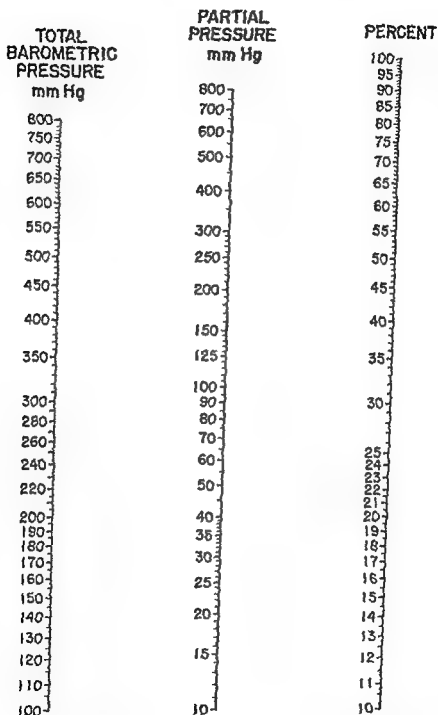


ALVEOLAR AIR AT REST

C. E. SORDON

Fig. 50—Arrangement of valves and sampling tubes for collecting alveolar air by the Haldane-Priestley technique.

PARTIAL PRESSURE OF A GAS FROM BAROMETRIC PRESSURE AND PERCENTAGE OF GAS FOUND



—C. E. GORDON—

Fig. 51—Nomogram for estimating partial pressure of a gas from barometric pressure and percentage of gas found. Lay ruler to connect the two outside scales at the proper points for total barometric pressure (corrected for tension of aqueous vapor) and percentage of gas found. The partial pressure (mm Hg) of the gas will then be indicated at the point where the ruler crosses the center scale.

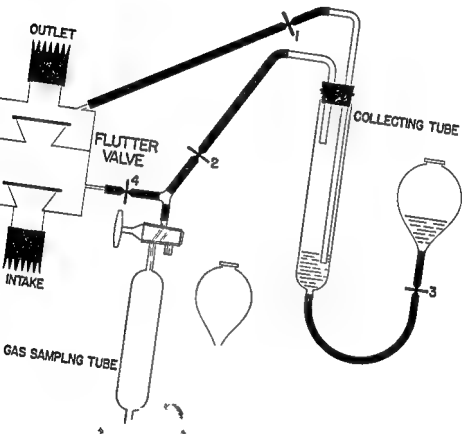
Calculation

Alveolar p_{CO} in mm Hg =

$$(\% CO \text{ from Haldane analysis}) \times \frac{(B - W)}{100}$$

Where B is barometric pressure in mm Hg and W is vapor pressure of water at 37 C
i.e. 47 mm Hg

ALVEOLAR AT WORK



350 : *Physiological Measurements*

- 2 The line chart Fig 51 gives directly the partial pressure of a gas from the percentage and barometric pressure corrected for vapor tension. In the case of CO_2 , it is necessary to use some factor such as 10 to enable the right hand scale to be used. The reading in the middle scale must be corrected accordingly.

Precautions

- 1 Draw the sample as soon as possible after the expiration.
- 2 Be sure to give the signal Blow only after a normal expiration.
- 3 Subjects have to be trained in this procedure to give reliable results.

B IN WORK

Reference

Henderson Y and Haggard, H W The Circulation and Its Measurement *Am J Physiol* 73 193 253 (June) 1905

Principle

During work respiration is not under the same easy voluntary control as it is in rest. Hence the procedure for collecting alveolar air in rest cannot be used in work. A device of Y Henderson and associates collects samples automatically. It utilizes the slight negative pressure which is produced during inspiration to suck samples of the last of the preceding expiration into a collecting bottle.

Apparatus

- 1 Y Henderson's apparatus for collecting alveolar air, during exercise (see Fig 50)
- 2 Gas sampling tubes (20 ml volume) filled with mercury
- 3 Other apparatus as for work metabolism

Reagents

- 1 Clean mercury
- 2 Reagents for Haldane gas analysis
- 3 Water acidulated slightly with sulfuric acid for filling the apparatus

Procedure

- 1 The mouthpiece and nose clip are adjusted on the subject when the metabolic collection period begins.
- 2 All clamps on the alveolar air sampler are closed.
- 3 When it is desired to collect a sample of alveolar air the steps are
 - a Attach a gas sampling tube to the rubber outlet
 - b Open clamps 1, 2 and 4.
 - c The depth of the tube in the acidulated water is determined by the depth of the subject's respiration. It is usually about 2.5 mm.
 - d The air is allowed to flush out the chamber for at least 3 minutes.
 - e Clamps 1 and 4 are closed.
 - f Clamp 3 is opened.
 - g A sample is obtained by opening the cock of the sampling tube.
 - h Analysis of carbon dioxide is performed in the Haldane gas analysis apparatus.

Calculation

Same as for alveolar air in rest

Example

Same as for alveolar air in rest

Precautions

Same as for alveolar air in rest and in addition

- 1 Acidulation of the water in the collecting apparatus is necessary to prevent absorption of CO_2

Functional Residual Air

Reference

Cournaud A Baldwin E DeF Darling R C and Richards D W Jr Studies on Intrapulmonary Mixtures of Gases IV The Significance of the Pulmonary Emptying Rate and a Simplified Open Circuit Measurement of Residual Air J Clin Investigation 20 681 689 (Oct) 1941

Principle

Practically all the nitrogen in the lungs is washed out by seven minutes of breathing oxygen. The total expired air is collected, measured and analyzed for N_2 . The volume of the gas space in the lungs is calculated from these data. An appropriate correction is made for nitrogen freed from solution in the blood.

Apparatus

1 A 100 liter Tissot gasometer is used with connections as shown in Fig 33 in which the symbols mean the following

M—mouthpiece

Alv—Evacuated gas sampling tubes

V V V V—Three way respiratory valves

F F F F—One way rubber flutter valves

B—Rubber anesthesia bag

T—One hundred liter (Tissot) gasometer

B—Valve and attachment for obtaining gasometer samples

a The main circuit is essentially that used for open circuit measurement of basal metabolism except that the inlet arm comes from a reservoir bag B which is connected to an oxygen tank. The valve V is an essential feature but may be improvised in various ways. It must be near to the mouthpiece M so that there is negligible dead space but it the subject's breathing can be shifted from room air to oxygen in the room circuit there should be any suitable alveolar sampling device (Pictured in the diagram as evacuated sampling tubes inserted through holes in the rubber tubing connection). The recording pen and drum D are useful but unessential parts of the apparatus.

b The dead space under the bell of the gasometer T should be measured before using the apparatus. A satisfactory accuracy within 50 ml may be attained by geometrical calculation of the space equally easy and more accurate measurement can be made by adding a known volume of oxygen to the dead space volume of room air through the thermometer socket (not shown on diagram) and analyzing the mixture in the bell.

c If V = vol O₂ added DS = dead space under bell a = % N in oxygen supply b = % N in mixture under bell

$$DS = \frac{V(b - a)}{a - b}$$

A Van Slyke manometric apparatus should be available for analysis of the high oxygen mixtures. A Scholander gas analyzer is equally as good.

Reagents

1 A tank of oxygen

2 Reagents for Van Slyke or Scholander apparatus

Procedure

- 1 With V turned to the side circuit flush the main circuit and gasometer six consecutive times with oxygen. Then turn V to connect main circuit to outside air and maintain an oxygen flow approximately equal to the subject's ventilation.
- 2 Have the subject under basal conditions reclining with a one or two pillow head rest. Insert the mouthpiece and put on the nose clip.

- 3 Take the initial gasometer reading
- 4 Turn V_1 to connect to gasometer
- 5 Observing the subject's respiratory rhythm and being sure that he is breathing easily turn V to the main circuit exactly at the end of a normal expiration
- 6 Have the subject continue breathing oxygen for 7 minutes adjust the oxygen flow as necessary to keep the bag B nearly full
- 7 During this time prepare the side circuit for alveolar sampling
- 8 At the beginning of the expiration closest to the seven minute point turn the valve V_1 to the side circuit and instruct the subject to exhale forcibly Take the alveolar sample The subject may then be disconnected

OPEN CIRCUIT APPARATUS FOR MEASUREMENT OF RESIDUAL AIR

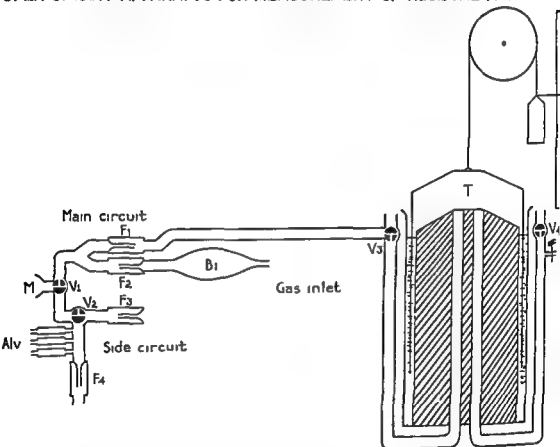


Fig 53—The apparatus used by Cournaud, Baldwin, Darling, and Richards for estimation of functional residual air

- 9 Flush the main circuit with approximately 10 liters of oxygen and close valve V_1
- 10 Take second gasometer reading and temperature
- 11 Take two samples from the gasometer after first flushing the gasometer tubing with the first portion of the contents
- 12 Repeat steps 1 to 11 for a check determination after $\frac{1}{2}$ hour interval
- 13 Estimate the nitrogen in the alveolar and spirometer gases using the Van Slyke apparatus or the Scholander gas analyzer

Calculation

Symbols

- FPA (dry) = functional residual air in ml (calculated as dry gas)
 V = volume of spirometer gas corrected to 37°C (dry)
 DS = volume of dead space under gasometer bell corrected to 37°C
 a = % N (+ other inert gases) in oxygen supply (usually < 0.5%)
 b = % N from gasometer analysis
 Alv N = % N in alveolar sample
 C = correction for nitrogen from blood (See formula below)
 BS = body surface of subject in square meters
 BP = barometric pressure mm Hg

Equations

$$1 \text{ FPA (dry)} = \frac{(V + DS)(b - a) - C}{81 - \text{Alv } N}$$

2 Substitute value of C from following

$$C \text{ ml} = \frac{(BS \times 96.5) + 3}{0.80}$$

3 For calculation of FRA saturated with water vapor an exists (approximately) within the lungs

$$\text{FRA} = \text{FPA (dry)} \times \frac{\text{BP}}{\text{BP} - 4}$$

Example

V was 0.21 l DS 0.31 l a 0.3% b 8.30% Alv N 3.00% BS 1.75 sq m and BP 760 mm Hg

1 FPA liter + dry =

$$\frac{(0.21 + 0.31)(8.30 - 0.32) - (96.5 \times 1.75 + 35)/800}{81 - 3}$$

$$= 0.6$$

FRA liters wet =

$$0.6 \times \frac{60}{60 - 47}$$

$$= 2.10$$

Precautions

This method depends upon

- 1 Accurate sampling
- 2 Accurate timing
- 3 Extremely accurate analysis of samples of gas rich in oxygen

3 Cardiac Output (Grollman's Method)

Reference

- Marshall E K Jr and Grollman A A Method for the Determination of the Circulatory Minute Volume in Man *Am J Physiol* 86 127 137 (Aug) 19 8
 Grollman A and Marshall E K Jr The Time Necessary for Rebreathing in a Lung Bag System to Attain Homogeneous Mixture *Am J Physiol* 88 110 116 (Aug) 19 8

Principle

The subject breathes acetylene which dissolves in plasma but does not combine with hemoglobin lipoids or other constituents of the blood. The quantity absorbed

is measured and from this measurement and the coefficient of solubility of acetylene in plasma the quantity of blood which has passed through the lungs is calculated. The blood flow through the lungs is affected by the rebreathing of acetylene. Hence in order to calculate the true cardiac output is that immediately preceding the breathing. Grollman computes arteriovenous difference from the oxygen absorbed during rebreathing and the blood flow during the rebreathing as determined by acetylene absorption. The total oxygen consumption immediately preceding rebreathing divided by the arteriovenous oxygen difference gives the cardiac output prior to rebreathing. In the analysis of the gas samples three gases are absorbed and a fourth is obtained by difference. The analysis is performed in a machine similar in principle to that of the Haldane previously described. There are two machines in common use the Grollman Haldane and the Krogh Haldane.

Apparatus

- 1 A Grollman Haldane apparatus. This apparatus has an extra absorption tube for the analysis of acetylene.
- 2 A rubber bag connected to a 2 way valve.
- 3 A rack of gas sampling tubes 30 ml volume.
- 4 Apparatus for determining metabolic rate.

Reagents

- 1 A tank of oxygen gas.
- 2 A tank of air.
- 3 A tank of acetylene gas.
- 4 Same reagents as for the Haldane plus an acetylene absorber. 20 gm of mercuric cyanide and 8 gm of sodium hydroxide are dissolved and made up to 100 ml of water.

Procedure—Estimation of Total Oxygen Consumption

- 1 Immediately preceding the rebreathing of acetylene estimate the oxygen consumption of the subject as described under metabolic measurements.

Procedure—Rebreathing of Acetylene

- 1 Depending on the subject's activity fill the bag as follows

	Oxygen	Air	Acetylene
Rest	0	5000 ml	500 700 ml
Activity	500 700 ml	100 500 ml	500 700 ml

- 2 It is essential that the bag mixture maintain near saturation of the arterial blood throughout the period of rebreathing.
- 3 Prepare a series of evacuated gas sampling tubes.
- 4 The mixture of O₂, N₂ and acetylene is rebreathed from a bag equipped with a 2 way valve and also equipped with two small outlets between bag and valve for taking gas samples.
- 5 The subject with mouthpiece and nose clip in place is instructed to exhale completely, at which moment the valve is turned to connect him to the bag contents.
- 6 He is then instructed to rebreathe the bag contents rapidly and completely but without undue effort. The speed should be set so that 5-6 breaths are complete before sample I is taken. (See below).
- 7 It is essential to complete the rebreathing within one circulation of the blood. At rest total rebreathing time must be not more than 40 seconds and in moderate activity not more than 15 seconds.
- 8 With a resting subject collect Sample I after 10 seconds of rebreathing and Sample II after 18-20 seconds. In work take Sample I after 7 seconds and Sample II after 12 seconds.

Procedure—Analysis of Samples

- 1 The procedure for analysis is essentially that of the Haldane machine with a few differences
 - a After the initial total volume reading the gases are passed into the KOH exactly 8 times no more and a single unchecked reading is obtained. The reason for this is that acetylene is slightly soluble in KOH
 - 1 The acetylene is then absorbed. Due to the formation of the white precipitate it is difficult to read the meniscus mark. This difficulty is avoided by having a series of marks on the tube and by using these successively beginning with the bottom and ascending as the mark becomes indistinct
 - 2 The oxygen is absorbed as in ordinary gas analysis.

Calculations

- 1 Volume of lung bag system is reduced during rebreathing since the sum of the O and C₂H₂ absorbed is greater than the CO eliminated. N takes no part in the reactions the increase in its percentage is proportional to the decrease in lung bag volume. The relative gas volumes at the times of Sample I and Sample II are then

$$V = V_1 \times \frac{\%N}{\%N_1} \quad (\text{Equation 1})$$

- 2 The amount of C₂H₂ absorbed is proportional to the mean C₂H₂ tension during rebreathing and to the solubility coefficient of C₂H₂ in blood

$$\%C_2H_2 \text{ Av} = \frac{\%C_2H_2 + \%C_2H_2}{2} \quad (\text{Equation 2})$$

and ml C₂H₂ absorbed/liter blood during interval between Sample I and Sample

$$II = \frac{740 \times \%C_2H_2 \times (B - 47)}{100 \times 100} \quad (\text{Equation 3})$$

where 740 is ml C₂H₂ which will be dissolved by blood at 760 mm Hg C₂H₂ pressure at 37°C B is observed barometric pressure and 47 is vapor tension of water at 37°C

- 3 The blood flow through the lungs is determined by the ratio between total C₂H₂ absorbed during period of observation and the quantity of C₂H₂ absorbed per liter of blood. Liters blood flow through lungs during rebreathing (i.e. liters cardiac output during rebreathing) =

$$\frac{(V_1 \times \%C_2H_2 - V_2 \times \%C_2H_2) \times (60 \times 100)}{(740 \times \%C_2H_2) \times (B - 47)} \quad (\text{Equation 4})$$

- 4 To obtain cardiac output prior to rebreathing it is now necessary to calculate the arterio-venous oxygen difference during rebreathing the quantity of O₂ absorbed by each liter of blood in its passage through the lungs

A - V oxygen difference in ml =

$$\frac{(V_1 \times \%O_2 - V_2 \times \%O_2) \times (740 \times \%C_2H_2) \times (B - 47)}{(V_1 \times \%C_2H_2 - V_2 \times \%C_2H_2) \times 760 \times 100} \quad (\text{Equation 5})$$

Combining the factors 740 760 and 100

A - V Difference =

$$\frac{(V_1 \times \%O_2 - V_2 \times \%O_2) \times (B - 47) \times 0.00974 \times \%C_2H_2}{(V_1 \times \%C_2H_2 - V_2 \times \%C_2H_2)}$$

Substituting values from Equation 1

A - V difference =

$$\frac{(V_1 \times \%O_2 - V_2 \times \%O_2 \times \frac{\%N}{\%N_1}) \times (B - 47) \times 0.00974 \times \%C_2H_2}{(V_1 \times \%C_2H_2 - V_2 \times \%C_2H_2 \times \frac{\%N}{\%N_1})}$$

And V₁ cancels out leaving

A - V difference =

$$\frac{(\%O_2 - \%O_{22} \times \frac{\%N_2}{\%N_{22}}) \times \%C_2H_{22} \times (B - 47) \pm 0.0097}{(\%C_2H_{21} - \%C_2H_{22} \times \frac{\%N_2}{\%N_{22}})} \quad (\text{Equation 6})$$

5 Cardiac output, l/min prior to rebreathing =

$$\frac{\text{Total oxygen consumption ml/min}}{\text{A - V oxygen difference ml/l blood}} \quad (\text{Equation 7})$$

6 Stroke volume ml per heart beat =

$$\frac{\text{Cardiac output l/min}}{\text{Pulse rate beats/min}} \times 1000 \quad (\text{Equation 8})$$

Precautions

- 1 This is a difficult method. Much practice is required on the part of both the observer and the subject to obtain consistent and reproducible results
- 2 The calculations above derive step by step the final equations which are used in routine calculation Equations 6, 7 and 8

4 Pulmonary and Circulatory Measurements Miscellaneous References

Acetylene

Coulson Smith C and Seyfang A P A Colorimetric Method for the Estimation of Small Quantities of Acetylene in Air, *Analysis* 67 39 41 (Feb) 1942

Ballistocardiograph

Nickerson J L Symposium on Cardiac Output The Low Frequency Critically Damped Ballistocardiograph Federation Proc 4 (2) 201 '66 (June) 1945

Nickerson J L Some Observations on the Ballistocardiographic Pattern With Special Reference to the H and K Waves *J Clin. Investigation* 28 369 377 (March) 1949

Cardiac Output

McMichael J and Sharpey Schafer E P Cardiac Output in Man by the Direct Fick Method Effects of Posture Venous Pressure Change Atropine and Adrenaline *Brit Heart J* 6 (1) 33 40 (July) 1944

Ring G C Greisheimer E M Baier H N Oppenheimer M J Sokalchuk A Ellis D and Friday S J Electrokymograph for Estimation of Heart Output Comparison With Direct Fick in Dogs *Am J Physiol* 161 231 35 (May) 1950

Ring G C, Sokalchuk A, Baier H N, Pudel H Oppenheimer M J, Friday S J, and Navis G Electrokymograph for Estimation of Heart Output Comparison With Stewart in Dogs *Am. J Physiol* 161 236 238 (May) 1950

Seely M D and Gregg D E Technique for Measuring Cardiac Output Directly by Cannulation of the Pulmonary Artery *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med.* 73 460 2/0 (Feb) 1950

Warren J V Stead E A Jr and Brannon E H Cardiac Output in Man A Study of Some of the Errors in the Method of Right Heart Catheterization *Am. J Physiol.* 145 459 464 (Feb) 1946

Werko L, Bersens S, and Lagerlof H A Comparison of the Direct Fick and the Grollman Methods for Determination of Cardiac Output in Man *J Clin Investigation* 28 516 520 (May) 1949

Catheterization

Bing R J Vandam L D, Gregoire F, Handelsman J C Goodale W T and Eickenhoff J E Catheterization of the Coronary Sinus and Middle Cardiac Vein in Man *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 66 (1) 239 240 (Oct.) 1947

Cournand A Measurement of the Cardiac Output in Man Using the Right Heart Catheterization Description of Technique Discussion of Validity and of Place in the Study of Circulation *Fed Proc* 4 207 212 (June) 1945

Cournand A and Ranges H A Catheterization of the Right Auricle in Man *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med.* 46 462-466 (March) 1941

Cournand A, Ranges H. A. and Riley R L Comparison of Results of the Normal Ballistocardiogram and a Direct Fick Method in Measuring the Cardiac Output in Man *J Clin. Investigation* 21 (3) 437 493 (May) 1942

- Corrigan A. Riley B L. Breed, E. S. Ballwin, E. de F. and Richards D. W. Jr. Measurement of Cardiac Output in Man Using the Technique of Catheterization of the Right Auricle or Ventricle. *J Clin Investigation* 24 (1) 106-116 (Jan) 1945.
- Dexter L. Haynes F. W. Barwell C. S. and Eppinger E. C. Sagerson E. P. and Evans J. M. Studies of Congenital Heart Disease. II. The Pressure and O₂ Content in the Right Auricle, Right Ventricle and Pulmonary Artery in Control Patients With Observations on the O₂ Saturation and Sources of Pulmonary Capillary Blood. *J Clin Investigation* 26 544-560 (May) 1947.
- Dexter L. Haynes F. W. Barwell C. S. Eppinger E. C., Seibel E. E. and Evans J. M. Studies of Congenital Heart Disease. I. Technique of Venous Catheterization as a Diagnostic Procedure. *J Clin. Investigation* 26 547-553 (May) 1947.

Cerebral Circulation

- Key M. S. and Schmid C. F. The Nitrous Oxide Method for the Quantitative Determination of Cerebral Blood Flow in Man. Theory, Procedure and Normal Values. *J Clin Investigation* 27 416-433 (July) 1948.
- Kety S. S. The Quantitative Determination of Cerebral Blood Flow in Man. Methods in Medical Research. Chicago Vol. I 1948. Yearbook Publishers.
- Myerson A., Halloran R. D. and Hirsch H. L. Technique for Obtaining Blood from the Internal Jugular Vein and Internal Carotid Artery. *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 17 (6) 878-893 (June) 1947.

Circulation Time

- Wexler J. and Whittenberger J. L. Objective Method for Determining Circulation Time from Pulmonary to Systemic Capillaries by Use of the Oximeter. *J Clin Investigation* 25 (3) 44-450 (May) 1946.

Coronary Blood Flow

- Eckenhoff J. E., Hafenstein J. H., Harner M. H., Goodale W. T., Lubin M., Bing R. J., and Kety S. S. Measurement of Coronary Blood Flow by the Nitrous Oxide Method. *Am J Physiol* 153 (1) 356-364 (Feb) 1947.

Electrocardiograph

- Graybiel A. and White P. D. *Electrocardiography in Practice* ed. 2 Philadelphia London 1946 W. B. Saunders Company.
- Katz L. N. *Exercises in Electrocardiographic Interpretation* ed. 2 Philadelphia 1946 L. A. and Febiger.

Gas Tension in Blood

- Boos A., and Black H. Direct Determination of Partial and Total Tensions of Respiratory Gases in Blood. *Am. J Physiol* 160 103-116 (Jan) 1950.

Lung Volume

- Herrald F. J. C. and McMichael J. Determination of Lung Volume. A Simple Constant Volume Modification of Christie's Method. *Proc Roy Soc London* 128 (B345) 431-501 (Feb) 1933.
- McMichael J. A Rapid Method of Determining Lung Capacity. *Clin Sc* 4 (-) 167-173 (Dec) 1937.
- Mencely G. P. and Faltreder N. L. Use of Helium for Determination of Pulmonary Capacity. *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 46 (1) 66-69 (Jan) 1941.
- Mencely G. P. and Haltreider N. L. The Volume of the Lung Determined by Helium Dilution. Description of the Method and Comparison with Other Procedures. *J Clin Investigation* 28 19-139 (Jan) 1949.
- Esterson J. B., Boothby W. M. and Helmholtz H. F. Jr. Studies of Lung Volumes and Intrapulmonary Mixing. Notes on Open Circuit Methods Including Use of a New Pivoted Type Gasometer for Lung Clearance Studies. *J Clin Investigation* 28 69-836 (July) 1949.

Pressure Breathing

- Barach A. L., Fenn W. O., Ferris E. L. and Schmidt C. F. The Physiology of Pressure Breathing. A Brief Review of Its Present Status. *J Aviation Med* 18 (1) 13-21 (Feb) 1947.

Venous Pressure

- Lyons R. H., Kennedy J. A. and Barwell C. S. Measurement of Venous Pressure by the Direct Method. *Am Heart J* 16 (7) 566-573 (Dec) 1937.

SECTION VI

PHYSIOLOGICAL MEASUREMENTS (Continued)

F PLASMA VOLUME, BLOOD VOLUME, EXTRACELLULAR VOLUME

1 Plasma and Blood Volumes (Dye Method)

Reference

Nitsche G A Jr and Cohen P I Simplified Determination of Blood Volume *Am J Clin Path* 17 239 243 (March) 1947

Principle

The procedure consists of the injection of a known amount of the dye T 1824 (Evans Blue) and the calculation of the plasma volume from the concentration of the dye in the plasma after complete mixing

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 2 Cuvettes 10 x 75 mm
- 3 Specially calibrated syringes sterilized for dye injection
- 4 10 ml syringes
- 5 Two 20 gauge needles for venipuncture (sterile)
- 6 Heparin solution 110 units/mg Dilute 100 mg dry heparin to 147 ml isotonic saline and use one drop for the preservation of 10 ml of whole blood
- 7 0.2 ml syringe pipette accurately calibrated.
- 8 4 ml hematocrit tubes with cork stoppers to fit
- 9 Electric centrifuge

Reagents

- 1 Sterile solution of T 1824 Dye The solution of the dye T 1824 is prepared by dissolving 2 gm in 500 ml distilled water It is passed through a 3 G 3 Jena sintered glass filter and divided between a suitable number of brown bottles and autoclaved Following this rubber diaphragm stoppers are inserted and the bottles stored in the dark Such solutions remain stable and sterile indefinitely when used with reasonable care Each new batch must be calibrated.

Procedure

- 1 After necessary equipment has been sterilized and thoroughly dried two hematocrit tubes are placed in a rack One drop (0.05 ml) of heparin is placed in each tube Care must be taken that the tubes are chemically clean and that the heparin is not deposited along the rim of the mouth If the tubes are not absolutely clean some hemolysis may result If heparin is deposited at the mouth it may be covered by the cork stopper that is to be used
- 2 The amount of dye to be injected should be approximately 0.3 mg/kg of body weight The calibrated syringe is filled with the correct quantity of dye
- 3 With the patient in a reclining position 5 ml of blood is removed from a cubital vein with a dry syringe It is important that there be no stasis of venous blood. Consequently the tourniquet must be removed at least one minute before the blood is drawn into the syringe

- 4 The measured amount of dye is then injected slowly through the same needle the syringe being filled and emptied at least five times with the patient's blood in order to wash out all traces of dye
- 5 A notation of the time must be made at the beginning of the injection of the dye. While the dye is being injected an assistant should take the freshly drawn blood and fill the first hematocrit tube to the 10 cm mark. This should be done quickly but with caution, in order that there be no frothing which may cause hemolysis. The cork stopper should be inserted and the tube gently inverted several times until good mixing with the heparin is effected.
- 6 Approximately nine minutes after beginning the injection of the dye a clean needle on a clean dry syringe is inserted into a cubital vein. The tourniquet is removed and time allowed for venous stasis to correct itself, and when exactly ten minutes have elapsed from the time of injection of dye 5 ml of blood is again withdrawn.
- 7 The needle and syringe are removed and the blood cautiously placed in the second hematocrit tube which is inserted and stoppered in the same manner as before. It will be noted that some blood will collect at the junction of the stoppers and the tubes. This should be carefully removed with a cotton tipped applicator, the corks likewise wiped off and then replaced.
- 8 Both tubes should then be centrifuged for thirty minutes at 3000 r.p.m.
- 9 The hematocrit is then read in the conventional manner.
- 10 The supernatant plasma is removed by means of capillary pipettes placed in 10 x 75 mm cuvettes and centrifuged to remove any suspended cells.
- 11 The first cuvette which contains the sample without dye is placed in the spectrophotometer with the wave length set at 60 millimicrons. The machine is adjusted to 0 density with this sample. The second sample which contains dye is then inserted and the density read and recorded.

Calibration Curves

Each batch of dye must be used to make new calibration curves. The K value is determined in the presence of plasma at a wave length of 60 m μ . The procedure is

- 1 It is unwise to try to calculate exactly the dye strength in mg/ml because each batch of dye seems to have its own solubility and color characteristics. The stock solution contains approximately 4 mg/ml.
- 2 Into 50 ml volumetric flasks pipette exactly 1 and 0.5 ml of stock solution and dilute with distilled water. The strengths are approximately 0.08 and 0.04 mg/ml.
- 3 Prepare a batch of 10-15 ml plasma for use in the standardization.
- 4 In separate cuvettes mix 1.8 ml of plasma with exactly 0.2 ml of diluted dye. This gives plasma samples of approximately 0.008 and 0.004 mg/ml.
- 5 Set a control cuvette containing 1.8 ml plasma and 0.2 ml isotonic saline at 0 density at wave length 60 m μ .
- 6 Compute K from the formula $K = D/C$ where D is the optical density and C is the dye equivalent in mg/ml. C is understood to be an arbitrary figure varying in reality with each batch of dye.

Calculation

$$1 \text{ Circulatory plasma volume ml} = \frac{(\text{mg dye injected})}{(\text{mg dye/ml plasma})}$$

Where mg dye injected is calculated from the equation (mg dye/ml solution) x (ml injected) and mg dye/ml plasma is calculated from the equation D/K .

- 2 The total circulating blood volume is calculated from the plasma volume and the hematocrit. One correction has to be made since the hematocrit of peripheral blood does not necessarily equal that of the total blood. Several authors have

BLOOD VOLUME AND CIRCULATING RED CELL MASS FROM OBSERVED PLASMA VOLUME AND HEMATOCRIT

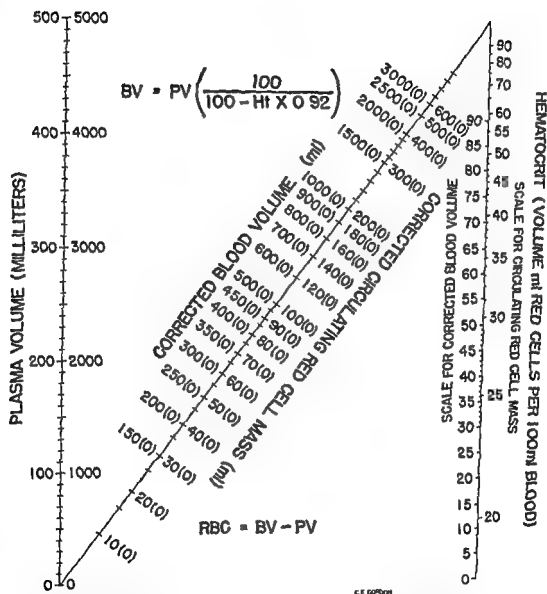


Fig. 54—Line chart for calculating blood volume and circulating red cell mass from observed plasma volume and hematocrit. Note that the hematocrit is multiplied by an arbitrary correction factor of 0.92.

urged that for purposes of calculating blood volume the peripheral hematocrit must be corrected by a constant factor 0.92

$$\text{Total circulating blood volume ml} = \frac{(\text{ml plasma volume}) \times (100)}{(100) - (\text{Hematocrit} \times 0.92)}$$

- 3 From plasma volume and total circulating blood volume total circulating red cell volume ml = ml total blood volume - ml plasma volume

Example

Into a 6 kg man were injected 1 mg of dye. The plasma concentration was 0.0015 mg/ml. Hematocrit was 43 ml %

- 1 Circulating plasma volume =

$$\frac{1}{0.0015} = 2800 \text{ ml}$$

- 2 Corrected circulating total blood volume =

$$\frac{(2800) \times (100)}{100 - (43 \times 0.9)} = 4632 \text{ ml}$$

- 3 Corrected circulating red cell mass =

$$4632 - 2800 = 1832 \text{ ml}$$

- 4 These calculations are simplified by use of the line chart Fig. 54

Precautions

- 1 The calibration of each new batch of dye is essential for consistent results
- 2 Hemolysis vitiates the results. Although some authors have proposed means of correcting for hemolysis it is our practice to discard any samples in which hemolysis has occurred
- 3 While extrapolation to zero time by employing a series of successive samples would in all probability give more accurate values it was found that in order to obtain a reliable straight line too many samples were required to make the method practical. Consequently a single ten minute sample was used. The validity of using a single sample has been reported by Gregersen, Noble and Miller, Hopper, Tabor and Winkler and Elkinton, Gilder, Muller and Phillips have shown that there is complete mixing of the dye with the circulating plasma in this period of time

2 Total Circulating Red Cell, Blood and Plasma Volumes (Carbon Monoxide)

Reference

- Root W B, Roughton F J W and Gregersen M L. Simultaneous Determinations of Blood Volume by CO and Dye (T 18 4) Under Various Conditions. *Am J Physiol.* 146: 739-755 (Aug.) 1946

Principle

A measured volume of CO is introduced into the blood by inhalation. The increase in CO content of the blood divided into the total amount of CO administered gives the blood volume. The individual estimations required are

- 1 Carbon monoxide content of the blood before and after inhalation of carbon monoxide
- 2 Loss of CO if any during and after inhalation
- 3 Carbon monoxide content and volume of inspired air
- 4 Residual unabsorbed CO in the expired air

Apparatus

- 1 Scholander Roughton apparatus for estimating carbon monoxide in blood.
- 2 Apparatus for generating carbon monoxide

- 3 Douglas bag apparatus for collecting expired air The method described under metabolic procedures is used with one exception inspiration of outside air is from a six foot length of hose attached to the mouthpiece inlet valve

Reagents

- 1 Those for the Scholander Roughton method of estimating carbon monoxide
- 2 Carbon monoxide (CO) Place formic acid (HCOOH) in a flask From a dropping funnel add conc sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) Pass the escaping carbon monoxide through a trap filled with pellets of dry KOH and collect in a large bottle by displacing water The stored gas should be 96 to 98% CO

Procedure

- 1 Allow the subject to lie down for at least 30 minutes
- 2 Draw a sample of venous blood without stasis from an antecubital vein using heparin for the anticoagulant The blood is collected in a syringe protected from light and stored in the refrigerator
- 3 Place the nose clip in place and allow the subject to breathe outdoor air through a mouthpiece connected with a 6 foot length of rubber hose one inch in diameter The outlet valve is connected to a 100 liter Douglas bag, which has previously been rinsed well with outside air
- 4 A 240 ml tonometer containing CO over mercury is connected by means of a short tightly fitted rubber tube with a #20 hypodermic needle, which is thrust into the lumen of the intake rubber hose
- 5 Immediately after starting to collect the subject's expired air a measured volume of about 240 ml of CO of analyzed purity is introduced into the intake hose over a period of from 3 to 4 minutes
- 6 Collect expired air for 10 minutes During the last 7 minutes the subject must be inspiring CO free air and the residual CO in his lungs at the end of that time must be negligible compared to that collected in the Douglas bag
- 7 Allow the subject to rest for 60 minutes more and collect 4 blood samples at timed intervals of 15 minutes from the time the CO was administered.
- 8 Analyze the expired air and the blood samples for CO using the Scholander Roughton micro technique
- 9 Mix the gas thoroughly in the Douglas bag and push the volume through a calibrated gasometer The total volume of the expired air is obtained by the difference in gasometer readings
- 10 Estimate the hematocrit value of the four blood samples and take the average

Calculation

- 1 Increase in blood CO ml/100 ml =

(ml CO/100 ml at zero time - ml CO/100 ml before inhalation)

where CO at zero time is obtained by extrapolation when the logarithms of the four timed blood specimens are plotted against time

- 2 Volume of CO inspired dry STP ml =

(ml injected into tube) \times STP factor \times purity factor

where ml injected is measured STP factor is obtained from the line chart in the section on respiratory metabolism and the purity factor is determined by analysis of the gas administered

- 3 Total volume of expired air dry STP is calculated according to the procedure given under the Douglas bag technique from volume wet at room temperature T and ambient barometric pressure

- 4 CO expired ml, dry STP =

$$\frac{\% \text{ CO in expired air}}{100} \times \text{volume of exp red air in ml}$$

where % CO is determined by analysis and volume of expired air is calculated as in 3 above

5 CO absorbed ml dry STP = (ml CO inspired - ml CO exp red)

where these values are as found in 2 and 4 above

6 Total circulating red cell volume ml =

$$\frac{\text{ml CO absorbed} \times 100}{\text{increase in blood CO ml/100 ml}}$$

7 Total circulating blood volume ml =

$$\frac{\text{red cell volume} \times 100}{\text{average \% hematocrit}}$$

8 Total circulating plasma volume ml =

$$(\text{total blood volume} - \text{total red cell volume})$$

Example

34 ml of CO was inhaled at 24.5°C and 753 mm Hg STP factor 0.881. The CO was 96% pure. Total volume of wet expired air was 66.16 l with a CO content of 0.117%. The extrapolated zero CO content was 8.10 ml CO/100 ml the content before inhalation was 3.00 ml CO/100 ml. The average hematocrit was 47.6 ml/100 ml.

1 Increase in blood CO ml/100 ml =

$$8.10 - 3.00 = 5.10$$

2 CO absorbed ml =

$$(\text{34} \times 0.881 \times 0.96) - (66.16 \times 0.881 \times 1000 \times \frac{0.117}{100}) = 128 - 68 = 130 \text{ ml}$$

3 Total circulating red cell volume ml =

$$\frac{130 \times 100}{5.10} = 2550 \text{ ml}$$

4 Total circulating blood volume ml =

$$\frac{2550 \times 100}{47.6} = 5350 \text{ ml}$$

5 Total plasma volume ml =

$$5350 - 2550 = 2800 \text{ ml}$$

6 These calculations may be facilitated by use of the line chart (Fig. 54)

Precautions

1 With small subjects it may be desirable to avoid toxic effects by decreasing the inspired CO to between 150 and 200 ml.

3 True Blood Volume

Reference

Same as for dye method and carbon monoxide method for estimating blood volume.

Principle

The dye method gives a reliable estimate of circulating plasma volume. The carbon monoxide estimates reliably the circulating red cell mass. Calculations of blood volume by either method involves empirical corrections of the hematocrit of peripheral blood to make it represent total blood hematocrit. By addition of the plasma volume as determined by the dye method and the red cell volume as determined by the carbon monoxide method the true blood volume is calculated.

Apparatus

1. Apparatus for plasma volume by the dye method.
2. Apparatus for red cell volume by the carbon monoxide method.

Reagents

1. Reagents for the dye method.
2. Reagents for the carbon monoxide method.

Procedure

- 1 Estimate plasma volume by the dye method.
- 2 Estimate red cell volume by the carbon monoxide method

Calculation

' True blood volume ' = ml plasma volume + ml total red cell volume

Example

By the dye method, the plasma volume was 3780 ml By the carbon monoxide method the circulating red cell volume was 2550 ml.

' True blood volume ' = 3780 + 2550 = 6330

Precautions

Same as for individual methods

4 Extracellular Fluid (Thiocyanate Space)**References**

- 1 Crandall L. A and Anderson M. X. Estimation of the State of Hydration of the Body by the Amount of Water Available for the Solution of Sodium Thiocyanate *Am J Digest Dis & Nutrition* 1 126 131 1934
- 2 Barker M. H. The Blood Cyanates in the Treatment of Hypertension *J. A. M. A.* 106 762 767 (March) 1936

Principle

It is alleged that when thiocyanate is injected into the blood stream it becomes distributed uniformly in the interstitial spaces, but not in the cellular mass and that its concentration in plasma after equilibrium is reached = the same as that in the extracellular fluid.

Apparatus

- 1 Sterile needles and syringes for intravenous injection
- 2 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer
- 3 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm.
- 4 A quantity of 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes with No 1 solid rubber stoppers
- 5 Syringe pipettes 1 ml and 5 ml.
- 6 An electric centrifuge

Reagents

- 1 Trichloroacetic acid a 10% solution
- 2 Ferric nitrate solution. Dissolve 50 gm of ferric nitrate crystals in 600 ml of water. Add 25 ml of concentrated nitric acid and make up to 1000 ml with distilled water
- 3 Thiocyanate standard solution (Use potassium or sodium) : Dissolve 1 gm KCNS in 800 ml of distilled water. Titrate a 20 ml portion of a silver nitrate solution (2.9195 gm/1000 ml water) acidified with 5 ml of conc HNO_3 with the KCNS solution using ferric ammonium sulfate as the indicator. Calculate the amount of water necessary to add to the KCNS solution to make 20 ml equivalent to 20 ml of silver nitrate solution. Add the amount of distilled water and mix thoroughly (1 mg/ml)
- 4 Thiocyanate for injection. Dissolve 30 gm KCNS in 1000 ml redistilled water. Shake vigorously to dissolve and filter carefully through a sintered glass filter. Store about 11 ml in a 15 ml ampoule and seal. 10 ml = 0.3 gm KCNS . Each batch must be analyzed for KCNS
- 5 Redistilled water

Procedure—Collection of Samples

- 1 Draw 15 ml of blood for a control sample
- 2 Now slowly inject intravenously 10 ml of KCNS equivalent to 0.3 gm KCNS and record the time
- 3 Draw specimens of blood at 1 hour 3 hours and at 24 hours for analysis
- 4 Just before injection of KCNS have the subject empty his bladder. Discard this specimen. For the next 24 hours collect urine quantitatively in three separate bottles the first for the period 0 to 1 hour the second for the period 1 to 3 hours and the third for the period 3 to 24 hours
- 5 Allow each specimen of blood to clot collect serum and analyze the serum and the corresponding urine sample for KCNS

Procedure—Analysis of Serum

- 1 Pipette 5 ml of trichloroacetic acid into a 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tube. Add exactly 5 ml of serum shake vigorously and centrifuge
- 3 Pipette exactly 5 ml of filtrate into a cuvette
- 4 Add 1 ml ferric nitrate solution
- 5 For a blank pipette 11 ml of trichloroacetic acid into a cuvette and add 1 ml ferric nitrate solution
- 6 Set blank at 100% T at 550 mμ and read the unknowns.

Procedure—Analysis of Urine

- 1 Use 5 ml of urine and add 5 ml of trichloroacetic acid
- 2 Mix and pipette 5 ml into a cuvette
- 3 Add 1 ml ferric nitrate and read at 550 mμ
- 4 If reading is too high use smaller volume of urine and add more trichloroacetic acid.

Calibration Curve

- 1 Make up a series of standards so that 5 ml contains from 0.10 to 0.50 mg of KCNS
- 2 Pipette exactly 2.5 ml into a cuvette
- 3 Add 2.5 ml of trichloroacetic acid and 1 ml of ferric nitrate. Mix and read at 550 mμ with the blank set at 100% T
- 4 Plot mg/cuvette vs % T and use this curve in the subsequent calculations.

Calculation—Thiocyanate Concentration

mg KCNS/100 ml serum or urine =

$$\frac{(\text{mg in cuvette}) \times (\text{total dilution}) \times 100}{(\text{mg aliquot}) \times (\text{ml serum or urine used})}$$

Calculation—Extracellular Fluid

kilograms water in extracellular fluid =

$$\frac{\text{ml KCNS injected} - \text{total mg KCNS excreted at time of blood}}{\text{mg KCNS/100 ml serum}}$$

Example

Ten ml of KCNS (0.3 gm) were injected. Blood levels at 1 3 and 24 hours were 7.4 and mg/100 ml. Urine concentrations for the corresponding specimens of urine were 5.15 and 5 mg/100 ml with volumes of 60 00 and 900 ml respectively

kg water in extracellular fluid =

$$\frac{\text{Sample 1} \quad 300 - \left(2 \times \frac{60}{100} \right)}{7 \times 10} = 4.08 \text{ kg}$$

Sample II

$$\frac{300 - \left(25 \times \frac{60}{100}\right) - \left(15 \times \frac{200}{100}\right)}{4 \times 10} = 6.40 \text{ kg}$$

Sample III

$$\frac{300 - \left(25 \times \frac{60}{100}\right) - \left(15 \times \frac{200}{100}\right) - \left(5 \times \frac{900}{100}\right)}{2 \times 10} = 10.5 \text{ kg}$$

Precautions

- 1 This method has never been proved to measure extracellular fluid.
- 2 Thiocyanate is a toxic drug. Do not inject more than 0.3 gm/day. Toxemia may show itself at blood levels over 15 mg/100 ml.

5 Plasma Volume, Blood Volume and Extracellular Fluid, Miscellaneous References**Blood Volume**

- Kelly F. J., Simonsen D. H. and Elman R. Blood Volume Determination in the Human With Red Cells Containing Radioactive Phosphorus (P^{32}) and With Pure Human Albumin. *J. Clin. Investigation* 27: 795-804 (Nov.) 1948.
- Nachman H. M., James III G. W., Moore J. W. and Evans E. L. A Comparative Study of Red Cell Volumes in Human Subjects With Radioactive Phosphorus Tagged Red Cells and T 1824 Dye. *J. Clin. Investigation* 29: 758-764 (Feb.) 1950.
- Nylin G. Blood Volume Determinations With Radioactive Phosphorus. *Brit. Heart J.* 7: 81-84 (April) 1945.
- Reid Allen and Orr M. A Rapid Method for Determining Blood Volumes by the Use of P^{32} Labelled Red Cells. *J. Clin. Investigation* 29: 313-316 (March) 1950.

Cell Volumes

- Gray M. The Use of Fibrinogen in a Rapid Method of Determining Cell Volume. *Am. J. Med. Sc.* 207: 29-39 (Jan.) 1944.

Extracellular Fluid

- Schwartz I. L. Measurement of Extracellular Fluid by Means of Constant Infusion Technique Without Collection of Urine. *Am. J. Physiol.* 160: 565-571 (March) 1950.

Sodium Test

- Green D. M. and Farah A. Influence of Sodium Load on Sodium Excretion. *Am. J. Physiol.* 158: 444-456 (Sept.) 1949.

T 1824

- Miller A. T., Jr. Excretion of the Blue Dye T 1824 in the Bile. *Am. J. Physiol.* 151: 229-233 (Nov.) 1944.

SECTION VII

STUDIES IN THE FIELD

A GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The conduct of scientific surveys is far easier now than it was during most of World War II. When one of the present authors wrote a paper in 1945 summarizing the experience of his colleagues during the war (Johnson R. E. *A Field Nutritional Laboratory* War Medicine 7: 222-226 April 1945) the scientist had to struggle against difficulties of transportation, lack of permanent construction in many areas to house a field laboratory, the necessity to be self-supporting in almost all respects, and the carrying out of chemical analyses under primitive conditions.

In addition, there was a justifiable suspicion in the minds of many military men in the field that research scientists were a hindrance, not a help, and their cooperation was often given only grudgingly. By comparison, the situation now is almost easy. Everywhere in the world are permanent installations which can be reached in a few days by air. Samples for analysis can be frozen and delivered to a well equipped base laboratory. Supplies can be obtained by air from the United States very quickly. Finally, most military men realize that the scientists are a help, not a hindrance, and welcome their presence—provided they do not get in the way too much. The construction of well equipped base laboratories in important areas has been an important step for the biological scientist. Examples are the Canadian laboratory at Fort Churchill, the U. S. Air Force Laboratory at Ladd Air Force Base, and the laboratory supported at Point Barrow by the U. S. Navy.

In spite of the great improvement in conditions, certain basic difficulties remain, of which separation from one's family and friends is one of the most important. The collection, storage, handling, and analysis of specimens is still not as easy in the field as it is in university laboratories. Recruitment of able workers presents another difficulty, because in many universities field studies are not regarded as legitimate academic pursuits. It is still the opinion of the present authors that some phenomena can be studied realistically only in the field, whatever the difficulties that must be overcome.

II LABORATORY AND CLINICAL METHODS

There is no handbook in existence covering field methods for the medical sciences. Each worker must develop his own methods. The present writers feel that field methods should be suitable for use in extremes of temperature.

and barometric pressure, should be as simple as is consistent with reliability should require the use only of rugged apparatus, and should be rapid enough to handle the large number of specimens which field surveys almost always accumulate. Listed below are selected references for chemical and clinical procedures which are adaptable for medical surveys in the field.

1 *Chemical and Clinical Laboratory Methods*

- a Many of the methods described in the present manual have been labelled specifically as field methods. Most of the other methods in the present manual have been used in the field with success.
- b Bessey and Lowry have devised a system of blood and urine analysis requiring only very small samples. Their excellent methods require highly trained technicians and rather expensive apparatus but are otherwise extremely useful for survey work because of their reliability and rapidity.

Use of the Beckman Spectrophotometer for Ultramicro Methods

Lowry O H and Bessey O A. The Adaptation of the Beckman Spectrophotometer to Measurements on Minute Quantities of Biological Materials. *J Biol. Chem.* 163 633 639 (June) 1946

Serum Protein

Lowry O H and Hunter T H. Determination of Serum Protein Concentration With a Gradient Tube. *J Biol. Chem.* 159 465 475 (July) 1945

Phosphatase

Bessey O A, Lowry O H and Brock M J. Method for the Determination of Alkaline Phosphatase With Five Cubic Millimeters of Serum. *J Biol. Chem.* 164 3 13-9 (July) 1946

Inorganic Phosphate

Lowry O H and Lopez J. The Determination of Inorganic Phosphate in the Presence of Labile Phosphate Esters. *J Biol. Chem.* 162 421 428 (March) 1946

Vitamin A

Bessey, O A, Lowry O H, Brock M J and Lopez J A. The Determination of Vitamin A and Carotene in Small Quantities of Blood Serum. *J Biol. Chem.* 166 177 188 (Nov) 1946

Vitamin C

Lowry O H, Lopez J A, and Bessey O A. The Determination of Ascorbic Acid in Small Amounts of Blood Serum. *J Biol. Chem.* 160 609 615 (Oct) 1945

Bessey O A. A Method for the Determination of Small Quantities of Ascorbic Acid and Dehydroascorbic Acid in Turbid and Colored Solutions in the Presence of Other Reducing Substances. *J Biol. Chem.* 126 771 784 (Dec) 1938

Riboflavin

Lowry O H, Bessey O A and Hull T Z. Method for the Determination of Five tenths to Two Millimicrograms of Riboflavin. *J Biol. Chem.* 155 71 77 (Sept) 1944.

2 *Clinical Diagnosis*

The Food and Nutrition Board has produced a monograph entitled *Nutrition Surveys—Their Techniques and Value*. Bulletin of the National Research Council No 17 May 1949. The chapter on clinical diagnosis presents a critical discussion of the clinical study of populations.

C TREADMILL TEST OF PHYSICAL FITNESS FOR HARD MUSCULAR WORK

Reference

Johnson R E, Brouha L and Darling R C A Test of Physical Fitness for Strenuous Exertion *Rev Canad de Biol* 1: 491-53 (June) 1946

Principle

This test is a simple rapid means of assessing the physical fitness of normal healthy men for hard muscular work. Any such test must be judged by the following considerations:

1. Athletes in training should on the average get much better scores than men not training.
2. For a large group of untrained men the scores should range widely from bad to good.
3. Normal men not in training should be able to improve their scores by following a program of hard physical work.
4. In the case of any given man the score should in general agree with the judgment of trained observers with the results of other reliable tests and most important of all with the man's demonstrated physical capacities in actual performance of hard work.

As judged by these criteria certain tests now in common use are of little value in assessing fitness for hard muscular work. In our experience when hard muscular work is in question one must expose the subject to hard work in order to test him accurately. This is chiefly because the easier the work the smaller and less regular are the differences between the fit and the unfit. Satisfactory assessment of a man's fitness for hard and prolonged work such as marching long distances can be made by subjecting him to a standard exhausting exercise and taking into account only two factors: the length of time he can sustain it and his pulse rate in recovery after the work is over.

Apparatus

1. A motor driven treadmill
2. An accurate stopwatch

Procedure

1. The subject warms up by walking uphill for 5 minutes at 3.5 miles per hour at a grade of 8.0%.
2. He sits on a chair for 5 minutes.
3. At a signal he begins to run uphill at a speed of 7 miles per hour and a grade of 8.0%. If not exhausted he is stopped at 3 minutes. The duration of the run is noted to the nearest second.
4. Commence measuring the time of recovery from the time when he stops.
5. Count the radial pulses from 1 to 15, from 2 to 25 and from 4 to 45 minutes of recovery.

Calculation

Arbitrary score of physical fitness =

$$\frac{(\text{seconds the subject ran}) \times (100)}{(\text{sum of three half-minute pulse rates})}$$

Example

The subject ran 3 minutes 45 seconds. His three half-minute pulse rates were 85, 90 and 60 respectively.

1. Arbitrary score of physical fitness =

$$\frac{5 \times 100}{85 + 90 + 60} = 5$$

The line chart Fig. 5 facilitates these computations.

LINE CHART FOR CALCULATING INDEX OF PHYSICAL FITNESS! (HARVARD FATIGUE LABORATORY)

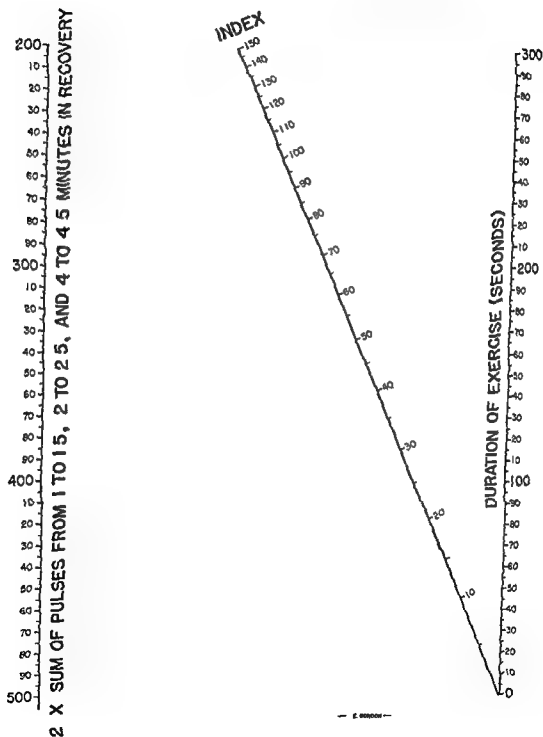


Fig. 55—Calculation of index of physical fitness for hard muscular work in the treadmill, peck and step tests.

Interpretation

From measurements on several hundreds of men of military age of all degrees of fitness the following interpretation of scores is made
 A poor score is below 40
 An average score is from 41 to 75
 A good score is from 76 to 90
 A superior score is above 90

Precautions

1 Any test involving the cooperation of the subject requires the will to work anatomical adequacy to do the work and physiological fitness for the task. A poor score may mean that any one of the three factors or a combination of them has been weak

D FIELD TESTS OF PHYSICAL FITNESS

1 The Pack Test

Reference

Same as for the treadmill test

Principle

For field purposes the treadmill is not usually available. Therefore a modified test is recommended based on the same general principle. A test that involves hard work. Some of the accuracy of the treadmill is necessarily sacrificed for the sake of field application.

Apparatus

- 1 Scales accurate to one pound
- 2 One watch preferably a stop watch
- 3 One haversack for each subject
- 4 A series of bags of metal rock or sand weighing 10 lb and 1 pound
- 5 Stepping platform similar to that of the McCordy Larson test. In practice standard gymnasium stools 16 high are very good when placed as close as possible to the standard gymnasium stall bars. Other platforms can be improvised from boxes or chairs 16 high. Ladders and broomsticks can be used for hand hold.
- 6 One platform is needed for each subject

Procedure for Testing One Subject

- 1 Weigh the subject stripped or if he is clothed subtract the approximate weight of clothes usually about pounds
- Load the pack according to the man's weight as follows

MAN'S WEIGHT STRIPPED

TOTAL PACK WEIGHT

- Below 100 pounds
- 100 135 pounds
- 135 150 pounds
- 150 165 pounds
- 165 180 pounds
- 180 195 pounds
- 195 210 pounds
- Over 210 pounds

- 40 pounds
- 45 pounds
- 50 pounds
- 55 pounds
- 60 pounds
- 65 pounds
- 70 pounds
- 75 pounds

Note that the pack weight is approximately 1/3 of the subject's body weight.)
 Be sure that the subject wears a shirt or some other protect on to prevent chafing
 on the shoulders and back. Help him put on the appropriate pack

LINE CHART FOR CALCULATING INDEX OF PHYSICAL FITNESS: (HARVARD FATIGUE LABORATORY)

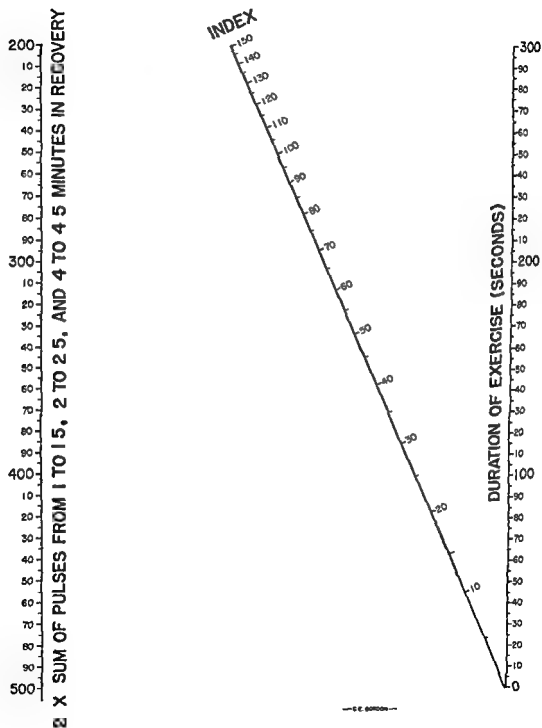


Fig. 13.—Calculation of index of physical fitness for hard muscular work in the treadmill, pack and step tests.

4. The times mentioned should be followed as strictly as possible
- Observers unaccustomed to counting the pulse rate in exercise must practice counting rapid pulses before they can be expected to obtain accurate results.

2 The Step Test

Reference

- 1 Brouha L Graybiel A and Heath C W *Rev Canad de biol* 2 86 91 1943
- Johnson H E Crowlev L V Dossy E A Jr Swann H L Price J I Saffell W H and James E O *Test of Operational Rating Type E* pages 67 70 (March) 1947 Medical Nutrition Laboratory Report #12

Principle

The present test is recommended for use only when it is impossible to use one of the more reliable tests. The step test was devised for speed and simplicity of use with large numbers of subjects but a great deal of accuracy has been sacrificed. The 9 inch step is so high that it tends to penalize short men and also to involve to some extent the factor of agility as well as general fitness. Consequently gross errors may sometimes be made in judging very short or clumsy men. However if a lower step is used the work is too easy which so increases the number of errors and impairs the value of the test.

Apparatus

- 1 One watch preferably a stop watch for each observer
- A stepping platform 11 inches high (plus or minus not more than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch). This should be sturdily constructed so as not to give when stepped on. It should be at least 14 inches from front to back. When many men are to use the same step simultaneously it should be long enough to allow at least 30 inches for each man. These 30 inch spaces should be marked off. Standard gymnasium stools if adjusted to 9 inches in height are good.
- 3 A device for keeping rhythm. The subjects must go up and down every two seconds. If a metronome is used it must be a good one that will work without error for 5 minutes. We have used satisfactorily a simple pendulum consisting of a weight on a 39 inch string. It must be calibrated daily.

Procedure

- 1 As many subjects as there are observe a line up in front of the stepping platform. They should be stripped to the underwear and should wear rubber soled shoes or no shoes at all. One observer calls the rhythm. At the signal Start! each subject places one foot on the platform steps up placing both feet on the platform straightens the legs and back and immediately steps down again bringing down first the same foot he placed up first. At exactly two second intervals the signal Up! is given and rhythm is maintained by giving the count UP! - 2 - 3 - 4 - UP! - 2 - 3 - 4 etc. The subject should lead off with the same foot each time and not try to alternate feet. However one or two changes of lead off during the test are immaterial. He must not touch anything with his hands but may move his arms freely.
- 3 Begin counting the time when the subject starts exercising and exercise him for five minutes continuously unless he stops before then from exhaustion. If he falls behind stop him after he has been unable to keep up the pace for 10 seconds. Note the duration of his effort to the nearest second. All men are stopped at 5 minutes if they can go that long.
- 4 When the subject stops start counting the time and have him sit quietly on a chair.

4. Exercise the subject as follows: Have him grasp with both hands a horizontal bar at the height of his shoulders or lightly lower and stand with both feet on the floor. The distance between hands should be about the width of his shoulders. At the signal "UP" he places one foot on the stool, steps up placing both feet on the stool straightens his legs and back and immediately steps down again bringing down first the same foot he put up first, and retaining his hold on the horizontal bar. Every two seconds the signal "UP" is given and the subject steps up and then down. He should lead off with the same foot each time and not try to alternate the feet. However one or two changes of "lead off" in the course of the test are immaterial.
- Begin counting the time when the subject starts and exercise him for five minutes continuously unless he stops from exhaustion before then. If he falls behind, stop him after he has been unable to keep the pace for twenty seconds. Note the duration of the exercise to the nearest second.
6. When he stops start counting the time then take off the pack and have him sit on a stool or chair.
7. Count and record the pulse during each of the following intervals: 1 to 15°, to 25° and 4 to 45 minutes after he stops working. The counts must be limited precisely to these intervals. The whole test as completed in ten minutes. No other observations are necessary.

Procedure for Testing a Large Group

1. Procure as many stop watches as there are observers.
2. Procure 14 packs and load them as follows:
 - 1 pack weighing 40 pounds for subjects weighing below 100 pounds
 - 2 packs weighing 45 pounds for subjects weighing 100-135 pounds
 - 3 packs weighing 50 pounds for subjects weighing 135-150 pounds
 - 3 packs weighing 55 pounds for subjects weighing 150-165 pounds
 - 2 packs weighing 60 pounds for subjects weighing 165-180 pounds
 - 1 pack weighing 65 pounds for subjects weighing 180-195 pounds
 - 1 pack weighing 70 pounds for subjects weighing 195-210 pounds
 - 1 pack weighing 75 pounds for subjects weighing above 210 pounds
3. Assign two men the task of weighing the subjects giving them packs and acting as secretaries. Start as many subjects exercising all at the same time as there are observers to count the pulse. One observer stands behind each subject making sure that he has the proper pack seeing that he keeps the rhythm timing the duration of his effort taking off his pack having him sit down counting his pulse and telling them to the secretaries. One of the observers gives the signal "Start!" and then calls "UP!" every two seconds. With six observers it is possible to test about thirty-six subjects every hour.

Calculation, Example Interpretation

Same as for treadmill test

Precautions

1. The height of the platforms should be 16" with an outside tolerance of 0.5"
2. The handhold should be a horizontal bar at shoulder height. If it is too high the subject will find the work too easy. If it is too low he will find it awkward. Vertical bars can be used but the subject must keep his hands at the level of his shoulders throughout the exercise.
3. The rhythm should be maintained as closely as possible. It is easy to distinguish between those who are unable to keep the pace because of poor sense of rhythm and those who fall behind because of exhaustion. Only the latter should be stopped. Those with a poor sense of rhythm can be kept to the pace by a tap on the elbow every two seconds.

E SURVEYS OF FOOD CONSUMPTION

Reference

- 1 Berryman G H and Chatfield C Short Method of Calculating Nutritive Value of Diets *J Nutrition* 25 :327 (Jan.) 1943
- 2 Berryman G H and Howe P E Short Method of Calculating Nutritive Value of Diets *J Nutrition* 27 :31-40 (Mar) 1944

Principle

In the field it is often necessary to estimate the average food and nutrient consumption of a group. For this purpose a short survey is done over a period of ten days. The total food consumption (by groups) is calculated from inventory data corrected for plate and kitchen waste. The total nutrient consumption is calculated by adding together the nutrients contributed by each food group.

Apparatus and Supplies

- 1 Scales folding 300 lb capacity
- 2 Hand tally counter
- 3 Clip board
- 4 Ruler
- 5 At least ten 5 gallon cans or equivalent containers for segregation and weighing of waste both kitchen and plate
- 6 Blotter rule
- 7 Adding or calculating machine
- 8 Essential books
 - a Handbook of Chemistry and Physics
 - b National Research Council Tables of Food Composition
 - c Table for converting weights to pounds per man per day
 - d. Bowes and Church or other standard book on food composition
 - e Master Menu
 - f TAI 10 412 (Army Rations)
- 9 Pads of paper 8 x 10½
- 10 Small notebooks one for each observer
- 11 Pencils assorted
- 12 Paper graph one pad
- 13 Clips paper
- 14 8 x 4½ bibliography cards
- 15 Proper forms
- 16 Rubber bands
- 17 One dozen manila folders 8 x 10½

Reagents

None unless it is proposed to collect specimens of food. If so see sections on collection of specimens and the individual methods contemplated.

Procedure

- 1 It is recommended that the survey be planned to cover a complete 10 day period. Shorter periods may give misleading and erroneous results.
- 2 Inventory and Issue. A complete inventory is made of food stores in the mess on the night before each survey and on the night after the last meal of each survey. All items issued during the survey are weighed and recorded.
- 3 Head Count. At each meal one observer is stationed near the place where trays are returned. Each man is tallied on a hand counter as he hands in his tray. Meals at odd hours especially at night are recorded by night cook and baker.
- 4 Kitchen and Plate Waste. Food groups are segregated and weighed in the following categories: meats fish and poultry eggs milk products butter other

- Beginning exactly one minute after he stops count the number of heart beats for exactly 30 seconds. The base of the neck is the easiest place to find the pulse after exercise.
- 6 Record the duration of effort and the number of heart beats in the 30 second period beginning one minute after he stops. No other observations are necessary.

Calculation

A simplified table is used for scoring (Table 2.) From the duration of effort (left hand vertical column) and the heart beats (top horizontal column) read directly the arbitrary score.

Example

A subject lasted 3 minutes and 35 seconds. His pulse from 1 to 1½ minutes in recovery was 79 beats in the 30 seconds. From the table his score was 53.

Interpretation

This test is easier to perform than either the 'treadmill' or 'park' tests.

For normal healthy young men

Poor is below 50,

Average is 50 through 80,

Good is above 80.

Precautions

- 1 The platform must be 20 inches high.
- 2 The rhythm should be maintained as closely as possible. It is easy to distinguish between those unable to keep pace from exhaustion and those who merely have a poor sense of rhythm. Only exhausted men should be stopped before five minutes. Those with a poor sense of rhythm can be kept to the pace by a tap on the elbow every 2 seconds.
- 3 Times must be followed strictly.
- 4 The subjects must straighten legs and back at each step.
- 5 Observers unaccustomed to counting rapid pulses must practice before they can be expected to obtain accurate results.

TABLE 2°

SCORING THE 'STEP TEST' OF PHYSICAL FITNESS

Instructions for using the table: (1) Find the appropriate line for duration of effort (°) then find the appropriate column of the pulse count (3) read off the score where the line and the column intersect.

DURATION OF EFFORT MINS	TOTAL HEART BEATS 1 MIN TO 1½ MIN IN RECOVERY											
	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95
	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70
	44	49	54	59	64	69	74	79	84	89	94	99
	SCORE (ARBITRARY UNITS)											
0 to ½	8	6	5	5	4	4	4	4	3	3	3	3
½ to 1	19	17	16	14	13	12	11	11	10	9	9	8
1 to 1½	22	29	26	24	22	20	19	18	17	16	15	14
1½ to 2	45	41	38	34	31	29	27	25	23	22	21	20
2 to 2½	58	57	47	43	40	36	34	32	30	28	27	25
2½ to 3	71	64	58	53	48	45	42	40	37	34	33	31
3 to 3½	81	75	68	62	57	53	49	46	43	41	39	37
3½ to 4	97	87	79	72	66	61	57	53	50	47	45	4
4 to 4½	110	98	89	82	75	70	65	61	57	54	51	48
4½ to 5	123	110	100	91	84	77	72	68	63	60	57	54
5	129	116	105	96	88	82	76	71	67	63	60	56

E SURVEYS OF FOOD CONSUMPTION

Reference

- 1 Berryman G H and Chatfield C Short Method of Calculating Nutritive Value of Diets *J Nutrition* 25 3-7 (Jan) 1943
- 2 Berryman G H and Howe P E Short Method of Calculating Nutritive Value of Diets *J Nutrition* 27 31-40 (Mar) 1944

Principle

In the field it is often necessary to estimate the average food and nutrient consumption of a group. For this purpose a short survey is done over a period of ten days. The total food consumption (by groups) is calculated from inventory data corrected for plate and kitchen waste. The total nutrient consumption is calculated by adding together the nutrients contributed by each food group.

Apparatus and Supplies

- 1 Scales folding 300 lb capacity
- 2 Hand tally counter
- 3 Clip board
- 4 Ruler
- 5 At least ten 5 gallon cans or equivalent containers for segregation and weighing of waste both kitchen and plate
- 6 Slide rule
- 7 Adding or calculating machine
- 8 Essential books
 - a Handbook of Chemistry and Physics
 - b National Research Council Tables of Food Composition
 - c Table for converting weights to pounds per man per day
 - d Bowes and Church or other standard book on food composition
 - e Master Menu
 - f TM 10-412 (Army Recipes)
- 9 Pads of paper 8 x 10 1/2
- 10 Small notebooks one for each observer
- 11 Pencils assorted
- 12 Paper graph one pad
- 13 Clips paper
- 14 3 x 4 1/2 bibliography cards
- 15 Proper forms
- 16 Rubber bands
- 17 One dozen manila folders 8 x 10 1/2

Reagents

None unless it is proposed to collect specimens of food. If so see sections on collection of specimens and the individual methods contemplated.

Procedure

- 1 It is recommended that the survey be planned to cover a complete 10 day period. Shorter periods may give misleading and erroneous results.
- 2 Inventory and Issue. A complete inventory is made of food stores in the mess on the night before each survey and on the night after the last meal of each survey. All items issued during the survey are weighed and recorded.
- 3 Head Count. At each meal one observer is stationed near the place where trays are returned. Each man is tallied on a hand counter as he hands in his tray. Meals at odd hours especially at night are recorded by night cook and baker.
- 4 Kitchen and Plate Waste. Food groups are segregated and weighed in the following categories: meats, fish and poultry, eggs, milk products, butter, other.

- 5 Beginning exactly one minute after he stops count the number of heart beats for exactly 30 seconds. The base of the neck is the easiest place to find the pulse after exercise
- 6 Record the duration of effort and the number of heart beats in the 30 second period beginning one minute after he stops. No other observations are necessary

Calculation

A simplified table is used for scoring (Table 23). From the duration of effort (left hand vertical column) and the heart beats (top horizontal column) read directly the arbitrary score.

Example

A subject lasted 3 minutes and 35 seconds. His pulse from 1 to 1½ minutes in recovery was 80 beats in the 30 seconds. From the table his score was 80.

Interpretation

This test is easier to perform than either the "treadmill" or "pack" tests.

For normal, healthy young men

Poor is below 50

Average is 50 through 80

Good is above 80

Precautions

- 1 The platform must be 20 inches high
- 2 The rhythm should be maintained as closely as possible. It is easy to distinguish between those unable to keep pace from exhaustion and those who merely have a poor sense of rhythm. Only exhausted men should be stopped before five minutes. Those with a poor sense of rhythm can be kept to the pace by a tap on the elbow every 2 seconds.
- 3 Times must be followed strictly
- 4 The subjects must straighten legs and back at each step
- 5 Observers unaccustomed to counting rapid pulses must practice before they can be expected to obtain accurate results

TABLE 23
SCORING THE STEP TEST OF PHYSICAL FITNESS

Instructions for using the table: (1) Find the appropriate line for duration of effort (2) then find the appropriate column of the pulse count (3) read off the score where the line and the column intersect

DURATION OF EFFORT MINS	TOTAL HEART BEATS 1 MIN TO 1½ MIN IN RECOVERY											
	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95
	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO
	44	49	54	59	64	69	74	79	84	89	94	99
SCORE (ARBITRARY UNITS)												
0 to ½	6	6	5	5	4	4	4	4	3	3	3	3
½ to 1	10	17	16	14	13	12	11	11	10	9	9	8
1 to 1½	12	29	26	24	22	20	19	18	17	16	15	14
1½ to 2	45	41	38	34	31	29	27	25	23	22	21	20
2 to 2½	58	52	47	43	40	36	34	32	30	28	27	25
2½ to 3	71	64	58	53	48	45	42	39	37	34	33	31
3 to 3½	84	75	68	62	57	53	49	46	43	41	39	37
3½ to 4	97	87	79	72	66	61	57	53	50	47	45	4
4 to 4½	110	98	89	82	75	70	65	61	57	54	51	48
4½ to 5	123	110	100	91	84	77	72	68	63	60	57	54
5	139	116	105	96	88	8	76	71	67	63	60	56

E SURVEYS OF FOOD CONSUMPTION

Reference

- 1 Berryman G H and Chatfield C Short Method of Calculating Nutritive Value of Diets *J Nutrition* 25 23-27 (Jan) 1943
- 2 Berryman G H and Howe P E Short Method of Calculating Nutritive Value of Diets *J Nutrition* 27 31-40 (Mar) 1944

Principle

In the field it is often necessary to estimate the average food and nutrient consumption of a group. For this purpose a short survey is done over a period of ten days. The total food consumption (by groups) is calculated from inventory data corrected for plate and kitchen waste. The total nutrient consumption is calculated by adding together the nutrients contributed by each food group.

Apparatus and Supplies

- 1 Scales folding 300 lb capacity
- 2 Hand tally counter
- 3 Chip board
- 4 Ruler
- 5 At least ten 5 gallon cans or equivalent containers for segregation and weighing of waste both kitchen and plate
- 6 Slide rule
- 7 Adding or calculating machine
- 8 Essential books
 - a Handbook of Chemistry and Physics
 - b National Research Council Tables of Food Composition
 - c Table for converting weights to pounds per man per day
 - d Bowes and Church or other standard book on food composition
 - e Master Menu
 - f TM 10-412 (Army Recipes)
- 9 Pads of paper 8 x 10 1/2
- 10 Small notebooks one for each observer
- 11 Pencils assorted
- 12 Paper graph one pad
- 13 Clips paper
- 14 8 x 4 1/2 bibliography cards
- 15 Proper forms
- 16 Rubber bands
- 17 One dozen manila folders 11 x 16 1/2

Reagents

None unless it is proposed to collect specimens of food. If so see sections on collection of specimens and the individual methods contemplated.

Procedure

- 1 It is recommended that the survey be planned to cover a complete 10 day period. Shorter periods may give misleading and erroneous results.
- 2 Inventory and Issue. A complete inventory is made of food stores in the mess on the night before each survey and on the night after the last meal of each survey. All items issued during the survey are weighed and recorded.
- 3 Head Count. At each meal one observer is stationed near the place where trays are returned. Each man is tallied on a hand counter as he hands in his tray. Meals at odd hours especially at night are recorded by night cook and baker.
- 4 Kitchen and Plate Waste. Food groups are segregated and weighed in the following categories: meats, fish and poultry, eggs, milk products, butter, other.

- Beginning exactly one minute after he stops count the number of heart beats for exactly 30 seconds. The base of the neck is the easiest place to find the pulse after exercise.
- Record the duration of effort and the number of heart beats in the 30 second period beginning one minute after he stops. No other observations are necessary.

Calculation

A simplified table is used for scoring (Table 22). From the duration of effort (left hand vertical column) and the heart beats (top horizontal column) read directly the arbitrary score.

Example

A subject lasted 3 minutes and 35 seconds. His pulse from 1 to 1½ minutes in recovery was 79 beats in the 30 seconds. From the table his score was ■■.

Interpretation

This test is easier to perform than either the "treadmill" or "puck" tests. For normal, healthy young men:

Poor is below 30

Average is 50 through 80

Good is above 80

Precautions

- The platform must be 20 inches high.
- The rhythm should be maintained as closely as possible. It is easy to distinguish between those unable to keep pace from exhaustion and those who merely have a poor sense of rhythm. Only exhausted men should be stopped before five minutes. Those with a poor sense of rhythm can be kept to the pace by a tap on the elbow every 2 seconds.
- Times must be followed strictly.
- The subjects must straighten legs and back at each step.
- Observers unaccustomed to counting rapid pulses must practice before they can be expected to obtain accurate results.

TABLE 22

SCORING THE STEP TEST OF PHYSICAL FITNESS

Instructions for using the table: (1) Find the appropriate line for duration of effort () then find the appropriate column of the pulse count (3) read off the score where the line and the column intersect.

DURATION OF EFFORT MINS	TOTAL HEART BEATS 1 MIN TO 1½ MIN IN RECOVERY															
	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95				
	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	TO	
	44	49	54	59	64	69	74	79	84	89	94	99				
SCORE (ARBITRARY UNITS)																
0 to ½	6	6	5	5	4	4	4	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
½ to 1	19	17	16	14	13	12	11	11	10	9	9	8	8	8	8	8
1 to 1½	30	29	26	24	22	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	14	13	13	13
1½ to 2	45	41	38	34	31	29	27	25	23	22	21	20	20	19	19	19
2 to 2½	58	52	47	43	40	36	34	32	30	28	27	26	26	25	25	25
2½ to 3	71	64	58	53	48	45	42	39	37	34	33	31	31	30	30	30
3 to 3½	84	75	68	62	57	53	49	46	43	41	39	37	37	36	36	36
3½ to 4	97	87	79	72	66	61	57	53	50	47	45	43	43	42	42	42
4 to 4½	110	98	89	82	75	70	65	61	57	54	51	49	49	48	48	48
4½ to 5	123	110	100	91	84	77	72	68	64	60	57	54	54	53	53	53
5	136	123	116	105	96	88	82	78	74	70	66	63	63	62	62	62

■ SURVEYS OF FOOD CONSUMPTION

Reference

- 1 Berryman H H. and Chatfield C Short Method of Calculating Nutritive Value of Diets *J Nutrition* 25 43-7 (Jan) 1943
- 2 Berryman H H. and Howe P E Short Method of Calculating Nutritive Value of Diets *J Nutrition* 27 231-240 (Mar) 1944.

Principle

In the field it is often necessary to estimate the average food and nutrient consumption of a group. For this purpose a short survey is done over a period of ten days. The total food consumption (by groups) is calculated from inventory data corrected for plate and kitchen waste. The total nutrient consumption is calculated by adding together the nutrients contributed by each food group.

Apparatus and Supplies

- 1 Scales folding 300 lb capacity
- 2 Hand tally counter
- 3 Chip board.
- 4 Ruler
- 5 At least ten 5 gallon cans or equivalent containers for segregation and weighing of waste both kitchen and plate
- 6 Slide rule
- 7 Adding or calculating machine
- 8 Essential books
 - a Handbook of Chemistry and Physics
 - b National Research Council Tables of Food Composition
 - c Table for converting weights to pounds per man per day
 - d. Bowes and Church or other standard book on food composition
 - e Master Menu
 - f TM 10 412 (Army Recipes)
- 9 Pads of paper 8 x 10½"
- 10 Small notebooks one for each observer
- 11 Pencils assorted.
- 1 Paper graph one pad
- 13 Clips paper
- 14 3 x 4½ bibliography cards
- 15 Proper forms
- 16 Rubber bands
- 17 One dozen manila folders 8 x 10½"

Reagents

None unless it is proposed to collect specimens of food. If so see sections on collection of specimens and the individual methods contemplated.

Procedure

- 1 It is recommended that the survey be planned to cover a complete 10 day period. Shorter periods may give misleading and erroneous results.
- 2 **Inventory and Issue** A complete inventory is made of food stores in the mess on the night before each survey and on the night after the last meal of each survey. All items issued during the survey are weighed and recorded.
- 3 **Head Count** At each meal one observer is stationed near the place where trays are returned. Each man is tallied on a hand counter as he hands in his tray. Meals at odd hours especially at night are recorded by night cook and baker.
- 4 **Kitchen and Plate Waste** Food groups are segregated and weighed in the following categories: meats, fish and poultry, eggs, milk products, butter, other.

- 5 Beginning exactly one minute after he stops count the number of heart beats for exactly 30 seconds The base of the neck is the easiest place to find the pulse after exercise
- 6 Record the duration of effort and the number of heart beats in the 30 second period beginning one minute after he stops No other observations are necessary

Calculation

A simplified table is used for scoring (Table 22) From the duration of effort (left hand vertical column) and the heart beats (top horizontal column) read directly the arbitrary score

Example

A subject lasted 3 minutes and 35 seconds His pulse from 1 to 1½ minutes in recovery was 79 beats in the 30 seconds From the table his score was 66

Interpretation

This test is easier to perform than either the 'treadmill or pack' tests.

For normal healthy young men

Poor is below 50

Average is 60 through 80

Good is above 80

Precautions

- 1 The platform must be 20 inches high
- 2 The rhythm should be maintained as closely as possible It is easy to distinguish between the unable to keep pace from exhaustion and those who merely have a poor sense of rhythm Only exhausted men should be stopped before five minutes Those with a poor sense of rhythm can be kept to the pace by a tap on the elbow every 2 seconds
- 3 Times must be followed strictly
- 4 The subjects must straighten legs and back at each step
- 5 Observers unaccustomed to counting rapid pulses must practice before they can be expected to obtain accurate results

TABLE 22
SCORING THE 'STEP TEST' OF PHYSICAL FITNESS

Instructions for using the table (1) Find the appropriate line for duration of effort (2) then find the appropriate column of the pulse count (3) read off the score where the line and the column intersect

DURATION OF EFFORT MINS	TOTAL HEART BEATS 1 MIN TO 1½ MIN IN RECOVERY													
	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95	100	105
	44	49	54	59	64	69	74	79	84	89	94	99	104	109
	SCORE (ARBITRARY UNITS)													
0 to ½	6	6	5	5	4	4	4	4	3	3	3	3	3	3
½ to 1	19	17	16	14	13	12	11	11	10	9	9	8	8	8
1 to 1½	3	29	26	24	22	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12
1½ to 2	45	41	38	34	31	29	27	25	23	22	21	20	19	18
2 to 2½	53	52	47	43	40	38	34	32	30	28	27	25	24	23
2½ to 3	71	64	58	53	48	45	42	39	37	34	33	31	30	29
3 to 3½	84	75	68	62	57	53	49	46	43	41	39	37	35	34
3½ to 4	97	87	79	72	66	61	57	53	50	47	45	43	41	40
4 to 4½	110	98	89	82	75	70	65	61	57	54	51	48	46	45
4½ to 5	123	110	100	91	84	77	72	68	64	60	57	54	51	50
5	129	116	105	96	88	80	75	71	67	63	60	56	53	52

E SURVEYS OF FOOD CONSUMPTION

Reference

- 1 Berryman G H and Chatfield ■ Short Method of Calculating Nutritive Value of Diets *J Nutrition* 25 327 (Jan.) 1943
- 2 Berryman G H and Howe P E Short Method of Calculating Nutritive Value of Diets *J Nutrition* 27 431 40 (Mar) 1944.

Principle

In the field it is often necessary to estimate the average food and nutrient consumption of a group. For this purpose a short survey is done over a period of ten days. The total food consumption (by groups) is calculated from inventory data corrected for plate and kitchen waste. The total nutrient consumption is calculated by adding together the nutrients contributed by each food group.

Apparatus and Supplies

- 1 Scales folding 300 lb capacity
- 2 Hand tally counter
- 3 Clip board
- 4 Ruler
- 5 At least ten 5 gallon cans or equivalent containers for segregation and weighing of waste both kitchen and plate
- 6 Slide rule
- 7 Adding or calculating machine
- 8 Essential books
 - a *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*
 - b National Research Council Tables of Food Composition
 - c Table for converting weights to pounds per man per day
 - d. *Bowes and Church* or other standard book on food composition
 - e Master Menu
 - f TAI 10 412 (Army Rations)
- 9 Pads of paper 8 x 10 1/2
- 10 Small notebooks one for each observer
- 11 Pencils assorted.
- 1 Paper graph one pad
- 13 Clips paper
- 14 3 x 4 1/2 bibliography cards
- 15 Proper forms
- 16 Rubber bands
- 17 One dozen manila folders 8 x 10 1/2

Reagents

None unless it is proposed to collect specimens of food. If so see sections on collection of specimens and the individual method contemplated.

Procedure

- 1 It is recommended that the survey be planned to cover a complete 10 day period. Shorter periods may give misleading and erroneous results.
Inventory and Issues A complete inventory is made of food stores in the mess on the night before each survey and on the night after the last meal of each survey. All items used during the survey are weighed and recorded.
- 3 Head Count At each meal one observer is stationed near the place where trays are returned. Each man is tallied on a hand counter as he hands in his tray. Meals at odd hours especially at night are recorded by night cook and baker.
4. Kitchen and Plate Waste Food groups are segregated and weighed in the following categories: meats, fish and poultry, eggs, milk products, butter, other

fats sugars and syrups grain products dry legumes and nuts leafy green and yellow vegetables tomatoes citrus fruits white potatoes, other vegetables other fruits dried fruits condiments, and miscellaneous

For the measurement of plate waste a five gallon can is convenient to use for each food group represented in a particular meal. At the end of each meal, each man supervised by an observer segregates his own leftovers according to food groups scraping the food from his tray into the appropriate five gallon can. Kitchen waste is also segregated according to food groups and both plate and kitchen waste are weighed. Trap grease is weighed every day and is counted as fat other.

Calculation

Calculation although tedious is simple in principle

1 Food intake by food groups =

(First inventory + Food issued) minus

(Last inventory + kitchen waste + Plate waste)

The breakdown of kitchen and plate waste into groups is made in accordance with the recipes of the various dishes. The food groups of canned and other items are determined from recipes or standard tables.

2 Nutrient intake by individual nutrients =

(Total food intake, by food groups) \times (Group factor for nutrient)

The food group factors may be calculated from tables of food composition such as Bowes A deP and Church, C F. Food Values of Portions Commonly Used. A deP Bowes Philadelphia (1946), and US Department of Agriculture Miscellaneous Publication No 572. Tables of Food Composition in Terms of Eleven Nutrients prepared by the Bureau of Human Nutrition and Home Economics US Department of Agriculture in cooperation with National Research Council, 1945. Table 23 which follows is a table of nutrient conversion factors used by the Medical Nutrition Laboratory in one of its surveys. Cooking losses may be corrected for when the food group factors are computed.

3 Food or nutrient intake/man/day =

$$\frac{\text{Total food intake or nutrient intake}}{\text{Average number of men messing} \times \text{total days of survey}}$$

TABLE 23

NUTRIENTS PER POUND OF FOOD GROUPS AS PURCHASED

(Based on food prescribed for the Army, May October 1944 and NRC Tables of Food, Composition Third Revised Edition.)

1 UNIT	MEATS ¹ FISH POULTRY	EGGS PORK	MILK ² MILK PRODUCTS	BUTTER	FATS OTHER	SUGARS SYRUPS	CEREALS GRAIN PRODUCTS
Calories/lb	1158	636	46	33.7	3860	1730	146
Protein, gm/lb	59	52	21	3	2	2	49
Fat, gm/lb	102	46	24	268	4.6	0.1	14
Carbohydrate gm/lb	3	3	31	2	4	492	83
Calcium mg/lb	41	218	695	73	1	96	217
Phosphorus mg/lb	666	848	558	73	75	23	491
Iron mg/lb	90	109	05	10	1.2	22	219
Vit. A IU/lb	473	4590	1169	17500	263	4	31
Thiamin mg/lb	0.91	0.43	0.18	0.01	0.04	0.01	1.60
Riboflavin, mg/lb	0.84	1.35	1.00	0.05	0.04	0.01	1.70
Niacin, mg/lb	180	0.3	0.6	0.5	0	0.1	239
Ascorbic acid mg/lb	60	0	60	0	0	20	0

1. Meat values = carcass basis. Lean pork cuts. Calculate them by the long method.
2. Excluding milk products. Rich as to a strain. d by the long method. The values for milk and basis. Do not use milk equivalents for calculation.
3. When liver 8,000 and 12.73 mg riboflavin/lb liver

TABLE III (CONT'D)

NUTRIENT	BEANS OTHER DRY LEGUMES NUTS	VEGETABLES				FRUITS		
		POTATOES WHITE	TOMATOES	LEAFY GREEN AND YELLOW	OTHER	CITRUS	OTHER FRESH	DRIED
Cal	183	25	143	15	185	15	38	1300
Prot	104	8	5	6	6	3	2	11
Fat	55	0	1	1	1	1	08	2
CHO	328	73	8	94	38	35	56	308
Ca	530	4	49	14	90	9	41	200
P	1947	13	115	198	16	61	57	516
Fe	500	27	28	36	7	11	15	184
Vit. A	12	70	5160	11910	809	36	1610	6815
B ₁	030	040	028	025	015	019	011	013
B ₂	150	015	017	06	016	006	030	063
Niacin	239	44	39	17	16	07	14	840
C	60	570	770	610	400	1460	90	80

Example

In Table 4 are listed the significant data for a recent survey in Alaska. The step by step calculations are not shown but only the final data for food consumption and nutrient intake.

Interpretation of Data

If it is desired to compare the results with recommended dietary allowances Table 5 shows the NRC recommended allowances taken from National Research Council Food and Nutrition Board Recommended Dietary Allowances Revised 1943 Reprint and Circular Series No. 19 (Oct.) 1948 and the Department of Army standards from U. S. Department of the Army Army Regulation No. 40-20 Medical Department Nutrition Washington D. C. (28 Oct.) 1947.

Precautions

1. Administrative considerations are important in surveys of food consumption. The kitchen and mess personnel must be cooperative and honest enough to give accurate data of inventory and issue.

TABLE 4

EXAMPLE OF RESULTS OF A TYPICAL SURVEY OF FOOD CONSUMPTION AND NUTRIENT INTAKE IN A SUBARCTIC CAMP

FOOD GROUP	LB. /MAN/DAY	NUTRIENT	AMOUNT
Meats fish poultry	1.9	Calories	1150
Eggs fresh	0.6	Protein gm	149
Milk & Milk Products	1.13	Fat gm	28
Butter	10	Carbohydrate gm	51
Fats other	10	Calcium gm	20
Sugars syrups etc	44	Phosphorus gm	2.3
Cereals	49	Iron mg	6
Legumes	0.01	Vitamin A IU	14000
Vegetables leafy green and yellow	58	Thiamine mg	18
Tomatoes	37	Riboflavin mg	31
Fruits citrus	0	Niacin mg	29
Potatoes white	86	Ascorbic acid mg	113
Vegetables other	0		
Fruits other	51		
Fruits dried	03		
Total pounds	660		
Waste (lbs. kitchen plus plate)	10		

Figures represent average/man/day not including intake outside the mess.

*Cooking losses calculated according to AR 40-250 page 537

fats sugars and syrups grain products, dry legumes and nuts leafy green and yellow vegetables tomatoes citrus fruits, white potatoes other vegetables other fruits, dried fruits condiments, and miscellaneous

For the measurement of plate waste, a five gallon can is convenient to use for each food group represented in a particular meal. At the end of each meal each man supervised by an observer segregates his own leftovers according to food groups scraping the food from his tray into the appropriate five gallon can. Kitchen waste is also segregated according to food groups and both plate and kitchen waste are weighed. Trap grease is weighed every day, and is counted as fat other.

Calculation

Calculation although tedious is simple in principle

1 Food intake, by food groups =

(First inventory + Food issued) minus

(Last inventory + Kitchen waste + Plate waste)

The breakdown of kitchen and plate waste into groups is made in accordance with the recipes of the various dishes. The food groups of canned and other items are determined from recipes or standard tables.

2 Nutrient intake by individual nutrients =

(Total food intake by food groups) \times (Group factor for nutrient)

The food group factors may be calculated from tables of food composition such as Bowes A. deP. and Church, C. F. Food Values of Portions Commonly Used A. deP. Bowes Philadelphia (1946), and US Department of Agriculture Miscellaneous Publication No. 572. Tables of Food Composition in Terms of Eleven Nutrients prepared by the Bureau of Human Nutrition and Home Economics, US Department of Agriculture in cooperation with National Research Council, 1945. Table 23 which follows is a table of nutrient conversion factors used by the Medical Nutrition Laboratory in one of its surveys. Cooking losses may be corrected for when the food group factors are computed.

3 Food or nutrient intake/man/day =

$$\frac{\text{Total food intake or nutrient intake}}{\text{Average number of men messing} \times \text{total days of survey}}$$

TABLE 23

NUTRIENTS PER POUND OF FOOD GROUPS AS PURCHASED

(Based on food prescribed for the Army May October, 1944 and NRC Tables of Food, Composition Third Revised Edition.)

NUTRIENT	MEATS: FISH POULTRY	EGGS FRESH	MILK ² MILK PRODUCTS	BUTTER	FATS OTHER	SUGARS SYRUPS	CEREALS GRAIN PRODUCTS
Calories/lb	1158	636	46	3327	3800	1730	146
Protein gm/lb	59	52	21	5	2	2	49
Fat, gm/lb	102	46	24	363	46	0.1	14
Carbohydrate gm/lb	3	3	31	2	4	431	85
Calcium mg/lb	41	218	695	73	75	13	17
Phosphorus mg/lb	666	848	503	73	75	13	401
Iron mg/lb	90	10.9	0.5	10	12	2	11.9
Vit A IU/lb *	473	4590	1169	17500	263	4	31
Thiamin, mg/lb	0.91	0.43	0.18	0.01	0.04	0.01	1.0
Riboflavin mg/lb *	0.84	1.35	1.00	0.05	0.04	0.01	1.0
Niacin mg/lb	180	0.3	0.6	0.5	0	0.1	13.9
Ascorbic acid mg/lb	60	0	60	0	0	20	0

- 1 Meat values exclude carcass beef and all lean pork cuts. Calculate them by the long method.
- 2 Excluding cheese which is to be calculated by the long method. The values for milk and milk products are on a straight poundage basis. Do not use milk equivalents for calculations.
- 3 When liver is used add 87000 IU Vitamin A and 1.73 mg riboflavin/lb liver.

TABLE 23 (Cont'd)

NUTRIENT	BEANS OTHER DRY LEGUMES NUTS	VEGETABLES				FRUITS		
		POTATOES WHITE	TOMATOES	LEAFY GREEN AND YELLOW	OTHER	CITRUS	OTHER FRESH	DRIED
Cal	183	35	143	19	193	15	38	1310
Prot	104	8	5	6	6	3	-	11
Fat	56	0	1	1	1	1	08	2
CHO	238	73	8	24	38	35	56	308
Ca	530	4	49	194	90	79	41	95
P	1967	213	115	129	167	61	57	516
Fe	350	27	8	36		11	15	182
Vit. A	1	70	5160	11910	308	356	1610	6915
B	030	040	06	025	015	019	011	013
B ₂	150	015	017	06	018	006	030	069
Niacin	239	44	39	17	16	07	14	840
C	60	570	770	610	400	1460	280	980

Example

In Table 24 are listed the significant data for a recent survey in Alaska. The step by step calculations are not shown but only the final data for food consumption and nutrient intake

Interpretation of Data

If it is desired to compare the results with recommended dietary allowances, Table 25 shows the NRC recommended allowances taken from National Research Council Food and Nutrition Board Recommended Dietary Allowances Revised 1948 Reprint and Circular Series No. 19 (Oct.) 1948 and the Department of Army standards from U. S. Department of the Army Army Regulation No. 40-20 Medical Department Nutrition Washington 25 Dec (8 Oct) 1947

Precautions

1. Administrative considerations are important in surveys of food consumption. The kitchen and mess personnel must be cooperative and honest enough to give accurate data of inventory and issue.

TABLE 24

EXAMPLE OF RESULTS OF A TYPICAL SURVEY OF FOOD CONSUMPTION AND NUTRIENT INTAKE IN A SUBARCTIC CAMP

FOOD GROUP	LBS/MAN/DAY	NUTRIENT	AMOUNT
Meats and poultry	1.8	Calories	315
Eggs fresh	6	Protein gm	149
Milk & Milk Products	1.13	Fat gm	76
Butter	10	Carbohydrate gm	61
Fats other	10	Calcium gm	12
Sugars syrups etc.	44	Phosphorus gm	23
Cereals	49	Iron mg	6
Legumes	0.01	Vitamin A IU	14.00
Vegetables leafy green and yellow	58	Thiamine mg	18
Tomatoes	37	Riboflavin mg	31
Fruit citrus	0	Niacin mg	29
Potatoes white	86	Ascorbic acid mg	113
Vegetables other	0		
Fruits other	51		
Fruits dried	03		
Total pounds	660		
Waste (lbs kitchen plus plate)	89		

Figures represent average/man/day not including intake outside the mess.

*Cooking losses calculated according to AR 40-250 page 637

- 2 The trap grease is important being pure fat
 3 The results at best must be regarded as rough estimates This is particularly true of nutrient intake

TABLE 25

RECOMMENDED DAILY DIETARY ALLOWANCES OF THE NATIONAL RESEARCH COUNCIL, FOOD AND NUTRITION BOARD AND ALLOWANCES PRESCRIBED BY AR 40 250

NUTRIENT	FOOD AND NUTRITION BOARD				AR 40 250	
	BOYS 16 20	MEN			SEDENTARY	ACTIVE
		SEDENTARY	ACTIVE	HEAVY WORK		
Calories†	3800	400	3000	4500	3000	3600
Protein gm	100	70	70	70	100	
Calcium gm	14	10	10	10	07	
Iron gm	15	12	12	12		
Vit A IU	6000	5000	5000	5000	5000	
Thiamine mg	17	12	15	18	16	
Riboflavin mg	25	18	18	18	2.2	
Niacin mg	17	12	15	18	16	
Ascorbic acid mg	100	75	75	75	50	
Vit D IU	400	-	-	-	-	

Calorie allowances must be adjusted up or down to meet specific needs. The proper calorie allowance is that which over an extended period of time will maintain body weight or rate of growth at the level most conducive to well being. AR 40 250 prescribes 4100 Calories when prevailing temperatures are sub zero for more than 1 week.

F HEAT BALANCE—CLOTHING

Reference

- Belding, H S, Darling, R C, Robinson, S Turrell E and Griffin, D E Notes on Methods Used at the Fatigue Laboratory to Evaluate the Thermal Insulation Provided by Cold Weather Clothing, Report No 19 under OSRD Contract No OEM CMR 54 Sept 10 1943
 Belding H S Chapter in Clothing Test Methods Edited by Newburgh L H, and Harris, M 1945
 Lee D H K and Lewison, H Clothing for Global Man, Geographical Review 29 181-183 (No 2) 1943

Importance of Clothing in Field Research

In any study of man in relation to his environment, heat balance is important, and clothing usually has to be taken into account in military studies. Clothing affects heat balance through its effects on heat exchange by radiation, conduction, convection, and evaporation. In addition, clothing may affect heat production by its weight or restrictive effects.

In relation to radiation effects, the clothing may be considered as a barrier between the body and the environment. Clothing shuts off about 95% of the radiation from the body which emits in the far infrared. Clothing reflects a variable proportion of light incident upon it.

The thermal resistance of cloth to conduction is for the most part proportional to the amount of still air held in the substance of the cloth and between its layers. For most purposes the nature of the fabric may be neglected and the thermal insulation may be considered as proportional to the total thickness of the clothing assembly. Direct conduction to an external object may be increased by compression and wetting of the clothing.

- ² The trap grease is important being pure fat
³ The results at best must be regarded as rough estimates. This is particularly true of nutrient intake

TABLE 25

RECOMMENDED DAILY DIETARY ALLOWANCES OF THE NATIONAL RESEARCH COUNCIL FOOD AND NUTRITION BOARD AND ALLOWANCES PRESCRIBED BY AR 40 250

NUTRIENT	FOOD AND NUTRITION BOARD				AR 40 250	
	BOYS 16 00	MEN			SEDENTARY	ACTIVE
		SEDENTARY	ACTIVE	HEAVY WORK		
Calories	3000	2400	3000	4500	3000	3600
Protein gm	100	70	70	70	100	
Calcium gm	14	10	10	10		07
Iron, gm	15	12	12	12		
Vit A IU	6000	5000	5000	5000	5000	
Thiamine, mg	17	17	18	18		18
Riboflavin mg	5	18	18	18		22
Niacin mg	17	13	15	18		16
Ascorbic acid mg	100	75	75	75		50
Vit D IU	400					

¹Calorie allowances must be adjusted up or down to meet specific needs. The proper calorie allowance is that which over an extended period of time will maintain body weight or rate of growth at the level most conducive to well being. AR 40 250 prescribes 4400 Calories when prevailing temperatures are sub zero for more than 1 week.

F HEAT BALANCE—CLOTHING

Reference

- Belding H S, Darling, R C, Robinson S, Turrell E, and Griffin, D R : Notes on Methods Used at the Fatigue Laboratory to Evaluate the Thermal Insulation Provided by Cold Weather Clothing, Report No 19 under OSRD Contract No OEMC MR 54, Sept 10, 1943
 Belding, H S Chapter in *Clothing Test Methods*, Edited by Newburgh L H, and Harris M 1945
 Lee, D H A and Lemons H L, *Clothing for Global Man* Geographical Review 29 181 213 (No 2) 1949

Importance of Clothing in Field Research

In any study of man in relation to his environment heat balance is important and clothing usually has to be taken into account in military studies. Clothing affects heat balance through its effects on heat exchange by radiation, conduction, convection, and evaporation. In addition, clothing may affect heat production by its weight or restrictive effects.

In relation to radiation effects the clothing may be considered as a barrier between the body and the environment. Clothing shuts off about 95% of the radiation from the body which emits in the far infrared. Clothing reflects a variable proportion of light incident upon it.

The thermal resistance of cloth to conduction is for the most part proportional to the amount of still air held in the substance of the cloth and between its layers. For most purposes the nature of the fabric may be neglected, and the thermal insulation may be considered as proportional to the total thickness of the clothing assembly. Direct conduction to an external object may be increased by compression and wetting of the clothing.

When the ambient temperature is above skin temperature evaporation is the only avenue of heat loss. At all ambient temperatures evaporation must be taken into account. When the skin is naked heat of vaporization is drawn from the skin itself and the effectiveness of such evaporation is nearly 100%. When clothing is added to the situation there are complications. Under hot conditions other avenues of heat are altered; the efficiency of convection over the skin is reduced; the sweat is evaporated away from the skin, part of the heat of vaporization being taken from the ambient air; the rate of effective evaporation (i.e. the evaporation that cools the skin) is reduced; and when the whole body has been covered with a film of moisture evaporative cooling has reached its maximum. In cold conditions water vapor may recondense in some layer of the clothing assembly, returning some of its heat to the clothing system and increasing the thermal conductivity of the fabric by wetting it. Under all conditions clothing impedes the diffusion of water vapor outward from the skin; textiles differing in this respect one from the other; and the movements of the body increase the transfer of heat in the layers of the clothing assembly by a bellows action.

The Thermal Insulation of Clothes—The Clo Unit

For historical reasons the Clo Unit is important since much of the data on clothing were expressed in terms of Clo units. The unit is defined as the thermal insulation necessary to maintain in comfort a sitting, resting subject in a normally ventilated room (air movement 0 feet per minute) at a temperature of 70° F and a humidity of less than 50% (Gagge, A. I., and associates, *A Practical System of Units for the Description of the Heat Exchange of Man with His Environment*, Science 94: 48-430, June 1941). One Clo unit equals 0.18 C/kilocal/square meter/hour.

Experimentally the thermal insulation of a clothing assembly on a man is calculated from the equation

$$\text{Clo value} = \frac{3.09 (T - T_a)}{H} - I \quad (\text{Equation 1})$$

Where T is average skin temperature °F

T_a is ambient temperature °F

H is heat lost through the clothing and

I is the insulation of the air in Clo units at the wind velocity of the test.

T The mean skin temperature is determined by thermocouple measurements of the following areas: front of chest, lateral aspect of upper arm, medial aspect of first phalanx of great toe, medial aspect of thigh, medial aspect of lower arm, over shoulder blade, over gastrocnemius, edge of hand at base of first finger and forehead.

I the insulation of air at the wind velocity of the test is obtained from tables compiled by A. C. Burton.

$$H = M - S - (F + A) \quad (\text{Equation 2})$$

where M is metabolic heat production, S is heat stored or lost in the body mass during the experiment, E is heat lost by vaporization from lungs and skin, and A is heat lost in warming inspired air.

M is estimated by standard procedures as described in the section on respiratory methods. S is estimated by direct observation of the change in skin and internal temperatures and calculated according to Burton's equations.

(1) Mean temperature of body mass =

$$0.53 \times \text{mean skin temperature} + 0.57 \times \text{rectal temperature} \quad (\text{Equation 3})$$

(2) Stored heat = Δ mean temperature $\times 0.83$ (Equation 4)

0.83 being the specific heat of the body in Cals/kg/°C and Δ mean temperature is in °C

E is estimated from the change in the subject's weight (to the nearest gram) corrected for the excess weight of CO expired compared with O consumed according to the equation

$$\frac{\text{Cals/square meter/hr vaporized from skin and lungs} = \frac{(\text{gm change in weight/hr}) - (0.30 \times O_2 \text{ l/hr})}{\text{surface area, square meters}} \times 0.586}{\text{(Equation 5)}}$$

where $0.30 \times O_2$ l/hr represents the excess weight of CO₂ expired over O consumed at R Q 0.88 and 0.586 is the heat of vaporization of water

A is calculated from pulmonary ventilation as measured by techniques described in previous sections

$$A \text{ (cals/square meter/hour from warming inspired air)} = \frac{\text{pulmonary ventilation l/hr} \times 0.00031 \times (33^\circ\text{C} - \text{ambient T } ^\circ\text{C})}{\text{surface area square meters}}$$

where 0.00031 is the specific heat of air, kg Cal/cubic meter/°C

Thermal Significance of Clothing

A generalization was made by Burton to express the effect of clothing on heat loss from the surface of the body to a given environment (Burton A C. *An Analysis of the Physiological Effects of Clothing in Hot Environments*. Report to Aviation Medical Research Council of Canada C 2754 SPO 186, Nov 24 1944)

This equation is

H heat loss in kilocal/square meter/hour =

$$\frac{5 \times W \times (P - P_a)}{100 \times (r_1 + r)} + \frac{O(t - t_a - RI/^\circ\text{C})}{I_1 + I} \quad \text{(Equation 6)}$$

where

W is wetted skin

P is vapor pressure of air in mm Hg at skin temperature obtained from tables,

P_a is vapor pressure of ambient air in mm Hg from standard tables

r₁ and r are respectively the resistance of clothing and air expressed in cm of still air. r₁ is determined experimentally or calculated from the measured thickness of the clothing r from a standard curve which gives the value corrected for the estimated radius of curvature and velocity of ambient air movement

O is a constant 5.55 for one °C

t and t_a are respectively the mean skin temperature and ambient air temperature. Measurement of mean skin temperature is described above under 'Clo' unit measurement

I₁ and I are respectively the insulation value of clothing and air, expressed in 'Clo' units. I₁ is determined experimentally as described in the section on 'Clo' units or is calculated at the same time as r₁. I is determined from a standard curve. H is absorbed radiant energy in kilocal/square meter/hour

Burton's equation has three limitations: it is applicable only to equilibrium conditions; it makes no allowances for subclothing convection, and some of the values are difficult to measure or calculate especially the radiant energy factor. It is very useful for predicting the value of various clothing assemblies or predicting the thermal state of a man wearing a given assembly in a given environment.

METEOROLOGICAL MEASUREMENTS

In all field studies certain meteorological data should be collected systematically and regularly. These include the altitude of the station its latitude and longitude barometric pressure maximum minimum and ambient temperatures precipitation hours of sunshine cloud conditions absolute and relative humidities and wind velocity. The charts in the present section are designed to assist in the calculation of such data.

Temperature

The first chart (Fig. 6) gives direct conversion of Centigrade temperatures into Fahrenheit temperatures and vice versa according to the equation

$$^{\circ}\text{F} = (9/5 \times ^{\circ}\text{C}) + 32^{\circ}$$

$$^{\circ}\text{C} = (5/9 \times ^{\circ}\text{F}) - 32$$

Wind Velocity

The second chart (Fig. 57) gives conversion for temperature barometric pressure and wind velocity. Wind velocity is converted from meters/second to miles/hour by the equations

$$^{\circ}\text{ miles/hour} = 360 \times (\text{meters per second})$$

$$^{\circ}\text{ meters/second} = 0.4470 \times (\text{miles per hour})$$

Barometric Pressure Altitude and Related Variables

The third chart (Fig. 58) gives barometric conversion from millimeters of mercury to inches of mercury according to the equations

$$^{\circ}\text{ millimeters Hg} = 25.40 \times (\text{inches Hg})$$

$$^{\circ}\text{ inches Hg} = 0.03937 \times (\text{millimeters Hg})$$

The third chart gives various altitude equivalents. From Table 30 Altitude Pressure Tables Based on the United States Standard Atmosphere National Advisory Committee for Aeronautics Report No. 538 1935 are given the following altitude correlated equivalents: altitude (feet and meters) barometric pressure (inches and millimeters of mercury) temperature (actual and mean) and oxygen (millimeters partial pressure and equivalent sea level O_2).

Humidity and Absolute Vapor Tension

The fourth chart (Fig. 59) gives the relative humidity from the dry bulb temperature and the wet bulb temperatures. The fifth chart (Fig. 60) for use in cold areas gives relative humidity from the dry bulb temperature and the difference between the dry bulb and the wet bulb temperatures.

It is sometimes necessary to compute absolute vapor tension instead of relative humidity. A line chart (Fig. 61) has been constructed for this purpose from the equation

$$E = (\text{absolute vapor tension in mm Hg}) =$$

$$E_w - 0.0066 B (T_d - T_w) [1 + 0.00115 (T_d - T_w)]$$

where E_w is vapor tension mm Hg at wet bulb temperature

B is barometric pressure mm Hg

T_d is dry bulb temperature $^{\circ}\text{C}$ and

T_w is wet bulb temperature $^{\circ}\text{C}$.

The line chart gives vapor tension for various barometric pressure together with the vapor tension from the wet bulb temperature and the difference between the wet bulb and dry bulb temperatures. It may also be used to compute relative humidity as follows:

TEMPERATURE CONVERSION (CENTIGRADE - FAHRENHEIT)

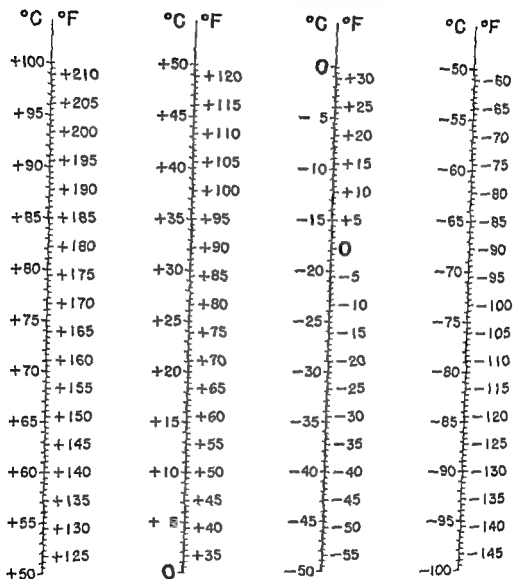
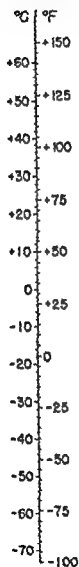


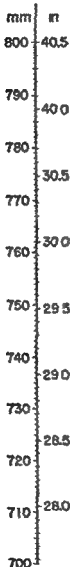
Fig. 11—Line chart for converting Centigrade and Fahrenheit scales

CONVERSIONS, METEOROLOGY

TEMPERATURE



BAROMETER



WIND VELOCITY

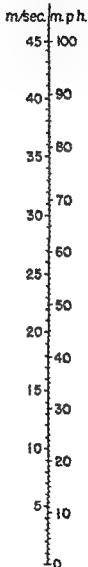


Fig. 61.—Conversion charts for temperature, barometric pressure and wind velocity

ALTITUDE EQUIVALENTS

ALTITUDE		BAROMETER		TEMPERATURE		OXYGEN	
FEET	METERS	INCHES	mm Hg	ACTUAL °C	MEAN °C	EQUIV %	mm Hg
45000	14000	4	100		-30	3	
			110				25
	13000	5	120				
			130				
40000	12000	6	140	-55	-25	4	30
			150				
	11000	7	160				35
			170				
35000	10000	8	180		-20	5	40
			190	-50			
			200				
30000	9000	9		45	-15	6	45
				-40			50
	8000	10	250			7	55
				-35	-10	8	60
25000	7000	11					
		12	300	-30		9	65
				-25	-5	10	70
20000	6000	13	350				75
		14		-20		11	80
	5000	15	400		0	12	85
		16		-15			90
15000	4000	17	450			13	95
		18		-10		14	100
		19	500		+5	15	105
10000	3000	20		-5			110
		21	550	0		16	115
		22				17	120
	2000	23	600		+10	18	125
		24		+5		19	130
5000	1000	25	650			20	135
		26		+10			140
		27	700				145
		28			+15		150
0	0						

G. E. SIMPSON

FIG. 68—Chart constructed for correlated data at different altitudes.

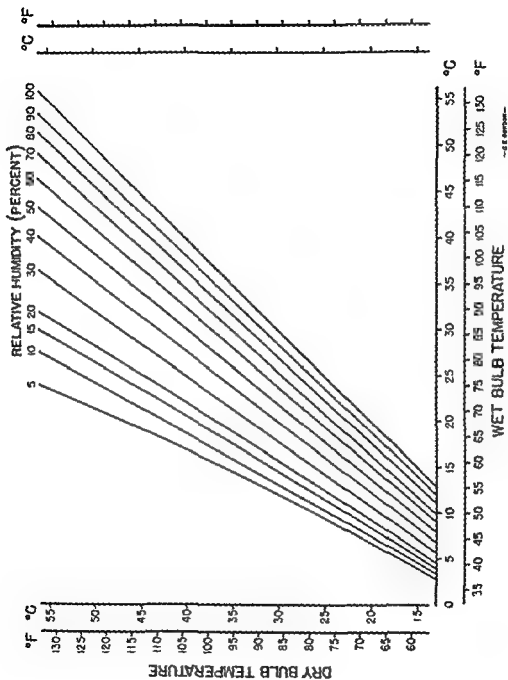


Fig. 58.—Cartesian graph for relative humidity from psychrometric data.

RELATIVE HUMIDITY BY SLING PSYCHROMETER

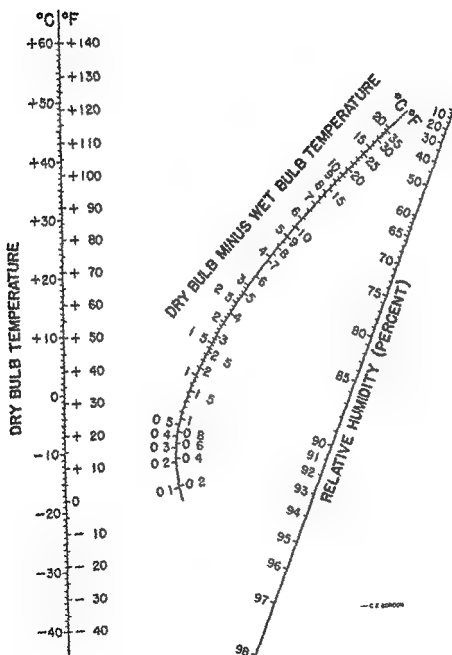
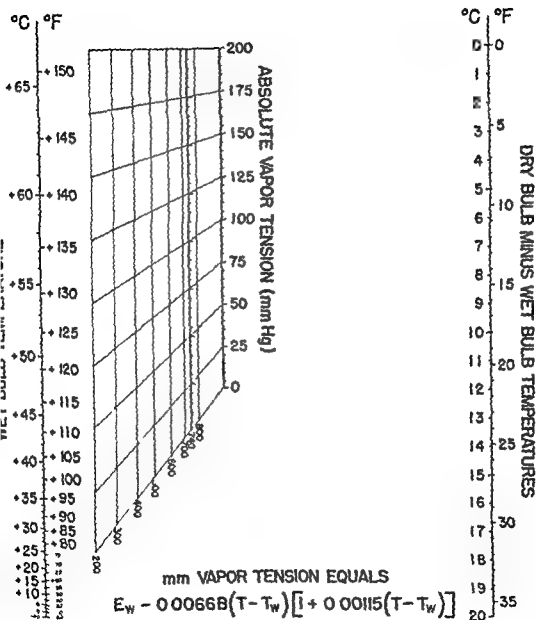


FIG. 68—Line chart for relative humidity

ABSOLUTE VAPOR TENSION FROM PSYCHROMETRY



11-507-10

Fig. 1) - Line chart for computing absolute vapor tension. Measure barometric pressure B and dry bulb temperature T . Then, on a line between wet and dry bulb temperatures, use the chart to find the point where the dry bulb line (E_d) and dry bulb wet bulb line (E_w) intersect. (b) note the point where the dry bulb line (E_d) and dry bulb wet bulb line (E_w) intersect. (c) turn ruler to run between B on the right line and the barometric pressure point (d) read absolute vapor tension on central line.

"WINDCHILL"

$$K_D = (\sqrt{WV \times 100 - WV + 10.5}) (33 - T_A)$$

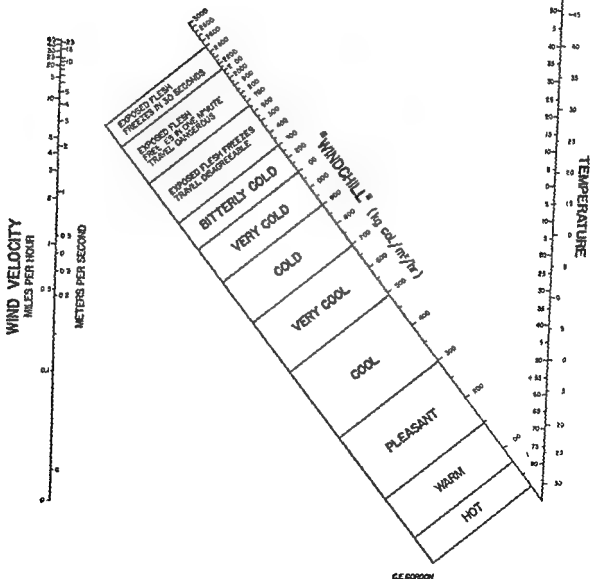


Fig. 6.—Line chart showing "wind chill" and state of comfort.

(a) determine absolute vapor tension, (b) determine vapor tension corresponding to saturation at the dry bulb temperature using the wet bulb scale and a wet bulb-dry bulb difference

of 0 (c) calculate relative humidity R.H. in %
$$= \frac{\text{absolute vapor tension}}{\text{vapor tension dry bulb equivalent}} \times 100$$

Windchill

The concept of windchill has been very useful in expressing the relative discomfort of cold climates in relation to absolute temperature and wind velocity. The quantitative aspects of this concept have been discussed by Siple and Passel (Siple P. A. and Passel C. F. Measurements of Dry Atmospheric Cooling in Subfreezing Temperatures Proc. Am. Phil. Soc. 29: 173-190 1945) and Court (Court Arnold Windchill Bull. Am. Meteorol. Soc. 29: 497-493 (Dec.) 1949). The mathematical validity of the equation of Siple and Passel is questionable but nevertheless the concept emphasizes the most important single avenue of body heat loss under windy conditions—convection to the air.

The accompanying line chart (Fig. 6) enables one to derive windchill from wind velocity and ambient temperature and to estimate at the same time the degree of discomfort of the environment. The equation used was that of Siple and Passel:

Windchill = kilogram Cal/square meter/hour =

$$(\sqrt{WV \times 100} - W + 10.45) \times (33 - T)$$

where WV is wind velocity meters/second

10.45 is an arbitrary constant

33 C is the average skin temperature and

T is the ambient dry bulb temperature C

H PRESERVATION OF ANIMAL TISSUES FOR HISTOLOGICAL STUDIES

(This section was prepared by K. Sutherland and C. L. Pirani.)

References

- Lillie R. D. Histopathologic Technique ed. 4 Philadelphia 1948 The Blakiston Company
- Glück D. Techniques of Histo and Cytochemistry ed. 1 New York 1949 Interscience Publishers Inc.
- U. S. War Dept. Methods for Laboratory Technicians TM 8-40; War Department Technical Manual 1946
- Cowdry P. V. Laboratory Technique in Biology and Medicine ed. 4 Baltimore Md. 1948 Williams and Wilkins Company
- Gersh I. Application in Pathology of the Method of Fixation by Freezing and Drying of Tissues Bull. Internat. Assoc. Med. Museums 28: 19-185 1949

During field studies it may be necessary or desirable to study tissues from either animal or human sources. The tissues may have been obtained at autopsy or by biopsic or surgical methods. If proper precautions in the preservation and fixation of tissue specimens are observed histological, histochemical and chemical studies may be carried out and contribute substantially to the understanding of physiological and physiopathological processes. Application of such techniques undoubtedly could be very useful in metabolic and nutritional studies that might be conducted in the field.

It is beyond the purpose of this manual however to give detailed techniques which can be applied to investigations of this type. It is obvious that

in most cases equipment necessary to carry out these methods will not be available in field studies. The reader is referred to a number of excellent manuals and textbooks which are listed among the references for detailed histological and histochemical techniques. This section will therefore be limited to a brief review of the best available methods to preserve tissues which can be applied to field conditions and which will then permit either storage or shipment of tissue specimens.

1 Preservation of Tissue Specimens for Histological Studies Probably the best fixative for all around purposes is 10 per cent formalin. This fixative is prepared by diluting 1 volume of 40% Formaldehyde (USP) with 9 volumes of distilled water. If distilled water is not available tap water can be used satisfactorily.

Blocks of tissue should not be more than 0.4 to 0.5 cm in thickness and 1 to 3 cm in width to insure proper fixation and to prevent distortion. The proportion of the formalin solution to volume of tissue to be fixed should be no less than 10:1. In addition it is advisable to change the formalin solution after 24 hours. If these simple precautions are used tissues can be kept indefinitely in this fixative.

Formalin fixation can be used satisfactorily for most routine histological methods. It is not adequate however for many histochemical techniques except those for non water soluble substances such as lipids. According to Lillie proper treatment of formalin fixed tissue makes possible the use of additional special staining techniques.

In general the use of other fixatives is not advisable under field laboratory conditions unless tissues can be shipped to reach a processing laboratory within 24 hours. An important exception is 80% alcohol in which tissues can be kept indefinitely. In addition this fixative offers the advantage of freezing at a temperature lower than that of 10% formalin.

2 Preservation of Tissue Specimens for Histochemical and Chemical Studies Deep freezing of tissue specimens is best suited for this purpose. This can be accomplished either by storing the specimens in a deep freezing apparatus or by placing them in a thin walled container which is then surrounded by crushed dry ice. Tissues can be kept indefinitely in a deep freeze state without any significant chemical change taking place. In shipment of frozen specimens is desired the following precautions are necessary: (a) Place specimens in an insulated container such as a vacuum bottle and pack dry ice all around them. (b) The volume of dry ice should be at least 20 times greater than that of the specimen. This will insure its preservation for a period of no more than 24 hours. (c) Make sure that the container is not gas tight and will allow the expanding carbon dioxide to escape.

Defrosting of frozen tissue specimens at room temperature is satisfactory for most chemical analysis except when labile substances (for example ascorbic acid and some enzymes) are involved. In such case adequate precautions should be used as indicated by the different analytical methods.

For histochemical studies neither slow nor quick defrosting can prevent some degree of distortion and loss of histological detail. Paraffin embedding of frozen specimens under vacuum in the Altman Gersh apparatus is without doubt the method of choice should such apparatus be available. With this technique tissues undergo practically no chemical or histological changes and the blocks obtained can be permanently stored for future slides.

¶ *Labeling and Packing of Tissue Specimens* Wide mouthed bottles sealed with paraffin should be generally used for tissues in fixing solution (wet tissue). The bottle should be adequately labeled on the outside. A second small label of heavy drawing paper written in soft pencil (avoid ink) should be put in the bottle with the specimen. Adequate packing into a mailing case marked *Fragile First Class Mail Rush Specimen for Diagnosis* is satisfactory for shipment. Reference is made to the Technical Manual 8 227 of the War Department for additional information on this important phase of the handling of specimens.

SECTION VIII

TECHNIQUES FOR METABOLIC WARDS

A GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

References

Reifenstein E C, Jr, Albright F and Wells M L The Accumulation, Interpretation and Presentation of Data Pertaining to Metabolic Balances Notably Those of Calcium Phosphorus and Nitrogen *J Clin Endocrinol* 367 395 (Nov) 1945

The Physical Arrangement of a Metabolic Ward

Numerous authors have discussed the ideal arrangement of a metabolic ward. The paper of Reifenstein, Albright and Wells gives a good bibliography on this subject. Our own experience has been that the work is greatly facilitated by a well organized physical plant. Ideally the patients should have private rooms and in addition a bathroom and common recreation room. On the same floor and adjacent to the ward should be

- 1 A dining room
- 2 A diet kitchen
- 3 An office for the staff
- 4 A record office with a calculating machine
- 5 A room for preparing and storing specimens
- 6 A laboratory for routine clinical pathology
- 7 A separate laboratory for the many special procedures required in metabolic work

All space should be air conditioned because it is becoming increasingly clear that environmental control is extremely desirable for the most consistent results. In addition, the comfort of the staff which is usually on a 12 month schedule, is very important for efficient work.

Finances of a Metabolic Ward

Few persons not actively engaged in metabolic work realize the large expenses involved. For patient care alone in 1949 the cost in Chicago was of the order of \$14 per patient per day. Add to this the numerous and some times expensive laboratory procedures and the cost is such that metabolic work should not be started without an assured adequate budget.

Collection Preparation and Storage of Specimens

These topics have been discussed in previous parts of this manual. If at all feasible it is better to use analytical data for food consumption rather than calculated data. Our experience with stool nitrogen is that for a given patient

within wide limits the daily stool nitrogen is quite constant but that different patients have greatly different characteristic excretions. Therefore it is unsound to use calculated values for stool nitrogen.

II DERIVED DATA—THEORETICAL BALANCES

1 Calcium, Phosphorus and Nitrogen

The concept of theoretical balances has been extensively used by Albright and colleagues (see reference previously cited). By a theoretical balance is meant the balance of an element such as phosphorus which would be expected from the observed balances of other elements such as nitrogen and calcium. The two chief virtues of such derived data are their assistance in detecting gross errors in the data and their emphasis on situations where the measured balances differ from the theoretical.

For computation of theoretical calcium, phosphorus and nitrogen balances one from the other the following factors are used:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Calcium/phosphorus in bone} &= .23 \\ \text{Nitrogen/phosphorus in muscle} &= 14.7/15.5\end{aligned}$$

In computing the balances the following equations are used assuming that muscle is characteristic of total protoplasmic mass:

- a. Theoretical phosphorus from calcium and nitrogen =

$$\frac{\text{gm calcium retained}}{2} + \frac{\text{gm nitrogen retained}}{15}$$

- b. Theoretical calcium from phosphorus =
(gm phosphorus retained $\times .23$)

- c. Theoretical nitrogen from phosphorus and calcium =

$$(\text{gm phosphorus retained} \times 14.7) - \left(\frac{\text{gm calcium retained}}{2} \times 14.7 \right)$$

2 Potassium and Sulfur

From potassium, sulfur and nitrogen it is possible to calculate theoretical balances. The factors used are:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{mEq potassium} &= .4 \times \text{gm nitrogen} \\ \text{mg potassium} &= 10 \times \text{gm nitrogen} \\ \text{gm sulfur} &= \frac{\text{gm nitrogen}}{14.5}\end{aligned}$$

To calculate the theoretical balances the following equations are used (note that in these cases the results are not additive as they are for Ca, P and N):

- a. Theoretical nitrogen from potassium = $\frac{\text{mEq K retained}}{7}$ or $\frac{\text{mg K retained}}{10}$

- b. Theoretical nitrogen from sulfur = gm S retained $\times 14.5$

- c. Theoretical mEq potassium from nitrogen = gm N retained $\times 2.7$

- d. Theoretical mg potassium from nitrogen = gm N retained $\times 105$

- e. Theoretical mEq potassium from sulfur = gm S retained $\times 14.5 \times .7$

SECTION VIII

TECHNIQUES FOR METABOLIC WARDS

A GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

References

- Reifenstein E C, Jr Albright F and Wells S L The Accumulation, Interpretation and Presentation of Data Pertaining to Metabolic Balance: Notably Those of Calcium Phosphorus and Nitrogen *J Clin Endocrinol* 5 367-395 (Nov) 1945

The Physical Arrangement of a Metabolic Ward

Numerous authors have discussed the ideal arrangement of a metabolic ward. The paper of Reifenstein, Albright and Wells gives a good bibliography on this subject. Our own experience has been that the work is greatly facilitated by a well organized physical plant. Ideally the patients should have private rooms and in addition a bathroom and common recreation room. On the same floor and adjacent to the ward should be

- 1 A dining room
- 2 A diet kitchen
- 3 An office for the staff
- 4 A record office with a calculating machine
- 5 A room for preparing and storing specimens
- 6 A laboratory for routine clinical pathology
- 7 A separate laboratory for the many special procedures required in metabolic work

All space should be air conditioned because it is becoming increasingly clear that environmental control is extremely desirable for the most consistent results. In addition the comfort of the staff which is usually on a 12 month schedule, is very important for efficient work.

Finances of a Metabolic Ward

Few persons not actively engaged in metabolic work realize the large expenses involved. For patient care alone in 1949 the cost in Chicago was of the order of \$14 per patient per day. Add to this the numerous and sometimes expensive laboratory procedures and the cost is such that metabolic work should not be started without an assured adequate budget.

Collection, Preparation and Storage of Specimens

These topics have been discussed in previous parts of this manual. If at all feasible it is better to use analytical data for food consumption rather than calculated data. Our experience with stool nitrogen is that for a given patient

within wide limits the daily stool nitrogen is quite constant but that different patients have greatly different characteristic excretions. Therefore it is unsound to use calculated values for stool nitrogen.

II DERIVED DATA— THEORETICAL BALANCES

1 Calcium, Phosphorus and Nitrogen

The concept of theoretical balances has been extensively used by Albright and colleagues (see reference previously cited). By a theoretical balance is meant the balance of an element such as phosphorus which would be expected from the observed balances of other elements, such as nitrogen and calcium. The two chief virtues of such derived data are their assistance in detecting gross errors in the data and their emphasis on situations where the measured balances differ from the theoretical.

For computation of theoretical calcium, phosphorus and nitrogen balances one from the other the following factors are used:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Calcium/phosphorus in bone} &= 2.3 \\ \text{Nitrogen/phosphorus in muscle} &= 14/15.5\end{aligned}$$

In computing the balances the following equations are used assuming that muscle is characteristic of total protoplasmic mass:

- a. Theoretical phosphorus from calcium and nitrogen —

$$\frac{\text{gm calcium retained}}{3} + \frac{\text{gm nitrogen retained}}{15}$$

- b. Theoretical calcium from phosphorus =

$$(\text{gm phosphorus retained} \times 2.23)$$

Theoretical nitrogen from phosphorus and calcium =

$$(\text{gm phosphorus retained} \times 14.7) - \left(\frac{\text{gm calcium retained}}{3} \times 14.7 \right)$$

2 Potassium and Sulfur

From potassium, sulfur and nitrogen it is possible to calculate theoretical balances. The factors used are:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{mEq potassium} &= 7 \times \text{gm nitrogen} \\ \text{mg potassium} &= 105 \times \text{gm nitrogen} \\ \text{gm sulfur} &= \frac{\text{gm nitrogen}}{14}\end{aligned}$$

To calculate the theoretical balances the following equations are used (note that in these cases the results are not additive as they are for Ca, P and N):

- a. Theoretical nitrogen from potassium = $\frac{\text{mEq K. retained}}{7} = \frac{\text{mg K. retained}}{105}$

- b. Theoretical nitrogen from sulfur = $\text{gm S retained} \times 14.5$

- c. Theoretical mEq potassium from nitrogen = $\text{gm N retained} \times 2.7$

- d. Theoretical mg potassium from nitrogen = $\text{gm N retained} \times 105$

- e. Theoretical mEq potassium from sulfur = $\text{gm S retained} \times 14.5 \times 2.7$

f Theoretical mg potassium from sulfur = gm S retained $\times 14.5 \times 105$

g Theoretical sulfur from nitrogen = $\frac{\text{gm nitrogen}}{14.5}$

h Theoretical sulfur from potassium = $\frac{\text{mEq K retained}}{27 \times 14.5}$ or $\frac{\text{mg K retained}}{105 \times 14.5}$

C DERIVED DATA— THEORETICAL WEIGHT

Albright and colleagues have used the concept of "theoretical weight" as a means of discussing the causes of shifts of body weight. The conditions under which their calculations are valid are

- 1 The caloric output must be constant
- 2 The state of hydration and saturation with glycogen must be the same at the beginning and end of the study
- 3 In other words the patient must be in the same state of equilibrium at the beginning and end of the study. The calculations become more accurate the longer the study.

In principle one computes the following changes in weight from metabolic data

- 1 Change in protoplasmic mass associated with nitrogen, from nitrogen balance
- 2 Change in weight of extracellular fluid not accounted for with protoplasm from sodium or chloride balance
- 3 Change in weight of intracellular fluid glycogen or both not accounted for with protoplasm from potassium balance

The difference between the observed change in weight and the sum of the above three separate changes in weight is related to the "caloric discrepancy" or the weight of fat which would be necessary to account for the change in weight on the basis of energy alone.

To carry out the actual calculations Table 26 gives the necessary conversion factors

The steps in the calculation are

- 1 Net change in body weight gm =
Body wt in gm at beginning - Body wt in gm at end
- 2 Change in weight of protoplasm fat free but not extracellular fluid free related to nitrogen gm =
Nitrogen balance gm $\times 19$
- 3 Change in weight in grams of extracellular fluid not accounted for with protoplasm =

$$\frac{(\text{Sodium balance mEq})}{(151 \times 1000)} - (\text{Nitrogen balance, gm} \times 5)$$

$$\frac{(\text{Chloride balance mEq})}{(104 \times 1000)} - (\text{Nitrogen balance gm} \times 5)$$

- 4 Change in weight in grams of intracellular fluid and/or glycogen not accounted for with protoplasm =

$$\frac{(\text{Potassium balance mEq})}{(143 \times 1000)} - (\text{Nitrogen balance gm} \times 19)$$

- 5 Theoretical weight change assuming caloric balance grams =
 Sum of changes in weight due to protoplasm extracellular fluid and intracellular fluid
- 6 Caloric discrepancy i.e. grams fat required to account for difference between observed and theoretical weight change =
 (Observed net weight change) - (theoretical weight change)

TABLE 6

FACTORS USED IN DERIVING CERTAIN COMPONENTS OF MUSCLE PROTOPLASM FROM NITROGEN BALANCE

(Taken from Reifensstein Albright and Wells J Clin Endocrinol 5 367 9, Nov 1945)

COMPONENT TO BE DERIVED	FINAL UNIT	FACTOR
1 Protein in protoplasm	gm	6.5
2 Protoplasm fat free but not extracellular fluid free	gm	2.0
3 Protoplasm fat free and extracellular fluid free (true muscle)	gm	.97
4 Intracellular fluid in protoplasm	ml	19
5 Extracellular fluid in protoplasm	ml	5
6 Potassium in extracellular fluid in protoplasm	mEq	2.7
7 Sodium in extracellular fluid in protoplasm	mEq	0.77
8 Phosphorus in protoplasm	gm	0.066
9 Sulfur in protoplasm	gm	0.069
10 Fat calorically equivalent to protoplasm	gm	9
11 Protoplasm (fat free) none fat calorically equivalent to protoplasm	gm	9

To derive the component multiply nitrogen in gram by the factor

The paper of Reifensstein Albright and Wells gives the justification refinements and applications of this sort of theoretical calculation. Their method of computation is different from that presented above. To start their computation they calculate what the observed weight loss would have been had the subject been in nitrogen balance then express this in terms of fat and correct this fat figure for protoplasm (from Nitrogen balance) extracellular fluid (from Sodium balance) and intracellular fluid (from Potassium balance). Their method of calculation therefore involves one more assumption than the one presented in detail above i.e. the assumption that it is permissible to take the observed change in body weight as a function of fat. Their method of calculation has the advantage that it emphasizes discrepancies between observed and theoretical weight change whereas the method presented above derives fat by difference and therefore the theoretical always equals the observed change in weight.

SECTION IX

CLINICAL LABORATORY PROCEDURES

A MISCELLANEOUS REFERENCES TO TEXTBOOKS

It is not the intention of this manual to reduplicate detailed instructions for clinical laboratory procedures which have been well described in many textbooks of clinical methods. The selected list of references below will give the reader a satisfactory working library in which may be found details of most of the methods commonly in use. In the sections which follow, the term "standard methods" refers to methods described in one or the other of the selected references. References to individual papers will be found in the text that follows this bibliography.

- Bray W E. *Synopsis of Clinical Laboratory Methods*, ed. 4. St. Louis 1950. The C V Mosby Company.
- Gradwohl, E. H. H. *Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis*, ed. 4. St. Louis 1948, The C V Mosby Company.
- Ham H. and others. *Syllabus for Second Year Course in Laboratory Diagnosis*. Preliminary Edition, 1948. Dept. of Medicine. Harvard Medical School, Longwood Publishing Company.
- Hawk P B, Osier B L, and Summerson W H. *Practical Physiological Chemistry*, ed. 12. Philadelphia Toronto 1947. The Blakiston Company.
- Kolmer, J. A. *Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Examinations*. 1st Edition revised. New York London 1944. D Appleton Century Co. Inc.
- Levinson S. A., and McPate, R. P. *Clinical Laboratory Diagnosis*, ed. 3. Philadelphia 1946. Lea and Febiger.
- Osgood E E. *A Textbook of Laboratory Diagnosis*, ed. 3. Philadelphia Toronto, 1948. The Blakiston Company.
- Simmons J S. and Gentzlow C J. *Laboratory Methods of the United States Army*, ed. 5, Philadelphia 1944. Lea and Febiger.
- Stitt E R, Clough P W, and Clough M. C. *Practical Bacteriology Hematology and Animal Parasitology*, ed. 9, Philadelphia 1945. The Blakiston Company.
- Todd J C. and Sanford A W. *Clinical Diagnosis With Laboratory Methods*, ed. 10. Philadelphia and London 1943. W B Saunders Company.
- U S War Department. *Methods for Laboratory Technicians*. Oct 1946, U S Government Printing Office.
- Wadsworth A M. *Standard Methods of the Division of Laboratories and Research of the New York State Department of Health*, ed. 3. Baltimore 1947, Williams and Wilkins Company.
- Whitby L E H. and Britton C J C. *Disorders of the Blood*, ed. 5, Philadelphia 1946. The Blakiston Company.
- Wintrobe M. M. *Clinical Hematology*, ed. 2 (thoroughly revised) Philadelphia 1947, Lea and Febiger.

SECTION IX

CLINICAL LABORATORY PROCEDURES (Cont'd)

B HEMATOLOGY

1 Calculation of Mean Corpuscular Volume Mean Corpuscular Hemoglobin Content and Mean Corpuscular Hemoglobin Concentration

The calculation of mean corpuscular volume hemoglobin content and hemoglobin concentration has been popularized by Wintrobe. These derived values are useful in the classification of anemias. The data required for the computation are

- 1 Erythrocyte count millions/cu mm
- 2 Hematocrit ml packed red cells/100 ml blood
- 3 Hemoglobin concentration gm Hb/100 ml blood

The equations used are

- 1 Mean corpuscular volume cubic microns =

$$\frac{\text{Hematocrit} \times 10}{\text{Erythrocyte count}}$$

Mean corpuscular hemoglobin content micromicrograms =

$$\frac{\text{Hemoglobin concentration of blood} \times 10}{\text{Erythrocyte count}}$$

- 3 Mean cell hemoglobin concentration g Hb =

$$\frac{\text{Hemoglobin concentration} \times 100}{\text{Hematocrit}}$$

The line chart (Fig. 63) facilitates the computations

- 1 To obtain mean corpuscular volume stretch a straight edge between hematocrit (right hand) and red count (left hand). Read MCV on middle line.
- 2 To obtain mean corpuscular hemoglobin content stretch a straight edge between hemoglobin concentration (right hand) and red count (left hand). Read MCH on middle line.
- 3 To obtain mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration stretch a straight edge between hemoglobin concentration (right hand) and hematocrit (left hand).

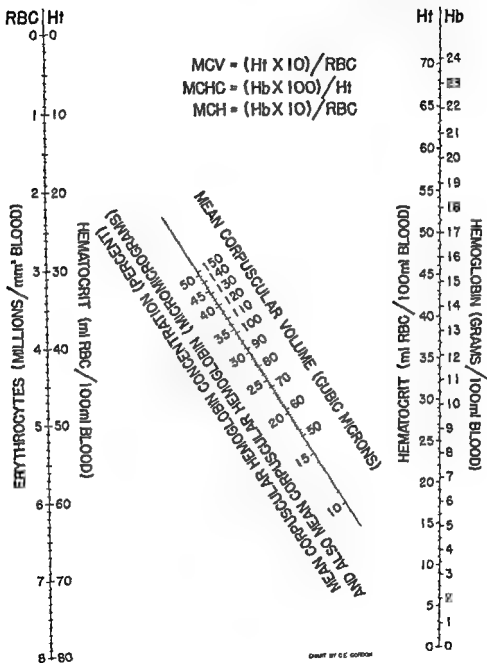


Fig. 11—Line chart for calculating cellular de lved data using Wintrobe's equations.

2 Calculation of Sedimentation Rate

References

- 1 Rourke M D and Ernestine A E A Method for Correcting the Erythrocyte Sedimentation Rate for Variations in the Cell Volume Percentage of Blood *J Clin Investigation* 8 545 559 (June) 1930
- 2 Wintrobe M M and Landsberg J W A Standardized Technique for the Blood Sedimentation Test *Am J M S* 189 109 115 (Jan) 1935

Calculation of Sedimentation Rate

Most authors who have published data on the blood sedimentation agree that it is necessary to convert the readings obtained to a standard hematocrit of 45 to 47 ml/100 ml blood. Opinions vary on the exact form of the correction but it is agreed that the sedimentation rate becomes higher the lower the hematocrit. The chart of Rourke and Ernestine will suffice for most of the methods.

- 1 Obtain the uncorrected reading in mm per hour or mm per minute
- 2 Determine the hematocrit
- 3 On the chart (Fig 64) use the left hand line in mm per minute as it stands or multiply by 60 to convert to mm per hour
- 4 On the line for hematocrit as observed find the point for mm per minute as observed
- 5 Follow the empirical line down to hematocrit 45% and read the corrected sedimentation rate on the left hand line
- 6 Compare with the normal for hematocrit 45 (solid block)

3 Direct Eosinophil Count

Reference

- 1 Randolph T G Blood Studies in Allergy I. The Direct Counting Chamber Determinations of Eosinophils by Propylene Glycol Aqueous Stains *J Allergy* 15 89 96 (March) 1944
- 2 Randolph T G Differentiation and Enumeration of Eosinophils in the Counting Chamber With a Glycol Stain a Valuable Technique in Appraising ACUTE Dosage *J Lab & Clin Med* 31 1696 1698 (Dec) 1949

Principle

Counting eosinophils from a differential smear is not accurate enough for many research purposes. A direct count can be made in a counting chamber after dilution of the blood with the appropriate solution.

Apparatus

- 1 A quantity of white blood cell pipettes
- 2 Counting chamber (Levy)
- 3 A microscope
- 4 Petri dishes
- 5 Mechanical shaker for blood pipettes

Reagents

- 1 Heparin solution Prepare heparin tubes by placing one drop of heparin solution in a glass vial of 10 ml capacity. Allow drop to evaporate to dryness before using tube.

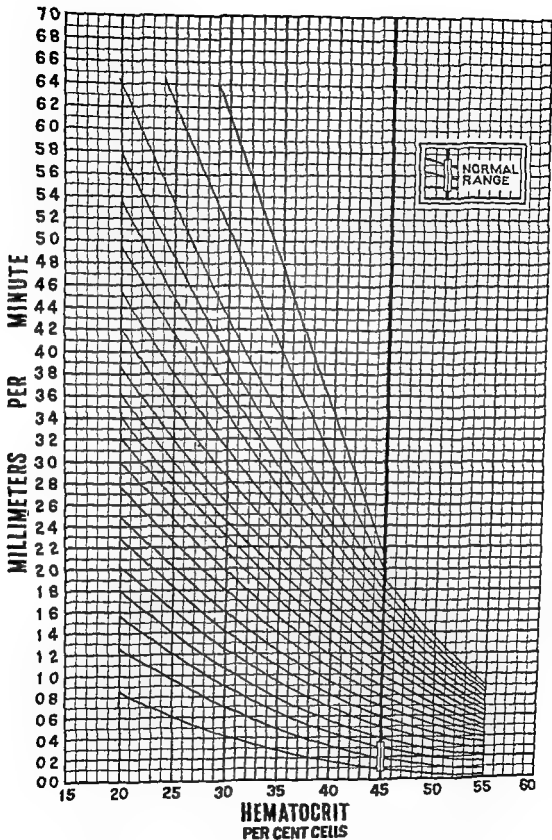


Fig. 11 — Correction of hematocrit values by the method of Bourke and Ernest.

2 Diluting fluid

Solution A Prepare a 0.05 per cent solution of phloxin in propylene glycol and water (1:1 mixture) Store in a brown bottle

Solution B Prepare an 0.02 per cent solution of methylene blue in propylene glycol and water (1:1 mixture) Store in a brown bottle

The diluting fluid is prepared fresh daily by mixing three parts of solution A with one part of solution B

Procedure

- 1 Draw 2 ml of blood by venipuncture and transfer the blood carefully to the heparinized tube Mix gently
- 2 After thoroughly mixing draw blood to the 10 mark in a white blood count pipette
- 3 Bring the liquid level up to the 11 mark with the freshly prepared diluting fluid
- 4 Place the pipette in a mechanical mixing device and mix the cell suspension for 3 minutes
- 5 After discarding the first 4 to 5 drops fill two Levy counting chambers with fluid from the pipette
- 6 The filled counting chambers are placed under an inverted Petri dish containing a piece of moist filter paper to prevent evaporation Twenty to 30 minutes are allowed for the settling of cells
- 7 After sedimentation enumerate the eosinophils in the 9 square millimeters on both sides of the two counting chambers The eosinophils are identified by their deeply red stained granules Other granules take a faint blue stain

Calculation

Total eosinophil count = average eosinophils enumerated per side (9 sq mm) \times 11 = cells per cubic millimeter

Precautions

- 1 Timing is important Try to arrange the work so that all counts are made at approximately the same time after dilution of the blood
- 2 The exact proportions of the diluting fluid are important

4 Hematology Miscellaneous References**Anticoagulants**

Wintrobe M M J Lab & Clin Med 17 899-91 (June) 1933

Moore R M Blood Coagulation and Its Chemical Modification With Anticoagulants Texas Rep on Biol and Med 5 () 1-31 1947

Ashby Count

Ebert R Y and Pomeroy C P Jr A Clinical Study of Transfusion Reactions The Hemolytic Effect of Group O Blood and Pooled Plasma Containing Incompatible Isoagglutinins J Clin Investigation 25 67-83 (July) 1946

Bone Marrow

Berman L and Axelrod A R Aspiration of Sternal Bone Marrow Technique for Obtaining Volumetric Readings Smears Imprints and Histopathologic Sections Am J Clin Path. 17 61-66 (Jan) 1947

Clothing Time

Pohle F J and Taylor F H L Coagulation Defect in Hemophilia J Clin Investigation 16 741-747 (Sept) 1937

Erythrocytes

Joaze J H P Determination of Red Blood Corpuscles with the Aid of a Photoelectric Colorimeter Nederl tijdschr v geneesk 92 20-4 006 1948

Piper A The Diffraction Method of Measuring Red Blood Cells J Lab & Clin Med. 32 (7) 837-877 (July) 1947

402 *Clinical Laboratory Procedures*

Fibrinolysis

Tagren, H J Levenson S M Davidson, C S and Taylor F H L Occurrence of Fibrinolysis in Shock, With Observations on Prothrombin Time and Plasma Fibrinogen During Hemorrhagic Shock *Am J M Sc* 211 88 96 (Jan) 1946

Icteric Index

Hosley R J Nomograph for Rapid Calculation of Icteric Index When Determined by Colorimeter *Am J Clin Path* 19 884 885 (Sept) 1949

Leukocytes

Minor A H, and Burnett L A Method for Obtaining Living Leukocytes From Human Peripheral Blood by Acceleration of Erythrocyte Sedimentation *Blood* 3 ,99 80° (July) 1948

Vallee B L, Hughes W L Jr and Gibson, J G II The Separation of Leucocytes From Whole Blood by Flotation on Serum Albumin, *Blood Special Issue* 1 8 87 (July) 1947

Platelets

Pohle, F J The Blood Platelet Count in Relation to the Menstrual Cycle in Normal Women *Am J M Sc* 197 40 47 (Jan) 1939

Prothrombin Time

Munro F L and Munro M P The Preparation of Prothrombin by Adsorption on and Elution From Aluminum Hydroxide *Arch Biochem* 15 (2) 295 304 (Nov) 1947

Honorato René A Simple Means to Determine Exact Moment of Clotting in Prothrombin or Thrombin Time Determinations, *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* ■ (1) 41 (May) 1947

Ware Arnold G Guest M Mason and Seegers Walter H A Factor in Plasma Which Accelerates the Activation of Prothrombin *J Biol Chem* 169 (1) °31 °3° (June) 1947

Sternberger L A The Stabilisation of Thrombin in Plasma Development of a Simple Two stage Method for the Determination of Prothrombin *Brit J Exper Path* 28 (3) 168 177 (June) 1947

SECTION IX

CLINICAL LABORATORY PROCEDURES (Cont'd)

0 TOLERANCE TESTS

1 Glucose Tolerance Tests

A. ORAL GLUCOSE TOLERANCE

Reference

Janney N W and Isaacson V I A Blood Sugar Tolerance Test Proc Soc
Exper Biol Med 15 36 1917

Principle

After an oral dose of 50 to 75 gm of glucose the blood sugar concentration normally comes back to the control level in two hour and little if any glucose appears in the urine. In diabetes mellitus the level stays high and glucose appears in the urine. In renal glycosuria the blood level behaves normally but glucose appears in the urine.

Apparatus

- 1 Micro pipettes 0.1 ml accurately calibrated
- 2 A quantity of watch glasses
- 3 A quantity of 15 ml round bottom centrifuge tubes
- 4 Apparatus as for blood sugar analysis
- 5 A lancet for getting blood

Reagents

- 1 Dilute tungstic acid solution for deproteinizing blood (see glucose method)
- 2 Reagents for quantitative estimation of glucose
- 3 Benedict's qualitative glucose reagent. Weigh out separately 8.5 gm copper sulfate ($\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$) 850 gm sodium citrate and 500 gm sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_3 anhydrous). Dissolve the citrate and carbonate in 400 ml of water and filter into a large beaker. Dissolve copper sulfate in 50 ml of water and pour through a funnel into the bottom of the citrate carbonate solution. As much as possible avoid agitation and loss of CO_2 to the air. Dilute to one liter. The solution keeps well at room temperature.
- 4 Glucose solution. The dose is 10 gm glucose/kg body weight. Dissolve glucose in 4 parts of water and flavor with lemon.

Procedure

- 1 The subject comes to the laboratory without any breakfast. Measure the body weight.
A blood sample is drawn from the ear or finger and 0.1 ml is diluted to 10 ml with acid tungstic acid solution.
- 2 Collect a urine specimen.
- 3 The subject then drinks the glucose mixture as soon as possible and time is noted (if the mixture is cold it is more palatable).

- 5 Blood samples are then collected at 30 minutes 60 minutes 120 minutes and 180 minutes and analyzed for glucose by one of the quantitative methods
- 6 Urine samples are collected at one, two and three hours A qualitative test is run using Benedict's reagent Heat 10 ml of Benedict's reagent in a water bath. Add 8 drops of urine Heat for 5 minutes Cool Read in terms of color of sediment and supernatant fluid The gradations are blue green, yellow and brown

Calculation

As for glucose estimation

Precautions

- 1 As for glucose estimation
- 2 For interpretation see standard textbooks According to Conn (Conn J W Am J M Sc 199 555 564 1940) a short period of carbohydrate restriction causes a marked delay in the utilization of carbohydrate as indicated by the glucose tolerance test Undernourished persons lose even more carbohydrate tolerance than do normals Erroneous diagnosis of diabetes mellitus may be made when the factor of previous carbohydrate restriction is neglected Hence the use of preparatory diet (300 gm of carbohydrate 80 gm protein at best maintenance caloric intake) for at least 3 days before the test is recommended.

B INTRAVENOUS GLUCOSE TOLERANCE**Reference**

Lozner E L Winkler A W Taylor F H L and Peters J P Intravenous Glucose Tolerance Test J Clin Investigation 20 507 515 (Sept) 1941

Principle

A single sugar determination on a specimen of blood drawn two hours after intravenous injection of 5 gm of glucose is a reliable guide in distinguishing between benign glycosuria and diabetes mellitus

Apparatus

- 1 Sterile needles and syringes for injection of glucose and drawing of blood
- 2 Apparatus as for glucose analysis

Reagents

- 1 Glucose solution a 50% sterile solution in water
- 2 Reagents as for blood sugar

Procedure

- 1 Prepare the patient as for oral glucose tolerance
- 2 Collect a sample of blood before injection
- 3 Inject 50 ml of glucose solution over a period of 10 minutes
- 4 For screening purposes a sample of blood at 2 hours is used For more precise studies samples are taken at 15 minutes 30 minutes 60 minutes and 120 minutes together with specimens of urine for qualitative test

Calculation, Precautions

Same as for oral test

Interpretation

See reference of Lozner and associates

2 Vitamin Tolerance Tests

A. ORAL VITAMIN TOLERANCE

References

- 1 Johnson P E Contreras L A Consolazio C F and Robinson P F A Comparison of Intravenous and Oral Vitamin Tolerance Tests *Am J Physiol* 144 54-62 (June) 1945
- 2 Goldsmith G A *Chemical Measurements in Relation to Physiological Evidence of Malnutrition Federation Proc* 8 553-567 (June) 1949

Principle

A dose of vitamins is administered and the urine is collected thereafter for four hours. If the body is well saturated with vitamins a considerable percentage of the test dose is excreted. If the body is unsaturated the vitamins are absorbed by the tissues and the urinary excretion is small.

Apparatus (assuming 50 subjects)

- 1 A two gallon coffee pot or other container from which pouring is easy
- 2 A large spoon for stirring
- 3 50 paper cups
- 4 Apparatus for collecting and storing urine as described in previous sections

Reagents

- 1 Water soluble tablets of thiamine hydrochloride 1 mg each
- 2 Water soluble tablets of riboflavin 5 mg each
- 3 Water soluble tablets of nicotinamide 50 mg each
- 4 Water soluble tablets of ascorbic acid 100 mg each
- 5 Chemicals required for collecting and storing urine

Procedure

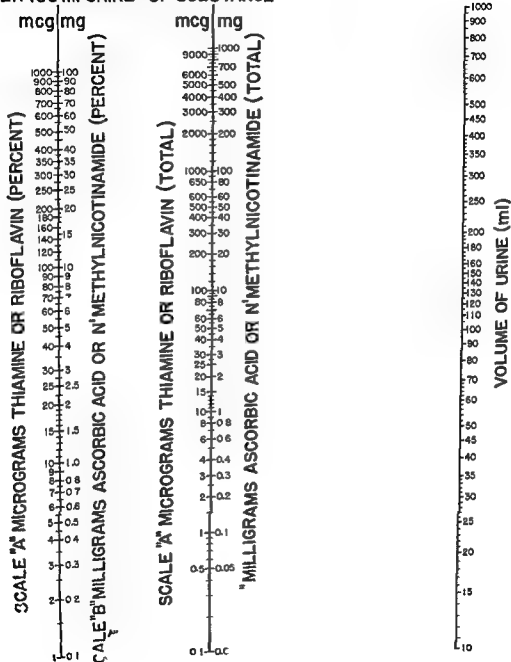
- 1 Allow at least 2 hours for mixing the solutions before administration of the dose
- 2 For each subject expected add 150 ml of water to the pot and 1 tablet each of thiamine riboflavin and nicotinamide. Stir until dissolved.
- 3 Before administration add for each subject 5 tablets of vitamin C. Stir until dissolved. Add the pills just in time to insure complete solution. 1/2 hour is usually enough except in cold weather.
- 4 On a convenient table place one cup for each subject and pour 150 ml of solution. It is well to calibrate the cups with a heavy pencil line at the 150 ml mark.
- 5 Immediately after the voiding of the fasting specimen command the subjects to file past the table take a cup drink its contents in the presence of an observer, and deposit the empty cups in a garbage can or other disposal unit provided.
- 6 The doses of vitamins are so large that the subject may now be allowed to eat breakfast without interfering with the test.
- 7 All subjects should be briefed with instructions that the urine for the next 4 hours is to be collected. If they have to urinate an observer should provide a paper cup for the purpose.
- 8 Exactly 4 hours after the administration of the vitamins the specimens of urine should be collected measured and stored as described in section on storage of specimens.

Calculations

It is desired to determine how much of the dose of vitamins is excreted in 4 hours over and above the amount which would have been excreted if the subject had not taken any vitamins. The assumption is made that the hourly excretion measured

EXCRETION OF VITAMINS FROM URINARY VOLUME AND CONCENTRATION OF VITAMINS

CONCENTRATION PER 100 ml URINE TOTAL AMOUNT OF SUBSTANCE



in the fasting specimen would have changed very little if the subjects had not taken vitamins. The following general formula is used:

$$\text{Excess excretion in 4 hours} = \left(\frac{\text{urine volume in load period}}{100} \times \text{concentration of vitamin in loaded specimen} \right) - (\text{excretion per hour in fasting specimen} \times 4)$$

Calculations are facilitated by the line chart in Fig. 6.

Example

1 Fasting urine

Vitamin C	mg/hr	1	mg/4 hr	5
Vitamin B ₁	mcg/hr	12	mcg/4 hr	48
Ni Methyl nicotinamide	mg/hr	0.50	mg/4 hr	2.0
Vitamin B ₆	mg/hr	80	mg/4 hr	320

2 Tolerance test

Volume of urine in 4 hrs 360 ml

C	mg%	1.5	mg/4 hr	40	mg over fasting	40
B ₁	mcg%	80	mcg/4 hr	900	mcg over fasting	40
NMN	mg%	0.0	mg/4 hr	7.0	mg over fasting	5.8
B ₆	mcg%	500	mg/4 hr	1800	mcg over fasting	1480

Precautions

- 1 The solution of vitamins must be protected from direct sunlight at all times because of the sensitivity of riboflavin. Vitamin C is so unstable that it must be added only just before administration.
- 2 Very strict supervision is required to insure that the subjects drink all the vitamins and also that they collect all of their urine.
- 3 The load test described above is a necessary compromise between practical conditions in the field and scientific desirability. In particular a longer collection period would be desirable owing to the relatively slow excretion of certain of the vitamins. Many workers feel that intravenous injection is preferable to oral administration.
- 4 It is advisable to buy vitamins in large batches and essential to assay each batch before use.
- 5 For every 50 subjects it is a good idea to make up enough solution for 12 extra doses in case of spillage or inaccurate measuring.

B INTRAVENOUS VITAMIN TOLERANCE

Reference

Same as for oral vitamin tolerance

Principle

Same as for oral vitamin tolerance

Apparatus

- 1 Sterile needles and syringes for injecting vitamins
- 2 Apparatus for collection and storage of urine specimens

Reagents

- 1 Reagents for collecting and storing urine
- 2 Ampoules of vitamin solutions for intravenous injection. Because of incompatibility of some of the vitamins it is necessary to have two sets of ampoules:
 - a Ascorbic acid 0 mg in 4 ml

- b In 5 ml ■ mg thiamine hydrochloride 3 mg riboflavin, 75 mg nicotinamide
1 mg calcium pantothenate 1 mg of methylglucamine salt of folic acid 10
mg of biotin and 10 mg of pyridoxine hydrochloride

Procedure

- 1 Obtain a fasting hour specimen as described under oral vitamin tolerance
- 2 In a 20 ml sterile syringe mix 4 ml of the ascorbic acid with ■ ml of B complex solution and inject the ■ ml quantitatively

Calculation

Same ■ for oral vitamin tolerance

Precautions

Vitamin tolerance tests are not well standardized. Their interpretation is well discussed in Bulletin No 117 National Research Council Nutrition Surveys Their Techniques and Value May 1949. A mathematical analysis of the time course of vitamin excretion is given by Johnson and colleagues.

SECTION IX

CLINICAL LABORATORY PROCEDURES (Cont'd)

D KIDNEY FUNCTION

1 Titratable Acidity

Reference

Henderson L. J., and Palmer W. W. On Several Factors of Acid Excretion J Biol Chem 17 305 315 (Apr) 1914.

Principle

Titratable acidity is measured by the amount of alkali necessary to alter the pH of a biological fluid to 7.4

Apparatus

- 1 A quantity of 500 ml Erlenmeyer flasks and a burette calibrated in 0.05 ml divisions
- 2 Calibrated pipettes or syringe pipettes 2 and 10 ml
- 3 A 250 ml volumetric flask.

Reagents

- 1 Phosphate solution of pH 7.4 M/15 buffer solution prepared according to Sørensen's table on phosphate buffers. Use 80.8 ml of M/15 Na_2HPO_4 and 19.2 ml of M/15 KH_2PO_4 .
- 2 Sodium hydroxide (NaOH) a 0.1000 N solution accurately titrated
- 3 Phenol red 0.1% aqueous solution of sodium salt. Dissolve 0.5 gm phenol red in 500 ml of water and add 3.5 ml of 0.05 N NaOH
- 4 Standard comparison solution. In a 250 ml volumetric flask dilute 2 ml phenol red and 10 ml standard phosphate buffer to 100 ml with water

Procedure

- 1 To a 500 ml Erlenmeyer flask add exactly 10 ml of urine. Add approximately 150 ml of water and exactly 2 ml of phenol red solution
- 2 Dilute to the mark and shake well
- 3 Titrate the unknown with 0.1000 N NaOH until the color matches the standard. The end point may be checked with the spectrophotometer at a wave length of 611 mμ or the pH itself can be checked with a glass electrode

Calculation

Titratable acidity ml of 1 N titratable acid/liter of urine ==

$$\frac{(\text{ml alkali}) \times \text{normality of alkali} \times 1000}{\text{ml urine}}$$

Example

Ten ml of urine required 5 ml of 0.1000 N NaOH to change the pH to 7.4

Titratable acidity ml 1 N titratable acid/liter urine ==

$$\frac{(5) \times 0.1000 \times 1000}{10} = 555$$

Precautions

Matching the end point colors may be difficult in the presence of a highly pigmented specimen of urine. In such cases it may be necessary to use a 5 ml sample.

2 Phenolsulfonphthalein Test**Reference**

Rowntree L. G. and Geraghty J. T. The Phthalein Test. An Experimental and Clinical Study of Phenolsulfonphthalein in Relation to Renal Function in Health and Disease. *Arch Int Med* 9: 234-338 (March) 1912.

Principle

The normal kidney clears injected phenolsulfonphthalein rapidly from the blood stream. The amount of dye excreted in a given time is measured spectrophotometrically.

Apparatus

- 1 Graduated cylinders 1000 ml
- 2 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer
- 3 Cuvettes 10 x 150 mm.
- 4 Sterile 1 ml tuberculin syringes and #23 needles

Reagents

- 1 Sodium hydroxide approximately 1 N 40 gm/1000 ml water
- 2 Phenolsulfonphthalein (PSP) 1 ml equivalent to 6 mg of dye sterilized in ampoules
- 3 Standard solution of dye Dilute 1 ml of dye (= 6 mg dye) to exactly 2000 ml with water containing a few ml of NaOH.

Procedure—Collection of Specimens

- 1 The subject omits breakfast the morning of the test
- 2 Allow the subject to drink 300-400 ml of water
- 3 One half hour later instruct him to urinate and discard the specimen
- 4 Inject 1 ml of PSP (6 mg) intravenously and note the time
- 5 Collect urine samples quantitatively at 15, 30 and 60 minutes

Procedure—Analysis of Specimens

- 1 Pour the whole specimen of urine into a graduated liter cylinder
- 2 Add enough NaOH to make urine alkaline (10-15 ml)
- 3 Dilute to 1000 ml. Mix well
- 4 Read aliquot in cuvette setting water blank at 100% T at 520 mμ

Calibration Curve

- 1 Using the standard PSP solution as described in reagents, prepare a calibration curve of the following dilutions

STANDARD ml	WATER ml	DYE/1 mg	% OF DYE INJECTED
100	0	3.0	50
80	20	2.4	40
60	40	1.8	30
40	60	1.2	20
20	80	0.6	10
10	90	0.3	5

* Read these against a water blank set at 100% T at wave length 520 mμ.

- 3 Plot the calibration curve of % T against % dye excreted

Calculation

- 1 Calculate % dye in each specimen by reference to the calibration curve
- 2 % dye excreted in 60 minutes =
(Sum of % dye in specimens 1 and 3)

Example

- 1 The % dye excreted in specimen 1 was 45 in specimen 2 25 and in specimen 3 10
- 2 % dye excreted in 60 minutes =
 $45 + 25 + 10 = 80\%$
- 3 The time course of excretion was normal

Precautions

- 1 New calibration curves should be run with every new batch of dye
- 2 In heavily pigmented urine, a urine blank instead of a water blank may be required.

3 Renal Clearance Tests Miscellaneous References

General

- Smith H W The Physiology of the Kidney New York 1937, Oxford University Press
 Smith H W Notes on the Interpretation of Clearance Methods J Clin Investigation
 20 631 635 (Nov) 1941

Diodrast

- White H L and Rolf D A Rapid Micro Method for Determining Diodrast and Inorganic Iodide Iodine in Blood and Urine Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 43 1 (Jan) 1940

Glomerular Filtration Rate

- Earle D P Jr and Berliner B W A Simplified Clinical Procedure for Measurement of Glomerular Filtration Rate and Renal Plasma Flow Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 62 (2) 62 64 (June) 1946

Insulin Clearance

- Shannon J A and Smith H W The Excretion of Insulin, Xylose and Urea by Normal Man J Clin Investigation 14 393 401 (July) 1935

Phenolsulphophthalein Test

- Scardino P L and Scott W W The Determination of Phenolsulphophthalein With the Photoelectric Colorimeter and Its Application of the Phthalein Elimination Curve J Urology 58 (2) 143 150 (Aug) 1947

Renal Blood Flow

- Poh P F and Poh N L A Simple Method for Determining Effective Renal Blood Flow and Tubular Excretory Mass in Man Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 51 (3) 3 3 8 (Dec) 1944

Urea Clearance

- Peters J P and Van Slyke D D Quantitative Clinical Chemistry Vol II Methods Baltimore 1935 Williams and Wilkins Company pag 564 572

SECTION IX

CLINICAL LABORATORY PROCEDURES (Cont'd)

E LIVER FUNCTION

1 Bromsulphalein Test

References

- 1 Rosenthal S M and White E C Clinical Application of the Bromsulphalein Test for Hepatic Function J A M A 84 1112 1114 (April) 1925
- 2 Mateer G Baltz J I Marion D F, and MacMillan, J M Liver Function Tests J A M A 121 723 728 (March) 1943
- 3 Gaehler O H Determination of Bromsulphalein in Normal Turbid Hemolyzed or Icteric Serums Am J Clin Path 15 452 455 (Oct) 1945

Principle

The dye bromsulphalein is removed from the blood stream by the liver. After intravenous injection bromsulphalein in the serum is measured colorimetrically.

Reagents

- 1 Bromsulphalein dye 150 mg/3 ml ampoule
- 2 Hydrochloric acid a 5% solution
- 3 Sodium hydroxide, 0.1 N solution, 4 gm/1000 ml of water

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 x 150 mm
- 3 A quantity of 15 ml centrifuge tubes (round bottom)
- 4 Electric centrifuge
- 5 Syringes 5 ml and #20 gauge needles (both sterile)
- 6 Syringe pipette 10 ml

Procedure—Collection of Specimens

- 1 The patient is weighed and the dosage to be injected is calculated on a basis of 5 mg per kilogram of body weight
- 2 The calculated amount of dye to be injected is measured into a 5 ml syringe
- 3 A control specimen is drawn from a vein. The syringe is separated from the needle and the syringe containing the dye is connected in its place. The dye is slowly injected into the vein the time being approximately one minute. Care should be taken not to allow infiltration of the dye outside the vein, as it is very painful.
- 4 Record the time of injection and after 45 minutes draw a sample of blood (4 to 5 ml) preferably from the other arm. Allow the blood to run into a clean dry test tube
- 5 Allow the blood to coagulate and then centrifuge and separate the serum

Procedure—Analysis of Serum

- 1 Into each of two cuvettes pipette exactly 0.5 ml serum
- 2 To the control tube add 2.5 ml water and 3 ml of hydrochloric acid. Mix.

- 3 To the other tube add 2 ml of water and 3 ml of 0.1 N sodium hydroxide
- 4 Set the control at 100% T at 565 mμ and read the unknown

Calibration Curve

- 1 Make up dilution of the dye in dilute sodium hydroxide in the range 0 to 0.1 mg/5 ml
- 2 Using a water blank set at 100% T read the standards at a wave length of 565 mμ.

Calculation

- 1 A value of 10 mg bromanifalein/100 ml of serum is arbitrarily taken as 100% retention when the dosage is 1 mg of bromsulfalein/kilogram body weight

$$\% \text{ retention} = \frac{(\text{mg in cuvette}) \times 100 \times 100}{(\text{ml serum in cuvette}) \times 10}$$

Example

- The % T was 91% corresponding to 0.0 mg bromsulfalein in the cuvette
- % retention =

$$\frac{(0.0) \times 100 \times 100}{0.5 \times 10} = 40\%$$

Precautions

- 1 Painful sloughing will be caused by extravascular bromsulfalein

2 Serum Bilirubin

Reference

- Mallory H. T. and Evelyn K. A. The Determination of Bilirubin With the Photoelectric Colorimeter *J Biol. Chem.* 129 431-490 (July) 1937

Principle

Bilirubin like aromatic amines combines with diazonium salts to form azo dyes. Addition of alcohol sets all the bilirubin free to react with the diazo reagent and is used to make the reaction quantitative for total bilirubin content of the serum.

Apparatus

- 1 Coleman Jr Spectrophotometer Model 6
- 2 Cuvettes 19 x 1.0 mm
- 3 A quantity of volumetric flasks 10 ml or 25 ml
- 4 A 10 ml syringe pipette accurately calibrated

Reagents

- 1 Methyl alcohol absolute
- 2 Sulfanilic acid solution: Dissolve 1 gm of sulfanilic acid in 15 ml of concentrated HCl and dilute to 1 liter with distilled water
- 3 Sodium nitrite solution: Dissolve 5 gm of NaNO₂ (ACS) in a little water and dilute to 100 ml. The solution is to be prepared on the day it is used
- 4 Diazo reagent: Add 0.3 ml of the nitrite solution to 10 ml of the sulfanilic acid solution. The diazo reagent must be prepared within a few minutes of the time when it is to be used
- 5 Dilute HCl for blanks: Dilute 15 ml of concentrated HCl to 1 liter with water
- 6 Bilirubin stock standard: Transfer exactly 40 mg of purified bilirubin to a 100 ml glass stoppered volumetric flask. Dissolve and bring to the mark with chloroform (USP) and mix by inverting 10 times. (This solution is stable if stored in a brown bottle with properly fitted glass stopper)

- * Bilirubin working standard: Dilute 1 ml of the above stock solution to 100 ml with absolute methyl alcohol. The working standard is 0.4 mg/100 ml.

Procedure—Collection of Specimens

- 1 To avoid turbidity of serum by alimentary lipemia the blood should be taken when the patient is in the postabsorptive state. Transfer the sample to a round bottom tube without anticoagulant close with a pledget of cotton and then keep at room temperature for approximately 15 minutes until the clot is completely formed. Chill in ice water and place in the refrigerator until the clot has contracted after which it is gently freed from the top part of the tube if there is adherence and the tube then centrifuged. After centrifuging transfer the clear serum to a clean dry tube. The diazo reaction must be applied within 2 hours after the blood is clotied and if the separated serum is allowed to stand the reaction is altered. After long standing only the indirect reactions occur.

Procedure—Analysis of Serum

- 1 Pipette exactly 1 ml of serum into a 10 ml volumetric flask fill to the mark with distilled water stopper and mix by inverting 10 times.
- 2 Into a cuvette pipette exactly 3 ml of absolute methyl alcohol and then 1 ml of fresh diazo reagent.
- 3 Follow with exactly 4 ml of the (0 + 1) diluted serum mix stopper and hold 30 minutes at room temperature for the full color to develop. (If bilirubin exceeds 5 mg/100 ml dilute the serum to 25 ml instead of 10 ml.)
- 4 At the same time prepare a reagent blank with 4 ml of dilute hydrochloric acid 5 ml of absolute methyl alcohol and 1 ml of diazo reagent.
- 5 Set the blank at 100% T at 550 mμ and read the unknown.

Calibration Curve

- 1 Prepare a calibration curve with working bilirubin standard in the range 0 to 0.010 mg bilirubin per cuvette. Mix in each case 3 ml of absolute methyl alcohol 1 ml of diazo reagent the requisite amount of working standard and dilute hydrochloric acid to make the total final volume 10 ml.
- 2 Stopper all cuvettes tightly mix each by inverting 4 times. Let stand together for 30 minutes at room temperature for the color to develop fully then measure the Transmittance (T) at 550 mμ.

Calculation

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mg bilirubin/100 mg serum} = \\ \frac{(\text{mg in cuvette}) \times (\text{dilution}) \times 100}{(\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml serum})} \end{aligned}$$

Example

One ml serum was diluted to 10 ml of which 4 ml were taken for analysis. A reading of 80% T was equivalent to 0.010 mg bilirubin in the cuvette.
mg total bilirubin/100 ml serum =

$$\frac{(0.010) \times 10 \times 100}{4 \times 1} = 2.5 \text{ mg bilirubin}$$

Precautions

- 1 Careful handling of the serum is essential to this method.
- 2 If it is desired to determine direct and indirect bilirubin two stages are required (a) without methyl alcohol (b) with methyl alcohol. See the original paper for this procedure.

■ Urobilinogen in Urine and Feces

A. UROBILINOGEN IN URINE

Reference

Schwartz H Shorav V and Watson M J Urobilinogen IV The Determination of Urobilinogen by Means of the Evelyn Photoelectric Colorimeter *Am J Clin Path* 14 595-604 (Dec) 1944

Principle

A red color is formed by the reaction between urobilinogen and Ehrlich's aldehyde reagent

Apparatus

- 1 Separatory funnels 200 ml
- Graduated cylinders 100 ml
- 3 Cuvettes size 10 x 150 mm
- 4 Coleman Jr Spe trophotometer Model 6
- 5 A quantity of 175 ml Erlenmeyer flasks
- 6 An 0.5 ml syringe pipette accurately calibrated

Reagents

- 1 Sodium carbonate (reagent grade)
- 2 Petroleum ether (b.p. 30-60°C)
- 3 Ferrous sulfate a 0.5% solution (freshly prepared) 0.5 gm of ferrous sulfate are dissolved in 100 ml of water
- 4 Sodium hydroxide a 10% solution in water
- 5 Ehrlich's aldehyde reagent 0.7 gm para dimethyl amino benzaldehyde 150 ml of concentrated hydrochloric acid and 100 ml of water
- 6 Sodium acetate aqueous saturated solution
- 7 Glacial acetic acid
- 8 Ethyl alcohol 95%
- 9 Standard solution Dissolve 5 mg of Pontacyl Carmine 9B (Du Pont) and 95 mg of Pontacyl Violet 6B in 1000 ml of 0.5% acetic acid A further dilution of one part in 5 gives a color intensity equivalent to 0.6 mg of urobilinogen per 100 ml With a drop of CHCl₃ the color is stable indefinitely (If available it is better to use pure crystalline urobilinogen)

Preservation of Sample

The procedure is applicable to an individual's 4 hour sample If the latter the sample should be in a dark bottle containing approx 5 gm of sodium carbonate under a layer of petroleum ether

Procedure

- 1 To 50 ml of urine in a 125 ml Erlenmeyer flask add 5 ml of ferrous sulfate solution
- 2 Add 5 ml of 10% sodium hydroxide mix thoroughly and set away in the dark for one hour Filter or centrifuge
- 3 At the end of the hour the filtrate should not give any urobilin band at 0.8 μ To determine the amount of filtrate to use do a qualitative test first
 - a To 1 ml of the filtrate add 1 ml of Ehrlich's reagent and 4 to 6 ml of sodium acetate solution
 - b If the resultant color is an intense red 0.5 ml of filtrate is enough for the quantitative procedure If pale red use 5 to 10 ml if faint pink use 15 to 20 ml and if there is no color use 0 ml
- 4 The amount selected is placed in a pear-shaped funnel and if small is diluted to bring the volume to 10 ml
 - a Then add 20 ml of petroleum ether and acidify with 5 ml of glacial acetic acid

416 Clinical Laboratory Procedures

- 6 Shake the mixture vigorously and allow to separate. The emulsions are broken by the addition of more acetic acid and in some cases 12 ml of 95% ethyl alcohol is used.
- 7 Decant the petroleum ether from the top by running out as much of the aqueous fraction as possible through the lower stopcock. The aqueous layer is extracted twice more with 25 ml portions of petroleum ether.
- 8 The combined ether extractions are placed in a clean separatory funnel and washed once with a small amount of distilled water which is discarded. This serves to remove small amounts of mechanically entrained impurities.
- 9 Add 2 ml of Ehrlich's reagent and shake the solutions vigorously.
- 10 Now add 6 ml of the sodium acetate solution and shake the mixture again. (At times it is noted at this stage that the color of the aqueous fraction becomes somewhat less intense and at the same time a fine reddish brown precipitate appears at the interphase. This is believed to be indol or skatol aldehyde since it has been observed repeatedly that the same phenomenon occurs when indol is similarly handled with petroleum ether, Ehrlich's reagent and sodium acetate.)
- 11 The colored aqueous fraction after complete separation is removed into a 100 ml graduated cylinder.
- 12 Repeat the extraction of the petroleum ether with the Ehrlich's reagent and sodium acetate one or more times or until the final aqueous fraction is not more than very faint. Dilute to 100 ml.
- 13 Place 10 ml of the well mixed solution into a cuvette.
- 14 For a blank reading add 8 ml of sodium acetate to 3 ml of Ehrlich's reagent. Set at 100% T at 508 mμ and read the unknown.

Calibration Curve

The arbitrary standard is equivalent to 0.6 mg urobilinogen/100 ml. Set up a calibration curve in the range from 0 to 10 mcg in 10 ml and run at 508 mμ.

Calculation

mg urobilinogen/liter of urine =

$$\frac{(\text{mcg in cuvette}) \times (\text{final dilution}) \times (\text{initial dilution}) \times (1000)}{(1000) \times (\text{ml final aliquot}) \times (\text{ml filtrate}) \times (\text{ml urine})}$$

Example

A reading of 75% T was equivalent to 1.6 mcg in 10 ml in the cuvette. Ten ml aliquots were read of a final dilution of 100 ml. Ten ml of filtrate had been analyzed from an initial dilution of 50 ml of urine to 100.

mg urobilinogen/liter of urine =

$$\frac{(1.6) \times 100 \times 100 \times 1000}{1000 \times 10 \times 10 \times 50} = 32 \text{ mg/liter}$$

Precautions

- 1 There are many places in this method at which losses will occur. Care is required at every step. The method itself is not as quantitative as one would desire.

B UROBILINOGEN IN FECES

Reference Principle

Same as for urobilinogen in urine.

Apparatus

Same as for urobilinogen in urine and in addition

- 1 Quantitative filter paper
- 2 A number of funnels
- 3 A Waring Blender

Reagents

Same as for urobilinogen in urine

Procedure—Processing of Sample

- 1 All fecal matter for a period of 3 days is collected as described in the section of this manual on collection of feces
- 2 In Waring Blender the whole mass is homogenized and finally diluted to exactly 1000 ml

Procedure—Preparation of the Alkaline Extract of Stool

- 1 Dilute 95 to 100 ml of the emulsion up to exactly 300 ml with water
- 2 Add 100 ml of ferrous sulfate
- 3 Then add 100 ml of sodium hydroxide stopper the flask shake and place in the dark for one to two hours
- 4 Filter through quantitative filter paper

Procedure—Analysis of Alkaline Extract

- 1 Pipette 20 ml of the extract into a separatory funnel
- 2 Add 1 ml glacial acetic acid
- 3 Then add 30-40 ml of petroleum ether and shake for three minutes
- 4 Release the watery part into a second separatory funnel add 10-40 ml petroleum ether again and shake for three minutes Combine both ether extracts
- 5 Wash twice with distilled water and then add 1 ml of Ehrlich's aldehyde reagent
- 6 Shake for one minute and then add 4 ml of a cold solution of sodium acetate (saturated)
- 7 Shake for 3 minutes and release the colored phase into a 100 ml graduated cylinder
- 8 Repeat the process of adding the Ehrlich's reagent and sodium acetate until no colored compound is formed.
- 9 Combine all the colored washings dilute to 100 ml and read an aliquot in the spectrophotometer setting the blank at 100% T as for urine

Calibration Curve

Same as for urobilinogen in urine

Calculation

mg urobilinogen in feces/day =

$$\frac{(\text{mcg in cuvette}) \times (\text{dilution \# 1}) \times (\text{dilution \# 2}) \times (2000)}{(100) \times (\text{ml aliquot}) \times (\text{ml alkaline filtrate}) \times (\text{ml stool}) \times (\text{days collected})}$$

Example

A 3 day sample was diluted to 1000 ml. Of the emulsion 100 ml were diluted to 500 of which 20 ml aliquots were analyzed the final dilution being 100 ml. The concentration of urobilinogen in the cuvette was 15 mcg in 10 ml
mg fecal urobilinogen/day =

$$\frac{15 \times 100 \times 500 \times 100}{100 \times 10 \times 20 \times 50 \times 3} = 10 \text{ mg/day}$$

Precautions

Same as for urobilinogen in urine

4 Liver Function, Miscellaneous References**General**

- Mateer, J G, Baltz, J I, Steele, H H, Brouwer, H W and Colvert, J P. Chronic Subclinical Impairment of the Liver. Early Signs and Treatment. Further Improvements and Evaluation of Certain Liver Function Tests. *J A M A* 4: 133-909 816 (March) 1947
- Good, Edwin E. Interpretation of Liver Function Tests. *J A M A* 134 (7) 955-99 (June) 1947

418 *Clinical Laboratory Procedures*

Amyloidosis

Unger F N Zuckerbrod M Beck H J and Steele J M Study of the Disappearance of Congo Red From the Blood of Non amyloid Subjects and Patients With Amyloidosis J Clin Investigation 27 111 117 (Jan) 1948

Bile in Urine

Hawkinson V Wat on C J and Turner R H Modification of Harrison's Test for Bilirubin in Urine Especially Suited for Mass and Serial Use J A M A 129 514 515 (Oct) 1945

Cephalin Flocculation

Hanger F M Serological Differentiation of Obstructive From Hepatogenous Jaundice by Flocculation of Cephalin Cholesterol Emulsion J Clin Investigation 18 81 89 (May) 1939

Cholinesterase Activity

Vorhaus L J II and Kark R M Measurement of Serum Cholinesterase Activity A Useful Laboratory Tool in the Study of Diseases of the Liver and Biliary System To be published Medical Nutrition Laboratory Report No 56 June 8 1949

Galactose

Colcher H Patek A J Jr and Kendall F M Galactose Disappearance From the Blood Stream Calculation of the Galactose Removal Constant and Its Application as a Test for Liver Function J Clin Investigation 25 768 775 (Sept) 1946

Hemosiderin in Urine

Fous P Urinary Siderosis Hemosiderin Granules in the Urine as an Aid to Diagnosis of Pernicious Anemia Hemochromatosis and Other Diseases Causing Siderosis J Liver Med 28 645 658 (Nov) 1918

Hippuric Acid

Quick A J The Clinical Application of the Hippuric Acid and Prothrombin Test Am J Clin Path 10 222 223 (March) 1940

Phosphatase

Cutman A B and Hanger F M Jr Differential Diagnosis of Jaundice I Combined Serum Phosphatase Determination and Cephalin Flocculation Test M Clin North America 25 83 845 (May) 1941

Portal Pressure

Bean W B Paul W D and Franklin M Preliminary Studies on an Indirect Method for Determining Portal Pressures J Clin Investigation 28 769 770 (July) 1949

Prothrombin Time

Aggeler P M Howard J Lucia E P Clark W and Astaff A Standardization of the Quick Prothrombin Test Blood 1 270 273 (March) 1946

Quick A J The Clinical Significance of Prothrombin as a Factor in Hemorrhage Pennsylvania M J 43 125 130 (Oct) 1939

Unger P N and Shapiro S Prothrombin Response to the Parenteral Administration of Large Doses of Vitamin K in Subjects With Normal Liver Function and in Cases of Liver Disease A Standardized Test for the Estimation of Hepatic Function J Clin Investigation 27 39 41 (Jan) 1948

Thymol Turbidity

Dekema H The Thymol Turbidity Test and the Cephalin Cholesterol Flocculation Test Nederl tijdschr v geneesk 93 (II) 19 48^o (1949)

Huerga J dela and Popper H Standardized Reagent for Thymol Turbidity Test J Lab & Clin Med 34 (6) 847 850 (June) 1949

Shank R E and Hoagland C L A Modified Method for the Quantitative Determination of the Thymol Turbidity Reaction of Serum J Biol Chem 162 133 139 (Jan) 1946

Urobilinogen

Wilson T M and Davidson L M P Ehrlich's Aldehyde Test for Urobilinogen British M J 1949 884 889 (May) 1949

SECTION IX

CLINICAL LABORATORY PROCEDURES (Cont'd)

FUNCTIONAL TESTS OF ENDOCRINE GASTRIC AND OTHER SYSTEMS

1 Pituitary Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone (ACTH) Test

Reference

Forsham P H, Thorn G W, Frantz F T H and Hille A H. Clinical Studies With Pituitary Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone. *Endocrinol* 35:66 (Jan) 1949

Principle

Following the injection of pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in normal individuals there is an immediate and striking fall in circulating eosinophils and a rise in the uric acid excretion. Patients with Addison's disease fail to show these changes.

Apparatus

- 1 Sterile syringe and needle for intramuscular injection of ACTH
- 2 Apparatus for direct eosinophil count
- 3 Apparatus for estimating uric acid and creatinine

Reagents

- 1 ACTH for intramuscular injection. The solubility varies with different batches of ACTH. The hormone requires alkalization to a pH between 8 and 9 (faint pink with phenolphthalein). To 5 ml of sterile saline add three drops of approximately N/10 NaOH. This is taken up in a syringe and added to the rubber capped vial containing 5 mg. of ACTH. Shake gently until homogeneous. A somewhat cloudy solution is obtained. This should not be kept longer than twelve hours at 4°C or longer than two hours at room temperature. It should be frozen for long storage. The powder appears stable.
- 2 Reagents for direct eosinophil count
- Reagents for estimating uric acid and creatinine

Procedure

- 1 No food is allowed after 8:00 P.M. at night
- 2 On the following day give the patient 700 ml of water at 6:00, 8:00 and 10:00 A.M.
- 3 Collect urine from 6:00 to 8:00 A.M.
- 4 An eosinophil count is done at 8:00 A.M.
- 5 Immediately after the 8:00 A.M. specimen inject 5 mg. ACTH intramuscularly deep into the gluteus maximus. A moderate degree of soreness often persists for a day or two.
- 6 Urine is collected from 8:00 A.M. to 12:00 noon and the eosinophil count is repeated at noon.
- 7 Analyze the urine specimen for uric acid and creatinine.

418 *Clinical Laboratory Procedures*

Amyloidosis

Unger P N Zuckerbrod M Beck W J and Steele J M Study of the Disappearance of Congo Red From the Blood of Non amyloid Subjects and Patients With Amyloidosis J Clin Investigation 27 111 117 (Jan) 1948

Bile in Urine

Hawkinson V Watson C J and Turner R H Modification of Harrison's Test for Bilirubin in Urine Especially Suited for Mass and Serial Use J A M A 129 514 515 (Oct) 1945

Cephalin Flocculation

Hanger F M Serological Differentiation of Obstructive From Hepatogenous Jaundice by Flocculation of Cephalin Cholesterol Emulsion J Clin Investigation 33 61 69 (May) 1954

Cholinesterase Activity

Vorhaus L J II and Kark H M Measurement of Serum Cholinesterase Activity A Useful Laboratory Tool in the Study of Diseases of the Liver and Biliary System To be published Medical Nutrition Laboratory Report No 56 June 8 1949

Galactose

Colecher H Patek A J Jr and Kendall F E Galactose Disappearance From the Blood Stream Calculation of the Galactose Removal Constant and Its Application as a Test for Liver Function J Clin Investigation 25 763 75 (Sept) 1946

Hemosiderin in Urine

Rous P Urinary Siderosis Hemosiderin Granules in the Urine as an Aid to Diagnosis of Pernicious Anemia Hemochromatosis and Other Diseases Causing Siderosis J Exper Med 28 645 658 (Nov) 1918

Hippuric Acid

Quick A J The Clinical Application of the Hippuric Acid and Prothrombin Test Am J Clin Path 10 202 203 (March) 1940

Phosphatase

Cutman A B and Hanger F M Jr Differential Diagnosis of Jaundice by Combined Serum Phosphatase Determination and Cephalin Flocculation Test M Clin North America 25 83 843 (May) 1941

Portal Pressure

Bean W B Paul W D and Franklin M Preliminary Studies on an Indirect Method for Determining Portal Pressures J Clin Investigation 28 69 110 (July) 1949

Prothrombin Time

Aggeler P M Howard J Lucia S P Clark W and Astaff A Standardization of the Quick Prothrombin Test Blood 1 202 203 (March) 1946

Quick A J The Clinical Significance of Prothrombin as a Factor in Hemorrhage Pennsylvania M J 43 105 130 (Oct) 1939

Unger P N and Shapiro S Prothrombin Response to the Parenteral Administration of Large Doses of Vitamin K in Subjects With Normal Liver Function and in Cases of Liver Disease A Standardized Test for the Estimation of Hepatic Function J Clin Investigation 27 20 41 (Jan) 1948

Thymol Turbidity

Dekema H The Thymol Turbidity Test and the Cephalin Cholesterol Flocculation Test Nederl tydchr geneesk 93 (II) 19 480 (1949)

Huerga J dela and Popper H Standardized Reagent for Thymol Turbidity Test J Lab & Clin Med 34 (6) 87 880 (June) 1949

Shank R E and Hongland C L A Modified Method for the Quantitative Determination of the Thymol Turbidity Reaction of Serum J Biol Chem 162 133 135 (Jan) 1946

Urobilinogen

Wilson T M and Davidson L S P Ehrlich's Aldehyde Test for Urobilinogen British M J 1949 884 889 (May) 1949

SECTION IX

CLINICAL LABORATORY PROCEDURES (Cont'd)

F FUNCTIONAL TESTS OF ENDOCRINE, GASTRIC AND OTHER SYSTEMS

1 Pituitary Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone (ACTH) Test

Reference

Forsham P H, Thorn G W, Fronty F T G and Hills A G. Clinical Studies With Pituitary Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone. *J Clin Endocrinol* 8: 1066 (Jan) 1948

Principle

Following the injection of pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in normal individuals there is an immediate and striking fall in circulating eosinophils and a rise in the uric acid excretion. Patients with Addison's disease fail to show these changes.

Apparatus

- 1 Sterile syringe and needle for intramuscular injection of ACTH
- 2 Apparatus for direct eosinophil count
- 3 Apparatus for estimating uric acid and creatinine

Reagents

- 1 ACTH for Intramuscular Injection. The solubility varies with different batches of ACTH. The hormone requires alkalization to a pH between 8 and 9 (faint pink with phenolphthalein). To 10 ml of sterile saline add three drops of approximately N/10 NaOH. This is taken up in a syringe and added to the rubber capped vial containing 5 mg of ACTH. Shake gently until homogeneous. A somewhat cloudy solution is obtained. This should not be kept longer than twelve hours at 4°C or longer than two hours at room temperature. It should be frozen for long storage. The powder appears stable.
- 2 Reagents for direct eosinophil count
- 3 Reagents for estimating uric acid and creatinine

Procedure

- 1 No food is allowed after 8:00 P.M. at night.
- 2 On the following day give the patient 100 ml of water at 8:00, 8:00 and 10:00 A.M.
- 3 Collect urine from 8:00 to 8:00 A.M.
- 4 An eosinophil count is done at 8:00 A.M.
- 5 Immediately after the 8:00 A.M. specimen inject 25 mg ACTH intramuscularly deep into the gluteus maximus. A moderate degree of soreness often persists for a day or two.
- 6 Urine is collected from 8:00 A.M. to 1:00 noon, and the eosinophil count is repeated at noon.
- 7 Analyze the urine specimens for uric acid and creatinine.

Amyloidosis

Unger P N Zuckerbrod M Beck G J and Steele J M Study of the Disappearance of Congo Red From the Blood of Non amyloid Subjects and Patients With Amyloidosis J Clin Investigation 27 111 117 (Jan) 1948

Bile in Urine

Hawkinson V Watson C J and Turner R H Modification of Harrison's Test for Bilirubin in Urine Especially Suited for Mass and Serial Use J A M A 129 514 515 (Oct) 1945

Cephalin Flocculation

Hanger F M Serological Differentiation of Obstructive From Hepatogenous Jaundice by Flocculation of Cephalin Cholesterol Emulsion J Clin Investigation 18 661 669 (Mar) 1939

Cholinesterase Activity

Vorhaus L J II and Kark R M Measurement of Serum Cholinesterase Activity A Useful Laboratory Tool in the Study of Diseases of the Liver and Biliary System To be published Medical Nutrition Laboratory Report No 56 June 8 1949

Galactose

Colcher H Patek A J Jr and Iendall F E Galactose Disappearance From the Blood Stream Calculation of the Galactose Removal Constant and Its Application as a Test for Liver Function J Clin Investigation 25 765 765 (Sept) 1946

Hemosiderin in Urine

Rous P Urinary Siderosis Hemosiderin Granules in the Urine as an Aid to Diagnosis of Pernicious Anemia Hemochromatosis and Other Diseases Causing Siderosis J Exper Med 28 645 658 (Nov) 1918

Hippuric Acid

Quick A J The Clinical Application of the Hippuric Acid and Prothrombin Test Am J Clin Path 10 222 233 (March) 1940

Phosphatase

Cutman A H and Hanger F M Jr Differential Diagnosis of Jaundice by Combined Serum Phosphatase Determination and Cephalin Flocculation Test M Clin North America 25 831 843 (Mar) 1941

Portal Pressure

Bean W H Paul W D and Franklin M Preliminary Studies on an Indirect Method for Determining Portal Pressures J Clin Investigation 28 169 170 (July) 1949

Prothrombin Time

Aggeler P M Howard J Lucia M P Clark W and Astaff A Standardization of the Quick Prothrombin Test Blood 1 200 203 (March) 1946

Quick A J The Clinical Significance of Prothrombin as a Factor in Hemorrhage Pennsylvania M J 43 105 130 (Oct) 1939

Unger P N and Shapiro S Prothrombin Response to the Parenteral Administration of Large Doses of Vitamin K in Subjects With Normal Liver Function and in Cases of Liver Disease A Standardized Test for the Estimation of Hepatic Function J Clin Investigation 27 39 47 (Jan) 1948

Thymol Turbidity

Dekema H The Thymol Turbidity Test and the Cephalin Cholesterol Flocculation Test Nederl tijdschr v geneesk 93 (II) 19 48 (1949)

Huerga J dela and Popper H Standardized Reagent for Thymol Turbidity Test J Lab & Clin Med 34 (6) 877 880 (June) 1949

Shank H H and Hengland C L A Modified Method for the Quantitative Determination of the Thymol Turbidity Reaction of Serum J Biol Chem 162 133 138 (Jan) 1946

Urobilinogen

Wilson T M and Davidson L M P Ehrlich's Aldehyde Test for Urobilinogen British M J 1949 884 889 (Mar) 1949

SECTION IX

CLINICAL LABORATORY PROCEDURES (Cont'd)

F FUNCTIONAL TESTS OF ENDOCRINE GASTRIC AND OTHER SYSTEMS

1 Pituitary Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone (ACTH) Test

Reference

Forsham P H, Thorn G W, Prunty F T H and Hills A G. Clinical Studies With Pituitary Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone. *J Clin Endocrinol* 4: 15-66 (Jan) 1945

Principles

Following the injection of pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in normal individuals there is an immediate and striking fall in circulating eosinophils and a rise in the uric acid excretion. Patients with Addison's disease fail to show these changes.

Apparatus

- 1 Sterile syringe and needle for intramuscular injection of ACTH
- 2 Apparatus for direct eosinophil count
- 3 Apparatus for estimating uric acid and creatinine

Reagents

- 1 ACTH for Intramuscular Injection. The solubility varies with different batches of ACTH. The hormone requires alkalinization to a pH between 8 and 9 (faint pink with phenolphthalein). To 5 ml of sterile saline add three drops of approximately N/10 NaOH. This is taken up in a syringe and added to the rubber capped vial containing 0.1 mg of ACTH. Shake gently until homogeneous. A somewhat cloudy solution is obtained. This should not be kept longer than twelve hours at 4°C or longer than two hours at room temperature. It should be frozen for long storage. The powder appears stable.
- Reagents for direct eosinophil count
- 3 Reagent for estimating uric acid and creatinine

Procedure

- 1 No food is allowed after 8:00 P.M. at night.
- On the following day give the patient 100 ml of water at 8:00, 8:00 and 10:00 A.M.
- 1 Collect urine from 8:00 to 8:00 A.M.
- 4 An eosinophil count is done at 8:00 A.M.
- 5 Immediately after the 8:00 A.M. specimen inject 0.1 mg ACTH intramuscularly deep into the gluteus maximus. A moderate degree of soreness often persists for a day or two.
- 6 Urine is collected from 8:00 A.M. to 1:00 noon and the eosinophil count is repeated at noon.
- 7 Analyze the urine specimens for uric acid and creatinine.

418 *Clinical Laboratory Procedures*

Amyloidosis

Unger P N Zuckerbrod M Beck G J and Steele J M Study of the Disappearance of Congo Red From the Blood of Non amyloid Subjects and Patients With Amyloidosis J Clin Investigation 27 111 117 (Jan) 1948

Bile in Urine

Hawkinson A Watson C J and Turner R H Modification of Harrison's Test for Bilirubin in Urine Especially Suited for Mass and Serial Use J A M A 129 514 515 (Oct) 1945

Cephalin Flocculation

Hanger F M Serological Differentiation of Obstructive From Hepatogenous Jaundice by Flocculation of Cephalin Cholesterol Emulsion J Clin Investigation 18 61 69 (May) 1939

Cholinesterase Activity

Vorhaus L J H and Kark R M Measurement of Serum Cholinesterase Activity A Useful Laboratory Tool in the Study of Diseases of the Liver and Biliary System To be published Medical Nutrition Laboratory Report No 56 June 8 1949

Galactose

Colcher H Patek A J Jr and Kendall F L Galactose Disappearance From the Blood Stream Calculation of the Galactose Removal Constant and Its Application as a Test for Liver Function J Clin Investigation 25 768 775 (Sept) 1946

Hemosiderin in Urine

Rous P Urinary Siderosis Hemosiderin Granules in the Urine as an Aid to Diagnosis of Pernicious Anemia Hemochromatosis and Other Diseases Causing Siderosis J Exper Med 28 645 658 (Nov) 1918

Hippuric Acid

Quick A J The Clinical Application of the Hippuric Acid and Prothrombin Test Am J Clin Path 10 22-23 (March) 1940

Phosphatase

Cusman A H and Hanger F M Jr Differential Diagnosis of Jaundice by Combined Serum Phosphatase Determination and Cephalin Flocculation Test M Clin North America 23 531 548 (Nov) 1941

Portal Pressure

Dean W B Paul W D and Franklin M Preliminary Studies on an Indirect Method for Determining Portal Pressures J Clin Investigation 28 769 770 (July) 1949

Prothrombin Time

Aggeler P M Howard J Lucia M P Clark W and Astaff A Standardization of the Quick Prothrombin Test Blood 1 2 0 203 (March) 1946

Quick A J The Clinical Significance of Prothrombin as a Factor in Hemorrhage Pennsylvania M J 43 125 130 (Oct) 1939

Unger P N and Shapiro S Prothrombin Response to the Parenteral Administration of Large Doses of Vitamin K in Subjects With Normal Liver Function and in Cases of Liver Disease A Standardized Test for the Estimation of Hepatic Function J Clin Investigation 27 29 41 (Jan) 1948

Thymol Turbidity

Dekema H The Thymol Turbidity Test and the Cephalin Cholesterol Flocculation Test Nederl tydschr geneesk 93 (II) 19482 (1949)

Ruerga J dela and Popper H Standardized Reagent for Thymol Turbidity Test J Lab & Clin Med 31 (6) 87 880 (June) 1949

Shank R E and Hongland C L A Modified Method for the Quantitative Determination of the Thymol Turbidity Reaction of Serum J Biol Chem 162 132 133 (Jan) 1946

Urobilinogen

Wilson T M and Davidson L S P Ehrlich's Aldehyde Test for Urobilinogen British M J 1949 884 889 (May) 1949

Cold Pressor Tests

Markert N J and Lang J D Physicians Handbook ed 4 Info Alt, Calif 1947
University Medical Publishers page 78

Porphyria

Welker M L The Porphyrias New England J Med 32 11 19 (Jan) 1943
Nesbitt S Acute Porphyria J A M A 124 86 94 (Jan) 1944
Katon C J Schwartz S and Hawkenson V Studies of the Uroporphyrins II
Further Studies of the Porphyrias of the Urine Feces Bile and Liver in Cases of
Porphyria With Particular Reference to a Waldenstrom Type Porphyrin Behaving
as an Entity on the Tswett Column J Biol Chem 157 345 362 (Jan) 1945

SUBSTANCES OF OCCASIONAL CLINICAL IMPORTANCE MISCELLANEOUS REFERENCES

Alcohol

Harger E N Kaner, B B Bridwell E G and Hatcher M F The Partition Ratio of
Alcohol Between Air and Water Urine and Blood Estimation and Identification of
Alcohol in These Liquids From Analysis of Air Equilibrated With Them J Biol
Chem 123 101 14 (Mar) 1940

Heparin

Astrup T On the Determination of Heparin in Blood Plasma and Urine Acta pharmacol
et toxicol 3 (suppl) 165 178 1944

Mercury

Van Sychtelen H Warmoltz N and Wiggerink G L Method for Determining the
Mercury Content of Urine Phillips F H Re 11 119 124

Nicotine

Wolf William A, Hawkins Marina H and Miles W H The Spectrophotometric Estimation
of Nicotine in Blood J Biol Chem 175 8, 831 (Sept), 1948

Phenols

Schmidt L O Urinary Phenol IV The Simultaneous Determination of Phenol and
p-Cresol in Urine J Biol Chem 179 11 11 (May) 1949
Theis R C and Benedict H P The Determination of Phenols in the Blood J Biol
Chem 61 61 74 (Aug) 1944
Voterra Mario Urinary Phenols I Method of Determination Urinary Phenols II The
Significance in Normal and Pathological Conditions Am J Clin Path 12 5 533
580 589 (Nov) 1947

Procaine

Ting H C Coon J M and Conway A C A Spectrophotometric Method for Determination
of Procaine and p-Aminobenzoic Acid J Lab & Clin Med 34 (6) 878 879
(June) 1949

Salicylates

Voterra Mario and Jacobs Mildred D A Simple Method for the Determination of
Salicylates in Blood J Lab & Clin Med 32 (10) 181 83 (Oct) 1941

Streptomycin

Mashall E L Jr Blanchard I C and Buhle Emmett I Colorimetric Methods for
Determination of Streptomycin J Pharm & Exper Therap 90 (4) 367 374 (Aug)
1944

Sulfonamides

Bratton A C and Marshall F H A New Coupling Component for Sulfanilamide
Determination J Biol Chem 178 375 6 (Mar) 1939

Calculation

- 1 Calculate eosinophils uric acid and creatinine as described under those methods
- 2 Calculate the uric acid creatinine ratio for both specimens of urine according to the formula

uric acid/creatinine ratio =

$$\frac{\text{mg uric acid/100 ml urine}}{\text{mg creatinine/100 ml urine}}$$

- 3 Calculate the percentage change of eosinophils and uric acid/creatinine ratio between the pre injection and post injection values according to the formula

$$\frac{(\text{Pre injection value} - \text{post injection value}) \times 100}{(\text{Pre injection value})}$$

Interpretation

Eosinophil Count Normal subjects have a decrease of 70% or more. 50% is the lower limit of normal. Patients with Addison's disease show little or no drop in eosinophil count.

Uric Acid Creatinine Ratio Normal subjects will increase their uric acid creatinine ratio by approximately 100 percent average. Patients with Addison's disease show approximately a 20 percent increase. An increase of over 50 percent is strong evidence against adrenal insufficiency.

2 References to Endocrine Gastric and Other Functional Tests**Water and Salt Tests of Adrenal Sufficiency**

- Robinson, F. J., Power, M. H. and Kepler, E. J. Two New Procedures to Assist in the Recognition and Exclusion of Addison's Disease. *Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clin.* 19: 577-583 (Sept.) 1947.
- Cutler, H. H., Power, M. H. and Walder, R. M. Concentration of Chloride Sodium and Potassium in Urine and Blood. Their Diagnostic Significance in Adrenal Insufficiency. *J. A. M. A.* 111: 117-122 (Jan.) 1935.

Adrenal Hormones

- Fraser, R. W., Forbes, A. P., Albright, F., Sulkowitch, S. and Reifstein, E. C. Jr. Colorimetric Assay of 17 Ketosteroids in Urine. *J. Clin. Endocrinol.* 1: 34-55 (March) 1941.
- Talbot, N. B., Saltzman, F., Wixon, R. L. and Wolfe, J. K. Colorimetric Assay of Urinary Corticosteroid like Substances. *J. Biol. Chem.* 160: 535-546 (Oct.) 1945.

Pancreas

- Fraser, R., Albright, F. and Smith, P. H. The Value of Glucose Tolerance Tests, Insulin Tolerance Test and the Glucose Insulin Tolerance Test in the Diagnosis of Endocrinological Disorders of Glucose Metabolism. *J. Clin. Endocrinol.* 1: 29, 306 (April) 1941.
- Comfort, M. W. and Osterberg, A. H. Serum Amylase and Serum Lipase in the Diagnosis of Diseases of the Pancreas. *M. Clin. North America* 24: 1137-1149 (July) 1940.
- Beazell, J. M., Schmidt, C. R. and Ivy, A. C. The Diagnosis and Treatment of Achylia Pancreatica. *J. A. M. A.* 116: 736-739 (June) 1941.

Parathyroids

- Albright, F. The Parathyroids—Physiology and Therapeutics. *J. A. M. A.* 117: 7-533 (Aug.) 1941.

Gastric Function

- Glenn, P. M. Histamine Stimulated Fractional Gastric Analysis. The Diagnostic Value of Total Secretion. *Gastroenterology* 6: 409-416 (May) 1946.
- Hollander, F. The Insulin Test for the Presence of Intact Nerve Fibers After Vagal Operations for Peptic Ulcer. *Gastroenterology* 7: 607-614 (Dec.) 1946.
- Vanzant, F. R. and Alvarez, W. C. Calculating the Diagnostic Value of Gastric Analysis. A Study in the Methodology of Diagnosis. *Am. J. Digest. Dis. & Nutrition* 2: 466-472 (Oct.) 1935.

Yule C Udny. *An Introduction to the Theory of Statistics*. London, England, 1940.
Charles Griffin and Company Ltd.
This text covers the theory of statistics has an excellent bibliography and gives answers to problems presented in the text.

2 General Handbooks

Handbook of Chemistry and Physics. Cleveland, Ohio, 1947. Chemical Rubber Publishing Company.
Handbook of Chemistry, edited by Lange, Adolph N. Sandusky, Ohio, 1946. Handbook Publishers, Inc.
Van Nostrand's Chemical Annual, edited by Olsen, John C. New York, 1934. D. Van Nostrand and Company, Inc.
Marks, I. Noel. *Mechanical Engineers Handbook*. New York, 1943. McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc.

SECTION X

STATISTICAL METHODS

A REFERENCES TO STANDARD WORKS

1 Textbooks of Statistics

- Buros Oscar Krisen Research and Statistical Methodology New Brunswick N J 1948
Rutgers University Press
An annotated bibliography
- Buros Oscar Krisen The Second Yearbook of Research and Statistical Methodology—
Books and Reviews Highland Park N J 1941 The Gryphon Press
An annotated bibliography
- Cramer H Mathematical Method of Statistics Princeton N J 1946 Princeton Uni-
versity Press
Very theoretical
- Croxton F F and Cowden D J Applied General Statistics New York 1946 Prentice
Hall Inc
Gives a good presentation of statistical methods and their application in various fields
- Ezekiel Mordecai Methods of Correlation Analysis New York 1941 John Wiley & Sons
Inc
Covers that part of the field of statistics which is concerned with studying the relations
between variables
- Fisher Ronald A Statistical Methods for Research Workers Edinburgh Scotland 1941
Oliver and Boyd, Ltd. pp xiii 336
A comprehensive text with emphasis on biology
- Fisher Ronald A and Yates Frank Statistical Tables for Biological Agricultural and
Medical Research, Edinburgh Scotland 1938 Oliver & Boyd Ltd pp III
- Goodwin H M Elements of the Precision of Measurements and Graphical Method
McGraw Hill Book Co N Y 1939
An excellent account of the subject of making measurements of errors involved, and of the
statistical methods of handling instrumental data There is also a section dealing
with graphical methods Illustrative problems are given together with examples
- Kenney John F Mathematics of Statistics New York 1939 D Van Nostrand Company
Inc
An excellent dictionary
- Kurtz Albert H and Edgeston Harold A Statistical Dictionary of Terms and Symbols
New York 1939 John Wiley & Sons Inc pp xiii 191
An excellent dictionary
- Mealand Donald The Treatment of Clinical and Laboratory Data An Introduction
to Statistical Ideas and Method for Medical and Dental Workers 1949 Edinburgh
Scotland Oliver & Boyd Ltd pp xi 40
This book has been prepared for the express purpose of aiding the clinician untrained in
statistics in the evaluation of the significance of laboratory observations It is an
appeal to understanding rather than to mathematical derivation
- Rider, H R An Introduction to Modern Statistical Methods New York, 1939, John Wiley
and Sons Inc
A practical statistical book that has proved useful in handling biological data.
- Snedecor George W Statistical Methods Applied to Experiments in Agriculture and
Biology ed 3 Ames Iowa, 1940, Iowa State College Press pp xv 476
A standard textbook

B CONVERSION BETWEEN DIFFERENT SYSTEMS OF WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

1 Length—Metric System

Angstrom Units \AA	Millimicrons mm	Microns μ	Milli meters mm	Meters m
1	0.1	10	10 ⁻³	10 ⁻⁶
10	1	10 ²	10 ⁻²	10 ⁻⁵
10 ³	10 ³	1	10 ⁻¹	10 ⁻⁴
Millimeters mm	Centimeter cm	Meter m	Kilometers km	U. S. Equivalents
1	0.1	0.001	10 ⁻⁶	0.03937 inch
10	1	0.01	10 ⁻⁵	0.3937 inch
1000	100	1	10 ⁻³	39.37 inch
				3.937 feet
10	10	1000	1	0.6214 mile

2 Length—U. S. System

Inches in	Feet ft	Yards yd	Miles mi	Metric Equivalent
1	0.08333	0.04167		2.5401 cm
1 ²	1	0.333		0.3048 m
36	3	1	0.000 69	0.9144 m
63 360	5 280	1 600	1	1.6093 km

3 Area—Metric System

Square Millimeters mm^2	Square Centimeters cm^2	Square Meter m^2	Square Kilometers km^2	U. S. Equivalents
1	0.01	10 ⁻⁶	10 ⁻¹⁰	0.00155 sq. in.
100	1	10 ⁻⁴	10 ⁻⁸	0.15500 sq. in.
10	10 000	1	10 ⁻⁶	10.764 sq. ft.
10	10 ¹¹	10 ⁴	1	

4 Area—U. S. System

Square inches sq. in.	Square feet sq. ft.	Square yards sq. yd.	Acres A.	Square Miles sq. mi.	Metric Equivalent
1	0.006944		—	—	6.4516 cm ²
144	1	0.1111	—	—	0.093 m ²
1 96	9	1	—	—	0.8361 m ²
	47,900	4960	1	0.001563	404.69 m ²
		309 6 0	640	1	2.5979 km ²

5 Volume—Metric System

Cubic Millimeters mm^3	Cubic Centimeters cm^3	Cubic Meters m^3	U. S. Equivalent
1	0.001	10 ⁻⁹	0.000061 cu. in.
1000	1	10 ⁻⁶	0.0610 cu. in.
10 ⁹	10	1	3.7854 cu. ft.
			1.3566 cu. yd.

6 Volume—U. S. System

Cubic inches cu. in.	Cubic Feet cu. ft.	Cubic Yards cu. yd.	Metric Equivalent
1	0.000 18		16.38 cu. cm
17 28	1	0.03 03	0.03317 m ³
46 656	27	1	0.6456 m ³

SECTION XI

MISCELLANEOUS DATA

A ATOMIC WEIGHTS

References

Table of International Atomic Weights 1946

1947 Summary of Nuclear Data (Aug 1946-Nov 1947) : Compiled by Nuclear Data Committee of Clinton National Laboratory : Nucleonics 2 Part 2 (May) 1948

TABLE 2 — ATOMIC WEIGHTS

ELEMENT	SYMBOL	ATOMIC NO	ATOMIC WT	ELEMENT	SYMBOL	ATOMIC NO	ATOMIC WT
Actinium	Ac	81	1 ca	Neodymium	Nd	60	144.7
Alabamine	Ab	82	1 ca	Neon	Ne	10	20.183
Aluminum	Al	13	26.98	Neptunium	Np	93	237 ca
Americium	Am	95	241 ca	Nickel	Ni	28	58.69
Antimony	Sb	51	121.75	Nitrogen	N	7	14.008
Argon	Ar	18	39.944	Omium	Os	76	190
Arsenic	As	33	74.91	Oxygen	O	8	16.0000
Astatine	At	85	210 ca	Palladium	Pd	46	106
Barium	Ba	56	137.36	Phosphorus	P	15	30.97
Beryllium	Be	4	9.01	Platinum	Pt	78	195.08
Bismuth	Bi	83	208.98	Plutonium	Pu	94	239 ca
Boron	B	5	10.81	Polonium	Po	84	209 ca
Bromine	Br	35	79.906	Potassium	K	19	39.098
Cadmium	Cd	48	112.41	Praseodymium	Pr	59	140.91
Calcium	Ca	20	40.08	Protactinium	Pa	91	231
Carbon	C	6	12.01	Radium	Ra	88	226
Cerium	Ce	58	140.13	Radon	Rn	86	222
Cesium	Cs	55	132.91	Phenium	Re	75	186.21
Chlorine	Cl	17	35.457	Rhodium	Rh	45	102.91
Chromium	Cr	24	52.01	Rubidium	Rb	37	85.47
Cobalt	Co	27	58.94	Ruthenium	Ru	44	101.07
Columbium	Cb	41	92.91	Samarium	Sm	62	150.35
Copper	Cu	29	63.55	Scandium	Sc	21	44.96
Curium	Cm	96	247 ca	Selenium	Se	34	78.96
Deuterium	D	2	2.014	Silicon	Si	14	28.086
Erbium	Er	68	167.26	Silver	Ag	47	107.87
Europium	Eu	63	151.96	Sodium	Na	11	22.989
Fluorine	F	9	18.998	Strontium	Sr	38	87.62
Francium	Fr	87	223 ca	Sulfur	S	16	32.06
Gadolinium	Gd	64	157.25	Tantalum	Ta	73	180.95
Gallium	Ga	31	69.72	Technetium	Tc	43	98 ca
Germanium	Ge	32	72.64	(Manganese)	Mn	25	54.94
Gold	Au	79	196.97	Tellurium	Te	52	127.6
Hafnium	Hf	72	178.49	Terbium	Tb	65	158.93
Helium	He	2	4.003	Thallium	Tl	81	204.38
Holmium	Ho	67	164.93	Thorium	Th	90	232.04
Hydrogen	H	1	1.008	Thulium	Tm	69	168.93
Indium	In	49	114.82	Tin	Sn	50	118.71
Iodine	I	53	126.90	Titanium	Ti	22	47.88
Iridium	Ir	77	192.22	Tungsten	W	74	183.85
Iron	Fe	26	55.85	Uranium	U	92	238.03
Krypton	Kr	36	83.80	Vanadium	V	23	50.94
Lanthanum	La	57	138.91	Vanadium	V	23	50.94
Lead	Pb	82	207.2	Vanadium	V	23	50.94
Lithium	Li	3	6.941	Vanadium	V	23	50.94
Lutetium	Lu	71	174.97	Vanadium	V	23	50.94
Magnesium	Mg	12	24.31	Vanadium	V	23	50.94
Manganese	Mn	25	54.94	Vanadium	V	23	50.94
Mercury	Hg	80	200.59	Vanadium	V	23	50.94
Molybdenum	Mo	42	95.94	Vanadium	V	23	50.94

B CONVERSION BETWEEN DIFFERENT SYSTEMS OF WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

1 Length—Metric System

Angstrom Units	Millimeters	Microns	Millimeters	Centimeters
Å	mm	μ	mm	cm
1	0.1	100	10 ⁻³	10 ⁻²
10	1	10 ³	10 ⁻²	10
10 ⁴	10 ³	1	10 ⁻¹	10
Millimeters	Centimeter	Meter	Kilometers	U.S. Equivalents
mm	cm	m	km	
1	0.1	0.001	10 ⁻⁶	0.03937 inch
10	1	0.01	10 ⁻⁵	0.393 inch
1000	100	1	10 ⁻³	39.3 inch
10	10	1000	1	3.281 feet
				0.621372 mile

2 Length—U.S. System

Inches	Feet	Yards	Miles	Metric Equivalent
in	ft	yd	mi	
1	0.08333	0.078		2.5401 cm
1	1	0.33333		0.304801 m
36	3	1	0.00068	0.91440 m
63.60	5.30	1.60	1	1.6093 km

3 Area—Metric System

Square Millimeters	Square Centimeters	Square Meters	Square Kilometers	U.S. Equivalents
mm ²	cm ²	m ²	km ²	
1	0.01	10 ⁻⁶	10 ⁻¹⁰	0.00155 sq in
100	1	10 ⁻⁴	10 ⁻⁸	0.1550 sq in
10 ⁴	10.000	1	10 ⁻⁶	10.764 sq ft
10 ⁸	10 ⁴	10 ⁴	1	

4 Area—U.S. System

Square Inches	Square Feet	Square Yards	Acres	Square Miles	Metric Equivalent
sq in	sq ft	sq yd	A	sq mi	
1	0.006944		~	~	6.4516 cm ²
144	1	0.1111	~	~	0.093 m ²
1.44	9	1	~	~	0.8361 m ²
	49.60	4840	1	0.001563	4046.83 m ²
		309.600	640	1	2.59 km ²

5 Volume—Metric System

Cubic Millimeters	Cubic Centimeters	Cubic Meters	U.S. Equivalent
mm ³	cm ³	m ³	
1	0.001	10 ⁻⁹	0.000061 cu in
1000	1	10 ⁻⁶	0.0610 cu in
10 ⁹	10	1	3.244 cu ft
			1.3579 cu yd

6 Volume—U.S. System

Cubic Inches	Cubic Feet	Cubic Yards	Metric Equivalent
cu in	cu ft	cu yd	
1	0.00058		16.39 cm ³
17.34	1	0.0357	0.028317 m ³
46.056	27	1	0.646 m ³

7 Capacity—Metric System

Milliliters ml	Liters l	U S Equivalent
1	0.001	16 31 minims
1000	1	0.0610 cu in
		0.218 dram
		33.8147 ounce

8 Capacity—U S System—Liquid

Gills gi	Pints pt	Quarts qt	Gallons	Metric Equivalent
1	0.5	0.125	0.03125	118.29 ml
4	1	0.5	0.125	0.473 l
8	2	1	0.5	0.946 l
32	8	4	1	3.785 l

9 Capacity—U S System—Dry

Pints pt	Quarts qt	Peck pk	Bushels bu	Metric Equivalent
1	0.5	0.0625	0.01367	0.0006 l
2	1	0.125	0.02734	1.101 l
16	8	1	0.25	8.806 l
64	32	4	1	32.919 l

10 Mass—Metric System

Milligrams mg	Grams gm	Kilograms kg	U S Equivalent
1	0.001	10 ⁻⁶	0.0154 grain
1000	1	0.001	15.4336 grain
			0.03224 oz av
10 ⁶	1000	1	32.046 lb av

11 Mass—U S System—Avoirdupois Commercial

Grain gr	Drams dr av	Ounces oz av	Pounds lb av	Ton short tn	Metric Equivalent
1	0.015625	—	—	—	0.0648 gm
—437.5	1	0.0625	—	—	1.13 gm
437.5	16	1	0.0625	—	9.3402 gm
7000	256	16	1	0.0005	0.4536 kg
—	—	16 000	1000	1	907.18 kg

12 U S Apothecaries Fluid Measure

Minim min	Fluid Drams fl dr	Fluid Ounces fl oz	Pints pt	Metric Equivalent
1	0.01666	0.0009	—	0.0616 ml
60	1	0.125	—	3.69 ml
480	8	1	0.0625	29.573 ml
7680	128	16	1	378.5 l

13 U S Apothecaries Weight

Grain gr	Scruples s ap	Drams dr ap	Ounces oz ap	Pounds lb ap	Metric Equivalent
1	0.03	0.01666	—	—	64.93 mg
60	1	0.333	0.01667	—	1.91 gm
480	8	1	0.125	0.0104	3.894 gm
480	8	8	1	0.08333	31.103 gm
5760	96	96	1	1	373.24 gm

14 Time

Seconds sec	Minutes min	Hours hr	Days da.	Years yr
1	0.01667	0.000 778		-
60	1	0.166		-
3 600	60	1	0.011667	
86 400	1440	24	1	-
-			365.4	1 common
-			366.56	1 a leap

7 Capacity—Metric System

Meters ml	Liters l	U S Equivalent
1	1001	{ 16 31 mm ms 0 0610 cu
1000	1	{ 0 519 fl dram 33 8147 fl ounce s

8 Capacity—U S System—Liquid

Gall qt	Imperial pt	Quarts qt	Gallons	Metric Equivalent
1	0 5	0 1 5	0 031 5	118 9 ml
4	1	0 1 5	0 1 5	0 4 3 l
8		1	0 5	0 9463 l
32	8	4	1	3 78 l

9 Capacity—U S System—Dry

Pints pt	Quarts qt	Pecks pk	Bushels bu	Metric Equivalent
1	0	0 06 5	0 0156 5	0 5506 l
	1	0 1 5	0 031 5	1 1012 l
16	8	1	0 05	8 8096 l
64	32	4	1	3 5 193 l

10 Mass—Metric System

Milligrams mg	Grams gm	Kilograms kg	U S Equivalent
1	1001	10 ⁻⁶	0 1543 gram
1000	1	0 001	1 54336 gram
			{ 0 035 74 oz av 0 46 lb a
10	1000	1	

11 Mass—U S System—Avoirdupois Commercial

Grains gr	Drams dr av	Ounces oz a	Pounds lb a	Tons ton	Metric Equivalent
1	0 5				0 0648 gm
7000	1	0 0625			17 18 gm
4375	16	1	0 0625		93475 gm
28350	64	16	1	0 0005	0 4 30 kg
		20000	2000	1	90 19 kg

12 U S Apothecaries Fluid Measure

Minims min	Fluid Drams fl dr	Fluid Ounces fl oz	Pints pt	Metric Equivalent
1	1666	00 05		0 0616 ml
60	1	0 1 5		3 697 ml
480	8	1	0 06 5	7 5 1 ml
640	16	16	1	3 78 l

13 U S Apothecaries Weight

Grains gr	Scruples s ap	Drams dr ap	Ounces oz ap	Pounds lb ap	Metric Equivalent
1	0 05	0 0156			64 4 mg
60	1	0 333	0 0416		1 96 gm
480	8	1	0 1 5	0 0104	1 999 gm
480	8	8	1	0 09333	31 103 gm
560	88	96	1	1	3 1 1 gm

Time

Seconds sec	Minutes min	Hours hr	Days da	Years yr
1	0.01667	0.000 78	-	-
60	1	0.0166	-	-
3 600	60	1	0.01166	-
86 400	1 440	4	1	-
-	-	-	36 54 ^a	1 common
-	-	-	36.5 26	1 sidereal

7 Capacity—Metric System

Milliliters ml	Liters l	U S Equivalent
1	0.001	{ 16.31 minims
1000	1	{ 0.0010 cu m { 1.0518 g dram { 33.8147 fl ounces

8 Capacity—U S System—Liquid

Gill gi	Pints pt	Quart qt	Gallons	Metric Equivalent
1	0.5	0.125	0.03125	118.3 ml
4	1	0.5	0.125	0.43 l
8		1	0.25	0.9463 l
32	8	4	1	3.785 l

9 Capacity—U S System—Dry

Pints pt	Quarts qt	Pecks pk	Bushels bu	Metric Equivalent
1	0.5	0.0625	0.01625	0.5506 l
	1	0.125	0.03125	1.1012 l
16	8	1	0.5	8.8096 l
64	32	4	1	35.239 l

10 Mass—Metric System

Milligrams mg	Grams gm	Kilograms kg	U S Equivalents
1	0.001	10 ⁻⁶	0.01543 grain
1000	1	0.001	15.4336 grain
			{ 0.032274 oz av
10 ⁶	1000	1	{ 3.7454 lb av

11 Mass—U S System—Avoirdupois Commercial

Grain gr	Dram dr av	Ounce oz av	Pound lb av	Ton short ton	Metric Equivalent
1	0.036	0.0625	—	—	0.0648 gm
43.75	1	0.0625	—	—	1.774 gm
437.5	16	1	0.0625	—	28.3495 gm
4375	160	16	1	0.0005	0.4536 kg
—	—	32000	2000	1	907.185 kg

12 U S Apothecaries Fluid Measure

Minimum min	Fluid Drams fl dr	Fluid Ounces fl oz	Pints pt	Metric Equivalent
1	0.016667	0.001042	—	0.0616 ml
60	1	0.125	—	3.69 ml
480	8	1	0.0625	9.463 ml
1920	32	4	1	3.785 l

13 U S Apothecaries Weight

Grain gr	Scruple s ap	Dram dr ap	Ounces oz ap	Pounds lb ap	Metric Equivalent
1	0.03	0.01875	—	—	64.8 mg
60	1	0.3	0.04167	—	1.995 gm
480	8	3	0.125	0.01042	3.889 gm
480	24	8	1	0.09133	31.103 gm
5760	288	96	16	1	373.24 gm

14 Time

seconds sec	Minutes min	Hours hr	Days da	Years yr
1	0.01667	0.000 778	—	—
60	1	0.0166	—	—
3 600	60	1	0.0166	—
86 400	1440	4	1	—
~	—	—	36 525	1 common
~	—	—	365.26	1 aereal

C ELEMENTS LISTED IN ORDER OF ATOMIC NUMBER

TABLE 28

ELEMENTS LISTED IN ORDER OF ATOMIC NUMBER

(For mass numbers and α abundance of stable isotopes see International Tables of Stable Isotopes. For mass number and half life of unstable isotopes see 1947 Summary of Nuclear Data Nucleonics 2 Part 7 May 1948)

ATOMIC NO	NAME	SYMBOL	ATOMIC NO	NAME	SYMBOL
0	Neutron	n	48	Cadmium	Cd
1	Deuterium	D	49	Indium	In
1	Hydrogen	H	50	Tin	Sn
2	Helium	He	51	Antimony	Sb
3	Lithium	Li	52	Tellurium	Te
4	Beryllium	Be	53	Iodine	I
5	Boron	B	54	Xenon	Xe
6	Carbon	C	55	Cesium	Cs
7	Nitrogen	N	56	Barium	Ba
8	Oxygen	O	57	Lanthanum	La
9	Fluorine	F	58	Cerium	Ce
10	Neon	Ne	59	Praseodymium	Pr
11	Sodium	Na	60	Neodymium	Nd
12	Magnesium	Mg	61	Promethium	Pm
13	Aluminum	Al	62	Samarium	Sm
14	Silicon	Si	63	Europium	Eu
15	Phosphorus	P	64	Gadolinium	Gd
16	Sulfur	S	65	Terbium	Tb
17	Chlorine	Cl	66	Dysprosium	Dy
18	Argon	Ar	67	Holmium	Ho
19	Potassium	K	68	Erbium	Er
20	Calcium	Ca	69	Thulium	Tm
21	Scandium	Sc	70	Ytterbium	Yb
22	Titanium	Ti	71	Lutetium	Lu
23	Vanadium	V	72	Hafnium	Hf
24	Chromium	Cr	73	Tantalum	Ta
25	Manganese	Mn	74	Tungsten	W
26	Iron	Fe	75	Rhenium	Re
27	Cobalt	Co	76	Osmium	Os
28	Nickel	Ni	77	Iridium	Ir
29	Copper	Cu	78	Platinum	Pt
30	Zinc	Zn	79	Gold	Au
31	Gallium	Ga	80	Mercury	Hg
32	Germanium	Ge	81	Thallium	Tl
33	Arsenic	As	82	Lead	Pb
34	Selenium	Se	83	Bismuth	Bi
35	Bromine	Br	84	Polonium	Po
36	Krypton	Kr	85	Astatine	At
37	Rubidium	Rb	86	—	—
38	Strontium	Sr	87	Francium	Fr
39	Yttrium	Y	88	Radium	Ra
40	Zirconium	Zr	89	Actinium	Ac
41	Niobium	Nb	90	Thorium	Th
42	Molybdenum	Mo	91	Protactinium	Pa
43	Technetium	Tc	92	Uranium	U
44	Ruthenium	Ru	93	Neptunium	Np
45	Rhodium	Rh	94	Plutonium	Pu
46	Palladium	Pd	95	Americium	Am
47	Silver	Ag	96	Curium	Cm

II COMPOSITION OF BODY FLUIDS

In metabolic studies it is sometimes helpful to find in a convenient form and in one place average values for various components of the body. The four accompanying tables (Tables 29 30 31 and 32) list for whole blood plasma urine and feces various constituents in several general categories. These categories are (1) water (2) hydrogen ion concentration (3) minerals (4) nitrogen and protein derivatives (5) carbohydrates and derivatives (6) fats and derivatives (7) vitamins (8) hormones (9) enzymes (10) pigments (11) gases and (12) measurements of clinical interest.

It is hardly necessary to warn the reader that the term *normal range* is notoriously difficult to define that the concentration of any substance may vary from person to person that the effects of many factors such as age sex disease previous diet exercise and season may be large and that no table can hope to be complete.

TABLE 29 COMPOSITION OF WHOLE BLOOD

(Listed below are normal ranges for various substances in whole blood all values are for healthy individuals in a resting condition at sea level in a temperate environment. The values for many substances are closely related to dietary intake and to exercise.)

SUBSTANCE	UNITS	USUAL RANGE
1 Water		
Specific gravity	vs water	1.035-1.075
Total solids	gm/100 ml	18-22
Water	ml/100 ml	78-82
2 Hydrogen Ion Concentration		
Hydrogen ion concentration arterial	pH	7.35-7.45
Hydrogen ion concentration venous	pH	7.35-7.38
3 Minerals		
Aluminum	mg/100 ml	0.1-0.2
Bromine	mg/100 ml	0.0-0.3
Chloride	mEq/liter	83-86
Iodine	mcg/100 ml	0.6-8.4
Magnesium	mg/100 ml	1-20
Manganese	mcg/100 ml	0.1-0.3
Rubidium	mg/100 ml	0.0-0.4
Silicon	mg SiO ₂ /100 ml	0.1
Zinc	mg/100 ml	0.6-1.4
4 Nitrogen and Protein Derivatives		
Alanine	mg/100 ml	0.8-5.0
Ergothioneine	mg/100 ml	3.9-17
Glycine	mg/100 ml	1.8-3.3
Nonprotein nitrogen	mg/100 ml	30-40
Urea nitrogen	mg/100 ml	10-15
Uric acid	mg/100 ml	0.4
5 Carbohydrates and Derivatives		
Acetaldehyde	mg/100 ml	0.0-0.6
Alpha ketoglutaric acid	mg/100 ml	0.1-0.3
Citric acid	mg/100 ml	13-23
Glucose	mg/100 ml	70-110
Glycogen	mg/100 ml	1-16
Lactic acid	mg/100 ml	5-20
Oxalic acid	mg/100 ml	0.9-1.5
Pyruvic acid	mg/100 ml	0.1-0.2
6 Fats and Derivatives		
Acetoacetic acid	mg/100 ml	0.1-0.2
Acetone	mg/100 ml	0-0.1
Beta hydroxybutyric acid	mg/100 ml	0.5-1.0
Cholic acid	mg/100 ml	0.2-3.0
7 Vitamins		
Ascorbic acid	mg/100 ml	0.5-1.5
Biotin	mcg/100 ml	1-2
Coccarboxylase	mcg/100 ml	5-10
Folic acid	mcg/100 ml	0.5-1.3
Niacin	mg/100 ml	0.6-0.8
Pantothenic acid	mcg/100 ml	1-47
Pyridoxine	mcg/100 ml	20-60
Thiamine	mcg/100 ml	3-9
Tocopherols	mg/100 ml	0.5-1.8
Tryptophane	mg/100 ml	250-300
Vitamin B ₁₂	mcg/ml	0.6-1.4
8 Hormones		
Adrenaline	micro mcg/ml	20-40
Histamine	mcg/100 ml	1-10

TABLE 9—CONT'D

9 Enzymes			
Amylase	units/ml		30 90
Arginase	units/ml		8 16
Carbonic anhydrase	Roughton units/ml		1 2 6
Phosphatase (acid)	Bodansky units		10 20
Zin anhydrase	mcg/ml		, 10
10 Pigments			
CO Hemoglobin	gm/100 ml		0 10 2
Hemoglobin (men)	gm/100 ml		14 18
Hemoglobin (women)	gm/100 ml		1 16
Methemoglobin	gm/100 ml		0 03 0 13
Sulfhemoglobin	gm/100 ml		0 1 0 3
11 Gases			
Arterial saturation	per cent		93 98
Carbon dioxide (arterial)	ml/100 ml STP		45 55
CO capacity (T ₅₀)	mEq/l ter		19 5 23
Carbon monoxide (arterial)	ml/100 ml STP		0 1 0 5
Nitrogen (arterial)	ml/100 ml STP		1
Oxygen (arterial)	ml/100 ml STP		18 2
pCO	mm Hg		40-4
12 Measurements of Clinical Interest			
Hematocrit (men)	ml/100 ml		4 50
Hematocrit (women)	ml/100 ml		9 46
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration	per cent		33 38
Mean corpuscular volume	cu microns		90 94
Phenols	mg/100 ml		0 7 1 8
Ihenols (free)	mg/100 ml		0 05 0 09
Sedimentation rate	ml/min		0 1 0 3
Urethane	mg/100 ml		0 1 1 4

TABLE 30 COMPOSITION OF PLASMA (OR SERUM)

(Listed below are normal ranges for various substances in human plasma. All values are for healthy individuals in a resting condition at sea level in a temperate environment. The values for many substances are closely related to dietary intake and to exercise.)

SUBSTANCE	UNITS	USUAL RANGE
1 Water		
Specific gravity	vs. water	1.015-1.035
Total solids	gm/100 ml	8-10
Water	ml/100 ml	90-9
2 Hydrogen Ion Concentration		
Hydrogen ion concentration arterial	pH	7.35-7.45
Hydrogen ion concentration venous	pH	7.30-7.35
3 Minerals		
Aluminum	mg/100 ml	0.05-0.1
Arsenic	mcg/100 ml	0.50
Bromine	mg/100 ml	0.2-0.6
Calcium	mg/100 ml	9.0-11.5
Chloride	mEq/liter	95-110
Cobalt	mcg/100 ml	0.10
Copper	mcg/100 ml	0.7-0.90
Iodine (protein bound)	mcg/100 ml	4-8
Iron	mcg/100 ml	100-150
Lead	mg/100 ml	0.01
Magnesium	mg/100 ml	1-3
Manganese	mcg/100 ml	0.1-0.3
Phosphorus (as inorganic P)	mg/100 ml	3-4
Potassium	mEq/liter	4.5-5.5
Sodium	mEq/liter	135-145
Sulfate (inorganic)	mg/100 ml	0.9-1.1
Thiocyanate	mg/100 ml	0.008
Total base	mEq/liter	155-165
Total sulfur	mg/100 ml	90-110
Zinc	mcg/100 ml	1.7-900
4 Nitrogen and Protein Derivatives		
Albumin	gm/100 ml	4.5-5.5
Alpha amino nitrogen	mg/100 ml	32-35
Alpha globulin	gm/100 ml	0.7-1.5
Amino acid nitrogen	mg/100 ml	5-8
Arginine	mg/100 ml	5
Beta globulin	gm/100 ml	0.6-1.3
Creatinine	mg/100 ml	3-7
Creatinine	mg/100 ml	1-2
Cystine	mg/100 ml	90-400
Fibrinogen	gm/100 ml	2-4
Free amino acid nitrogen	mg/100 ml	9
Gamma globulin	gm/100 ml	1.0-1.4
Globulin (total)	gm/100 ml	2.5-3.5
Glutamic acid	mg/100 ml	0.4-1.7
Glutamine	mg/100 ml	6-12
Glutathione	mg/100 ml	40-60
Histidine	mg/100 ml	1.1-2.1
Isoleucine	mg/100 ml	1.2-2.3
Leucine	mg/100 ml	1.6-2.6
Lysine	mg/100 ml	1.3-3.0
Methionine	mg/100 ml	100-120
Nonprotein nitrogen	mg/100 ml	20-30
Protein total	gm/100 ml	6.5-7.5
Phenylalanine	mg/100 ml	0.01-0.03
Sulfhydryl groups	mg cysteine/100 ml	6-7
Threonine	mg/100 ml	1.3-3
Tyrosine	mg/100 ml	1.0-2.0
Tryptophane	mg/100 ml	1
Urea nitrogen	mg/100 ml	10-20
Uric acid	mg/100 ml	3-6
Valine	mg/100 ml	3-4

TABLE 30—CONT'D

5 Carbohydrates and Derivatives

Acetaldehyde	mg/100 ml	0.0004
Alpha ketoglutaric acid	mg/100 ml	0.1-0.3
Citric acid	mg/100 ml	15 "
Lactic acid	mg/100 ml	0.0
Oxalic acid	mg/100 ml	10.0
Pyruvic acid	mg/100 ml	0.00

6 Fats and Derivatives

Acetoacetic acid	mg/100 ml	0.103
Acetone	mg/100 ml	0.01
Beta hydroxybutyric acid	mg/100 ml	0.015
Cholesterol esters	mg/100 ml	100-155
Cholesterol (free)	mg/100 ml	3-100
Cholesterol (total)	mg/100 ml	130-330
Esterified fatty acids	mEq/liter	111
Ethanolamine	mg/100 ml	40-50
Leathin	mg/100 ml	8-10
Linoleic acid	mg/100 ml	0
Lipid chlorine	mEq/liter	7.57
Phospholipids	mg P/100 ml	1-14
Total acetone bodies	mg/100 ml	0.850
Total lipids	mg/100 ml	500-600

7 Vitamins

Ascorbic acid	mg/100 ml	0.015
Beta-carotene	mcg/100 ml	100-50
Biotin	mcg/100 ml	0.001-0.005
Choline	mg/100 ml	0.5-1.5
Deoxyribonuclease	units	0.14-0.84
Flavine adenine dinucleotide	mg/100 ml	1.5-3.0
Folic acid	mg/100 ml	1.0-1.9
Free D monophosphate (FMP)	mg/100 ml	0.3-1.3
Inositol	mg/100 ml	0.4-0.8
Niacin	mg/100 ml	0.6-0.78
Pantothenic acid	mcg/100 ml	0
Riboflavin	mcg/100 ml	1.9
Thiamine	mcg/100 ml	10.1-10
Tocopherols	mg/100 ml	0.01-0.18
Tryptophane	mg/100 ml	10.6-1.0
Vitamin A	mcg/100 ml	0.00

8 Hormones

Adrenaline	mg/100 ml	0.10
------------	-----------	------

9 Enzymes

Amylase	unit/100 ml	15-30
Beta glucuronidase	units/100 ml	0.150
Catalase	peroxide units	4-10
Cholinesterase	M chel units	0.7-1.4
Dialase	unit/100 ml	9-64
Lipase	ml of N/0 NaOH	0.1-1 ml
Peptidase	units/ml	6-8
Phosphatase acid	Bodansky unit	0.01-0.1
Phosphatase alkaline	Bodansky units	0.01-0.1
Tributyrase	Goldstein units	90-130

10 Pigments

Biliverdin (direct)	mg/100 ml	0.04
Bilirubin (total)	mg/100 ml	0.1-0.9

11 Electrolytes

Carbon dioxide	mEq/liter	20-30
----------------	-----------	-------

12 Measurements of Clinical Interest

Ikenols (conjugated)	mg/100 ml	0.1-0.3
Ikenols (free)	mg/100 ml	0.04-0.1
Prothrombin (dilution method)	seconds	30-45
Prothrombin (Quick's)	seconds	1-1

TABLE 31 COMPOSITION OF URINE

(Listed below are normal ranges for various substances in human urine all values are for healthy individuals in a resting condition at sea level in a temperate environment. The values for many substances are closely related to dietary intake and to exercise.)

SUBSTANCE	UNITS	USUAL RANGE
1 Water		
Specific gravity	vs water	1 008-1 030
Total solids	gm/100 ml	17
Water	ml/100 ml	95-99
2 Hydrogen Ion Concentration		
Hydrogen ion concentration	pH	4.5-5.5
3 Minerals		
Bromine	mg/day	1.0
Calcium	gm/day	0.0-0.5
Chloride (as NaCl)	gm/day	10-15
Chromium	mg/day	0.1-0.4
Copper	mg/day	0.1-0.5
Fluorine	mg/day	0.2-0.5
Iodine	mcg/day	35-75
Iron	mg/day	below 10
Lead	mg/day	0.05-0.5
Magnesium	mg/day	10-20
Molybdenum	mcg/day	10-30
Nickel	mcg/day	0.3-0.6
Phosphorus	gm/day	0.4-2.0
Potassium	mEq/day	150-180
Sodium	mEq/day	20-60
Solids (total)	gm/day	0.6-1.0
Sulfates (total)	gm/day	5-8
Thiocyanate	mg/day	0.5-1.0
Water	l/day	0.3-0.4
Zinc	mg/day	
4 Nitrogen and Protein Derivatives		
Albumin	mg/day	less than 100
Alpha amino nitrogen (total)	mg N/day	300-700
Alpha amino nitrogen (bound)	mg N/day	100-200
Alpha amino nitrogen (free)	mg N/day	1.0-4.0
Allantoin	mg/day	5-50
Arginine	mg/day	50-150
Creatine	mg/day	less than 100
Creatinine	gm/day	1.0-1.5
Glutamine	mg N/day	10-15
Glycine	mg/day	1.0-3.0
Histidine	mg/day	180-230
Isoleucine	mg/day	1.0
Leucine	mg/day	0.30
Lysine	mg/day	73-100
Methionine	mg/day	8-12
Nitrogen (total)	gm/day	10-18
Threonine	mg/day	50-65
Tryptophane	mg/day	0.0-0.00
Urea	gm/day	0.0-0.00
Uric acid	gm/day	18-25
Valine	mg/day	0.40
Xanthine	mg/day	
5 Carbohydrates and Derivatives		
Alpha ketoglutaric acid	mg/day	1-44
Citric acid	mg/day	0.0-0.4
Fructose	mg/day	0
Pyruvic acid	mg/day	10-20
Total reducing sugar	mg/day	0-100

TABLE 31—CONT'D

6 Fats and Derivatives		
Acetone bodies (total)	mg/day	10 100
Cholesterol	mg/day	0 3 10
7 Vitamins		
Ascorbic acid	mg/day	6 15
Biotin	mcg/day	10 2
Choline	mg/day	2 4
Niacin	mg/day	0 2 10
N-Methylnicotinamide	mg/day	4 1
N-Methyl- α -pyridine 5-carboxylamide	mg/day	5 10
Pantothenic acid	mg/day	10 3
Pyridoxine	mg/day	0 0 0 4
Riboflavin	mg/day	0 4 1 50
Thiamine	mg/day	0 1 0 4
Vitamin A	IU/day	0
8 Hormones		
Androstereone	mg/day	1 2
Androgen	mg/day	3 10
Corticosterone	mg/day	0 1 0 3
Cortin	mg/day	0 2 0 5
11-Desoxycorticosterone	mg/day	0 1 0 5
Estrogens (female)	mcg/day	50 150
Estrogens (male)	mcg/day	0 5
Glycogenic steroids	mouise units/day	40 80
17-Ketosteroids (female)	mg/day	5 14
17-Ketosteroids (male)	mg/day	8 70
9 Enzymes		
Diastase	unit/day	8 3
Phosphatase (acid)	h. no. Armstrong units	80 300
Trypsin	unit	40 50
Uropepsin	unit	1000 3000
10 Pigments		
Coproporphyrin (Type I)	mg/day	15 90
Coproporphyrin (Type III)	mg/day	1 24
Indican	mg/day	40 150
Urobilinogen	mg/day	0 4
Uroporphyrin	mg/day	0
11 Blood Gases		
Carbon dioxide	mEq/day	0 50
12 Measurements of Clinical Interest		
Phenols (conjugated)	mg/day	15 40
Phenols (free)	mg/day	0 0 4
Phenols (total)	mg/day	15 40

TABLE 3. COMPOSITION OF FECES

(Listed below are normal ranges for various substances in human feces all values are for healthy individuals in a resting condition at sea level in a temperate environment. The values for many substances are closely related to dietary intake. In addition there are large differences from person to person.)

SUBSTANCE	UNIT	USUAL RANGE
1 <i>Water</i>		
Specific gravity	vs water	1.030-1.100
Total solids	gm/100 gm	15-30
Water	ml/100 gm	60-80
2 <i>Hydrogen Ion Concentration</i>		
Hydrogen ion concentration	pH	7.0-7.5
3 <i>Minerals</i>		
Aluminum	mg/day	1.0-9
Calcium	gm/day	0.1-1.0
Chloride	mEq/day	traces except in diarrhea
Copper	mg/day	15-211
Iron	gm/day	0.7-1.0
Lead	mg/day	0.3-0.4
Manganese	mg/day	1.9-2.4
Molybdenum	mg/day	2-4
Nickel	mg/day	5-10
Phosphorus	gm P/day	0.9-1.7
Potassium	mEq/day	19-226
Sodium	mEq/day	traces except in diarrhea
Tin	mg/day	0.5-1.7
Zinc	mg/day	5-10
4 <i>Nitrogen and Protein Derivatives</i>		
Arginine	gm/day	1.2-1
Histidine	gm/day	0.6-0.8
Isoleucine	gm/day	1.4-2.3
Leucine	gm/day	1.8-2.9
Lysine	gm/day	1.9-2.9
Methionine	gm/day	0.5-0.8
Nitrogen (total)	gm/day	0.7-2.1
Threonine	gm/day	1.4-2.0
Valine	gm/day	1.5-2.6
5 <i>Carbohydrates and Derivatives</i>		
Total reducing sugar	mg/day	0
6 <i>Fats and Derivatives</i>		
Total fat	gm/day	1-2
Total fat	per cent by weight (dry)	10-25
Total fat (unsaponifiable)	per cent by weight (dry)	0.5
7 <i>Vitamins</i>		
Beta carotene	mg/day	1.7-3.3
Biotin	mcg/day	100-200
Niacin	mg/day	25-55
Pantothenic acid	mg/day	18-38
Pyridoxine	mg/day	0.1-0.5
4-Pyridoxic acid	mg/day	0.5-0.6
Riboflavin	mg/day	0.4-1.20
Thiamine	mg/day	0-0.8
Vitamin A	mg/day	0.17-0.33
8 <i>Hormones</i>		
No data available		

TABLE 3 —CONT'D

9 Enzymes			
No data available			
10 Pigments			
Porphyrin total	mcg/day		300-400
Protoporphyrin	mcg/day		0-300
Urobilinogen	mg/day		40-80
11 Gases			
No data available			
12 Measurements of Clinical Interest			
Bacterial debris	per cent of weight (dry)		10-30

TABLE 3 COMPOSITION OF FECES

(Listed below are normal ranges for various substances in human feces all values are for healthy individuals in a resting condition at sea level in a temperate environment. The values for many substances are closely related to dietary intake. In addition there are large differences from person to person.)

SUBSTANCE	UNITS	USUAL RANGE
1 Water		
Specific gravity	vs water	1 030 1 100
Total solids	gm/100 gm	15 30
Water	ml/100 gm	60 80
2 Hydrogen Ion Concentration		
Hydrogen ion concentration	pH	6 0 7 5
3 Minerals		
Aluminum	mg/day	1 0 11
Calcium	gm/day	0 1 10
Chloride	mEq/day	traces except in diarrhea
Copper	mg/day	15 2 11
Iron	gm/day	0 7 10
Lead	mg/day	0 3 0 4
Manganese	mg/day	1 0 4
Molybdenum	mg/day	2 4
Nickel	mg/day	5 10
Phosphorus	gm P/day	0 9 1 7
Potassium	mEq/day	19 2 26
Sodium	mEq/day	traces except in diarrhea
Tin	mg/day	0 1 7
Zinc	mg/day	5 10
4 Nitrogen and Protein Derivatives		
Arginine	gm/day	1 2 2 1
Histidine	gm/day	0 6 0 8
Isoleucine	gm/day	1 4 2 3
Leucine	gm/day	1 8 2 9
Lysine	gm/day	1 9 3 9
Methionine	gm/day	0 5 0 9
Nitrogen (total)	gm/day	0 7 2 1
Threonine	gm/day	1 4 2 2
Valine	gm/day	1 3 2 6
5 Carbohydrates and Derivatives		
Total reducing sugar	mg/day	0
6 Fats and Derivatives		
Total fat	gm/day	1 7
Total fat	per cent by weight (dry)	10 25
Total fat (unsaponifiable)	per cent by weight (dry)	0 5
7 Vitamins		
Beta carotene	mg/day	1 3 3
Biotin	mcg/day	100 200
Niacin	mg/day	3 5 5 5
Pantothenic acid	mg/day	1 8 3 8
Pyridoxine	mg/day	0 1 0 5
4 Pyridoxine acid	mg/day	0 5 0 6
Riboflavin	mg/day	0 4 1 20
Thiamine	mg/day	0 2 0 8
Vitamin A	mg/day	0 17 0 33
8 Hormones		
No data available		

TABLE 3 —CONT'D

9 Enzymes			
No data available			
10 Pigments			
Porphyrin total	mcg/day		300-400
Protoporphyrin	mcg/day		0-300
Urobilinogen	mg/day		40-80
11 Gases			
No data available			
12 Measurements of Clinical Interest			
Bacterial debris	per cent of weight (dry)		10-30

TABLE 32 COMPOSITION OF FECES

(Listed below are normal ranges for various substances in human feces all values are for healthy individuals in a resting condition at sea level in a temperate environment. The values for many substances are closely related to dietary intake. In addition there are large differences from person to person.)

SUBSTANCE	UNITS	USUAL RANGE
1 <i>Water</i>		
Specific gravity	vs water	1.030-1.100
Total solids	gm/100 gm	15-35
Water	ml/100 gm	65-85
<i>Hydrogen Ion Concentration</i>		
Hydrogen ion concentration	pH	7.0-8
3 <i>Minerals</i>		
Aluminum	mg/day	1500-9
Calcium	gm/day	0.1-1.0
Chloride	mEq/day	traces except in diarrhea
Copper	mg/day	15-211
Iron	gm/day	0.7-1.0
Lead	mg/day	0.3-0.4
Manganese	mg/day	190-4
Molybdenum	mg/day	0.4
Nickel	mg/day	5-10
Phosphorus	gm P/day	0.9-1.7
Potassium	mEq/day	19.2-20.6
Sodium	mEq/day	traces except in diarrhea
Tin	mg/day	0.5-1.7
Zinc	mg/day	5-10
4 <i>Amino Acids and Protein Derivatives</i>		
Arginine	gm/day	100-1
Histidine	gm/day	0.6-0.8
Isoleucine	gm/day	140-3
Leucine	gm/day	180-9
Lysine	gm/day	193-9
Methionine	gm/day	0.5-0.8
Nitrogen (total)	gm/day	0.70-1
Threonine	gm/day	140-2
Valine	gm/day	1.5-2.6
5 <i>Carbohydrates and Derivatives</i>		
Total reducing sugar	mg/day	0
6 <i>Fats and Derivatives</i>		
Total fat	gm/day	100
Total fat	per cent by weight (dry)	10-25
Total fat (unsaponifiable)	per cent by weight (dry)	0.5
7 <i>Vitamins</i>		
Beta carotene	mg/day	1.7-3.3
Biotin	mcg/day	100-400
Niacin	mg/day	35-55
Pantothenic acid	mg/day	18-38
Pyridoxine	mg/day	0.1-0.5
4-Pyridoxic acid	mcg/day	0.5-0.6
Riboflavin	mg/day	0.4-1.0
Thiamine	mg/day	0.2-0.8
Vitamin A	mcg/day	0.1-0.33
8 <i>Hormones</i>		
No data available		

TABLE 3^a—CONT D

<hr/>			
9	<i>En ymes</i>		
	No data available		
10	<i>Pigments</i>		
	Porphyrin, total	meg/day	300 400
	Protoporphyrin	meg/day	0 500
	Urobilinogen	mg/day	40 80
11	<i>Gases</i>		
	No data available		
1	<i>Measurements of Clinical Interest</i>		
	Bacterial debris	per cent of weight (dry)	10 30
<hr/>			

INDEX

A

Abramson H A 80
Absolute vapor tension from pyrometry 387
Absorbent for
acetylene 354
carbon dioxide 31
oxygen (Haldane apparatus) 31
Absorption law of De Vries 30
Abt A F 01 1
Acacia, emulsifying agent 1
Acetaldehyde 107
Acetate buffer preparation (Roughton) 3
lander method) 86 9
Acetic acid solution preparation 9
Acetic anhydride 10 173
Acetic anhydride sulfuric acid mixture 1
Acetoacetic acid 176
Acetoacetic acid miscellaneous references 18
Acetone 145
Acetone miscellaneous references 1 4
Acetone bodies 1 177
calculation, 176
determination of
total in blood 1 176
total in urine 1 81
individual acetone bodies 1
precipitation of mercuric acetate sulfate 1 6
Acetyl acetone miscellaneous references 1 4
Acetylcholine miscellaneous references 1 4
Acetylcholine bromide solution 4
Acetylene
absorbent 354
analysis of in expired air 353
rebreathing of for cardiac output determination 3 430
Acetylene miscellaneous references 106
Acid digestion mixture for NPN preparation 130
Acid phosphatase in serum determination of 3
Acid substrate for phosphatase preparation 3
Acker, M 1
ACTH
calculation 40
intramuscular injection 410
physiologic 410 410
Adair E D 83
Adams C A 1 8
Adams J 1
Addis T 13
Adenine guanine and uracil tandem solution preparation 1
Adrenal hormones miscellaneous references 40
Adrenal miscellaneous references 109

Alcohol at
Deer 180
Superior 193
Zeolite 140
Alcohol on columns (Hennrich type) 184
Alcohol plate assay for botulin 109
Algeles P M 418
Agar G 149 149
Air lamped balance (Cortius type) 6 68
Air solution 40
Airline 4 1 118 10 153
Air A 39
Air P 1 80
Air light 19 39 40
Air in serum determination of 1
Air 1
Alcohol 6 81
Alcohol solution in
blood 163 160
urine 163 160
Amal 101 101
Butyl 185
normal butyl 08
Alcohol in miscellaneous references 1
Alcohol ether mixture 1 4
Alcohol
glycerol 111
phosphotungstic acid solution 139
phosphotungstic acid solution 18
Allerberg D 14
Aluminum 101
Alkaline earth 113
Alkaline phosphatase in serum determination of 3
Alkaline phosphate solution preparation 139
Alkaline substrate for phosphatase preparation 3
Allen E H J 10
Alfray V 1
Aluminum chloride bound 10
Aluminum 150
Alpha alpha pyridine reaction 40
Aluminum 116
Aluminum equivalent 391
Aluminum apparatus for embedding tissue 391
Aluminum 115
Aluminum W C 40
Aluminum in urine 1 316-350
apparatus 316-316
calculation 316-316
principle 316
Aluminum in urine 30
apparatus 316-316
principle 316
Aluminum detector 98
Aluminum pressure 61
Aluminum temperature 101
Aluminum 116 116

Amino acetic acid standard solution, 14°
 amino acids microbiological °59
 Amino acids miscellaneous references °59
 Amino acid nitrogen in urine determination of 14°
 Amino naphtholsulfonic acid (ANSA) solution, 174
 amino nitrogen manometric methods 299
 Amino nitrogen miscellaneous reference 299
 Ammonia free urine preparation of 141
 Ammoniacal alcohol solution 97
 Ammonium hydroxide solution 93
 Ammonium molybdate solution preparation 111 114
 Ammonium oxalate solution preparation 93
 Ammonium potassium oxalate mixture preparation 131
 Ammonium sulfate standard solution preparation 1°0 135 140
 Amylase
 in serum, determination of °°6 2°, simplified calculation (Table) °°7
 Amylase miscellaneous references ° 7
 Amylase activity of serum °°7
 Amylase units in serum °°,
 Amylolytic miscellaneous references 418
 Anaerobic 235
 handling of blood °63
 storage of blood (Scholander technique) 264
 Andersch M A °3
 Anderson C T 117
 Anderson M ° 364
 Anderson W N 178
 Androgens miscellaneous references °18
 Androsterone standard solution preparation 217
 Anemia 131
 Angstrom units 29
 Annersten S °18
 ANSA (amino naphtholsulfonic acid) recrystallization 109
 solution preparation 1°4
 Anson C R °59
 Anson M L 147
 Antecubital fossa 261
 Anticoagulants for blood miscellaneous references 401
 Anticoagulants for blood preparation
 heparin 20 301
 oxalate 131
 sodium citrate solution 131
 Antimony 115
 Antimony trichloride solution preparation 179
 Anti protease miscellaneous references °°°
 Anti tryptic activity miscellaneous reference °°,
 Apparatus
 alveolar air at rest (Figure) 341
 alveolar air at work (Figure) 349
 balance 80
 capillary syringe and sling for the combined CO and O method °96
 electron microscope 80
 electrophoresis 80
 extraction unit for 17 ketosteroid °16
 flame photometer 80

Apparatus—Cont d
 gas analysis 80
 gas mixture preparation 30
 glass electrode (Daly Forbes) °39
 Haldane gas analysis (Figure) 313
 infrared spectrometer 80
 Kjeldahl micro (Key s) 1°1
 Krogh syringe burette °3
 lactic acid 158
 manometric techniques 80
 mass spectrometer 80
 measurement of functional residues 35°
 microrespirometer 80
 ocumeter 80
 pipettes 68 81
 polarography 81
 Pehberg microburette °2
 respirometer 81
 Scholander micrometer burette °4
 Scholander micrometer gas analyzer
 Tissot gasometer for collecting expired 358
 total base electrolysis unit 84
 treadmill 84°
 ultracentrifuge 81
 ultrafiltration 81
 ultra microanalysis 81
 Van Slyke Neill °61
 Apparatus volumetric 68 74
 burettes 68 74
 calibration 74 °6
 microburettes 70 °4
 syringe pipettes 68
 syringe screw burettes 74
 Aqua regia 115
 Arcand G M 116
 Archibald R M 1°7 130
 Arginase miscellaneous reference ° 7
 Arginine microbiological miscellaneous references °9
 Armstrong A R °3
 Arnold sterilizer °44
 Arsenic pentoxide preparation 143
 Arsenophosphotungstic acid solution preparation 143 145
 Arterial blood technique for obtaining °65
 Goldschmidt and Licht method °63
 Lahenthal and Pulev method °63
 Mook s technique °63
 Scholander technique 63 °6,
 usual method °61 °6
 Arterio venous difference 304
 Ascorbic acid field method determination serum 201 °04
 urine °01 °04
 Ascorbic acid macro method determination °10
 serum 1°° 197
 tissue 199 200
 urine 193
 whole blood 193 197
 Ascorbic acid micro method determination °12
 serum 198 199
 whole blood 198 199
 Ascorbic acid miscellaneous references

- Ascorbic acid standard solution for field use preparation °01
 Ascorbic acid standard solution preparation 196
 Ashby count miscellaneous reference 401
 Ashworth J N 15
 Asparagine solution preparation 245
 Astaff A. 418
 Atkin, L. 251
 Atomic number of the elements (table) 4 8
 Atomic weight definition 76
 table 4 4
 Austin J H 311
 Autoclave °° 139
 Automatic pipette
 Brewer °57
 Fisher Volumat °44
 Autotransformer mercury vapor lamps 85
 Average normal values of
 hematocrit 133
 hemoglobin 133
 Avery B F 200
 Awapara J. 148 149
 Axelrod A R 401
- B
- Bayer H N. 255
 Baisbridge H W 118
 Balances
 air damped (Sartorius type) 67 68
 calibration 67 68
 Roller Smith torsion 5 63 67
 calibration 65
 operation 65
 Baldwin E. deF 35 357
 Bale W F. 117
 Ballistocardiograph miscellaneous references 356
 Bandelin F J 59
 Baner B 178
 Banerjee, S 213
 Baptist, H 143
 Barach A L. 357
 Barish J. 150
 Barbour H G 15.
 Barclay J A 15
 Barcroft gas sampling tubes 3 7
 Barcroft tonometer 501
 Barium chloride solution 113
 Barium hydroxide 156
 Barker M. H 364
 Barker S B 117
 Barnes H D 33
 Barnett J 19
 Barometric pressure conversion chart 394
 Barrett, E. 15
 Bartczak, E. 2 0
 Basal medium for folic acid preparation 246
 Basal metabolic rate (BMR) 337 341
 calculation, 33 341
 principle 337
 procedure 337
 Base bound by plasma proteins effects of temperature 311
 Bays E. 115
 Bascett, A. M. 219
 Bastron J T 178
 Batchelor T M. 117
 Bateman J B 357
 Bates R. W 219
 Bates Smith E C 150
 Bauer F C Jr 178
 Bauernfeind J C 213
 Baumann C 4 21
 Baxter D 130 13.
 Beadle G W °9
 Bean R. S 2 8
 Bean W B 418
 Beazell J M 4°0
 Beck G J 418
 Beckman flame photometer attachment 60
 Beckman pH meter °42
 Beckman Quartz spectrophotometer Model DU 38 50
 absorption cells holders and compartments 38 42
 accuracy 4.
 calculation of solution concentrations 47
 calibration 43 50
 electrical system 38
 focusing of hydrogen lamp 48 49
 focusing of tungsten lamp 47 43
 light sources 39
 monochromator 39
 nominal band width 46
 operation of instrument 50
 optical system 38 39
 phototubes 42
 sensitivity 42
 slits 39
 spectral range 4
 Beckman W W 35
 Behre J A. 178
 Beierwaltes W H 127
 Bekking H M 3 8 378
 Bell J C 219
 Bell R. D 146
 Benzene B 213
 Benedict B R 143 166 4°1
 Benedict Hitchcock stock standard solution for uric acid preparation 143
 Benedict's qualitative glucose reagent 403
 Benedict's qualitative test for urine sugar 404
 Benne E J 233
 Bennett H B 91 118
 Bentley H R. 150
 Bentley O G 260
 Benzene 145
 Benzoic acid standard solution preparation 78 8.
 Berg C P. 153
 Bergdahl A M. °60
 Bergum O °9
 Berliner R. W., 411
 Berman L. 401
 Bernheim A. R., 168
 Berry H K. 143
 Berryman, G H 375
 Bernus S 3.6
 Berthles K C 300
 Bekey O A., 193 °1 363
 Bhattacharya, H 213

- Bicarbonate manometric method miscel-
laneous references 299
- Bicknell F, 212
- Biehler R 213
- Bile in urine miscellaneous references 418
- Bilirubin in serum combining with diazon-
ium salts 413
determination of 413 414
principle 413
standard solution preparation 413
- Bills, C E 118
- Bing R J 356
- Binkley, F 116 152
- Biochemical procedures 82 460
- Biotin agar plate assay 256 459
medium 258
principle 257
standard curve 258
- Biotin microbiological method 249 250
determination in
blood 249 250
feces 249 250
food 249 250
plasma 249 250
urine 249 250
standard solution preparation 245
- Bisulfite combining capacity in blood 165
- Bird E J 117
- Bird O D 213
- Biuret reagent preparation 144
- Black A 255
- Black, H 357
- Blanchard K. C 401
- Blackfan K D 149
- Blatz J I 410 417
- Blauch M H 145
- Blendor Waring 19
- Blux G 80
- Block H 209
- Block F J 148 149
- Block W D 145 153
- Blodner H 163
- Blood anti-coagulant
heparin solution 20 301
potassium oxalate solution 164
sodium citrate solution 135
- Blood arterial
calculation
hemoglobin 306
percent saturation 306
physically dissolved oxygen 305
oxygen bound by hemoglobin 305
oxygen capacity 306
total oxygen 305
dissociation curves 305 310
equilibration 304
normal values 311
preparation for analysis 303
- Blood, arterial and venous
analysis of gas phase 304 305
calculation 305
equilibration of in gas mixture of known
composition 301 305
gas mixture preparation 301 303
principle, 301
- Blood determination of
acetone bodies total 175 146
alcohol 163 165
ascorbic acid
macro method 195 197
micro method 198 199
biotin 249 250
carbon dioxide (S R) 291 495
carotenoids (Carr Price) 179 180
combined carbon dioxide and oxygen (Scho-
lander) 295 299
eosinophil count (direct) 399 401
folic acid 44 247
glucose
colorimetric 154 155
volumetric 156 157
hemoglobin (Evelyn Malloy) 230 231
hemoglobin (Sanford Sheard) 229 230
lactic acid 157 161
lipid phosphorus 173 174
mean corpuscular
concentration 397 398
hemoglobin content 397 398
volume 397 398
methemoglobin 231 230
nicotinic acid microbiological 48
nitrogen dissolved 280 285
nonprotein nitrogen 155 157
oxyhemoglobin 231 232
oxygen (Roughton Scholander) 277 283
oxygen (Van Slyke) 287
pantothenic acid 251
pH measurement 235 240
riboflavin 194 195
sedimentation rate 399 400
sulfhemoglobin 231 230
thiamine 186 189
total bisulfite binding capacity 165
total circulating volume
calculation 364 363
carbon monoxide method 361 363
tryptophan 255 256
urea nitrogen 140 141
vitamin A (Carr Price) 179 180
- Blood drawing in the field 21
- Blood gases physical chemistry 301 311
- Blood total carbon dioxide calculation
carbon dioxide content of equilibrated
blood 306
glycolysis during equilibration 306
total carbon dioxide in plasma 306
- Blood volume dye method 358 361
calculation 359 361
- Blood volume miscellaneous references 366
- Blood volume True 363 364
- Bloom A, 219
- Bloor W R 168 169 178 218
- Blum A E 239 260
- Bock A V 327 346
- Bockus H L 221
- ten Bokkel Huinink H 178
- Bone marrow miscellaneous references 401
- Boothby W M 357
- Boothby Sandford standards for BMR 340
- Borate buffer pH 9.2 145
- Borek E, 260
- Boric acid solution preparation 1 0
- Botty M H 150

Bowen A deP 376
 Bowes and Church book on food composition 375
 Bowman J M 25
 Boyer F D 166
 Boyle A J 117
 Brach urinary blood drawing 61
 Brand F C 171
 Brannon E M 366
 Bratton A C 41
 Bray W F 396
 Brecher A 260
 Breed E M 35
 Breb F 119
 Brendler H 4
 Bridwell E G 41
 Briggs A P 97 11
 Brimley R C 147
 Brink N G 260
 Britton, C J C 306
 Brock M J 368
 Bromocresol green and ester 10 185 191
 09 235
 Bromeresol purple indicator 235
 Bromine 190
 Bromine in cellulosic references 116
 Bromine water preparation 143
 Bromphenol blue indicator 188 235
 Bromphenol red indicator 235
 Bromsulfalein test in serum determination
 of 41 413
 solut on preparat on 412
 Bromthymol blue indicator 23 44
 Brouha L 369 373
 Brower S W 417
 Brown D M 80
 Brown F 150
 Brown F A 213
 Brown S 167
 Buchanan O H 145
 Buffer
 borate pH 9, 145
 borate (Clark's) pH 7.8 10.0 237
 definition 35
 pH 4.58 89
 pH 4.7 100
 pH definition, 35
 phosphate pH 65 30
 phosphate pH 66 30 31
 phosphate Sørensen's pH 5.88 36
 pH definition 235
 potassium citrate 2
 sodium diethylbarbiturate stock solution
 24
 Sørensen's glycine HCl mixture pH 11.35
 38
 Sørensen's glycine NaOH mixture pH 8.5
 1 5 38
 Sørensen's phosphate solution at 20 C and
 37 C pH 5.88 40
 Walpole's acetate mixtures pH 3.6 5.8 237
 Behle E. L. 41
 Bulger H A 153
 Bull H R 14 145
 Bullen S G 18
 Bureau of standard filters, for Beckman in-
 strument 80

Burettes

Haldane cal brat on 31 31a
 Krogh syringe type 3
 micro Tschberg 70 4 91
 micro Scholander 74 6
 cal brat on 6
 construct on 2
 syringe a re: Krogh type 74
 Barnett I 402
 Burrus R T 80
 Burrus O K 4 2
 Burton A C 3 9 340
 Burton C J 150
 Burton R B 151
 Burton's equation on 340
 Burwell C S 37
 Buskirk H H 60
 Butler A M 6 118 134 21 2 0

C

Ca L 149
 Calcium
 calculated on of theoretical balance 393
 determination on 2
 feces 96 9
 food 96 9
 serum 93 9a
 tissue 96 9
 urine 95 96
 standard solution preparation on 94
 Calcium in cellulosic references 116
 Calcium hydrate is
 powdered 2
 solution preparation on 175
 Calcium pantothenate standard solution 2
 Calcium of
 carbonate in serum 306
 BUN 337 341
 carbon dioxide content of blood equilib-
 rated 306
 Clonit 379 380
 free carbon content of serum 306
 gas volumes 261
 general equation 41
 glycolysis during equilibrium 306
 hemoglobin in blood 306
 oxygen bound by hemoglobin 30
 oxygen capacity 306
 percent saturation in blood 306
 physially dissolved oxygen in blood 30a
 serum pH 306
 temperature effects on base bound by
 plasma protein 311
 Total from PCO₂ (total CO₂) and Hb 306
 total carbon dioxide in blood 306
 total carbon dioxide in plasma 306
 total oxygen in blood 303
 true blood volume 363 364
 urine volume per hour 2
 Calibration of
 balances
 a dampen type d 63
 torsion 6a
 Beckman spectrophotometer 43 40
 burette (Haldane) 31 315

- Calibration of—Cont'd
 Coleman, Jr, spectrophotometer 33 38
 concentration transmittance graph 3° 33
 volumetric apparatus 74 76
 wave length 29
- Callow N H 218
 Callow, R E 218
 Calomel half cell 237
 Calorie definition 336
 Caloric discrepancy definition 390
 Calvery E 123
 Camien M N 259
 Capillary syringe and sling for the combined carbon dioxide and oxygen method (Scholander) 296
- Capps M F 260
 Caprylic alcohol, 26 181 193 268 270
- Carbohydrates determination of
 alcohol 163 165
 bisulfite binding capacity 165 166
 blood glucose or blood sugar
 colorimetric 154 155
 volumetric 156 157
 glycogen 161 163
 lactic acid 157 161
- Carbohydrates miscellaneous references 166 167
 aldehydes 166
 citric acid 166
 glucose 166
 glycogen 166
 insulin 166
 lactic acid 166
 mannitol 167
 methylpentose 167
 pentose 167
 pyruvic acid 167
- Carbon dioxide
 absorption with sodium hydroxide 270 272
 blood determination of 291 295
 apparatus 292
 calculation 294 295
 principle 291
 procedure 293 294
 liberation of by lactic acid 270
 manometric method, 299
 production calculation of 336
 serum determination of (Van Slyke) 270 272
 solid 25
- Carbon dioxide and oxygen combined method (Scholander) 295 299
 apparatus 296
 calculation 299
 principle 295 296
 procedure 297 298
- Carbon monoxide
 absorbent Winkler's solution 286
 blood determination of 275 276
 blood determination (Scholander Pough-ton) 285 291
 calculation 287
 general method 285 288
 procedure 286 287
 combined method for estimation of in single samples of blood 288 289
 calculation 288 289
 blood containing small amounts 289 291
- Carbon monoxide—Cont'd
 liberation with hydrosulfite borate solution, 275
 manometric method 299
 preparation of gas, 36°
 small amounts in blood determination of 289 291
- Carbon monoxide miscellaneous references 299
- Carbon tetrachloride 215
- Carboxyhemoglobin miscellaneous references 233
- Cardiac output (Grollman's method) 353 356
 analysis of acetylene 355
 apparatus 354
 calculation, 355 356
 principle, 353 354
 procedure 354 355
 rebreathing of acetylene 354
- Cardiac output miscellaneous references 356
- Cardini C E 212
- Cardiotachometer, 34° 243
- Carmine for collection of feces 26
- Carotene miscellaneous references 212
- Carotene standard solution preparation 18°
- β carotene standard solution 179
- Carotenoids
 carotene, 180
 serum (Dichlorhydrin), 181 184
 xanthophyll 180
- Carpenter A M, 153
 Carpenter D C 153
 Carpenter F H 256
- Carr Price reaction 179 180
- Carter, M 220
- Cartwright E 104
- Casein, acid hydrolyzed 245
- Casein hydrolysate solution 255
- Caswell M C 260
- Catalyst for micro Kjeldahl analysis 120
 mercury 193
 selenium 123
- Catheterization miscellaneous references 356 357
- Cavallini D 150
- Cell volume miscellaneous references 366
- Cellophane transparent, 83
- Cells determination of
 cholinesterase 2° 42 M
 pH measurement 235 240
 potassium 90
 sodium 90 91
 total base 83 87
 total solids 8° 83
 total water 82 83
- Centrifuge Clay Adams 20
- Cephalin flocculation miscellaneous refer-ences 418
- Cerebral circulation miscellaneous references 357
- Cerecedo L R, 152 184, 213
- Cesium oxide phototube 42
- Charkoff I L 151 212
- Chambers D C 153
- Chauvut A 150
- Charcoal activated Norit 249

- Chargaff E 148 151
 Charney J " 3
 Charts alignment, D Oague 18
 Chatfield C 3 5
 Cheldelin C 37
 Chen G 2 9
 Chen Y C 118
 Chupard F P 99
 Chloride determination in
 serum 105 108
 urine 105 109
 Chloroform 1 0
 Chlorophenol indicator 33
 Chlorophyll miscellaneous references 33
 Chloroplatinic acid solution 91
 Cholel fecal
 acetone alcohol mixture 171
 acetone ether mixture 171
 calculation 173
 determination of
 combined 171 173
 esterified 171 173
 free, 171 1 3
 total (Bloor's) 180 1 0
 development of color 170
 isolation 1 4
 precipitation with digitonin 171
 standard solution preparation 1 0 272
 Cholesterol miscellaneous references 178
 Choline microtolog cal m cellaneous references, 59
 Cholinesterase determination in
 cells 4 4
 serum 42 6
 Cholinesterase miscellaneous references 428
 Cholinesterase activity miscellaneous references 418
 Chow, B F 151
 Christ C L 1 9
 Christman A A 145
 Chromoprot in miscellaneous reference 12
 Church C F 376
 Chymotrypsin miscellaneous references 5
 Circulation time m cellaneous reference 3,7
 Clavins A 116
 Clarite
 coating solution "
 hydrophobic coating of micro gas analyzer 3 9
 Clark F P 93
 Clark L G 99
 Clark L C Jr " 9
 Clark W 418
 Clark W M 93 3, 5
 Clark's borate buffer mixture pH 7.8 10 0
 37
 Clau en S W 14
 Clifton J J
 Clinical laboratory procedure 326 4
 hematology 39 398
 miscellaneous references to textbooks 396
 Clo unit
 calculation 3 9 380
 definition 3 9
 Clotting time miscellaneous references 401
 Clough M C 394
 Clou h I W 296
 Cluit miscellane os references 116
 Cohen H 19
 Cohen H R 117
 Cohen J A 7
 Cohen P P 338
 Cohn C 103 151
 Cohn E J 151
 Colcher H 416
 Cold pressor tests miscellaneous reference 4 1
 Coleman Jr spectrophotometer
 adjusting the mechanical galvanometer zero 36 37
 apparatus 34
 calibration 36 38
 general principles 33 36
 monochromator 33 34
 optimum transmittance range 36
 photometer 34 36
 routine use of the instrument 38
 Coleman Photofluorometer Model 17B 1
 57
 adjusting the instrument 31
 apparatus 51
 Collection of expired air 331
 Collection of feces using
 carmine, 23
 charcoal 6
 methylene green 6
 Collection and storage of feces with carmine 6
 Collection and storage of specimens 19 0
 blood drawing 21
 feces 4
 food (whole faeces in the field) 19 0
 general considerations 19
 to ur 23
 urine in the field 21
 whole blood and serum in the field 20 21
 Coller H B 150
 Collimating mirror 49
 Collip J H 93
 Colvert J R 417
 Combined carbon monoxide and oxygen method (1 3) 89 89
 Combined reagent for liberation of oxygen and carbon dioxide 75
 Comfort M W 470
 Composition of normal arterial human blood 311
 Computation of theoretical balances 393 394
 calcium 393
 nitrogen 393
 phosphorus 393
 potassium 393 394
 sulfur 393 394
 Conroe J H Jr 81
 Concentration transmittance calibration graph 3 33
 Condenser, mixer 1 5
 Condit H 13
 Conn J W 404
 Connor J C 21
 Connor P T 194 190
 Conley H 144 149
 Consalvo C E 01 401
 Conplax W 83 8 90 91 9 15
 Contreras L A 401

Conversions

centrifuge to Fahrenheit scales 38.
 dehydroascorbic acid with Norit 195
 hemoglobin to oxyhemoglobin 209
 temperature, barometer wind velocity 383
 weights and measures different systems 405 407

area—metric system, 425
 area—U S system, 425
 capacity—metric system 406
 capacity—U S system dry 406
 capacity—U S system liquid 406
 length metric system, 425
 length—U S system 425
 mass—metric system, 426
 mass—U S system avoirdupois com-
 mercial 406
 time, 427
 U S apothecaries fluid measure, 406
 U S apothecaries' weight 406
 volume—metric system 425
 volume—U S system 405

Conway A C 401

Cook, E F 193

Cooke W D 117

Coon J M 401

Cooks A H 219

Copper in serum determination of, 100 10.
 standard solution preparation 101

Copper miscellaneous references 116

Copper sulfate solution of 173 198
 standard solution preparation, 127 1 8

Coret cells Beckman Model DU 39

Coreoran A C 167 218

Corley R C 96 110

Corn starch suspension 206

Coronary blood flow miscellaneous references 357

Cortical steroids, miscellaneous references, 218 219

Coulson, R A, 189

Coulson Smith C 356

Counting chamber, Levy 399

Coupling reaction, with 2 4 dinitrophenyl
 hydrazine 197

Cournaud A 351, 356 35

Court A 389

Coward K H 210

Cowden D J 402

Cowdry E V, 389

Cramer H 422

Crammer, J L 150

Crandall L A, 364

Creatine in urine, determination of 139 140

Creatinine in urine determination of 138

139

Creatinine preformed 139

Creatinine zinc chloride standard solution
 preparation 138

Cresol phthalate indicator 235

Cresol red, indicator 235

Crowley L V 373

Croxton F E 402

Crucibles platinum 96

Cruger D 122

Cullen G E, 103, 299

Curtis G M 117

Cultures standard

Lactobacillus arabinosus 418 250

Saccharomyces carlsbergensis 250

Curves spectral transmittance 29 30

Cutler, H H, 400

Cyanmethemoglobin conversion 230 231

L-cystine standard solution, preparation, 35

Cytochrome C miscellaneous references 233

Cytochrome oxidase miscellaneous references 208

D

Dahr E 118

Daki H C 50

Daly C A 135 235

Damron C M 190

Daquelson I S 15.

Dana W J 212

Darling R C 061 26 273 351 369 378

Daughaday, W H 218

Davidson C M 403

Davidson L M F, 418

Davis I I 153

Decalco, activation of, 18.

Definition of

atomic weight 76

calorie 336

equivalent weight 76

fluorometry, 56

gram equivalent weight 76

milliequivalent 76

millimicron 29

molar solution 76

molecular weight 76

normal oxidizing solution 76

normal reducing solution 76

normal solution 76

pH 2 5

phosphatase unit 000 223

phosphorescence 50

pK 230

selective absorption 28

spectrophotometer 33

standard solutions 76

transmission, 27

transmittance 27 28

T G (volumetric apparatus) 69

T D (volumetric apparatus) 69

volumetric analysis 68

Degeydt E 150

Dehydroascorbic acid conversion with Norit 190

7 dehydrocholesterol 181

Dehydroisoascorbic acid in tissue determina-
 tion 200

Dekano, J, 213

Dekema H, 418

de Laat B M 100

Delor R A 060

De Luca H A, 116

De Ment J, 50

De Meas, law of absorption 50

De Michele G 007

Dennis W 96 110

Density of mercury at various temperatures 314

Denstedt O F 166

- Dent C L 148 149
 Deproteinizing reagent trichloroacetic acid 25
 De Rutter M 213
 de Verrier C H 149
 De Witt J B 214
 Dexter L 357
 Diazo reagent preparation 413
 2,6-dichlorophenolindophenol buffered solution preparation 201
 Dicken D M 260
 Didymium calibrating filter for Coleman Jr spectrophotometer 37
 Digestion mixture for NPV 135
 Digestion tube Fohn 135
 Digestion tubes 186 187
 Digonide total cholesterol 174
 Digitonin solution preparation 171
 Diketotegulonic acid in tissue determination 189 190
 Dill B H 87 335 301 305 3 7 346
 Dilute tungstic acid solution preparation 154
 Digenanase E 150
 4-Dinitrophenylhydrazine reagent preparation 194 199
 Disastrous miscellaneous reference 411
 Dische Z 167
 Dishes petri 37 38
 Disodium hydrogen phosphate solution preparation 1
 Disodium phosphate 143
 Dispersion data for spectrophotometer model DU 45
 Dissociation curves 305 310
 blood 309
 oxygen in human blood 309
 Distilled water metal free preparation 101
 Diurasis 3
 Dixon M 80
 Doboulor P 11
 Dobriner K 0
 D'Ocagne argument last 14
 Dodge E 219
 Doney E A Jr 3 3
 Dole V P 1 7 130
 Domingo W F 80
 Donnan ratio calculation 310
 Dorfman A 8
 Dornbush A C 60
 Douglas bag for collection of expired air 330 333 36
 Downie H I 7
 Drahtkin D L 33
 Dreker I J 0
 Drew R 148
 Drury P E 178
 Dryden E C 151
 Du Bois F H 33
 Du Bois & Meek formula for surface area 335
 Dunabin J I 145
 Dunford, K. A 19
 Dunn M R 149 54 60
 Dunstan, B H
 Durso J H 9
 Dyer C G 118
- Earle D P Jr 411
 Ebert R V 401
 Eckenhoff J E 356 357
 Eder H A 127
 Edgeston H A 4th
 Edman P 150
 Edsall J T 147
 Edwards G A 79 8
 Edwards H T 157
 Egan E 13
 Egegaard J 178
 Fehling's aldehyde reagent preparation 415
 Fickhorn F 150
 Egen E 151
 Einstein's photochemical equivalence law 31
 Fikman B 150
 Elbe H I I M 148
 Electrocardiograph miscellaneous reference 357
 Electron microscope 80
 Element by atomic number 4 9
 Electrophoresis 80
 Ellinger P 169
 Ellis D 356
 Ellis G H 117
 Films J W 118
 Flman R 346
 Elvehjem C A 3 84 44 47 49
 Emerson C P Jr 401
 Emerson K Jr 197 130
 E. M. K. 40 241
 Emulsion Law of Stokes 51
 Emmons C W 18
 Emmett A D 13
 Emulifying agent scams 2 1
 Emulsion of olive oil 1
 Energy expenditure calculation 336
 Engel F L 3
 Engel L L 2 0
 Fatenman C 1
 Enzymes 2 1 9
 acid phosphatase 403
 alkaline phosphatase 3 3
 amylase 6-2 7
 anti protease 7
 anti tryptic activity 7
 arginase 2 7
 cholinesterase H 4 0
 chymotrypsin 3
 clarase 167 100
 cytochrome oxidase 2 4
 hyaluronidase 3
 lipase 1 0 9
 lipoxidase 3
 peptic activity 3
 peroxidase 3
 phosphatase 3
 proteolytic activity 4
 takadastase for thiamine analysis 18
 takadastase solution 19
 trypsin 2 3
 urease 145
 Enzymes miscellaneous references 0 7 9
 Eosinophil count, direct method 399 401
 calculation 401
 diluting fluid preparation 401

- Eppinger E C 357
 Epstein J H 186
 Equilibration of blood against gas mixtures of known composition 301 305
 Equivalent weight definition 76
 Erdos J 118
 Ergosterol 181
 Ernstene A C 399
 Erythrocytes miscellaneous references 401
 Estrogens miscellaneous references 419
 Ether alcohol mixture solution for extraction of cholesterol preparation 170
 Ethyl alcohol aldehyde free standard solution 161
 Ethylene glycol for absorption of water vapor 265
 Etton J 213
 Evans E I 366
 Evans H J 80
 Evans J M 357
 Evans J M 419
 Evans blue dye T 18% sterile solution preparation 338
 Evelyn K A 230 231 413
 Expired air collection
 Douglas bag 330 333
 gasometer 327 329
 Extracellular fluid
 calculation 360 366
 change in weight 394
 thiocyanate space 364 366
 Extracellular fluid miscellaneous references 366
 Extraction of cholesterol by ether alcohol mixture 170
 Extraction unit for 17 ketosteroids 418
 Ezekiel M 4 2

F

- F fluorescent factor 40, 409
 Farah A 368
 Fats and derivatives 168 178
 acetone bodies 175 177
 free and combined cholesterol 171 173
 lipid phosphorus 173 174
 total cholesterol (Bloor's) 169 170
 total lipids 168 169
 Fats and derivatives miscellaneous references 178
 acetoacetic acid 178
 acetone 178
 acetyl acetone 178
 cholesterol 1 8
 fatty acids 176
 formic acid 178
 hydroxybutyric acid 178
 phospholipid 178
 total fat 178
 Feces
 collection and storage 26
 collection and storage in the field 26
 determination of
 biotin 249 250
 calcium 96 97
 carotenoids (Carr Price) 181
 folic acid, 244 247

- Feces determination of—Cont d
 pantothenic acid 251
 phosphorus inorganic 110 111
 potassium 93
 pyridoxine 251 253
 riboflavin 190 195
 sodium 90
 thiamine 180 189
 total nitrogen 123
 total solids 82 83
 total water 82 83
 urobilinogen 416 417
 vitamin A (Carr Price) 181
 Feces normal values 436 437
 Fee D A 153
 Feldstein M 233
 Fenn W O 357
 Ferguson M H 166
 Ferric alum solution indicator 106
 Ferric iron solution (gum ghatti) 154 155
 Ferric nitrate solution 361
 Ferric sulfate 155
 Ferricyanide solution for Roughton Scho-lander method 277 286
 Ferris E B 357
 Ferrous sulfate solution 415
 Fibra 22
 Fibrinogen in plasma 134 135
 Fibrinolysis miscellaneous references 40
 Field methods 201 211
 ascorbic acid in serum and urine 401 404
 N-methylsuccinimide 207 211
 riboflavin 304 307
 thiamine 07 211
 Fieser L F 40
 Fieser's modified reagent for absorbing oxygen 467
 Filters
 Bureau of Standards 50
 carbon yellow 50
 cobalt blue 50
 copper green 50
 selenium orange 50
 calibrating didymium 37
 Jena sintered glass 8
 red purple Corax A 43
 Wood type 57
 Fine S D 117
 Fineman A 218
 Fink E 148
 Fink E M 148
 Finkelstein M 219
 Fisher R A 422
 Fisher R B 143 152
 Fisher volutat 244
 Flake C H 109 119 15
 Fitch H M 237
 Fitz E 175
 Flame photometer 80
 Flame photometer Beckman 59 65
 computations 6
 discussion of sources of error 62 65
 general construction 59
 general principles 59
 procedure for routine analysis 61 62
 setting up the instrument, 60 61

- Flachka H 11
 Fleischer B C 90
 Flood A E 150
 Florry L 151
 Fluorescence laws 0 07
 Fluorometric methods using the field visual
 fluorometer 5 58
 apparatus 07 53
 calculation and examples 9
 precautions 53
 principle 7
 procedure 53
 Fluorometry 00 1
 definition 0
 general principles 51
 laws of fluorescence 00 01
 visual 5 58
 Fok N L 411
 Fok P P 411
 Fodor P J 8
 Folch J 118
 Folic acid miscellaneous references 212
 Folic acid pteroylglutamic acid 44 47
 determination in
 blood 44 47
 feces 244 47
 food 014 17
 plasma 014 47
 urine 11 17
 standard solution; preparation 1
 Folin O 110, 114 110, 136 139 140 140
 153 154 166
 Folin digestion tubes 135
 Folkers K 000
 Folling A 346
 Fondarot J 11
 Food
 collection and storage 10 0
 collection and storage in the field 10 0
 determination of
 botulin 040 0
 calcium 06 07
 folic acid 14 04
 nicotinic acid microbiological 43
 pantothenic acid 01
 phosphorus inorganic 110 111
 potassium 93
 pyridoxine 0
 riboflavin 10 100
 sodium 90
 thiamine 146 189
 total nitrogen 1 3
 total solids 8 81
 total water 8 83
 tryptophan 5 56
 food consumption surveys 3 03 3
 Forbes A P 0 0 4 0
 Forbes T P 00
 Forbes W H 030
 Formalin solution preparation 390
 Formic acid miscellaneous references 1 8
 Forsham I H 019 412
 Foster J C 11
 Fowweather J S 173
 Fox H H 13 60
 Fränkel Conrad H 0 8
 France W O 00
 Franke E 143
 Frankl W 260
 Frankhs A E 150
 Franklin A L 060
 Franklin M 418
 Frankton J B 153
 Fraser R W 0 0 4 0
 Friedman H A 010
 Frier C N 31
 Friday S J 356
 Friedemann and Graesser lithium lactate solu-
 tion standard preparation 159
 Friedemann T E 166 181 112
 Frontah N 150
 Functional tests of endocrine gastric and
 other systems 419-4 1
 pituitary ACTH test 419 4 1
 miscellaneous reference 400 401
 Furchgott R F 19
 Functional residual air 351 353
 apparatus 301 30
 calculation 353
 principle 351

 G
 Gueller O H 118 41
 Gygis A P 3 9
 Gylactose miscellaneous references 418
 Gallagher T F 18
 Galston A W
 Garner R J 117
 Gas analyzers 31 3 6
 Italian apparatus 310 319
 cylinders and micrometer 3 03 6
 Gas mixtures preparation 301 303
 Gas tension in blood miscellaneous references
 3 07
 Gas volume
 calculation 261
 general equation 61
 Gasometer Tissot 3 330
 Gastric function miscellaneous references
 4 0
 Gates F M 117
 Geffen C 1
 Geb C 153
 Genghof D 06
 Gentzko C J 140 396
 Gerabaty J T 410
 Gerish I 389
 Ghosh C 013
 Gibson J Q H 119 163 40
 Gills J F 149
 Gilman W E 4 1
 Gilliam A L 16
 Gillard J 1 0
 Gisenfr L 101
 Gittleman I 00
 Given H 0 150
 Glass distilled water preparation 80
 Glass electrodes 010 01
 apparatus (Daly Forbes) 039
 principle 035

- Hawkins M H 4 1
 Hawkins V 3 416 4 1
 Haynes F W 357
 Hazel F 117
 Heard R D H 0
 Heat balance clothing 378 381
 thermal insulation of clothes the 'Clo
 unit 379 380
 thermal significance of clothing 380
 Heath C W 373
 Heinrich A J 118
 Helmar O M 13
 Helmholtz H F Jr 357
 Hematocrit
 average normal values 133
 calculation 131
 values (copper sulfate method) 130
 Hematology, 397 400
 durotic inophil count 399 401
 mean corpuscular volume calculation of
 hemoglobin 397 399
 hemoglobin concentration, 397 398
 sedimentation rate calculation 399 400
 Hematology miscellaneous references 401
 400
 anticoagulant 401
 Aekby count 401
 bone marrow 401
 clotting time 401
 erythrocyte 401
 fibrinolysis 40
 icteric index 40
 leukocytes 400
 platelet 400
 prothrombin time 40
 Hematoma prevention of 01
 Hemingway A H
 Hemoglobin
 calculation 131
 calculation from oxygen capacity 308
 calibration chart 30
 concentration average normal value 131
 concentration in terms of grams hemo
 globin 131
 concentration in terms oxygen capacity
 133
 standard normal 30
 whole blood determination of (copper sul
 fate method) 1 7 133
 Hemoglobin manometric method in wet
 1 new reference 00
 Hemolysis prevention of 01 20
 Hemolysis in urine miscellaneous refer
 ences 418
 Henderson I J 301 305 310 400
 Henderson L 349 350
 Henderson L apparatus for collecting alve
 olar air during exercise 349 350
 Hendlin D 40
 Henly A A 019
 Hennessy D J 145 013
 Hennessy absorption lumens 184
 Heparin
 solution 301
 solution preparation 00
 Heparin miscellaneous references 4 1
 Herrick F J 1 1
- Hess W C 100 18
 Hessel F H 053
 Hettig R A 11
 Hier S W 39
 Hill B R 2 0
 Hill J M 118
 Hill R M 79
 Hiller A 197 1 0 99 300 311
 Hills A G 219 419
 Himmer P F 218
 Hilly W W 8
 Hipple J A H
 Hippuric acid miscellaneous references 418
 Hirsch E F 178
 Hirsch H L 357
 Hirst E L 150
 Histamine miscellaneous references 219
 Histamine microscological miscellaneous ref
 erences 019
 Hitchings S S 150
 Hoag E H 00
 Hoagland G L 418
 Hobbs H L 00
 Hoch F I 119
 Hochberg H 013
 Hochberg M 210 01
 Hoffman W B 116
 Hoffmann C E. 00
 Hogues K R. 151
 Holden H F 033
 Hollen M 189
 Holiday E P 150
 Hollander F 4 0
 Holmes H 80
 Holmes P 149
 Holtorf A F 0 0
 Homburger P 149
 Homogenate 19
 Homogenizer type 05
 Honorato R 400
 Hooker C W 060
 Hormones 1 5
 Hormones miscellaneous references 015 000
 acetylcholine 015
 adrenalin 18
 androgen 18
 cortical steroids 019
 cortisol 18 10
 estrogens 019
 gonadotropin 015
 histamine 219
 parathormone 014
 pituitary adrenocorticotropin 14
 protein bound iodine 219
 steroid 019 00
 thyroxine 0
 Horn M J 030 060
 Horowitz H 39
 Horrocks R H 1 0
 Horvath J., 260
 Horvath R M 00
 Hoxley R J 400
 Hough L 150
 Howard J., 414
 Howe P E. 1 8 3 3
 Huang H T., 0 1

Huckabay W E 178
 Huddleston B 153
 Hudson P B, 2nd 8
 Huelin F E 212
 Huerga J, 418
 Huff J W 213
 Hughes W L Jr 152 402
 Huis in t Velt, L G 150
 Hull T E 368
 Humidity and absolute vapor tension charts, conversion 380 386
 Hunter D 152
 Hunter T H 152 363
 Hurtado A 304
 Hurxthal L M 346
 Hutching B L 249 460
 Hyaluronidase miscellaneous references 2-8
 Hydrochloric acid standard solution preparation 77
 Hydrogen ion concentration 234 243
 buffer solutions 234 235
 glass electrode 235 238
 indicators 234
 measurement of pH of solution 234 243
 Hydrogen ion concentration miscellaneous references 243
 plasma pH
 urine pH 243
 Hydrogen manometric method: miscellaneous references 300
 Hydrogen peroxide 3% solution preparation 190 193
 superoxol 174
 Hydrolysis of tissue 160
 Hydrolyzer steam 215
 Hydroxybutyric acid 178
 β Hydroxybutyric acid 176
 Hypoproteinemia 131

I

Iceland spar pure calcium carbonate 94
 Ichiba F 123
 Icteric index miscellaneous references 402
 Indicators
 alizarin red 96
 bromocresol green 140 185 194 208 235
 bromocresol purple 235
 bromphenol blue 235
 bromphenol red 245
 bromthymol blue 188 235 244
 chlorophenol 235
 cresol phthalein 235
 cresol red 235
 ferric alum solution 106
 metacresol purple 35
 methyl red 140 168
 mixed for micro Kjeldahl analysis 190
 phenol red 93 235
 phenolphthalein 142
 phenolphthalein solution preparation 171
 2 1
 p nitrophenol 99
 starch 156
 thymol blue 145 160 164 235
 universal 234
 universal color change 234
 Indol aldehyde 416

Infrared spectrometer 80
 Inoculum for microbiological assay preparation for
 biotin 249 250
 folic acid 245
 nicotinic acid 248
 pantothenic acid, 251
 pyridoxine 253
 riboflavin 254
 Inositol standard solution preparation 11
 Interstitial spaces distribution of thiocyanate in 364
 Instrumentation 27 81
 balances 65 67
 Beckman photoelectric quartz spectrophotometer Model DU 38 50
 flame photometry Beckman 59 65
 fluorometric methods (field visual) 57 58
 fluorometry general principles 50 51
 photofluorometry the Coleman Model 10B 51 57
 spectrophotometer Coleman Jr Model 6 33 38
 spectrophotometry general principles 27 33
 volumetric analysis 59 79
 Instrumentation miscellaneous references 79 81
 Intracellular fluid change in weight 304
 Inulin clearance miscellaneous references 411
 Iodate manometric method 300
 Iodate miscellaneous references 300
 Iodine
 preparation of solution 159
 standard solution 79 159 165
 reference 117
 Iodoplatinate, 92
 Irby V, 150
 Iron inorganic in serum determination 88 100
 reference 117
 standard solution preparation 99
 Irving L 79 80 99
 Isaacson V I 403
 Isbell E H 460
 Isbister J 151
 Iselin B M 228
 Isen T 117
 Isoamyl alcohol 101 192
 Isobutyl alcohol 185 204
 Isolation of free cholesterol 170
 Isoleucine microbiological miscellaneous references 259
 Ivy A C 420

J

Jacobs M D 401
 Jacobson S D 117
 Jaffe H 218
 Jager B V 80
 Jailer J W 219
 James G W III 366
 Janney N W 403
 Jena sintered glass filter, 67 358
 John, H E 153
 Johnson, E A 150

Johnson R. E. 165 *01 367 369 373 405
 Johnson R. H. *12
 Johnson T. A. *1
 Jones D. H. *9 *80
 Jones F. O. 373
 Jones F. 118
 Jones J. K. N. 101 100
 Jones L. M. 2
 Jones M. E. *18
 Jones J. H. P. 401
 Jorgensen K. H. 218
 Jukes T. H. 260

K

Kagan H. M. 157
 Kahn H. S. 116 118
 Kallmann S. 115
 Kalsbeek F. *7
 Kaltreider N. L. 357
 Kamen M. D. 117
 Kann B. 14
 Kaplan D. 214
 Kark R. M. 418
 Kass F. H. *9
 Katz, L. B. 357
 Kaufman S. 116
 Kawasaki C. 214
 Kasmus V. E. *19
 Kelly F. J. 368
 Kendall F. E. 418
 Kennedy J. A. 307
 Kenney J. F. *4
 Kenney R. A. 15
 Kepler E. J. 219 4 6
 Kerwin L. 80
 Keston A. S. 148 149
 Keto acids total increased during
 exercise 165
 thiamine deficiency 165
 ketosis 165
 17 Ketosteroids in urine
 collection and storage 17
 determination of 15 *18
 standard curve 17
 Kety S. H. 357
 Keutmann E. H. 151
 Keys A. B. 83 103 1 0 13
 Kidney function 409 411
 phenols along phthalate test 410 411
 renal clearance test. miscellaneous ref
 erences 411
 titratable acidity 409 410
 King C. G. 1
 King J. J. S
 Kingsley G. R. 151 166 178
 Kins H. L. W. 117
 Kirby H. 144
 Kirk P. L. H. 153
 Kitchel M. F. 4 1
 Kitzer G. 98
 Kjeldahl micro analysis 1 0 1 3
 catalyst preparation 1 1
 microamm nia apparatus 1 1
 Klein D. 167
 Klement R. 116
 Klendshoj N. C. *33

Klimentko V. G. 116
 Kluezer R. G. 150
 Klyne W. 80
 Kmiecik T. C. *13
 Knippenberg E. 116
 Kobro M. 218
 Koch F. C. 118 145 219 *90
 Koch W. 214
 Kodacek E. 14
 Kodatschek L. K. 60
 Kohn E. 218
 Holmer J. A. 396
 Kolthoff I. M. 81
 Komusky F. F. *60
 Korman I. M. 116
 Kramer H. 93 14 300
 Kramer H. 161
 Krámlí A. *80
 Krehl W. A. *47
 Krogh's new syringe burette 4
 Krogh syringe pipettes 68
 Kuether C. A. 193
 Kugel V. H. 300
 Kun E. 117
 Kunkel H. O. 117
 Kurtz A. K. 4-2
 Kuttner T. 31

L

Labhart H. 80
 LaCour L. F. 149
 Lacourt A. 117 150
 Lactic acid determination in
 blood 157 161
 muscle 161
 serum 157 161
 solution preparation *68 *70
 Lactic acid manometric method mus ellaze-
 ous references 300
 Lactobacillus arabinosus (#8014) *47 249
 50
 Lactobacillus casei factor *44
 Lactobacillus stock culture (#7469) 245
 Lagerlof H. 306
 Lambert Beer law 31 30
 Lampe I. 117
 Landsberg J. W. 399
 Landur A. J. 149
 Landy, M. 60
 Lang E. F. 80
 Lange A. N. 4 3
 Lange J. D. *1
 Langley W. D. 15
 Lantstroth G. H. *15
 Larson H. W. 151
 Laser H. 80
 Lauren M. 118
 Lavietes P. H. 51
 Laws
 absorption of De Ment 50
 emulsion of Stokes 51
 fluorescence 80 1
 Lambert Beer 31 3
 photochemical equivalence of Einstein 51
 Layton F. M. Jr., 116
 Leclerc R., 118

- Leder I G, 213
 Lederer M 150
 Lee D H K, 346
 Leiboff S L 118
 Lein M 118 153
 Lemons H, 378
 Lerman J 200
 Lester, D 178
 Letonoff T V 118
 Leukocytes miscellaneous reference 40..
 Levenson M M 409
 Levin N R 208
 Levine C 148
 Levine P 153
 Levinson S A 396
 Levy E D 213
 Levy M 148 149
 Levy counting chamber 399
 Lewis J C 260
 Liberation of
 carbonate 270
 carbon dioxide with lactic acid 270
 carbon monoxide and carbon dioxide with
 hydrosulfite borate solution prepa-
 ration 275
 oxygen with potassium ferrieyanide solu-
 tion preparation 287
 Lieberman, S, 20
 Lihenthal and Riley technique for obtaining
 arterial blood 263
 Lillie T D 389
 Line charts
 ascorbic acid 203
 calculating blood volume and circulatory
 mass 360
 calculating BMR from heat production
 age and sex 340
 calculating (CO) - (CO) from T_m and
 oxygen capacity 307
 calculating factors to reduce saturated gas
 volumes to dry volumes at 0 C and
 760 mm Hg 260 334
 calculating heat production from surface
 area and O consumption 339
 calculating hematocrit 400
 calculating index of physical fitness 370
 calculating mean corpuscular volume mean
 corpuscular Hb concentration and
 mean corpuscular Hb content 398
 calculating plasma protein hemoglobin and
 hematocrit 130
 calculating relative humidity from wet and
 dry bulb temperatures 385
 calculating R Q and true oxygen from an
 analysis of expired air (insert in
 back)
 calculating surface area from height and
 weight 338
 calculating T_m from pCO (total CO) and
 Hb (in ert in back)
 calculating (total CO) reduced - (total
 CO) oxygenated from T_m and O
 capacity 308
 calculating volume of urine per hour from
 total volume and time of collection
 23
 Lineweaver H 28
- Lingane J J 81
 Lipase in serum determination of 2012
 Lipase miscellaneous references 28
 Lipemia alimentary 414
 Lipid phosphorus determination in
 blood 173 174
 serum, 173 174
 Lipids, total in serum determination of 169
 169
 Lipotida e miscellaneous references - 8
 Lithium carbonate solution preparation 145
 Lithium chloride solution preparation 143
 Lithium lactate standard solution prepara-
 tion 159
 Little J M 166
 Littman B 118
 Liu E H 299
 Liver function 410 418
 determination of
 bilirubin 413 414
 bromsulfalein test 41 413
 urobilinogen 415 417
 Liver function miscellaneous references 417
 418
 amyloidosis 418
 bile in urine 418
 cephalin flocculation 418
 cholinesterase activity 418
 galactose 418
 general 417
 hemosiderin in urine 418
 hippuric acid 418
 phosphatase 418
 portal pressure 418
 prothrombin time 418
 thymol turbidity 418
 urobilinogen 418
 Locke W 219
 Longnecker W H 148
 Longworth L G 80
 Longwell B 9
 Looney J M 118
 Lopez J A 198 368
 Love W 300
 Low B 100
 Lowry O H 9 15 198 14 368
 Loy H W Jr 213
 Lozner E L 404
 Lubin W T 357
 Lubri cal stopcock grease 67 301
 Lucia S P 418
 Leucke P W 39
 Lugg J W H 148
 Lugovoy J K 166
 Lung volume miscellaneous references 307
 Lutnack R 116
 Lyons R H 357
 Lysine microbiological miscellaneous ref-
 erences 260
- M
- Ma T S 120
 MacFadyen D A 299
 MacMillan J M 412
 McCall P J 18
 McCance R A 118

- McCarthy E F 63
 McCoord A B 214
 McCready M H 8
 McCreary J F 179
 McCullagh D R 117
 McCurdy-Larson test of phospha-
 te 117
 McDonald F G 118
 McEathern D 18
 McFate H P 396
 McGavack T H 20
 McGargue J S 117
 McIntire F C 118
 McKay F A 117
 McLachlan E A 0
 McLester J S 12
 McMichael J 306 35
 McVabb W M 117
 McNaught R J 116
 McOmie F F W 143
 Magnesium 117
 determination in serum 97 98
 standard solution 97
 Magnesium nitrate solution 101
 Mainland D 4
 Malloy H T 30 31 413
 Malvros H 154
 Malpre F H 119
 Malt extract Bacto 5
 Manganese miscellaneous refer-
 ences 11
 Manganous sulfate solution 19
 Manning G R 150
 Manometric apparatus Van Slyke 11 65
 Manometric method in allanase refer-
 ences
 amino acids 199
 bicarbonate 199
 carbon dioxide 199
 carbon monoxide 199
 hemoglobin 199
 hydrogen 199
 iodate 199
 lactic acid 199
 methemoglobin 199
 nonprotein nitrogen 199
 oxalic acid 199
 potassium 199
 sugar 199
 total nitrogen 199
 urea 199
 Marec T H 115
 Marensi A D 217
 Margen 117
 Marinis T F 118
 Marion D F 41
 Markham R 150
 Marks L 4
 Marrian G F 119
 Marriot W M 18
 Marshall L H Jr 353 4
 Martin A J 145 149
 Marvin R N 0
 Mason H 145
 Mason J M 140
 Mass spectrometry miscellaneous refer-
 ences 80
 Mateer G 41
 Mateer J G 417
 Maurer A P 14
 Maw A 150
 Maxey W 166
 Maximum stability range of
 N-methylsuccinimide 3
 riboflavin 3
 thiamine 3
 May C D 19
 Mayer A M 14
 Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration
 calculation 397 398
 Mean corpuscular hemoglobin content cal-
 culation 397 398
 Mean corpuscular volume calculation 39
 Measurement of
 boundary potentials by glass electrode 30
 pH in solution 143
 osmotic activity 146
 Meier H J 116
 Meiklejohn P 13
 Meisner J E 148
 Meisner J E 148
 Meisner M 14
 Meisner D 11 113
 Membrane tubes 11
 Menzies G I 30
 Menzies mercury 63
 Menzies J T 14
 Mercuric acetone sulfate 10
 Mercuric sulfate solution 10
 Mercury
 base free 83
 cleaning of 6
 Mercury determination of miscellaneous refer-
 ences 41
 Mercury vapor lamp (H 4) 5
 Mercurio D 116
 Metabolic products of
 niacin 180
 N-methylsuccinimide 180
 Metabolic wards technique for 392 393
 general considerations 39 393
 theoretical balances 393 394
 theoretical weight 394 395
 Metabolism during exhausting work 343 344
 Metabolism during work 341 345
 apparatus 341 344
 calculation and data obtained 344 345
 principle 341
 procedure 343 344
 Metabolism after exhausting exercise 344
 Meta-cresol purple indicator 35
 Meta-dinitrobenzene solution 215
 Metal free distilled water 101
 Metaphosphoric acid stabilizing reagent 5
 Meteorological measurements 341 345
 barometric pressure altitude and related
 variables 351
 humidity and absolute vapor tension 391
 392
 temperature 391
 wind velocity 381
 windchill 389
 Methemoglobin in blood determination 31
 Methemoglobin manometric method in all-
 anous references 300

- Methylene blue solution 401
 Methyl red indicator, 1° 163
 Mettler A. V 178
 Meyer, L. M 227
 Meyers G H 117
 Michaels O D 117
 Michel H O 224
 Michel's method cholinesterase simplified calculation 225
 Mickelsen O 213
 Microbiological procedures 244 260
 agar plate method for biotin *56 259
 biotin 249 250
 folic acid 244 247
 nicotinic acid 247 248
 pantothenic acid 250 251
 pyridoxine 251 253
 riboflavin 253 255
 tryptophan *55 256
 Microbiological procedures miscellaneous references 259 260
 amino acids 259
 p amino benzoic acid 260
 arginine 259
 choline 259
 glutamic acid 259
 histamine 259
 isoleucine 259
 lysine 260
 manganese 260
 pantothenic acid 260
 phenylalanine 260
 progesterone *60
 pteronic acid 260
 riboflavin 260
 sterols 260
 tryptophan 260
 vitamin B₁₂ 260
 Microburettes Rehberg type 70 74
 Micro burners 135
 Micro Kjeldahl apparatus 1-1
 Micrometer burette 75 76
 Micro respirometer : miscellaneous references 80
 Miller A T Jr 366
 Milliequivalent definition 76
 Mulliken G A. 80
 Millimicron definition 29
 Mills M H 199 212
 Milton R 153 166
 Mundin R L 212
 Minerals 82 119
 determination of
 calcium 93 97
 chloride 105 109
 copper 100 105
 iron inorganic 98 100
 magnesium 97 98
 phosphorus inorganic 109 112
 potassium 91 94
 sodium 87 91
 sulfur 112 115
 total base, ml 87
 total solids 82 83
 total water 82 83
 Minerals miscellaneous references 115 119
 Minor A. H. 402
 Minot A S 213
 Mirkin A 300
 Mirror collimating 48
 Mitchell H K., 150 152 280
 Molar solution definition 76
 Mold prevention salicylic acid solution 156
 Molecular weight definition, 76
 Molybdate I solution 109
 Molybdate II solution 109
 Monge Hedde M F 117
 Monochromator Coleman Jr 33 34
 Montgomery, H 134
 Moos's technique for obtaining arterial blood 263
 Moore D H 80
 Moore J W 368
 Moore R M 401
 Moore M 149
 Morell D B 213
 Morga P W 233
 Morris C J O R 219
 Morton, R A 153
 Mosley V M 149
 Moubasher P 151
 Moyer L. S 60
 Moeller A 213
 Murhead E E 118
 Mulford D J 153
 Muller P B 214
 Mulligan G C 68
 Munro F L 403
 Munro M P, 40°
 Munson P L 218
 Muraagban M F 116
 Muscle lactic acid determination of 161
 Myerson A, 357
- N
- Nachles K K 2°6
 Nachman H M 366
 Naftalin L 149
 Nakamura K. 13°
 Natelson S 166 178
 Navis G 356
 Neidermeyer W, 118
 Neill J M, 265 267 270 27-
 Near A O 80
 Nephritis 134
 Nesbitt M 421
 Neseler's reagent
 dilute solution preparation 140
 solution for NPN preparation 135 136
 Newburgh L H 378
 Newbery K 214
 Newton O J 178
 Nicholas R E H 233
 Nicholls J R 178
 Nicholson D E 145
 Nickerson J L 356
 Nickerson M 80
 Nicotine miscellaneous references 421
 Nicotinic acid microbiological method 247
 determination in
 blood 248
 food 248
 urine, 248
 principle 247
 vitamin solution preparation 247

Nicotinic acid miscellaneous references 213
 Nicotinic acid standard solution preparation 47-48
 Nielsen A T 213
 Niemann C 28
 Nilsson T 149
 Nitrogen
 calculation of theoretical balances 393
 dissolved in blood 98-99
 acid phosphate buffer 283
 apparatus 4
 bicarbonate solution 3
 calculation 284
 hydroxylate solution 283
 principle 3
 procedure 283-94
 soluble 131
 standard solution preparation 135
 p-nitrophenol indicator 89
 Nish G A Jr 38
 N-methylhistamine
 determination in
 urine 149
 urine field method 11
 maximum stability range 23
 standard solution preparation 159
 Nomogram for
 calculating excretion of vitamins from
 urinary volume and concentration
 of vitamins 406
 calculating relative humidity from dry
 bulb temperature and difference
 between wet and dry bulb 386
 calculating windchill from tempera-
 ture and wind velocity 393
 estimating partial pressure of a gas from
 barometric pressure and percentage
 of gas found 348
 Noninterfering substances in ascorbic acid
 analysis (hydrastix method)
 fructose 197
 glucose 197
 glucuronic acid 197
 xylose 197
 Nonprotein nitrogen
 determination in
 blood 135 137
 serum 135 137
 Nonprotein nitrogen manometric method mis-
 cellaneous references 399
 Norit
 acid washed preparation 396
 activated charcoal 15 17
 Normal butyl alcohol 99
 Normal oxidizing solution definition 6
 Normal ranges
 feces 436-43
 plasma (or serum) 43 433
 urine 431 433
 whole blood 430 431
 Normal reducing solution definition 6
 Normal solution definition 76
 Normal values
 plasma specific gravity
 men 131
 women 131

Normal values—Cont d
 whole blood specific gravity
 men 131
 women 131
 Normochromic blood, 131
 Normocytic blood 131
 Nutrient 19
 Nutrient per pound of food groups as per
 chapter 5:6377
 Nylon 306
 O
 Oastler E G 6
 Obermer E 133
 Oesterling M J 149
 O'Leithorpe C C 116
 Olbrich O 166
 Oleic acid 169
 Olive oil emulsion solution preparation 571
 Olsen J C 473
 Open circuit apparatus for measurement of
 functional residual air 5
 Opieska Blauz J 19
 Oppenheimer M J 36
 Optical density 33
 Optimum transmission range Coleman Jr
 spectrophotometer 36
 Orr M 366
 Orr D L 219 213 396
 O'Quinn E P 396 417
 Osterberg A F 40
 Ott M L 3
 Ottolenghi L 162
 Otterell M T 148
 Oxalate as an anti-oxidant 131
 Oxalic acid
 manometric method 306
 preservative 19
 solution preparation 95
 standard solution preparation 7
 Oxalic acid miscellaneous references 300
 Oxidizing reagent for thiamine 135
 Oximeter 89
 Oxygen
 determination in blood (Roughton Scho-
 lander) 7 3
 apparatus 7
 calculation 281
 principle 281
 procedure 281-94
 Dissociation curves of human blood 309
 Total in arterial blood calculation 305
 Total in blood
 bound by hemoglobin 305
 calculation 305 306
 capacity calculation 306
 percent saturation calculation 306
 physically dissolved 305
 Whole blood determination (Van Slyke)
 method
 factors (Van Slyke) 29
 Oxygen absorbents
 Fieser's modified reagent 26
 gas analysis 31
 hydroxylate solution preparation 24
 Scholander micro-meter gas analyzer 3
 sodium hydroxide solution preparation
 26

- Oxygen capacity in blood determination (Van Slyke) 273 275
 Oxygen and carbon dioxide in single sample of blood 242-73
 Oxygen consumption calculation 336
 Oxygen debt
 calculation 345
 definition 345
 Oxygen reagent for liberation of oxygen 267
 Oxyhemoglobin in blood determination of 231
- P**
- Pack test of physical fitness procedure 31 373
 Page I II 167 218
 Palmer W W 409
 Palmitic acid 169
 Pancreas miscellaneous references 4-0
 Pantothenic acid "50
 determination in
 blood 231
 feces 231
 food 231
 plasma "51
 urine "51
 standard solution preparation 200
 Pantothenic acid microbiological miscellaneous references 260
 Papain 247
 Paper chromatography 147 151
 amino acids 148 149
 carbohydrates 150
 methodology 147 148
 Paper chromatography miscellaneous references 150 151
 Parahormone miscellaneous references 219
 Parathyroids miscellaneous references 4 0
 Parsons D S 148
 Partial pressure of a gas calculation 304
 Partridge C W H "56
 Partridge S M 150
 Passel C F 289
 Patek A J Jr 418
 Patterson H R "0
 Patterson W I 151
 Paul W D 418
 Peacock G 213
 Pearson F B 117 259
 Pearson H "0
 Pecáková, L 150
 Pecover V 212
 Pedersen K O 80 81
 Pedley F G 116
 Peffer E L 68
 Penicillin reader Fisher 257-59
 Pennell R H 233
 Peptic activity miscellaneous references -5
 Peptone 249
 alkali treated 250
 supplement "49
 Peripheral hematocrit correction factor 351
 Peritzweig W A 213
 Permutit 142
 preparation 140
- Peroxidase miscellaneous references -3
 Petering H G 233
 Petermann M L 151
 Peters J P 118 404 411
 Peters J T 233
 Peterson W H, 249
 pH
 definition "35
 measurement of blood plasma and RBC 235 24-
 measurement of solutions "4 243
 procedure 242
 Phenol red indicator 93 335
 standard solution preparation 409
 Phenolphthalein indicator 85 140 171
 solution preparation "21
 Phenols miscellaneous references 4 1
 Phenolsulfonphthalein
 standard solution preparation 410 411
 test in urine 410 411
 Phenolsulfonphthalein miscellaneous references 411
 Phenylalanine microbiological miscellaneous references "60
 Phillips D M P 148
 Phillips P H 260
 Phillips R A 1-7 130
 Phloxin solution 402
 Phosphatase alkaline and acid "0 "23
 Phosphatase miscellaneous references 418
 Phosphate buffers
 pH 65 134
 pH 66 230 231
 Phospholipid miscellaneous references 178
 Phosphoric acid definition 50
 Phosphoric acid syrupy 148 182
 Phosphorus
 calculation of thermal balances 293
 determination (inorganic) in 109 110
 feces 110 111
 food 110 111
 serum 109 112
 urine 110
 reference 117
 standard solution preparation 110 111
 Phosphotungstic acid 134 143
 Photochemical equivalent law of Einstein 51
 Photofluorometer Coleman Model 10B 5157
 adjustment and replacement of parts 55 67
 calculation of results 54
 computation of results 54
 general construction 51
 routine measurement 53 54
 setting up and adjusting 51 53
 Photometer Coleman Jr spectrophotometer 34 36
 Photorex solution preparation 21-
 Phototube, cesium oxide, 42
 Physical chemistry of blood gases 301 311
 calculation of arterial pCO 305 308
 calculation involving carbon dioxide 306
 calculation involving oxygen and hemoglobin 305 308
 calculation (miscellaneous) of the physicochemical properties of blood 310 311

- Preformed creatinine 139
 Preparation of
 basal medium for
 biotin 249 250
 folic acid 246
 nicotinic acid 248
 pyridoxine 252 253
 riboflavin 254
 tryptophan 256
 carbon monoxide 62
 gas mixtures for equilibration of blood 303
 inoculum (microbiology) for
 biotin 249
 folic acid 245
 nicotinic acid 248
 pantothenic acid 251
 pyridoxine 252
 riboflavin 254
 Norit acid washed 106
 Permutit 140
 samples for folic acid 246
 serum in the field 21 22
 standard solutions 77 79
 standard solutions for field use
 ascorbic acid 201
 N-methylnicotinamide 210
 riboflavin 206
 thiamine 210
 uricase 145 146
 zeolite activated 207 208
 Prescott B. A. 260
 Prescott F. 212
 Preservation of animal tissues for histological studies
 dry ice 390
 formalin solution 390
 Preservatives
 benzoic acid 155
 oxalic acid for urine 19
 sodium benzoate solution 221
 thymol crystals 126
 toluene for
 copper determination 23
 urinary calcium 20
 Prevention of
 hematomas 21
 hemolysis, 21 22
 molds using salicylic acid 156
 Price J. I., 373
 Price V. E. 208
 Priestly J. G., 312 333
 Primary standards 77 78 20
 hydrochloric acid solution 28
 potassium dichromate solution 79
 potassium hydrogen phthalate 78
 potassium iodate solution 78
 sodium oxalate 78
 Procaine miscellaneous references, 421
 Progesterone microbiological miscellaneous references 260
 Propylene glycol 401
 Protein bound iodine miscellaneous references 219
 Protein metabolism during work 337
 Protein and nitrogen compounds determination in
 albumin (Howe method), 124
 Protein and nitrogen compounds determination in—Cont'd
 albumin and globulin in serum (Buret method), 126 127
 alpha globulin 125
 beta globulin 125
 gamma globulin 125
 creatinine 136 140
 creatinine 136 139
 fibrinogen 134 135
 non protein nitrogen, 135 137
 protein (Buret method) 123 126
 protein (copper sulfate method) 127 133
 total nitrogen micro Kjeldahl 1 0 127
 urea nitrogen 140 141
 uric acid 143 144
 Protein and nitrogen compounds miscellaneous references 151 153
 alanine 151
 albumin and globulin 151
 albumin 151
 amino acids 151
 amino nitrogen 152
 creatinine 152
 cystine 152
 histidine 152
 non protein nitrogen 152
 nucleic acid 152
 paper chromatography 147 151
 proteins 152
 purines 152
 total nitrogen 153
 tryptophan 153
 tyrosine 153
 urea 153
 uric acid 153
 Proteolytic activity miscellaneous references 228
 Prothrombin time miscellaneous references 402 418
 Protoplasm mass change in 394
 Prunty F. T. G. 219 419
 Prussian blue 154
 Pteric acid miscellaneous biological references 260
 Pteroylglutamic acid (folic acid) determination in
 blood 244 247
 feces 244 247
 food 244 247
 plasma 244 247
 urine 244 247
 standard solution, 245
 Pulmonary and circulatory measurements miscellaneous references 356 357
 acetylene 356
 ballistocardiograph 356
 cardiac output 356
 catheterization 356 357
 cerebral circulation 357
 circulation time 357
 coronary blood flow 357
 electrocardiograph 357
 gas tension in blood 357
 lung volume 357
 pressure breathing 357
 venous pressure 357

Pulmonary measurements 345 357
 alveolar air in rest 345 350
 alveolar air in work 3 0
 cardiac output 353 366
 functional residual air 3 1 363
 Pulmonary ventilation calculation 3 9 333
 Purification of mercury 267
 Pyridine 64
 Pyridine of dimethylacetamide miscel-
 laneous references 12
 Pyridine solution 193
 Pyriloxine acid miscellaneos r leren es
 13
 Pyriloxine (vitamin B) 51 53
 d (remission in
 feces 1
 food 1
 urine 51
 sugar and salt solution 5
 Pyriloxine miscellaneos referen s 13
 Pyriloxine hydrochloride standard solution
 50
 Pyrogallol solution
 as an oxygen absorber 4
 Loughlin beholander r methol 7 36 3

Q

Quarte M L 215 224
 Quartz tube 91
 Quartz J H 150
 Quirk A J 418
 Quisno 38
 Quinine sulfate standard solution for the
 amine preparation 230

R

Railey J A 50
 Ramsey L L 1 1
 Randsch F F 3
 Randsch T H 30
 Rancy B B 4 1
 Ranges H 1 356
 Rappaport I 13 1 3
 Raymond W D 13
 Recommended daily dietary allowances of
 National Research Council 378
 Recovery of sodium bromide and acetate 81
 Recrystallization of 4:5:1 103
 Reilein
 cholesterol = 1 1 6
 pH measurement 225 216
 potassium
 sodium 80 81
 total base 83 87
 total circulatory volume 361
 total circulating volume (carbon monoxide
 method) 361 363
 total solid 8 43
 total water 8 83
 Red oxide of mercury 1 5
 Red Purple Coe's A filter 43
 Rehberg P H 9
 Rehberg microburette 674 61
 Reichard I 100

Reid A 366
 Reinstein E C Jr 29 4 0
 Reinhardt H L 100
 Reinhold J G 118 166
 Renal blood flow miscellaneous references
 411
 Renal clearance tests miscellaneous refer-
 ences 411
 diadras 411
 general 411
 glomerular filtration rate 411
 renal clearance 411
 phenol sulfosulphate test 411
 renal blood flow 411
 renal clearance 411
 Respiratory gases estimation 31 3 7
 Haldane apparatus for measuring carbon
 dioxide oxygen 31 319
 Scholander gasometer gas analyzer 3 0
 3 6
 Respiratory metabolism 3 7 345
 basal metabolic rate 337 341
 calculation 343 347
 carbon dioxide production 336
 energy expenditure 336
 examples of all 336 337
 oxygen consumption 336
 protein metabolism during work 337
 pulmonary ventilation 333
 respiratory quotient (RQ) 333 336
 true carbon dioxide 333 336
 true oxygen 333 336
 collection of expired air Douglas bag tech-
 nique 330 333
 collection of expired air Tissot gasometer
 4 9
 metabolism during work 343 345
 Respirometer 81
 Respirometry method 80
 Rhinoceros C P 0
 Rhodamine
 determination in
 blood 10 103
 feces 10 104
 food 10 104
 urine 10 104
 urine collection method 04 0
 maximum stability range 13
 in solution at all methods determination
 2,3 255
 principle 3
 principle of
 chlorination of sample 19
 determination of fluorescence 19
 liberation of bound alkaline phosphatase
 190
 oxidation of impurities by adsorption
 19
 removal of impurities by adsorption 19
 standard solution preparation 190 193
 215 216
 table for simplified calculation 190 191
 Rhodamine miscellaneous references 12
 Rhine L W 167
 Rhine D W Jr 331 31
 Rhine L W 60
 Rhine L W 60
 Rhine L W 60

- Preformed creatinine 139
 Preparation of
 basal medium for
 biotin 249 250
 folic acid 246
 nicotinic acid 248
 pyridoxine 252 253
 riboflavin 254
 tryptophan 256
 carbon monoxide 62
 gas mixtures for equilibration of blood 303
 inoculum (microbiology) for
 biotin 249
 folic acid 245
 nicotinic acid 248
 pantothenic acid 251
 pyridoxine 253
 riboflavin 254
 Nitric acid washed 196
 Permutit, 140
 samples for folic acid 246
 serum in the field 71 22
 standard solutions 7 79
 standard solutions for field use
 ascorbic acid 901
 N¹ methyl nicotinamide 210
 riboflavin 206
 thiamine 210
 uricase 143 146
 zeolite activated 207 208
 Prescott B A 260
 Prescott F 212
 Preservation of animal tissues for histological studies
 dry ice 390
 formalin solution 390
 Preservatives
 benzoic acid 155
 oxalic acid for urine 19
 sodium benzoate solution 221
 thymol crystals 120
 toluene for
 copper determination 23
 urinary calcium 23
 Prevention of
 hematoma 21
 hemolysis, 21 23
 molds using salicylic acid 156
 Price J I, 373
 Price V E 778
 Priestly J G 312 333
 Primary standards 77 78 84
 hydrochloric acid solution 78
 potassium dichromate solution 79
 potassium hydrogen phthalate 78
 potassium iodate solution 78
 sodium oxalate 78
 Procaine miscellaneous references, 421
 Progesterone microbiological miscellaneous references 60
 Propylene glycol 401
 Protein bound iodine miscellaneous references 219
 Protein metabolism during work 337
 Protein and nitrogen compounds determination in
 albumin (Howe method), 1-4
 Protein and nitrogen compounds determination in—Cont'd
 albumin and globulin in serum (Biuret method) 1-6 197
 alpha globulin 125
 beta globulin 1-5
 gamma globulin 1-5
 creatinine 136 140
 creatinine 136 139
 fibrinogen 134 135
 non protein nitrogen, 135 137
 protein (Biuret method) 193 126
 protein (copper sulfate method) 197 133
 total nitrogen micro Kjeldahl 1-0 1 7
 urea nitrogen 140 141
 uric acid 143 144
 Protein and nitrogen compounds miscellaneous references 151 153
 alanine 151
 albumin and globulin 151
 allantoin 151
 amino acids 151
 amino nitrogen 153
 creatinine 152
 cystine 152
 histidine 152
 non protein nitrogen 152
 nucleic acid 152
 paper chromatography 147 151
 proteins 152
 purines 152
 total nitrogen 153
 tryptophan 153
 tyrosine 153
 urea 153
 uric acid 153
 Proteolytic activity miscellaneous references 298
 Prothrombin time miscellaneous references 402 418
 Protoplasm mass change in 394
 Prunty F T G 719 419
 Prussian blue 154
 Pteric acid miscellaneous biological references 260
 Pteroylglutamic acid (folic acid)
 determination in
 blood 244 247
 feces 244 247
 food 244 247
 plasma 244 247
 urine 244 247
 standard solution 245
 Pulmonary and circulatory measurements miscellaneous references 354 357
 acetylcholine 356
 ballistocardiograph 356
 cardiac output 356
 catheterization 356 357
 cerebral circulation 357
 circulation time 357
 coronary blood flow 357
 electrocardiograph 357
 gas tension in blood 357
 lung volume 357
 pressure breathing 357
 venous pressure 357

Pulmonary measurements 345 357

alveolar air in rest 346 350

alveolar air in work 350

cardiac output 353 3 6

functional residual air 351 353

Pulmonary ventilation calculation 3 9 333

Purification of mercury 467

Pyridine 404

Pyridine of N-methylacetamide miscel-
laneous references 413

Pyridine solution 193

4-Pyridoxic acid miscellaneous references
913Pyridoxine (vitamin B₆) 1 253

determination in

feces 401

food 41

urine 51

sugar and salt solution 14

Pyridoxine miscellaneous references 13

Pyridoxine hydrochloride standard solution
9

Pyrocoll solution

as an oxygen absorbent 274

Roughton Scholander method 477 486 97

Q

Quaise M. L. 213 214

Quartz tubes 91

Quastel J. H. 150

Quick, A. J. 418

Quinine 11

Quinine sulfate standard solution for the
amine preparation 185

R

Radley J. A. 60

Ramsey L. L. 151

Ranshaw F. E. 63

Randolph T. O. 390

Raney R. B. 4 1

Rangas H. A. 2 6

Rappaport F. 15 1 8

Raymond W. D. 413

Recommended daily dietary allowances of
National Research Council 378

Recovery of sodium uranyl acetate 91

Perry calibration of ANSA 103

Red cell

cholesterase 4 6

pH measurement 235 4

potassium 97

sodium 80 91

total base 83 87

total circulating volume 361

total circulating volume (carbon monoxide
method) 361 363

total solids 87 83

total water 8 11

Red oxide of mercury 175

Red Purple Corex A filter 43

Reidberg P. B. 9

Reidberg microburette 9 4 91

Reidberg P. 150

Fed A. 366

Reisenstein H. C. Jr. 270 39 470

Reinhardt H. L. 9

Reinhold J. O. 118 166

Renal blood flow miscellaneous references
411Renal clearance tests miscellaneous refer-
ences 411

diuresis 411

ge test 411

glomerular filtration rate 411

inulin clearance 411

picrosulphophthalein test 411

renal blood flow 411

urea clearance 411

Respiratory gases estimation 31 327

Haldane apparatus for measuring carbon
dioxide oxygen 319 310Scholander micrometer gas analyzer 3 0
446

Respiratory metabolism 3 7 345

basal metabolic rate 337 341

calculation 57 337

carbon dioxide product on 336

energy expenditure 336

example of all 336 337

oxygen consumption 336

protein metabolism during work 337

pulmonary ventilation 333

respiratory quotient (R.Q.) 333 336

true carbon dioxide 337 336

true oxygen 333 336

collection of expired air Douglas bag to h
nique 330 333collection of expired air Tissot gasometer
3 9

metabolism during work 341 345

Respirometer 81

Respirometer micro 80

Rhodes G. F. 9

Riboflavin

determination in

blood 192 194

feces 19 19

food 19 194

urine 190 194

urine field method 94 107

maximal ability range 3

microchemical methods determination
53 255

principle 11

principle of

clarification of sample 197

determination of fluorescence 192

liberation of bound alloxazine nucleotide
194oxidation of impurities by adsorption
197removal of impurities by adsorption 19
standard solution preparation 190 193

45 434

table for simplified calculation 190 191

P-hydroxy miscellaneous references 213

Rice F. W. 187

Ridgway D. W. Jr. 351 35

Ridgway E. L. 60

Rider P. R. 477

- Riley R L 356 357
 Rimington C 233
 Ring G C 356
 Ringbom A. 116
 Rusley H A 148 150
 Robert D 151
 Roberts H 277 280
 Roberts H 157 219
 Robinson F J 420
 Robinson H W 311
 Robinson J C 100
 Robinson P F 201 405
 Robinson S 341 379
 Pobschiet Robbins F S 299
 Robson J H 166
 Rochelle salts 156
 Rockland L B 149 160
 Roe J H 116 166 167 193 199 217 220
 Rohse W G 153
 Polf D 411
 Roller Smith torsion balance 25 66
 Roos A 357
 Root W S 273 361
 Rose W C 153
 Rozen F 213
 Rosenberg H R 212
 Rosenkrantz H 219
 Roenthal O 233
 Rosenthal M M 178 412
 Ross E C 119
 Rotator mechanical 304
 Roth L W 219
 Rothera A C H 178
 Rothschild L 80
 Boughton F J W 273 275 276 282 285
 291 301
 Boughton Scholander syringe pipette 276
 Bourke M D 399
 Bourke Ernestine line chart for calculating
 hematocrit 400
 Rous P 418
 Rowntree L G 410
 Rubin E H 213
 Rudel H 356
 Rutter L 148
- 9
- Saccharomyces carlsbergensis sto k culture
 252
 Saffell W B 373
 Saffran M 166
 Sagerson, R P 35
 Sahyun M 151 210
 Salicylates miscellaneous references 171
 Saline ammonium sulfate solution prepara-
 tion 124
 Saline solution isotonic preparation 20 22
 Salt solution
 A for microbiology preparation 245
 H for microbiology preparation 245
 isotonic preparation 245
 Salter W T 117 219
 Saltzman A H 219
 Saltzman F 40
- Sanford A H 209
 Sanford A W 396
 Sanger F 149
 Sapirstein L A 119
 Saponification for vitamin A 18
 Saponification with sodium ethylate 169
 Saret H P 213 250
 Sargent F H 201
 Satterfield G H 212
 Saur M 152
 Sawitsky A 27
 Sayers G 219
 Sayers M A 219
 Shorov V 415
 Scardino P L 411
 Schaffer N K 153
 Schaffer P A 173 178
 Schaffert R R 178
 Schales O 166
 Schales S M 166
 Schunkel M 20
 Schmidt C F 357
 Schmidt C F 470
 Schmidt E G 421
 Schneider J J 218
 Schoenheimer F 171
 Schoff H F 240
 Scholander P F 75 79 80 81 277 283
 285 291 295 300
 Scholander a micrometer burette 376
 Scholander a micrometer gas analyzer 300
 306
 analysis of sample 323 324
 apparatus 303 321
 assembling apparatus 322
 calculation 324 325
 principle 320
 Scholander a technique for handling blood
 anaerobically 263 265
 Schroeder W A 148
 Schuetz H A 208
 Schultz A S 251
 Schuman R L 213
 Schwartz I L 366
 Schwartz M C 118
 Schwartz S 233 415 421
 Schwartz T B 80 209
 Schweigert A B 117 259
 Schwenn E 276
 Scott M L 273
 Scott W W 288 411
 Seoz G 207
 Scrimshaw, N M 214
 Seaton C 228
 Sebrell W H 255
 Sedimentation rate calculation 399 400
 Seegers W H 402
 Seeley R D 356
 Seibel, R E 357
 Selective absorption definition 28
 Seligman A L 203
 Seligman A M 151
 Sendroy J Jr 299 300 311
 Sensitivity of flame photometer concerning
 metals 63

Serum collection and storage in the field 20 3

determination of
albumin
 Bauret method 1st
 Howe method 1 6 127
amylase 2 6 7
ascorbic acid
 field method 201 204
 macro method 185 197
 micro method 198 199
base total 83 8
bicarbonate 306
bilirubin 413 414
bromsulfalein 41 413
calcium 93 9
carbon dioxide 0
carbonic acid free 306
carotenoids
 Carr Price method 179 180
 dichlorohydrin method 181 184
chloride 106 109
cholesterol Bloor's method 169 1 0
cholesterol combined or esterified 171 173
cholesterol free Sperm's method 1 1 173
cholinesterase 24 8
copper 100 105
globulin
 Bauret method alpha beta gamma 1 5
 Howe method 1 6 1st
iron inorganic 98 100
lactic acid 15 161
lipase 1 2
lipid phosphorus 173 174
lipids total 166 169
magnesium 97 98
nitrogen total 1 0 1 3
nonprotein nitrogen 135 137
pH 306
phosphatase acid 3
phosphatase alkaline 3
phosphorus inorganic 100 111
potassium 91 9
protein
 Bauret method 1 2
 copper sulfate method 1st 7 133
 Kjeldahl micro method 1 0 1 3
sodium 87 89
solids total 8 83
sulfate
 etheral, 115
 inorganic 11 114
 total 11 114
urea nitrogen 140 141
uric acid, 143
valium A
 Carr Price 179 180
 dichlorohydrin 181 184
 water total 8 83
evag M G 133
Eysfang A P 148 2 6
Sfortunato T 15
Shaffer P A. 156
Shaffer Hartman Somogyi sugar reagent 16

Shaler E 116
Shales S S 116
Shank R E 418
Shankman S 59
Shannon J A. 411
Shapiro S 418
Sharpey Schafer E H 356
Shaw J L 719
Sheard C 9
Shes S 118
Shepard M 80
Sherlock S P 1 9
Sherman A. I 19
Sherman H C 1
Shettles L B 167
Sherry M C 133
Shimer S R. 13
Shimowara Q Y 27
Shipp H L 118
Shohl A T 81 91 116 118
Shorb M S 60
Shorr H 19
Shull G M 49
Shun Chuan Liang T W 118
Siggia S 166
Sinca pebble 173 1 4
Silver dichromate solution preparation 168
Silver nitrate
 solution preparation 143
 standard solution 28 106
Simmons J S 396
Simmons S M 19
Simonsen D H 366
Simplified calculation tables
 amylase activity of serum
 blood glucose 157
 cholinesterase 5
 riboflavin in urine 190 191
 serum sodium 88
 step test of physical fitness scoring 3 4
 total base 86
 urine sodium 98
 urine sulfur 114
Sintered glass (Pyrex) crucibles 1 5
Siple P A 380
Siple and Lassell equation 380
Skatol aldehyde 416
Skliarsky S 116
Slater E C 113
Smith B W 2 7
Smith C G 116
Smith E L 80
Smith F A 8
Smith G N 8
Smith H W 411
Smith J D 150
Smith P H 219 4 9
Smith W E 233
Snedecor W G 4
Snell E F 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260
Snow S D 181
Snyder J. 1 8
Kobel A L 116 181 14
Kobel H 20
Sobotka H 214

- Sodium
 determination in
 cells 90 91
 diets 90
 feces 90
 serum 87 89
 tissue 90
 urine 89 90
 serum simplified calculation table 83
 urine simplified calculation table 89
 Sodium determination miscellaneous refer-
 ences 118
 Sodium acetate
 saturated solution preparation 95
 solution preparation 142 185
 Sodium aluminum silicate 140
 Sodium anthraquinone β sulfonate 267
 Sodium benzoate 142
 Sodium benzoate solution preservative 271
 Sodium bicarbonate solution preparation 19
 Sodium β glycerophosphate solution prepara-
 tion 222
 Sodium β naphthoquinone 4 sulfonate solution
 preparation 142
 Sodium carbonate solution preparation 14
 145
 Sodium chloride standard solution prepara-
 tion 106
 Sodium citrate solution preparation, 135
 Sodium cyanide solution preparation 143
 232
 Sodium diethylbarbiturate buffer prepara-
 tion 234
 Sodium (mono) diethylbarbiturate prepara-
 tion 2
 Sodium diethyldithiocarbamate solution
 preparation 101
 Sodium ethylate solution preparation 163
 Sodium fluorescein reference standard solu-
 tion preparation 191
 Sodium hydrosulfate solution for absorption
 of oxygen 191 193 267
 Sodium hydrosulfite (Lycopon) 217
 Sodium hydrosulfite borate solution prepara-
 tion 75 239
 Sodium hydroxide
 5 N solution preparation 173
 10 N solution preparation, 181
 an absorber of carbon dioxide 270 2,2
 standard solution preparation 77 91
 Sodium meta bisulfite solution preparation
 159 165
 Sodium nitrite solution preparation 413
 Sodium oxalate standard solution prepara-
 tion 73
 Sodium phosphate monobasic 143
 Sodium pyrophosphate solution preparation
 101
 Sodium sulfate solution preparation 91 1 6
 Sodium test miscellaneous references 366
 Sodium thiosulfate
 solution preparation 143
 standard solution preparation 79 156 163
 Sodium tungstate solution preparation 140
 143
 Sodium uranyl zinc acetate
 (triple sodium salt) 87
 recovery of 91
- Sokalchuk A 356
 Solomon J D 259
 Soluble nitrogen 135
 Solution definition of
 molar 76
 normal 76
 normal oxidizing 76
 normal reducing 76
 Solvents anhydrous
 alcohol absolute 171
 alcohol methyl, 1:1
 ethylene chloride 171
 Somogyi M 156 161 236
 Somogyi's phosphate tartrate copper iodide
 solution 156
 Sommerhayes H 150
 Soodak M 153
 Sørensen's glycine HCl mixtures for pH 11
 35 233
 Sørensen's glycine NaOH mixtures for pH
 85 125 233
 Sørensen's phosphate buffer pH 7.88 236
 Sørensen's phosphate buffer solutions at 0
 and 37 C pH 5.88 38
 Sortwell M 166
 Soyenkov D 117
 Span ether reagent 1 4
 Spectral transmittance curves 29 30
 Spectral transmittance curves for copper 103
 Spectrometer miscellaneous references 80
 infrared 80
 mass 80
 Spectrophotometer Beckman Quartz Model
 DU 38 50
 absorption cells holders 38 40
 calibration 43 50
 of cells 46 47
 solution concentration 47
 wavelength 49
 electrical construction 38
 filter slide 43
 focusing
 hydrogen lamp 48 49
 tungsten lamp 47 48
 general construction 39 42
 light sources 33 43
 monochromator, 38
 normal band width 46
 operation 50
 optical systems 33
 photometer calibration 49 50
 power requirements 43
 sensitivity control 44
 slits 38
 spectral range 42
 Spectrophotometer Coleman Jr, Model 6
 38
 general principles 33 36
 monochromator 33
 optimum transmittance range 36
 photometer 34 36
 spectrophotometer 33
 instructions for routine use 38
 setting up and calibration of instrument
 36 38
 adjusting the mechanical galvanometer
 zero 36 37

Spectrophotometer setting up and adjusting the mechanical galvanometer—Cont'd
 calibration of the instrument 37 38
 mounting and connecting 36
 verifying the wavelength calibration 37

Spectrophotometer definition 33

Spectrophotometry general principles 7 33
 color and wavelength 38 39
 concentration transmittance calibration graph 3 33

Lambert Beer law 31 32
 optical density 33
 selecting the proper reference solution 8
 spectral transmittance curves 29 30
 transmission 7
 transmittance 7 23

Spencer W H 8

Sperber I 118

Sperry W M 171

Spes J T 153

Spes T D 212

Spirometer for collection of expired air 332

Sprague A L 33

Stabilizing agent
 acetic acid solution for urine calcium 22
 metaphosphoric acid 2
 oxalic acid 2
 stannous chloride solution 5

Stade W H 119 311

Stafford D D 133

Standard solution definitions
 molar 76
 normal 76
 normal oxidizing 78
 normal reducing 76

Standard solutions preparation of
 adenine guanine and uracil (microbiology) 245
 alcohol ethyl 161
 amino acetic acid 14
 ammonium sulfate 120 135
 androsterone 217
 ascorbic acid 196
 for field use 21
 benzoic acid 78 82
 beta carotene 149
 bilirubin 413
 biotin 245
 calcium 94
 calcium pantothenate 22
 carotene 18
 cholesterol 170 171
 copper 101
 copper sulfate 1 71 3
 creatinine zinc chloride crystalline 138
 cysteine 245
 glycogen 162
 glucose 155
 hydrochloric acid 77
 inositol 52
 iodine 79 1 9
 iron 99
 lithium lactate 1 9
 magnesium 97
 N-methylglucosaminide 189
 nicotinic acid 17 18
 oxalic acid 77

Standard solutions preparation of—Cont'd
 pantothenic acid 250
 phenol red 409
 phenol aluminum phosphate 410 411
 phosphate (KH₂PO₄) 310 311
 potassium dichromate 9 164 168
 potassium hydrogen phthalate 77
 potassium iodate 2
 potassium permanganate 9 93
 potassium thiocyanate 78 106
 pteroylglutamic acid 245
 pyridoxine hydrochloride 22
 quinine sulfate 182
 riboflavin 190 193 245 4
 silver nitrate 78 106
 sodium chloride 106
 sodium fluorescein 191
 sodium hydroxide 7 9 1
 sodium oxalate 78 93
 sodium thiosulfate 79 156 168
 sulfuric acid 78
 thiamine 185
 thiocyanate 364
 total base 85
 tryptophane 253
 1-tryptophane 43
 uric acid 143 145
 urobilinogen 415
 vitamin A alcohol 179 18

Standardization example of 107

Standardization of solutions
 benzoic acid 78
 hydrochloric acid 78
 iodine 78
 oxalic acid 5
 potassium permanganate 79
 potassium thiocyanate 78 106 107
 silver nitrate 78
 sodium thiosulfate 79
 sulfuric acid 78

Stannous chloride stabilizing reagent 3

Stannous chloride solution preparation 199

Starch indicator 156

Starch suspension solution 163

Statistical methods references to standard works 4 4 3

Staub H 80

Stauffer J P 80

Stend E A Jr 358

Stem hydrolyzer 115

Stearic acid 169

Steele H R 417

Steele J M 418

Steele R L

Steers E 123

Stehl F L 300

Stem W H 149

Step test of physical fitness 373 374

Stephens I M 21

Stepka W 149

Sterilizer Arnold 214

Stern, K. G 80

Sternberger L A 40

Steroids miscellaneous references 219 9

Sterols microbiological miscellaneous references 60

Tables—Cont d

- Haldane burette (sample calibration of) 315
- Indicators selected by Clark and Lubs (1917) supplemental by Cohn (1927) 35
- Mercury (density of) at various temperatures 314
- Michelson method for estimating cholinesterase activity corrected values for pH decrement per hour for pH 6.0 to pH 7.99 3
- Muscle protoplasm (factors used in deriving certain components of) from nitrogen balance 330
- Nutrients per pound of food groups as purchased 343 377
- Oxygen factors (Van Slyke) 69
- Partial pressure of water and temperature factor for equilibrated blood at different room temperatures 305
- Riboflavin in urine simplified calculation 190 191
- Serum sodium simplified calculation 68
- Sodium in urine simplified calculation 69
- Sørensen's glycine HCl mixtures for pH 11.36 038
- Sørensen's glycine NaOH mixtures for pH 8.5 12.6 38
- Sørensen's phosphate buffer solutions at 0° C and 37° C for pH range 5.8 to 8.2 240
- Sørensen's phosphate mixture for pH 5.8 to 8.2 34
- Step test of physical fitness (scoring the) 374
- Sulfur in urine simplified calculation 114
- Tolerances established by the U. S. Bureau of standards for volumetric apparatus 67
- Total base simplified calculation 86
- Walpole's acetate buffer mixtures for pH 3.6 5.8 037
- Tabone J 151
- Tagren H J 40
- Takadiastase solution preparation 45
- Talbot N H 18 19 0 4 0
- Talbot J H 83 91 15 3
- Tallen H H 0
- Taquin A C 303
- Tauro A. 1 1 01
- Tausky H H 168
- Taylor C B 81
- Taylor F H L 401 40 404
- Taylor H L 1 0
- Taylor W A 116
- Technique for absorption of carbon monoxide in glass cup (Foughton and Scholander) 78
- Technique for absorption of excess carbon dioxide 78
- Technique for obtaining arterial blood 81 83
- Goldsmith and Light method 83
- Lilenthal and Riley method 061
- Mook's technique 63
- Scholander's technique 63 65
- usual method 461 6

- Techniques for metabolic wards 39 39.0
- derived data theoretical balances 393 394
- derived data theoretical weights 394 39.0
- general considerations 390 393
- Tee, A. 13
- Temperature conversion chart 381 38
- Temperature conversion table 38.
- Temperature equilibration of gas bubble in capillary 78
- Tegley L J 01 44 49
- Tesluk H 151
- Thers R 4 1
- Theoretical balance metabolic studies 393 394
- calcium 393
- computation 393
- nitrogen 393
- phosphorus 393
- potassium 393 391
- sulfur 393 394
- Theoretical weight calculation 394 39.0
- Thermal insulation of clothes Clo unit 3 9
- The real significance of clothing 380 calculation 380
- Thermobarometer Scholander micro gms analyzer 3 0
- Thermocouple measurements for skin temperature 3.9
- Thiamine
- collection of samples in
- blood 187
- feces 187
- food 187
- urine 18.0
- determination in
- blood 186 189
- feces 186 189
- food 186 189
- urine 184 186
- wine field method 0 11
- enzymes for 187
- hydrolysis of bound thiamine 183
- maximum stability range 3
- precipitation of protein 183
- adsorption 183
- elution 189
- extraction 183
- oxidation 183
- preservative for (H 90.) 18.0
- standard curve preparation, 186
- standard solution preparation 183
- Thiamine miscellaneous references 013
- Thiochrome
- conversion 181
- formation 54
- Thiocyanate
- preparation for reaction 364
- standard solution preparation 364
- Thiocyanate concentration calculation 36.0
- Thiocyanate space
- calculation 360 366
- extracellular fluid 364 366
- Thioglycolic acid solution preparation 09
- Thiourea 199
- solution preparation 196 195
- Thompson H 0

Tungstate dilute solution preparation 154
 Turner L H 418
 Turrell E 378
 Tuttle E 87 118
 Tyner E H 116
 Tzu Cheng C 118

U

Udenfr end S 148 149
 Ultracentrifuge 81
 Ultrafiltration 81
 Ultramicro methods of Dessey and Lowry
 miscellaneous references 368
 Ultramicroanalysis 81
 Umbreit W W 80
 Unger P N 418
 Universal indicator and color change 34
 Uranyl zinc acetate solution preparation
 87
 Urbach K F 151
 Urea clearance miscellaneous references 411
 Urea cyanide solution preparation 145
 Urea manometer method miscellaneous
 references 300
 Urea nitrogen determination in
 blood 140 141
 serum 140 141
 urine 141
 Urea solution preparation 277 *86
 Urea solution preparation 140
 Urea acid
 determination in
 serum 143
 urine 144
 standard solution preparation 143 145
 Uricase
 method for uric acid in urine 145 147
 preparation 145 146
 Uricolytic activity measurement 146
 Urine collection and storage in the field 22
 24
 determination of
 acetone bodies total 176 177
 alcohol 163 164
 amino acid nitrogen 14
 ammonia free 141
 ascorbic acid field method 01 *04
 ascorbic acid macro method 197
 biotin 49 50
 calcium 95 98
 chloride, 108 109
 creatine 150 140
 creatinine 136 139
 folic acid 44 47
 17 ketosteroids *15
 succinic acid microbiological 45
 N methylglutamine 189
 N methylglutamate field method *07
 11
 pantothenic acid 1
 pH miscellaneous references *43
 phenolsulfonphthalein test 411
 phosphorus inorganic 110
 potassium 110
 protein, 133 134

Urine determination of—Cont d
 pyridoxine 25
 riboflavin 18 19
 riboflavin field method *04 *07
 sodium 83 90
 sulfates
 ethereal sulfates 11
 inorganic sulfate 114 115
 total sulfate, 112 114
 thiamine 184 186
 thiamine field method 07 211
 titratable acidity 408 410
 total base 83 87
 total nitrogen 101 3
 tryptophan *33 256
 urea nitrogen 141
 urobilinogen 414-416
 uric acid 144

Urine normal values 434-435

Urobilinogen
 determination in
 feces 416 417
 urine 415-416
 standard solution preparation 415
 Urobilinogen miscellaneous references 418

V

Vallee B L 119 40
 Values normal
 feces 436 437
 plasma (or serum) 43* 433
 plasma specific gravity
 men 131
 women 131
 urine 434 435
 whole blood 430 431
 whole blood specific gravity
 men 131
 women 131
 Van Bruggen J T 19
 Van Canligert C 316
 Van de Kamer J H 178
 Vandam L D 356
 Vandenbelt J M 213
 Van Klooster H 8 118
 Van Kyselberge H J 118
 Van Slyke D D 1 7 153 175, *43 83
 87 8 299 60 312 421
 Van Slyke K K *43
 Van Slyke Neill manometric apparatus 83
 87
 air free solut on preparation *6
 illustration 66
 machine corrections 20
 moisture in the manometer 205
 precautions 67
 principle *65
 Van Slichten H 4 1
 Van Winkle Q 80
 Vanzant F R 4 0
 Vapor tension on absolute conversion chart,
 385 396
 Varney R R *19
 Venous E H 216
 Venous pressure miscellaneous references 357
 Vials heparinized preparation 1 7

Virtanen A J 148
 Vischer E 151
 Visual fluorometry 57 58
 Vitamin A alcohol standard solution preparation 179 183
 Vitamin A and carotene in miscellaneous references 214
 Vitamin A and carotenoids (Carr Price) 1 9 181
 determination in
 blood 179 180
 feces 181
 serum 1 9 180
 Vitamin A in serum (dichloroethane) 181 184
 Vitamin B 184 186 197 111
 Vitamin B₂ 197 195 194 197
 Vitamin B
 pyridoxal 53
 pyridoxine 193
 Vitamin B₆ microbiological in miscellaneous references 160
 Vitamin C 195 199 191 194
 Vitamin D miscellaneous references 114
 Vitamin solution for intravenous injection 407 408
 Vitamin tolerance tests
 determination of
 intravenous 407 408
 oral 405 407
 Vitamins and nutrition in miscellaneous references 110 114
 ascorbic acid 210
 carotene 210
 choline 212
 folate 212
 nicotinic acid 212
 pyridine of N-methylpyridine 213
 pyridoxine 213
 pyridoxine 113
 riboflavin 213
 thiamine 213
 tocopherol 213
 tryptophan 214
 vitamin A and carotene 114
 vitamin D 214
 Volterra M 491
 Volume of urine per hour from total volume and time of collection 13
 Volumetric analysis 68 9
 apparatus 68 4
 burettes 68 4
 pipettes 68
 syringe pipettes 68
 calibration of apparatus 74 76
 definition 68
 standard solutions preparation 6 9
 Volustat Fisher 244
 Vorhaus L J II 418
 Vycor tubes 91

W

Wadman H 150
 Wadsworth A B 396
 Waelsch H 160
 Wagner R 166
 Watt R B 218

Wakefield E G 118
 Waldvogel M 197
 Walker P 81
 Walpole's acetate buffer mixtures pH 3 6 5 8 237
 Walshe V 18
 Wang Y L 114
 Ware A G 40
 Waring blender 19
 Warkentin J 4 1
 Warmoltz N 421
 Warren G H 278
 Warren J V 306
 Warringa M G P J 197
 Warburton H W 80
 Water
 glass distilled
 preparation 8
 reference to method 119
 salt tests of adrenal sufficiency in miscellaneous references 420
 Water vapor
 absorption with ethylene glycol 165
 tension 261
 Watson C J 233 415 418 4 1
 Wave length calibration 19
 Wehrlbaum T E 194
 Weights and measures conversion between different systems 493 497
 Weiland H 116
 Weinbach A P 118
 Weisger J E 43
 Welcker M L 491
 Wells B B 17
 Wells S L 390
 Werkheiser W C 133
 Werko L 356
 Weselmann H J 18
 Westall R G 150
 Westerveld W 116
 Wexler J 357
 Weyers H A 178
 Whipple G H 117
 Whitby L E H 396
 White A 15
 White E C 410
 White F D 278
 White H L 411
 White J U 80
 White J W Jr 151
 White P D 357
 Whitehead J K 150
 Whitehead T 117
 Whitehorn J C 116 118
 Whittenberger J L 35
 Whole blood
 carbon dioxide determination of 2 0 27
 carbon monoxide determination of 175 76
 carbon monoxide (SR) 185 291
 blood containing small amounts, 89 191
 combined carbon monoxide and oxygen method 188 189
 general method 185 188
 collection and storage in the field 19
 combined oxygen and carbon dioxide method 270 273

- Whole blood—Cont d
 hemoglobin copper sulfate method 1 133
 normal values 430 431
 oxygen determination of 67 7 8
 oxygen total arterial 305 306
- Wiggerink G L 4 1
- Wilder R M 4⁰⁰
- Wiley H F 80
- Wilhelmi A E 15⁰
- Willard H H 116
- Willebrands A F Jr 118
- Williams R H 218
- Williams R J 148 459
- Williams R P 12
- Williams W L 4⁰¹
- Wilson H 0 0
- Wilson T M 418
- Wundchall
 calculation 389
 definition 389
- Wind velocity conversion chart 381 383
- Winegard H M 149
- Winkler A W 404
- Winkler's solution for absorption of carbon
 monoxide 286
- Winsten W A 148 141
- Winternitz W 714
- Wintrobe M 104 33 396 399 401
- Wintrobe tubes 13
- Wiring diagram of Beckman Quartz spectro
 photometer 41
- Wiss O 151
- Witter F F 178
- Wixon R L 19 4 0
- Wood A J 11 149
- Wolcott G H 166
- Wolf L M 41
- Wolfe J K 219 4 0
- Wolff H 115
- Wolff W A 4⁰¹
- Wolfson W Q 1 3 151 1 3
- Wong S Y 151
- Wood filter (ultra violet) 5
- Wood L B 117
- Wood T R 4⁰⁰
- Woodbury L A 219
- Woodman F J 148
- Woodruff H B 151
- Woodson, H W 4⁵⁰
- Woolley J G 4⁵⁵
- Wright L D 4⁴⁷ 55 56
- Wu H 136 139 16⁰
- Wyth A 116
- Wyatt P F 115
- Wyckoff R W 149
- Wyckoff, R W G 80
- Wyynn V 148
- Y
- Yanthophyll 180
- 1
- Yeast dextrose agar 45
- Yeast dextrose broth 45
- Younts J B 1
- Young A R 34
- Young N F 149 151
- Youngsberg G E 1 3
- Youngsberg M V 173
- Yule G U 4 3
- 2
- Zaffaroni A 151
- Zechmeister L 145
- Zeolite 140
 activated 67 4⁰⁵
- Zimmerman W J 116
- Zinc reference to method 119
- Zinc sulfate solen on preparation 156
- Zuzaga G 1 0
- Zuckerbrod M 414
- Zuckerman J L 178
- Zymaris M C 178

